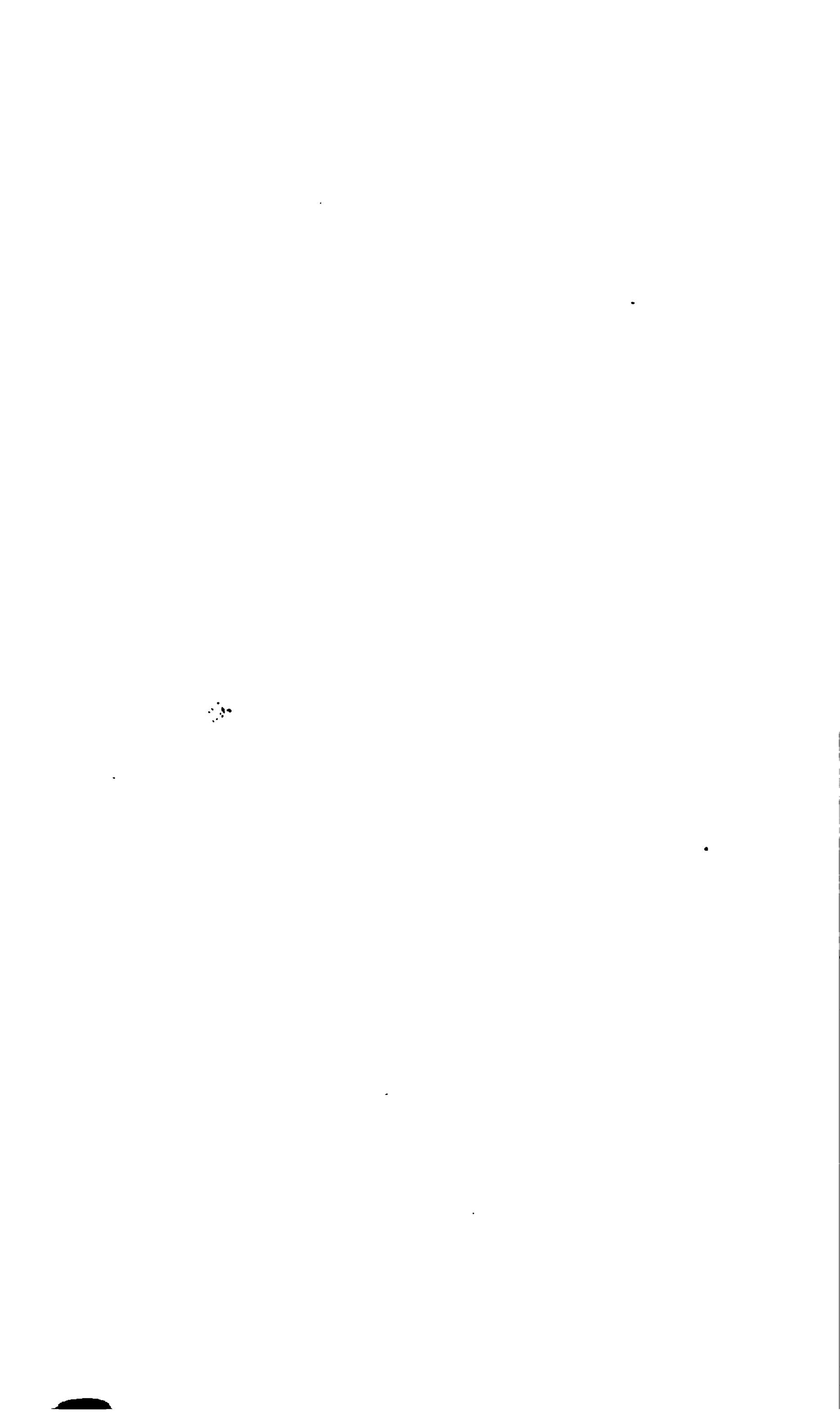
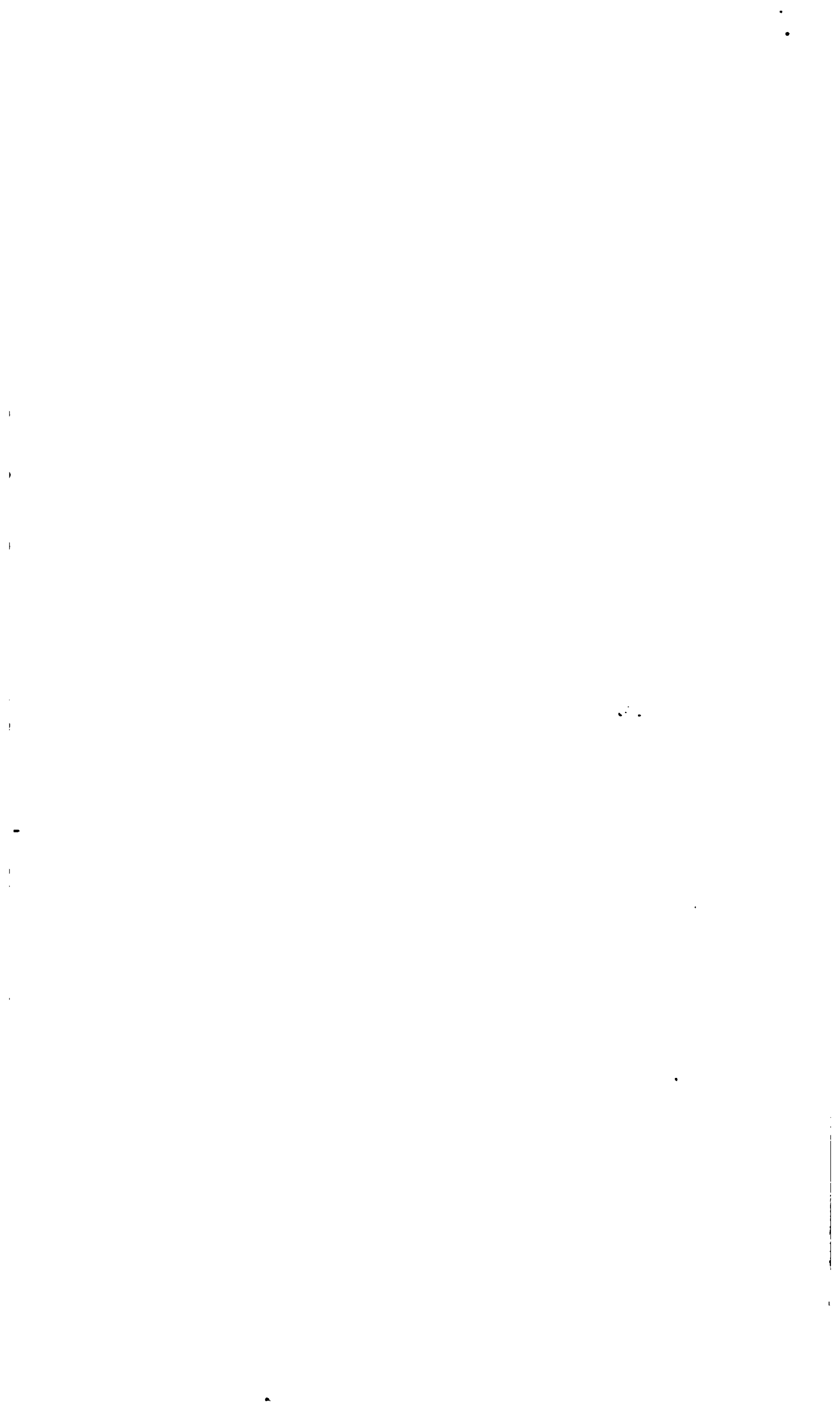
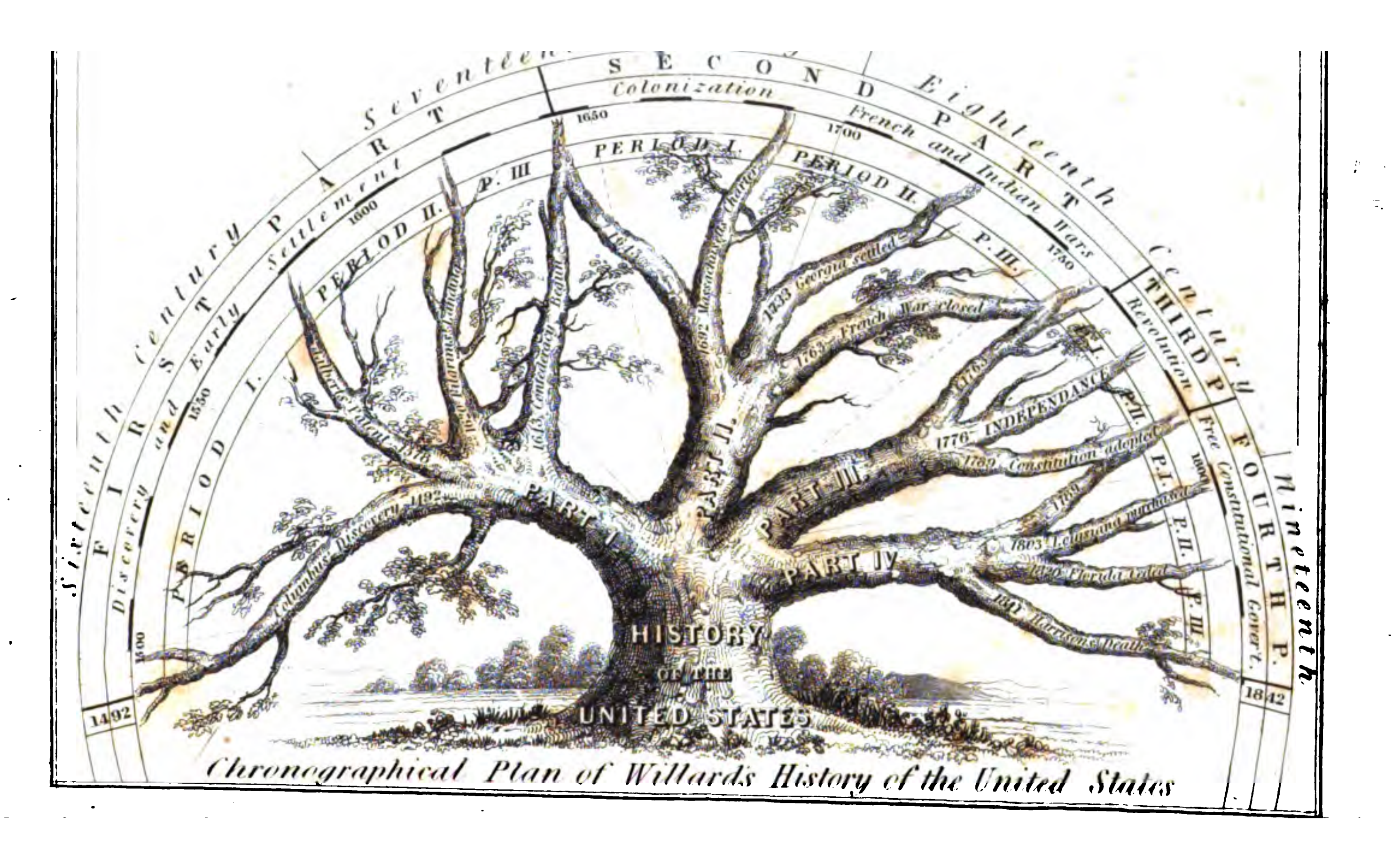










Chronographical Plan of Willard's History of the United States

HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES,

OR,

REPUBLIC OF AMERICA.

BY EMMA WILLARD.

PHILADELPHIA:
PUBLISHED BY A. S. BARNES, AND CO.
21 MINOR-STREET.
1843.

STEREOTYPED BY
RICHARD H. HOBBS,
HARTFORD, CONN.

PREFACE.

At a time when the accumulated mass of knowledge is great, beyond the human capacity, service is done to science, by clear arrangement and devices addressed to the eye. If the faculties are enabled to seize and hold fast the frame-work of an important subject, future facts will naturally find and keep their own place in the mind, and the whole subject rest there in philosophical order. Not only is this important, as respects the particular study thus acquired; but as regards intellectual habits and general improvement.

To accomplish these ends, with regard to the history of the United States, is one of the main objects of the present work. Its plan is chronographically exhibited in front of the title page. The maps, included between the periods of the work, coincide in time with the branches of the subject; and the sketches on the maps picture the events there expressed in words.

But most minds find it difficult to remember dates, though ever so well arranged; and hence experienced educationists recommend that the memory should not in this respect be overtaxed; but that dates should rather be kept at hand in books, to be consulted as occasion requires. Hence, the importance of arrangements in printed works, by which dates may stand prominent, and be easily found. A cursory glance at the chronological table, and along the margin of this work, may satisfy the observer that this task has been executed with faithfulness.

Every student or reader of history should begin with that of his own country; and the history of the United States is on some accounts, a more safe and profitable study than that of any other nation.

When the course of events is studied, for the purpose of gaining

general information, the natural order of the thoughts must be regard ed, if we expect that memory will treasure up the objects of attention Each individual is to himself the centre of his own world; and the more intimately he connects his knowledge with himself, the better will it be remembered, and the more effectually can it be rendered, in after-life, subservient to his purposes. Hence, in geography, he should begin with his own town, and pass from thence to his country, and the world at large; in history, with the year in which he was born, and the record of the family Bible. With its dates the mother might easily connect and teach to her child some of the epochas of his country. Your grandfather or your father, she might say, was born so much before or after the declaration of independence—your own birth was during the administration of such a president. This would constitute the foundation of his knowledge of history and chronology; and, if well laid, it would be as enduring as the mind. Something of this kind is incidentally, if not systematically, done in every family. At the period of receiving school education, the pupil having learned the epochas of his family, wants those of his country; and these should in like manner, be connected with the leading events in the history of cotemporary nations.

History and geography mutually aid each other; and the student will naturally be earlier acquainted with the localities of his own country, than with those of any other; and the history of our Republic, pursued, as here laid down, will give a knowledge of our geography in its various stages of progression.

An attention to the events of American history, in connection with geography, not only makes each better understood, and by association better remembered; but the tendency will be to produce an improvement in our national literature, and thus aid the growth of wholesome national feeling. From foreign novels and poems, the American too often locates the imaged excellence, which warms his heart, in the old world. But if our youth learn to connect the mental sublime of the character of their fathers, with the natural grandeur of American scenery, some among them, will, in future life, be moved to supply the deficiencies of our literature, by filling up the chasms of truth with new discoveries, or with the glowing tracery of imagination.

History, it is said, is the school of politics. It is not, however, the mere knowledge of events, in which the student sees little connection, which lays a foundation for his political knowledge. It is only when he is led to perceive how one state of things, operating on human passions, leads to another, that he is prepared, when he comes into life, to look over the moving scene of the world—predict the changes which are to succeed—and should his be the hand of power, to reach it forth to accelerate or stop the springs of change, as he finds their tendency to be good or evil. There is no history like that of America for producing this effect; and the young politician of other countries, might begin with this, as the most easily comprehensible subject in the whole field, and that, in which effects, may with most certainty, be traced to their proper causes.

The most important advantage of the study of history, is improvement in individual and national virtue. In this respect, we come boldly forward to advocate a preference for the history of the American Republic. Here are no tales of hereditary power and splendor to inflame the imaginations of youth with desires for adventitious distinction. Here are no examples of profligate females, where the trappings of royalty or nobility give to vice an elegant costume; or, as with the Queen of Scots, where beauty and misfortune make sin commiserated, till it is half loved. Here are no demoralizing examples of bold and criminal ambition, which have "waded through blood to empire." The only desire of greatness, which our children can draw from the history of their ancestors, is to be greatly good.

It is not in the formal lesson of virtue, that her principles are most deeply imbibed. It is in moments when her approach is not suspected, that she is fixing her healing empire in the heart of youth. When his indignation rises against the oppressor—when his heart glows with the admiration of suffering virtue—it is then that he resolves never to be an oppressor himself; and he half wishes to suffer, that he too may be virtuous. No country, ancient or modern, affords examples more fitted to raise these ennobling emotions, than America in her early settlement, and at the period of her revolution.

And may not these generous feelings of virtue arise, as well respecting nations as individuals; and the resolution which the youth

makes, with regard to himself, be made also with respect to his country, so far as his own future influence may extend? Would the teacher excite these emotions, in his pupil, let him put into his hands the history of America's struggle for her independence. Though, doubtless, there were bad men in America, and those of great virtue, in England, yet, as nations, how great is the disparity in the characters delineated. England, seeking to make a filial child a slave, refuses to listen to her duteous pleadings. She deigns not even the privileges of civilized warfare; but sends forth the brand, which lights the midnight fire over the heads of the sleeping family, and the tomahawk, which cleaves the head of the infant, in the presence of the mother. England also descends to bribe, to flatter, to sow dissension, to purchase treason, and to counterfeit money. France, unlike her La Fayette, declared for America in success, not in misfortune; and if at length she fought her battles, it was, that she feared and hated her enemy. Could the policy of France have prevailed, America would have found in her embrace of friendship, the pressure of death. In comparison with these old and wily nations, the character of America is that of youthful simplicity, of maiden purity; and her future statesmen will say, as he reads the story, my country was the most virtuous among the nations: this is her pride—not the extent of her domains, or the wealth of her revenue. This is the source of that greatness, which it becomes her sons to preserve; and when manhood shall have placed me among her guardians, I will watch that purity with jealous tenderness; and sooner part with existence, than be made the instrument of her degradation.

Hartford, May 20th 1842.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

1492.

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
FERDINAND V. AND ISABELLA.	CHARLES VIII.	1492.	COLUMBUS DISCOVERS AMERICA,	10	HENRY VII.
		1497.	The Cabots discover the continent at Labrador,	12	
		1498.	Columbus discovers the continent in South America. Americus Vespucius receives the honor belonging to Columbus, of giving name to the country,	11	
	FRANCIS I.	1512.	Ponce de Leon discovers Florida,	14	
		1524.	Verrazani explores the coast,	12	HENRY VIII.
CHARLES V.		1534.	James Cartier, under Francis I. of France, discovers the Gulf of St. Lawrence,	12	
		1541.	Cartier builds a fort on the site of Quebec,	13	
		"	De Soto, a Spaniard, in an overland expedition discovers the Mississippi,	15	
	HENRY II.	1549.	English liturgy completed,	30	Edw. VI
		1553.	The Puritans separate from the English reformers, and are persecuted,	30	MARY.
PHILIP II.	FRANCIS II.	1564.	A colony of French Protestants, under Ribault, settle in Florida,	14	ELIZABETH.
		1565.	St. Augustine founded by Pedro Melendez,	16	
	CHARLES IX.	"	The Spaniards destroy the French colony, and possess the country,	16	
		1567.	200 Spaniards massacred by the French,	16	

1578.

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
PHILIP II.	HENRY III.	1578.	PATENT GRANTED BY QUEEN ELIZABETH TO SIR H. GILBERT,	17	ELIZABETH.
		1583.	Sir H. Gilbert takes possession of Newfoundland,	17	
		1584.	Sir W. Raleigh obtains a patent, and sends two vessels to the American coast, which receives the name of Virginia,	18	

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A. D		Page	Sovereigns of England.
PHILIP II.	HENRY III.	1585.	Raleigh sends Sir Richard Grenville, who leaves a colony on the island of Roanoke,	19	ELIZABETH.
		1586.	They return to England, ...	19	
		1587.	Raleigh sends a colony by Captain White, which is lost, ...	19	
	HENRY IV.	1589.	Raleigh sells his patent to the London company, ...	19	
PHILIP III.		1602.	Bartholomew Gosnold sails in a direct course for America, and discovers Cape Cod, ...	19	
		1603.	Henry IV. of France, grants Acadia to de Monts, ...	20	JAMES I.
		1604.	De Monts discovers and explores the bay of Fundy, and founds Port Royal, . . .	20	
		1606.	London and Plymouth companies established,	20	
		1607.	The Plymouth company make an ineffectual attempt to plant a colony at Kennebec, .	20	
		"	The London company send a colony who discover Chesapeake Bay, and make *the first* effectual settlement at Jamestown, .	21	
		"	Captain John Smith made prisoner by the Indians, and rescued by Pocahontas, .	23	
		1608.	The city of Quebec founded by Champlain, .	28	
		"	John Robinson and his congregation emigrate to Holland, ...	32	
		1609.	A new charter granted to the London company. Lord Delaware is appointed governor, ...	24	
		"	The colony is reduced by famine and distress,	25	
		"	Hudson River and Lake Champlain discovered, ...	27	
		1613.	Pocahontas marries John Rolfe, an Englishman, ...	26	
		1614.	Captain Smith explores the coast from Penobscot to Cape Cod, ...	28	
		"	A fort erected by the Dutch on the site of New York, ...	66	
		1615.	Fort Orange built near the site of Albany, .	66	
		1619.	The first general assembly is called in Virginia, ...	27	
		1620.	Convicts are sent to the colony, negroes introduced, and slavery commenced, . .	27	
		"	Sept. 6, The Pilgrims sail from Plymouth (Eng.,)	34	

1620.

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
PHILIP III.	HENRY IV.	1620.	Dec. 14, THE PILGRIMS LAND ON PLYMOUTH ROCK,	36	JAMES I.
		"	James I. grants a charter to the grand council of Plymouth for governing New England,	39	
PHILIP IV.	LOUIS XIII.	1621.	A district called Mariana granted to John Mason,	39	
		"	Treaty with Massasoit,	37	
		"	Cotton first planted in Virginia,	56	
		1622.	Gorges and Mason obtain a charter of Maine and New Hampshire. They send a colony to the river Piscataqua,	40	
		"	Indian conspiracy, which nearly proves fatal to the colony of Virginia,	56	
		1624.	London company dissolved, and Virginia becomes a royal province,	57	
		1625.	Death of Robinson,	38	
		1627.	Swedes and Fins colonize the east side of the Delaware river,	54	CHARLES I.
		1628.	Patent of Massachusetts obtained, and the first permanent settlement of that colony commenced at Salem by John Endicot and others,	40	
		1629.	A royal charter is granted to the Massachusetts company,	40	
		"	Charlestown, (Mass.,) founded,	41	
		"	The Dutch colonize the west side of the Delaware river,	54	
		1630.	Carolina granted to Sir Robert Heath,	94	
		1631.	Clayborne plants a colony on Kent Island,	54	
		"	The Dutch erect a trading fort at Hartford,	46	
		1632.	Maryland granted to Lord Baltimore,	55	
		1633.	First house built in Connecticut at Windsor,	46	
		"	Patent of Connecticut granted to English noblemen,	46	
		1636.	Roger Williams founds Providence,	45	
		1634.	Settlement of Maryland begun,	55	
		"	Jesuit missionaries preach to the Hurons,	90	
		1635.	Three thousand persons emigrate to New England,	43	
		"	Henry Vane chosen governor,	43	
		"	Grand council of Plymouth surrender their charter to the crown,	58	
		"	Fort Saybrook erected,	47	
		1636.	Hooker, Haynes, and others, settle Hartford,	48	
		1637.	Pequod war,	49	

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
PHILIP IV.	LOUIS XIII.	1638.	Rhode Island settled by Clarke, Coddington, and others, ...	54	CHARLES I.
		1638.	Harvard college founded, ...	53	
		"	Exeter in New Hampshire founded by Wheelright, ...	54	
		1639.	New Haven settled by Eaton, Davenport, and others, ...	52	
		"	Mrs. Hutchinson's theological "disturbance" in Massachusetts, ...	53	
		1640.	Montreal founded, ...	53	
		1641.	New Hampshire and Massachusetts unite, .	54	
			1643.		
	LOUIS XIV.	1643.	THE CONFEDERACY BEGUN BY THE UNION OF PLYMOUTH, MASSACHUSETTS, CONNECTICUT, AND NEW HAVEN, ...	60	
		"	Indians make war on the Dutch, . .	67	
		"	Battle of Strickland's Plain, ...	68	
		1644.	Roger Williams obtains a charter for the Rhode Island and Providence plantations,	75	
		1645.	Clayborne occasions an insurrection in Maryland, ...	64	
		"	Peace established between the Dutch and Algonquins, through the mediation of the Mohawks, ...	68	
		"	Superstition respecting witchcraft commences, ...	99	
		1646.	John Elliot teaches the Indians at Nonantum, ...	78	
		1649.	A part of Virginia granted to Lord Culpepper, and others, ...	62	
		"	Indian massacres at St. Louis, and St. Ignatius, ...	91	
		1651.	Navigation act oppresses the colonies, .	61	Commonwealth under Cromwell.
		"	The general court at Hartford pass excellent laws respecting common schools, . .	101	
		1651.	Civil war in Maryland, and subversion of the proprietary government, ...	65	
		"	The Puritans persecute the Quakers, .	89	
		1657.	Elliot translates the Bible into the Indian language, ...	78	
		1662.	Winthrop obtains a liberal charter for Connecticut and New Haven, ...	77	CHARLES II.
		1663.	Carolina granted to Lord Clarendon and others, ...	94	
		1664.	Dutch conquer the Swedes on the Delaware,	68	

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A.D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
Philip IV.	LOUIS XIV.	1664.	Patent granted to the Duke of York. He sends Colonel Nichols, who takes New Amsterdam, which is named New York, .	69	CHARLES II.
		"	New Jersey granted to Berkeley and Carteret,	73	
CHARLES II.		1665.	Lake Superior discovered by Father Allouez, ...	91	
		1667.	The patent of Carolina extended to the 36°,	94	
		1668.	St. Mary's founded, also a mission at Green Bay, ...	92	
		1673.	The Mississippi discovered by Marquette, .	92	
		1670.	An attempt to introduce Mr. Locke's constitution, ...	95	
		1675–76.	King Philip's war, ...	79	
		"	Three of the Regicides come to America, .	83	
		1675.	John Washington provokes the Indians to war, ...	62	
		1676.	New Jersey divided into East and West Jersey, ...	74	
		"	Bacon's rebellion, ...	63	
		1677.	Virginia obtains a new charter, . . .	64	
		"	Massachusetts purchases Maine, . . .	83	
		1678.	Andross usurps the government of the Jerseys, ...	74	
		1679.	New Hampshire becomes a royal province, .	83	
		"	Randolph sent as inspector of customs in New England, ...	84	
		1680.	Charleston (S. C.,) founded, ...	95	
		1681.	Penn receives from Charles II. a grant of Pennsylvania, ...	71	
		"	Penn reclaims the Jerseys for the proprietors,	74	
		1682.	He receives a grant of the territories, .	71	
		"	He arrives in America, ...	71	
		"	Philadelphia founded, ...	72	
		"	East Jersey purchased by the Quakers, and managed by Penn, ...	74	
		"	The charter of Massachusetts annulled, .	84	
		1684.	La Salle visits and names Louisiana, .	93	
		1686.	Sir E. Andros made governor-general. Tyrannizes over New England, . . .	84	JAMES II.
		1687.	Andros attempts to deprive Connecticut of her charter, ...	85	
		1688.	New York and New Jersey under the jurisdiction of Andros, ...	85	
		"	English revolution, ...	85	
		"	King William's war, ...	96	WILLIAM and MARY.
		1689.	Andros and Randolph imprisoned, . . .	85	
		"	Connecticut and Rhode Island resume their charters, ...	86	

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
CHARLES II.	LOUIS XIV.	1689.	The government of New York seized by Jacob Leisler,	87	WILLIAM AND MARY.
		1690.	Governor Frontenac sends three parties against the English settlements which destroy Schenectady, (N. Y.,) Salmon Falls, (N. H.,) and Casco, (Maine,)	97	
		"	Sir William Phipps' unsuccessful invasion of Canada,	98	
		"	French Protestants settle in Virginia and Carolina,	96	
		1691.	Sloughter governor of New York. Leisler executed,	88	
			1692.		
		1692.	MASSACHUSETTS OBTAINS A NEW CHARTER WITH EXTENDED LIMITS, BUT RESTRICTED PRIVILEGES,	99	
		"	Delusion respecting witchcraft prevails in Salem,	99	
		"	Penn deprived of the government of Pennsylvania for two years,	108	
		"	The Jerseys united and joined to New York,	107	
		1693.	Mr. Locke's constitution abrogated,	95	
		"	Governor Fletcher introduces episcopacy into New York,	106	
		1695.	Rice brought into Carolina from Africa,	109	
		1697.	Peace of Ryswick terminates King William's war,	103	
		1698.	Piracies of Kid,	106	
		1699.	Pensacola settled by the Spaniards,	112	ANNE.
PHILIP V.		1701.	Penn grants a new and liberal charter to Pennsylvania,	108	
		1702.	England at war with France and Spain.	103	
		"	In America, Queen Anne's war,	103	
		"	Governor Moore of South Carolina makes an unsuccessful attempt on St. Augustine,	109	
		"	Mobile founded by d'Iberville, with a colony of Canadian French,	112	
		"	Controversies in Massachusetts between the governor and the assembly,	114	
		1703.	Appalachian Indians are subdued,	110	
		"	The territories separate from Pennsylvania, and are called Delaware,	108	
		1704.	Deerfield destroyed,	103	
		1706.	Episcopacy introduced into Connecticut,	102	

Sovereigns of Spain.	*Sovereigns of France.*	A. D.		Page	*Sovereigns of England.*
PHILIP V.	LOUIS XIV.	1706.	French and Spaniards invade Carolina, .	110	ANNE.
		1707.	A French colony settle at Detroit, . .	113	
		1708.	Saybrook Platform, ...	103	
		1710.	German palatines settle in the colonies, .	104	
		1712.	Indian war in North Carolina. The Tuscaroras defeated; unite with the Iroquois,	110	
		1713.	Fortresses of Crown Point and Niagara built by the French, ...	113	
		"	Peace of Utrecht closes Queen Anne's war,	104	
	LOUIS XV.	1715.	Indian war in South Carolina. The Yamassees expelled; settle in Florida, .	111	GEORGE I.
		1716.	Natchez founded, ...	112	
		1717–20.	Father Ralle's war, ...	105	
		1718.	New Orleans founded, ...	112	
		1719–20.	Carolina revolts, and a royal government is established, ...	111	
		"	Irish emigrants settle at Londonderry, (N.H.)	116	
		1723.	First settlement made in Vermont, . .	116	
		1729.	North and South Carolina erected into separate governments, ...	112	GEORGE II.
		1732.	Company formed in England for the settlement of Georgia, ...	116	
			1733.		
		1733.	FIRST SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA MADE BY OGLETHORPE, ...	117	
		1736.	Scotch and Germans settle in Georgia, .	118	
		1738.	Insurrection of the blacks in Carolina, .	118	
		1740.	Oglethorpe invades Florida, and makes an unsuccessful attempt on St. Augustine, .	118	
		1740.	The Moravians settle in Pennsylvania, .	143	
		1742.	A Spanish fleet invades Georgia, but retires with loss, ...	118	
		1744.	War between England and France, . .	121	
		"	Old French war, ...	121	
		1745.	The colonists under Colonel Pepperell take Louisburg and Cape Breton from the French, ...	122	
FERDINAND VI.		1748.	Peace restored by the treaty of Aix la Chapelle, ...	122	
		1750.	Conflicting claims of the French and English. Ohio company.	122	
		1752.	Washington sent by Dinwiddie as an envoy to the French, ...	125	
		1754.	The French erect Fort du Quesne. Washington defeats a French party headed by de Jumonville, ...	127	

Sovereigns of Spain.	Sovereigns of France.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
FERDINAND VI.	LOUIS XV.	1754.	Washington capitulates at Fort Necessity,	127	GEORGE II.
		"	Delegates from seven provinces meet at Albany. They propose a plan of union for the colonies which is rejected by Conn.,	128	
		1755.	July, Braddock's defeat, ...	130	
		"	War with the Cherokees, ...	131	
		"	The French, under Dieskau, totally defeated at Lake George, ...	132	
		1756.	Formal declaration of war between France and England, ...	132	
		1757.	The massacre of Fort William Henry, .	134	
		1758.	July 6, Louisburg taken by the English under General Amherst, ...	136	
		"	July 5, Abercrombie repulsed at Ticonderoga, and death of Lord Howe, . . .	136	
		"	Aug. 27, Fort Frontenac taken by Colonel Bradstreet, ...	136	
		"	Nov. 25, Fort Duquesne taken by the English, ...	137	
		1759	Sept. 13, Wolfe wins the battle on the Heights of Abraham, and loses his life, .	140	
CHARLES III.		1760.	Sept. 8, Canada surrenders to Great Britain,	141	GEORGE III.
		"	Massachusetts opposes the issuing of writs of assistance, ...	147	
		1761.	Cherokees subdued, ...	142	
			1763.		
		1763.	THE PEACE OF PARIS, ...	144	
		"	Pontiac's war, ...	142	
		1764.	Duties laid on sugar, molasses, &c. violently opposed in the colonies, ...	148	
		1765.	Parliament passes the stamp act, . . .	149	
		"	May 29, Patrick Henry's five resolutions, .	150	
		"	October, First continental congress meet at New York, ...	151	
		1766.	Stamp act repealed; but parliament claims a right to bind the colonies, ...	152	
		1767.	Duties laid on tea, painter's colors, &c. .	154	
		1768.	Non-importation agreements extensively adopted, ...	154	
		"	Sept. 22, A convention held at Boston, .	155	
		"	Sept. 28, British troops stationed at Boston,	155	
		1770.	March 5, Affray with British troops at Boston, ...	156	
		"	Parliament removes duties before imposed, except those on tea, ...	156	
		"	War between the Senecas and Cherokees,	277	

Sovereigns of Spain: CHARLES III. — Sovereigns of France: LOUIS XVI. — Sovereigns of England: GEORGE III.

A. D.		Page
1773.	Attempts of the British to import tea into the colonies; the cargoes of three ships are thrown overboard at Boston, . .	157
1774.	Parliament shuts the port of Boston, . .	157
"	Sept. 4, A congress assemble at Philadelphia. They promulgate "The Bill of Rights," and petition the king. . .	159
1775.	April 18, *The war commences.*—Battle of Lexington, ...	165
"	May 10, Ticonderoga and Crown Point taken by the Americans, . . .	167
"	Congress again meet at Philadelphia, .	167
"	Royal governments laid aside in the southern colonies, ...	167
"	Large reinforcements of British troops arrive in Boston, ...	168
"	June 15, Washington made commander-in-chief, ...	169
"	June 17, Battle of Bunker's Hill, . .	168
"	Dr. Franklin the first postmaster-general,	171
"	Nov. 13, Arnold appears before Quebec, but is forced to retire, ...	172
"	Dec. 31, Americans defeated at Quebec, and Montgomery killed, ...	173
"	The Delaware Indians determine to receive the gospel from the Moravians, . . .	278
1776.	Jan. 1, Norfolk, Virginia, burned by the royalists, ...	175
"	March 17, British evacuate Boston, . .	176
"	June, Americans leave Canada, . .	177
"	June 28, British repulsed at Fort Moultrie,	178
"	Washington fixes his head-quarters at New York, ...	178

1776.

Sovereigns of France: — United States: CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

A. D.		Page
"	July 4, THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, ...	179
"	Aug. 27, Battle of Long Island. The Americans defeated, ...	183
"	Sept. 15, British enter New York, . .	185
"	Oct. 28, Skirmish at White Plains, . .	186
"	Nov. 16, Fort Washington taken by the British, ...	187
"	Washington retreats across New Jersey, .	187
"	Dec. 26, He defeats the British at Trenton,	189
1777.	Jan. 3, At Princeton, ...	190
"	April 26, Danbury, Connecticut, burned, and stores taken by the British, . . .	193

Sovereigns of France.	United States.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
LOUIS XVI.	CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.	1777.	La Fayette espouses the American cause,	194	GEORGE III.
		"	July 5, Americans evacuate Ticonderoga; July 7, are defeated at Hubbardton,	197	
		"	Aug. 3, St. Leger invests Fort Stanwix; Aug. 6, General Herkimer is defeated,	196	
		"	Aug. 16, Battle of Bennington,	198	
		"	Sept. 11, Battle of Brandywine,	203	
		"	Sept. 19, Battle of Stillwater,	200	
		"	Sept. 26, British enter Philadelphia,	205	
		"	Oct. 4, Battle of Germantown,	205	
		"	Oct. 7, Battle of Saratoga,	200	
		"	Oct. 17, Burgoyne surrenders his army,	201	
		"	Oct. 22, British repulsed at Red Bank,	206	
		"	Nov. 16, Americans abandon Mud Island, and on the 18th Fort Mercer,	206	
		"	Dec. 11, Washington retires to winter-quarters at Valley Forge,	207	
		1778.	Intrigues against Washington by Conway and others,	208	
		1777.	Vermont declares itself independent,	257	
		1778.	Feb. 6, Treaty of alliance with France,	211	
		"	Parliament sends three commissioners to bribe and corrupt the Americans,	212	
		"	June 18, British evacuate Philadelphia,	213	
		"	June 28, Battle of Monmouth,	213	
		"	A French fleet, under d'Estaing, arrives,	214	
		"	Aug. 9, Sullivan invades Rhode Island. Is disappointed in not receiving the co-operation of the French fleet—evacuates the Island,	214	
		"	Dec. 29, Savannah taken by the British,	217	
		1779.	Sunbury taken by the British, which completes the subjugation of Georgia,	217	
		"	Port Royal unsuccessfully attacked by the British,	217	
		"	March 3, General Prevost surprises the Americans, under Ashe, at Briar Creek,	219	
		"	May 12, Prevost attempts to take Charleston,	219	
		"	June 1, Clinton takes Stony and Verplank's Points,	220	
		"	June 20, Indecisive engagements between the armies of Lincoln and Prevost at Stono Ferry,	219	
		"	July, The British make a descent upon Connecticut,	220	
		"	July, War of the French and English in the West Indies,	222	
		"	July 2, French capture Grenada,	223	

Sovereigns of France.	United States.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
LOUIS XVI.	CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.	1779.	July 15, The Americans, under Wayne, take Stony Point,	221	GEORGE III.
		"	Unsuccessful expedition against the British at Penobscot,	221	
		"	Aug. 29, Sullivan defeats the Indians, and desolates their country,	222	
		"	Sept. 23, Paul Jones' naval battle,	225	
		"	Oct. 9, The French and Americans repulsed from Savannah,	224	
		"	Congress beset by the intrigues of France and Spain,	227	
		1780.	May 7, Fort Moultrie surrenders to the British,	229	
		"	May 12, Charleston surrenders to the British,	230	
		"	May 28, Tarleton surprises Buford at Wacsaw,	230	
		"	Clinton establishes a royal government in South Carolina,	230	
		"	June 23, Skirmish at Springfield, N. J. between Greene and Knyphausen,	231	
		"	Congress sanctions the depreciation of paper currency,	231	
		"	July 10, A French squadron, under the Count de Rochambeau, arrives at Rhode Island,	233	
		"	Aug. 6, Sumpter defeats the British at Hanging Rock,	234	
		"	Aug. 16, Gates defeated by Cornwallis near Camden, S. C.	235	
		"	Aug. 18, Tarleton surprises and defeats Sumpter at Fishing Creek,	236	
		"	Sept. Arnold's treason discovered at West Point,	238	
		"	Oct. 2, André executed as a spy,	239	
		"	Oct. 7, Tories defeated at King's Mountain, N. C.	240	
		1781.	Revolt of the Pennsylvania troops,	243	
		"	Jan. 4, Arnold devastates Virginia,	250	
		"	Robert Morris made treasurer. Congress raise money by borrowing from France and Holland,	243	
		"	Jan. 17, Tarleton defeated by Morgan at Cowpens, S. C.	244	
		"	Cornwallis pursues the Americans across the Carolinas,	245	
		"	March 15, Battle of Guilford C. H. (Greene and Cornwallis,)	246	
		"	Lafayette opposes the British in Virginia,	251	
		"	April 25, Americans surprised and defeated at Hobkirk's Hill, (Greene and Rawdon,)	247	
		"	May 10, Camden evacuated by the British,	248	

Sovereigns of France.	United States.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
LOUIS XVI.	CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.	1781.	Forts Watson, Georgetown, and Motte capitulate to the Americans,	248	GEORGE III.
		"	June 5, Augusta taken by the Americans,	248	
		"	Aug. 4, Execution of Colonel Hayne,	249	
		"	Aug. 23, Cornwallis enters Yorktown,	252	
		"	Sept. 5, Partial action between the English and French fleets off the Capes of the Chesapeake,	253	
		"	Sept. 6, Forts Trumbull and Griswold taken by the British, and New London burned,	254	
		"	Sept. 8, Battle of Eutaw Springs, S. C. (Greene and Stuart,)	250	
		"	Oct. 6, Yorktown besieged,	255	
		"	Oct. 19, Cornwallis surrenders to the allies,	256	
		1782.	April 19, Treaty with the states of Holland,	259	
		"	Newburg address and meeting of officers,	261	
		"	Inhuman massacre of the Indian converts of the Moravian brethren,	279	
		"	Unsuccessful attempt to persuade Washington to become a king,	261	
		1783.	Jan. 20, Preliminary articles of peace signed at Versailles,	260	
		"	Sweden, Denmark, Spain, and Russia acknowledge the independence of the U. S.	263	
		"	Sept. 3, Definitive treaty of peace signed,	260	
		"	Nov. 3, American army disbanded,	263	
		"	Nov. 25, British evacuate New York,	263	
		"	Dec. 23, Washington resigns,	263	
		1784.	The U. States are encumbered with a heavy debt, which occasions great distress,	264	
		1786.	Delegates from five of the middle states meet at Annapolis to concert measures for amending the government,	265	
		1787.	Shays' rebellion,	265	
		"	A convention at Philadelphia frame the constitution of the United States,	265	
		1789.	Eleven states adopt the federal constitution,	267	

1789.

Presidents of the U. S.	A. D.		Page
GEORGE WASHINGTON.	"	THE FINAL ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION,	269
	"	April 30, Washington's first inauguration,	270
	"	The president visits New England,	272
	"	Nov. North Carolina accedes to the constitution,	272
	1790.	Mr. Hamilton's system for funding the national debt adopted,	273
	"	May, Rhode Island accedes to the constitution,	274

Sovereigns of France. — 1792. LOUIS XVI. BEHEADED. — ROBESPIERRE. REIGN OF TERROR. — DIRECTORY.—(FIVE PERSONS.) — CONSULATE.—(THREE PERSONS.) BUONAPARTE, FIRST CONSUL. — FRENCH REVOLUTION.

Presidents of the U. S. — GEORGE WASHINGTON. — JOHN ADAMS. — THOMAS JEFFERSON.

Sovereigns of England. — GEORGE III.

A. D.		Page
1790.	Aug. 7, Treaty with the Creek Indians, .	275
"	Dec. 6, Kentucky erected into an independent government, ...	275
1791.	Duties laid on distilled spirits, . . .	274
"	General Harmar defeated by the Indians, .	280
"	A National Bank established, . . .	275
"	Vermont admitted to the Union, . .	276
1792.	Kentucky admitted to the Union, . .	281
"	A mint established by congress, . .	281
1793.	Washington's second inauguration, . .	281
"	April, M. Genet, the French minister, insults the American government, . .	282
"	April 22, Washington issues a proclamation of neutrality, ...	281
1794.	Insurrection in Pennsylvania on account of duties on distilled spirits, ...	283
"	General Wayne defeats the Indians in Ohio,	284
1794.	Nov. 19, A treaty of amity and commerce concluded with Great Britain by Mr. Jay,	285
1795	Treaty with Algiers, ...	286
"	Oct. 27, Treaty with Spain, ...	286
1796.	Tennessee admitted to the Union, . .	286
"	Washington publishes his "Farewell Address,"	287
1797.	March 4, John Adams inaugurated, . .	288
"	Mission to France, ...	289
1798.	Congress prepare for war with France, .	289
"	Feb. 10, French frigate, l'Insurgente, captured by the U. S. frigate Constellation, .	289
"	Sept. 30, Treaty with France, . . .	289
1799.	Dec. 14, Death of Washington, . . .	290
1800.	Seat of government transferred to the District of Columbia, ...	290
"	Mississippi and Indiana erected into territories, ...	291
1801.	March 4, Mr. Jefferson's first inauguration,	293
"	War with Tripoli, ...	295
1802.	Ohio admitted to the Union, ...	293
"	Difficulty with the Spanish government respecting the right of deposit at New Orleans, ...	293

1803.

A. D.		Page
1803.	THE PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA, ...	294
"	United States' frigate Philadelphia captured by the Tripolitans, ...	295
1804.	Decatur recaptures and burns the Philadelphia at Tripoli, ...	295
"	Commodore Preble bombards Tripoli, .	296

Sovereigns of France.	Presidents of the U. S.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
NAPOLEON, EMPEROR.	THOMAS JEFFERSON.	1804.	Alexander Hamilton killed in a duel with Aaron Burr,	296	GEORGE III.
		1805.	Jefferson's second inauguration,	297	
		"	The Americans, under Eaton, aid the ex-bashaw of Tripoli. They take Derne.	296	
		1806.	Great Britain searches American vessels, and impresses American seamen,	298	
		"	May, The British blockade the French coast,	298	
		"	Nov. 21, French decree issued at Berlin; blackading the British isles,	298	
		1807.	Aaron Burr tried for conspiracy and acquitted,	298	
		"	June 22, Outrage committed upon the United States' frigate Chesapeake,	299	
		"	Nov. 11, British orders in council issued,	299	
		"	Milan decree,	300	
		"	Dec. 22, American government lay an embargo,	300	
	JAMES MADISON.	1809.	March 4, Mr. Madison inaugurated,	300	
		"	Embargo repealed, and non-intercourse law substituted,	300	
		"	Decree of Rambouillet issued,	300	
		"	April, Arrangement with Mr. Erskine,	300	
		1810.	May, Act of congress renewing the intercourse with Great Britain and France whenever either should repeal their decrees,	301	
		"	French decrees repealed,	301	
		1811.	May 16, Attack on the United States' frigate President,	301	
		"	Nov. 7, Battle of Tippecanoe (Harrison and the Indian Prophet,)	302	
		"	Congress prepare for war with England,	303	
		1812.	Secret mission of Great Britain to divide the Union disclosed by John Henry, the agent,	303	
		"	April, embargo laid,	304	
		"	June 18, War declared against Great Britain,	304	
		"	June 23, Orders in council revoked,	317	
		"	June 26, America makes overtures for peace,	317	
		"	July 12, General Hull invades Canada,	308	
		"	July 17, Mackinaw taken by the British,	308	
		"	Aug. 9, Battle of Maguaga, (Miller and Tecumseh,)	309	
		"	Aug. 15, Chicago abandoned; the garrison killed or taken by the Indians,	309	
		"	Aug. 16, Hull surrenders Detroit to the British,	310	
		"	Aug. 19, United States' frigate Constitution captures the British frigate Guerriere,	311	

Sovereigns of France.	Presidents of the U. S.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
NAPOLEON.	JAMES MADISON.	1812.	Sept. 4, The savages are defeated at Fort Harrison,	314	GEORGE III.
		"	Sept. 7, The United States' frigate Essex captures the British sloop of war Alert,	312	
		"	Oct. 2, Hopkins' expedition against the Kickapoos,	314	
		"	Oct. 18, United States' ship Wasp captures the British ship Frolic, and both are afterwards taken by the Poictiers,	315	
		"	Oct. 25, The frigate United States captures the British Macedonian,	315	
		"	Unsuccessful attempt of General Smyth to invade Canada,	315	
		"	Dec. 29, The United States' frigate Constitution captures the Java,	316	
		1813.	Jan. 22, Battle and massacre of Frenchtown, (Winchester and Proctor,)	320	
		"	The British destroy stores at Ogdensburg, New York,	323	
		"	Feb. 23, The Hornet captures the British sloop-of-war Peacock,	328	
		"	Delaware and Chesapeake bays blockaded,	327	
		"	March 4, Madison's second inauguration,	320	
		"	April 10, Attack on Lewiston, Delaware,	327	
		"	April 27, Americans take York, U. C.; General Pike killed,	324	
		"	May 1, Fort Meigs besieged,	321	
		"	British ravage the coast of the Chesapeake,	327	
		"	May 27, Fort George surrenders to the Americans,	324	
		"	May 28, Fort Erie surrenders to the Americans,	324	
		"	The British are repulsed at Sackett's Harbor,	324	
		"	June 1, The United States' frigate Chesapeake captured by the Shannon,	329	
		"	British, under St. Vincent, take Generals Winder and Chandler at Stony Creek,	325	
		"	British attack Craney's Island,	327	
		"	June 24, Colonel Bœrstler's detachment taken by the British army at Beaver Dams, U. C.	325	
		"	Aug. 1, British repulsed by Croghan at Fort Stephenson,	322	
		"	Aug. 14, United States' brig Argus taken by the Pelican,	329	
		1812.	Aug. 30, Indian massacre at Fort Mims, (Alabama,)	330	
		1813.	Sept. 4, The Enterprise captures the British ship Boxer,	329	
		"	Sept. 10, Perry's victory on Lake Erie,	325	

Sovereigns of France. NAPOLEON. Abdicates after his Russian Campaign, April 17, 1814. — LOUIS XVIII. Now reigns eleven months.

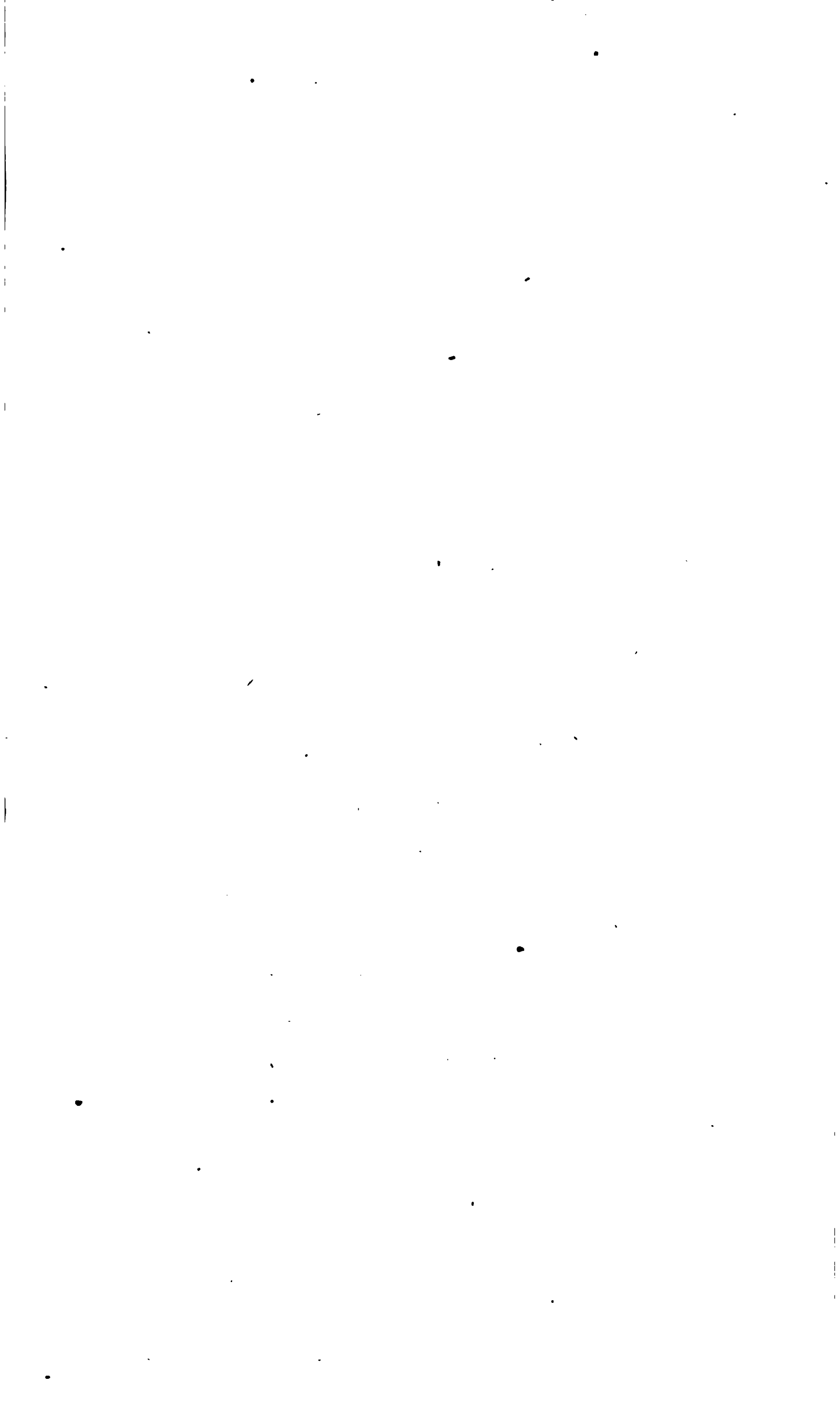
Presidents of the U. S. JAMES MADISON.

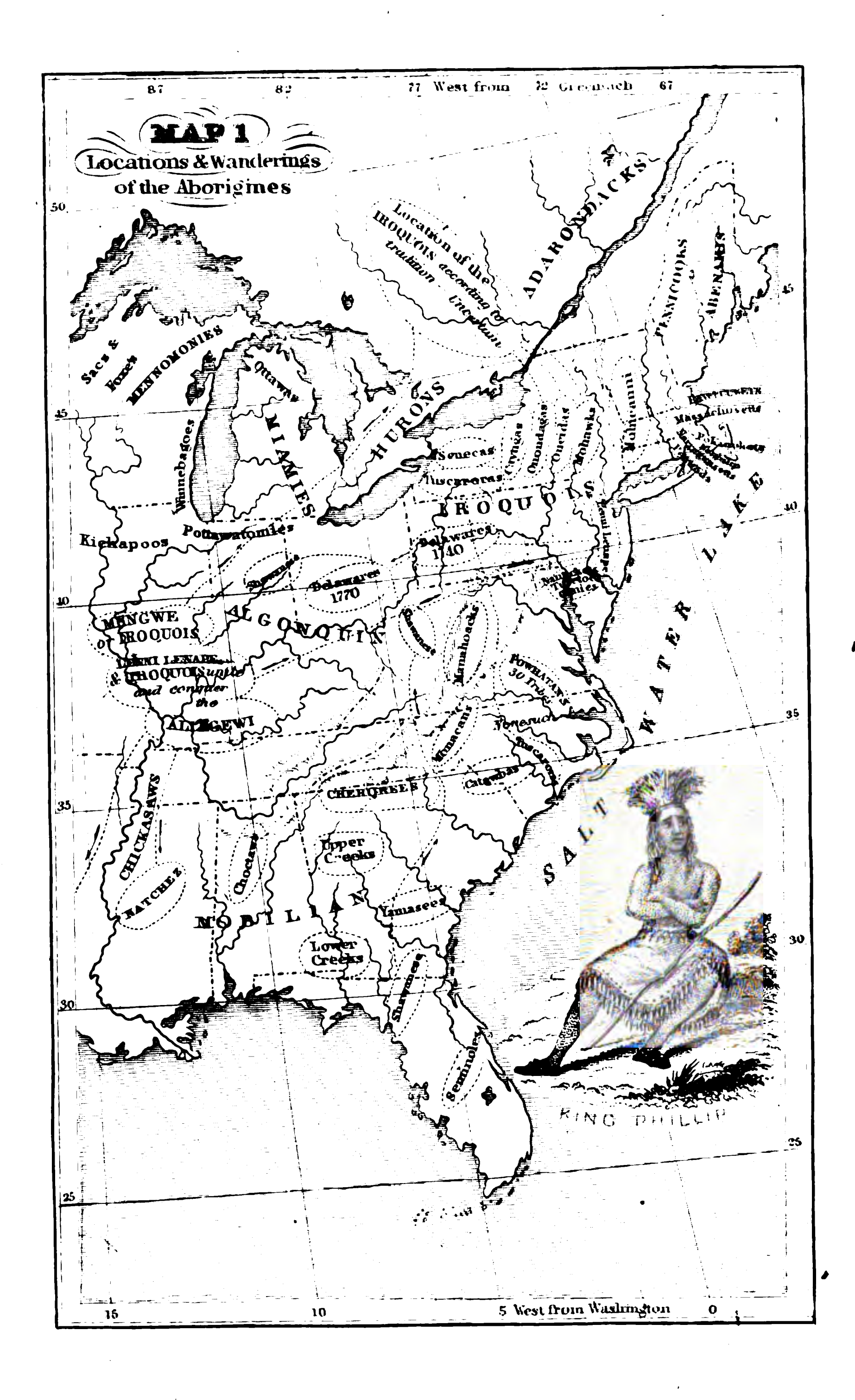
Sovereigns of England. GEORGE III.

A. D.		Page
1813.	Sept. 23, General Harrison takes possession of Malden,—Sept. 29, of Detroit, . .	326
"	Oct. 5, Battle of the Thames, (Harrison and Proctor); Tecumseh killed, . .	326
"	Commodore Chauncey captures a British flotilla on Lake Ontario, ...	327
1812.	Nov. 7, Creeks defeated at Talladega, .	331
1813.	Nov. 11, Battle of Williamsburg, U. C. .	328
1812.	Nov. 29, Creeks defeated at Autossee,—Dec. 23, at Eccanachaca, ...	331
1813.	Dec. 10, Fort George evacuated by the Americans, and Newark burned, . .	328
"	Dec. 19, Fort Niagara taken by the British; they destroy the towns on the Niagara frontier, ...	328
1814.	Feb. 21, Stores at Malone destroyed, .	334
"	Affair at La Colle, (General Wilkinson and Major Hancock,)	334
"	March 28, United States' frigate Essex taken by the British frigate Phébe, .	349
"	April 21, United States' ship Frolic captured by a British frigate, . . .	349
"	July 3, Americans take Fort Erie, . .	336
"	July 5, Battle of Chippewa, ...	337
"	July 11, Commodore Hardy makes a descent upon the coast of Maine, . . .	345
"	July 25, The battle of Bridgewater, . .	337
"	Aug. 4, The British besiege Fort Erie, .	340
"	Aug. 9, The British are repulsed from Stonington, ...	346
"	Aug. 15, The British are repulsed from Fort Erie, ...	340
"	Aug. 24, The battle of Bladensburg; Washington entered and plundered by the British, ...	344
"	Aug. 27, Alexandria capitulates to the British, ...	344
"	Sept. 11, British fleet on Lake Champlain captured by the Americans, . . .	347
"	Sept. 11, The battle of Plattsburg, . .	347
"	Sept. 12, The British are defeated near Baltimore, ...	345
"	Sept. 13, The British are repulsed from Fort M'Henry, ...	345
"	Sept. 17, Sortie from Fort Erie, in which the British works are destroyed, . .	340
"	Nov. 7, General Jackson takes Pensacola,	353
"	Dec. 13, The British capture an American flotilla on Lake Borgne, ...	354
"	Dec. 15, Meeting of the Hartford Convention,	350

Sovereigns of France.	Presidents of the U. S.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
March 10. LOUIS XVIII. flees from Paris, as	JAMES MADISON.	1814.	Dec. 22, The British land below New Orleans. They repulse the Americans, .	354	GEORGE III.
		1815.	Jan. 8, The Battle of New Orleans,	355	
		"	Jan. 15, United States' frigate President captured by a British fleet, . . .	357	
		"	Feb. 17, Treaty of peace with Great Britain,	356	
		"	Feb. 20, The United States' frigate Constitution captures the Cyane and Levant,	357	
NAPOLEON returns from Elba. The 100 days.		"	Fort Bowyer surrenders to the British, .	356	
		"	April 6, Massacre of the American prisoners at Dartmoor, England, . . .	357	
		"	War with Algiers, ...	357	
June 18, 1815. BATTLE OF WATERLOO. NAPOLEON AT ST. HELENA		"	Sept. 6, Treaties with the Indians, . .	358	
		1816.	A National Bank established by congress, .	358	
		"	Sept. Treaties with the Chickasaws, Choctaws, and Cherokees, ...	358	
		"	A new tariff is formed to encourage cotton manufactures, ...	359	
		"	Colonization society formed, . . .	359	
		"	Dec. Indiana admitted to the Union, . .	358	
LOUIS XVIII.	JAMES MONROE.	1817.	Monroe's inauguration, ...	359	
		"	Indians cede their lands in Ohio to the U. S.	359	
		"	The U. S. take possession of Amelia Island,	360	
		"	General Jackson takes possession of St. Marks and Pensacola, ...	362	
		"	War with the Seminole Indians, . .	361	
		1818.	Illinois admitted to the Union, . . .	362	
		"	Treaties concluded with Great Britain and Sweden, ...	362	
		"	Chickasaws cede their lands to the U. S. .	362	
		1819.	Alabama admitted to the Union, . .	362	
		"	Arkansas territory erected, . . .	362	
			1819.		
		"	CESSION OF FLORIDA, ...	363	
		"	The legislature of New York pass an act providing for the education of women, .	363	
		1820.	Maine becomes an independent state, .	366	GEORGE IV., PRINCE REGENT.
		1821.	Missouri admitted to the Union, . .	366	
		"	Monroe's second inauguration, . .	366	
		1822.	Commercial treaty with France, . .	367	
		"	Depredations of the pirates in the West Indies,	367	
		1823.	Commodore Porter subdues them, . .	367	
		"	The government of the U. States recognizes the independence of the South America republics, ...	368	
		1824.	A new tariff formed, ...	369	
		"	Aug. 15, General Lafayette visits America, and is received with distinguished honors,	369	

Sovereigns of France.	Presidents of the U. S.	A. D.		Page	Sovereigns of England.
CHARLES X.	JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.	1825.	John Quincy Adams inaugurated, . .	372	GEORGE IV
		"	Treaty with Colombia, ...	372	
		1826.	July 4, Deaths of Adams and Jefferson, .	372	
		"	Morgan's abduction and great excitement respecting free-masonry, . . .	372	
		1827.	July 4, Death of James Monroe, . .	372	
		1828.	Tariff bill amended, woolens, &c. protected,	374	
	ANDREW JACKSON.	1829.	General Jackson's first inauguration, .	374	WILLIAM IV.
July 1830. The Three Day's Revolution.		1831.	Mr. Rives' treaty with France, . .	387	
		1832.	Cholera breaks out, ...	374	
		"	Black Hawk's war, ...	374	
		"	The Seminoles make a treaty with the U. S.	381	
		"	Nov. 19, A Convention at Columbia, S. C. issue the nullification ordinance, . .	385	
		"	President Jackson's proclamation, . .	378	
LOUIS PHILIPPE, KING OF THE FRENCH.		1833.	Jackson's second inauguration, . . .	375	
		"	May 20, Death of General Lafayette, .	378	
		"	Removal of the government deposites from the U. States Bank to the State Banks, .	388	
		"	The Chickasaws and Choctaws emigrate, .	379	
		1838.	The Cherokees consent to a removal, .	380	
		1835.	Sept. Wisconsin made a territory, and Arkansas admitted to the Union, . .	388	
		1832.	The president vetoes the bill for a renewal of the bank charter, ...	388	
		1835.	Specie circular, ...	389	
		1835–7.	Mania for land speculation, . . .	389	
		"	Major Dade, General Thompson, and others, destroyed by the Indians, .	383	
		"	Dec. 31, General Clinch's battle of the Withlacoochee, ...	384	
		1836.	Feb. 29, General Gaines' battle, . .	385	
		"	May, The Creeks make war upon the whites,	387	
		1835.	Great fire in New York, ...	390	
		1837.	Michigan admitted to the Union, . .	388	
	VAN BUREN.	"	March 4, Van Buren inaugurated, . .	389	
		"	Revulsion in business, and pecuniary distress,	389	
		"	May 10, The banks stop specie payments, .	390	
		1838.	Canadians revolt from the British government, and are aided by Americans on the frontier, ...	391	VICTORIA.
		1841.	March 4, Inauguration of William Henry Harrison, ...	392	
		"	April 4, Death of president Harrison, .	393	




MAP 1
Locations & Wanderings
of the Aborigines
87
82
77 West from
67
Location of the
IROQUOIS according to
tradition Uncertain
ADARONDACKS
PENNICOOKS
ABENAKIS
Sacs & Foxes
MENNOMONIES
Ottawas
HURONS
MIAMIES
Winnebagoes
Senecas
Tuscaroras
Cayugas
Onondagas
Oneidas
Mohawks
Mohicanni
Massachusetts
IROQUOIS
Kickapoos
Pottawatomies
Delawares
1770
MENGWE
or IROQUOIS
ALGONQUIN
Shawnees
Manahoacks
POWHATANS
30 Tribes
and conquer
the
Monacans
Catawbas
CHEROKEES
CHICKASAWS
Choctaws
Upper
Creeks
NATCHEZ
MOBILIAN
Yamasees
Lower
Creeks
Shawnees
Seminoles
SALT WATER LAKE
KING PHILIP
50
45
40
35
30
25
16
10
5 West from Washington
0

HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES,

OR,

REPUBLIC OF AMERICA.

PART FIRST.

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

Name—First Peopling—Traditionary and probable Accounts.

CHAP. I.

The country of which our history treats, is that comprised within the extensive boundaries of the United States of America.

Name.

This appellation we shall exchange as the convenience of language may require, for that of the Republic of America, or the simple name America. This single expression is the style assumed in the bill of rights, the first act of our country's sovereignty; and it forms the only part which is a proper name of that used in every state paper promulgated since. At home we are called Americans in contradistinction from Canadians, Texians, and Mexicans; and abroad, the public functionaries of this nation alone are distinguished as American ambassadors. It is therefore concluded that the name of this country is, and is to be, AMERICA.

Early savage inhabitants.

Concerning the early inhabitants of the vast region to which this name, in its more limited extent, now applies, authentic history reaches no farther back than to its European discovery and settlement. Some probable conjectures may however be formed from the antiquities and traditions of the aborigines, combined with the course of events upon the other continent, as known from Holy Scripture or profane record.

Supposed to be from Eastern Asia.

Noah, the second father of the human family, emerged from the terrors of the deluge in Western Asia. At Bhering's Straits only, do the two continents approach, and the earliest inhabitants found here by Europeans, bore a resemblance to the Tartars of Eastern Asia. Hence the conclusion, that America was peopled from that direction.

CHAP. I

But evidence exists, in the ruins of fortifications and in anatomical and other relics dug from ancient mounds, that another and more civilized race had preceded, and occupied the basin of the Mississippi.

The same evidence, we are told, exists that Tartary has once been the seat of a civilization, superior to that of its present inhabitants. It would seem, then, that a race, which from their antiquities, may be compared with the ancient Egyptians, left in early ages the primitive stock, wandered east, crossed Bhering's Straits, and continued their migratory course till they rested on the broad vales of the Mississippi and its tributary streams; but that ruder and fiercer tribes had followed in their train, and expelled them from those fertile regions. And since a people were found in the more southern climes of Mexico, Central America, and Peru, whose crania, and works of art, resemble those discovered here, it seems altogether probable, that to those countries the earlier and more civilized race migrated; with the exception of the Natchez, and perhaps the ancestors of the Mobilian race. This supposition is strengthened by the traditions of savage tribes found here by Europeans, and called by them Indians, they having given to the whole country the indefinite appellation of the West Indies.

and to have expelled a more civilized people who came from the same direction.

The Algonquin language.

That extensive family of tribes found east of the Mississippi, which, according to tradition, descended from the Lenni Lenape, spoke, though in various dialects, one primitive language, called by the French the Algonquin. Hence this term in nearly its whole extension, has been applied to that race, which has since received, also, the name of Delawares.

Lenape and Mengwe

The Indians possessed no books, or written manuscripts. All their literature consisted of traditionary tales, and a few war songs. According to these, the great nation of the Lenni Lenape, once dwelling far to the west, moved eastward, and after travelling a great distance, arrived on the borders of the Mississippi. Here they met with the Mengwe or Iroquois, another powerful people, who with similar objects had also emigrated from a far distant western country, and had reached the same river somewhat nearer its source.

subdue the Allegewi,

The territory east of the Mississippi was inhabited by the Allegewi, a powerful nation, who had many large cities, and whose warriors, says the tradition, were of gigantic stature. The Lenape requested permission to settle in their country, but were refused. Determined to force their way, they entered into an alliance with the Mengwe. The Allegewi fortified their towns, and made a brave resistance. Many great battles were fought, and the slain laid in heaps, and covered with mounds of earth. The Allegewi, at length, totally overcome, fled down the Mississippi, and never returned.

and divide the territory.

The two victorious nations now divided the country between them. The Iroquois took possession of that along the

lakes, and the St. Lawrence, and extended themselves by degrees through the valleys of their tributary streams; while the Lenape sent forth some of their more enterprising huntsmen, who crossed the mountains, and discovered noble streams running to the south and east. These they traced to the Atlantic, or Salt Water Lake. To the Delaware they gave the name of Lenapehittuck, or the rapid river of the Lenape. Making this their centre of communication, they extended themselves to the Potomac, Susquehannah, and Hudson. In process of time, they divided into three tribes, the Turtle, Turkey, and Wolf. The two former occupied the ground between the sea-coast and the mountains, while the Wolf or Minsi tribe, held their council-fire at Minisink, about twenty-five miles west of Newburgh on the Hudson. But when those regions became peopled by Europeans, the Delawares gradually drew off towards the west, and about 1770 their seat of empire was in the eastern parts of Ohio.

Locations of the Lenape.

With these confederacies others were allied: as the Mohicanni or Mohegans, who spread themselves east of the Hudson, and those branches which extended to the southern and eastern shores of New England, who were all styled the grandchildren of the original Lenape. This nation also extended its tribes southerly, and gave rise to the powerful confederacies which occupied the country bordering on the Chesapeake.

Of the tribes who styled themselves their grandchildren.

In the meantime the Mengwe, or Iroquois, who at first settled along the lakes, had extended their borders until they approached in many points near to the Lenape. They conquered a powerful nation called Hurons, Adarondacks, or Wyandots, which are the only people on the eastern coast, says the Indian tradition, who were not descendants of the Mengwe and Lenape.

Iroquois.

Conquer the Hurons.

Disputes at length arose between the Delawares and Iroquois, and a war ensued, of which different accounts are given by the two nations. This singular fact appears in authentic history, that the Delawares, though greatly respected and honored with the appellation of grandfather by many tribes, were yet, by their own acknowledgment, reduced, in regard to making war, to the condition of women. The Iroquois boasted that their prowess had obliged the Delawares to assume this feminine state. But the Delawares gave a relation, which seems more in accordance with the respect voluntarily granted them, and the weight given to their counsels. Grievous wars, say they, had wasted both nations, and the Iroquois sent them this message: "It is not profitable that all the nations should be at war with each other, for this will at length be the ruin of the whole Indian race. We have therefore considered a remedy. One nation shall be the WOMAN. We will all defend the woman. She shall make no war, but she shall speak words of peace, to heal the disputes of those

Iroquois invite the Delawares to be the Women, that they may preserve peace.

who are walking in foolish ways. The men shall then hear, and obey the woman."

Delawares consent.

The Delawares consented; a counsel followed, in which the Iroquois declared in their figurative style, "we dress you in a woman's long habit, we give you oil, and medicines; and a plant of Indian corn, with a hoe. To your care we commit the great belt of peace, and chain of friendship."

Tamenend.

Perhaps we may refer to this period the date of that great and good traditionary chieftain of the Delawares, who, under the name of Tamenend, has had his festivals, even recently, celebrated in "Tammany" Halls, with his emblem, the tail of the buck, worn as a badge of party distinction.

Coincidence of tradition and probable history.

Thus far we follow the traditions of the Indians. Like those of other barbarous nations they probably contain a mixture of error and truth; yet there is a simplicity in the story which favors its probability, and in its main features it coincides, as we have seen, with the most probable hypothesis concerning the first peopling of America: the Allegewi being supposed a former, and more civilized race, who came in early ages through Tartary, Bhering's Straits and the northern part of this continent to the Mississippi and its waters; and the Lenape and Mengwe, those more barbarous hordes who following in their train, dispossessed and drove them south, probably to Mexico, Central America, and Peru.

1540.

This argument is strengthened by the discovery that the languages spoken throughout the country were traceable to three primitive stocks, the Algonquin, Iroquois and Mobilian. A portion of this earlier race may have rested on the vales of the Mobile: for De Soto, in 1540, found there a people who dwelt in cities, and who were more cultivated than the surrounding savages. And while attempts to civilize the descendants of the Lenape and Mengwe have been comparatively ineffectual, the Mobilian tribes have received Christianity and the elements of modern civilization. But our own nation, which has imparted them, has done what the barbarian Lenape failed to accomplish, expelled this earlier race from the homes of their childhood, and from the cherished graves of ancestors more remote perhaps than those of any people east of the Mississippi. Nor are we entitled to assert with confidence that the Algonquins might not have been Christianized, had the efforts of the apostle Elliot, and those, not less devoted, of the Moravian missionaries, been properly seconded, instead of having been rendered abortive, by cruel treatment to the unoffending Indian converts.

Mobilian tribes.

Yet before the Indians are entitled to complain, they must stop their own barbarous practices; particularly that of making war without declaring it.

CHAPTER II.

The Principal Indian Confederacies as found by European Discoverers.

CHAP. II.

THE Lenni Lenape, Delawares, or Algonquins, claimed to be the head of all the northern nations east of the Mississippi, except the Mengwe or Iroquois, since called the Five Nations, and one other great family, at the head of which stood the Hurons or Wyandots. They were, it appears, that savage race, which our fathers found upon the shores of the Atlantic; whose hospitality sometimes fed them, whose subtlety and vindictive courage kept them long in continual alarm, and more than once threatened them with extirpation.

Algonquins and Iroquois.

The Indians earliest known to the English were those of Virginia. When the first effectual settlement of that colony was made in 1607, the country from the sea-coast to the mountains, and from the Potomac to the most southern waters of James river, was occupied by more than forty different tribes. Those on the lowlands between the sea-coast and the falls of the rivers, formed one confederacy, and were attached to the Powhatan nation, as their bond of union. This confederacy consisted of thirty tribes, and the whole number is calculated at 8,000, of whom three tenths were warriors. The territory over which they were spread contained 8000 square miles. Thus, in this region, which appears to have been one of the most populous parts of the Indian territory, there was only one person to every square mile. Powhatan was the great sachem of a confederacy which was kept together by the force of his genius, and which bore his name. The seat of his hereditary dominions, called by the English Nonesuch, was on the Powhatan, afterwards James river, below the falls and near the beautiful spot where Richmond now stands. This was the native land of Pochahontas, the most distinguished woman of aboriginal America.

1607.

Powhatans on the waters of the James.

Soon after the settlement of Jamestown, the Indians, who dwelt on the highlands, between the falls of the rivers and the mountains, were divided into two confederacies, the Monahoacks, consisting of eight tribes, on the north, and the Monacans, of five, stretching southerly into Carolina. Afterwards, under the name of Tuscaroras, the latter removed northerly and joined the Iroquois. These thirteen tribes were combined against the Powhatans.

Their foes in two confederacies.

Not less prominent in the early history of our country, are the five principal New England tribes. Of these, the first known was that of the Wampanoags or Pokanokets, which produced the two most remarkable savage chiefs of New England, father and son; Massasoit, distinguished for wisdom

Wampanoags:

CHAP. II.

and goodness, and Metacom or Philip, for heroic valor. Their subjects inhabited the country around Cape Cod, stretching along the sea-coast and including what is now the southern part of Massachusetts, and the eastern part of Rhode Island. Several tribes living upon the adjacent islands, and some others, whose long, uncouth names are seldom met in history, were tributary to the grand sachem of the Pokanokets. On the arrival of the English, this dignity was held by Massasoit, whose residence, and afterwards that of his son, was at Montaup, or Mount Hope, near Bristol in Rhode Island.

their country.

Seat of their sachems.

1614.

Hunt, who commands a vessel of Captain Smith's squadron, kidnaps 27 of the natives.

In 1614 an English captain by the name of Hunt, touched upon this coast, and wickedly kidnapped twenty-seven of the unoffending inhabitants, carried them to Malaga, and sold them as slaves. Some benevolent monks rescued a part of them, and one of the number, Tisquantum went to England, and was there kindly treated. The baseness of Hunt was discovered and he was condemned and punished. Tisquantum, after he had learned the English language, and become attached to the people, was, by a captain Dermer, carried back in 1619. The captain, in a letter, said that when he first arrived at the native country of his savage, though he travelled a day's journey, "he found all dead." Afterwards he went to Pokanoket, where he was met by two kings, supposed to have been Massasoit and his brother, with a guard of fifty armed men. These, satisfied with what the savage "discoursed unto them," gave to the captain "content in whatsoever he desired."

Dermer restores one.

1619.

Plague among the aborigines.

The Pokanokets, with the other New England tribes, had suffered a plague of unexampled mortality, probably the yellow fever; for we are told that its victims, both before and after death, "were of the color of a yellow garment." Not less than nine tenths of the inhabitants seem, in some parts of the country, to have been destroyed; divine Providence thus preparing the way, for another and more civilized race.

Besides the Pokanokets, the other principal tribes of New England were the Pawtuckets, the Massachusetts, the Narragansetts and the Pequods.

The Pawtuckets.

The Pawtuckets made their principal seat upon the Merrimack, near its mouth, and extended themselves south until they met the territories of the Massachusetts. Their number, as is supposed, was once 3,000; but the fatal epidemic had reduced them to as many hundreds.

The Massachusetts.

The Massachusetts were scattered about the bay which bears their name. The word signified in their language, a hill in the form of an arrow. Their territories extended to the Pawtuckets on the north, and the Pokanokets on the south. The authority of their chief sachem was acknowledged by several minor tribes, among which were the

Neponsetts, the Nashuas, and the Pocumtucks of Deerfield. This nation also suffered by the fatal epidemic in an equal or greater degree than the Pawtuckets. The principal person of this confederacy, as found by the English, was the squaw sachem or "Massachusetts Queen." She was the widow of a powerful chief who died in 1619. The royal residence, a wigwam on a platform, was visited in 1621 by a party of the pilgrims from Plymouth, and is supposed to have been located on a hill in Milton. The good soil, the fine harbors and the picturesque islands at their entrance, made the pilgrims regret that they had not settled in this territory, which now contains the capital of New England, and the most beautifully cultured grounds in America.

1621. Visited by the pilgrims.

The Narragansetts held their chief seat and the residence of their grand sachem on the island of Canonicut, in the bay which still bears their name. Westerly, they extended to within four or five miles of the Paucatuck river, where their territories met those of the Pequods. On the east they joined the Pokanokets. By the epidemical disease their number of warriors had been diminished from five to one thousand. Their country was well adapted to the Indian mode of life. Alternate woods and waters afforded plenty of game and fish, and allowed them their favorite mode of travelling, by the canoe. Possessing, in a greater degree than many of the other tribes, the means of happiness, they appeared less ferocious in their character.

The Narragansetts.

Their beautiful location.

Their aged sachem Canonicus, the benefactor of Rhode Island, was, in one respect, a personage of greater dignity than any other among the savages, being the only Indian chief who had any claims to a pedigree. His grandfather, it was said, not being able to find equal matches for his only two children, a son and a daughter, married them together. From this couple sprung Canonicus, and also the father of the princely Miantonomoh. The latter was the associate of Canonicus, and the commander of his warriors.

Their great sachem, Canonicus.

The more barbarous Pequods occupied the eastern portion of Connecticut, their lands meeting those of the Narragansetts. The residence of their grand sachem, Sassacus, was on the heights of Groton, near the river then called the Pequod, since, the Thames. The Mohegans, under Uncas, whose seat was where Norwich now stands, were subject to the haughty chief of the Pequods; but they bore his yoke with impatience, and when he made war upon the whites, Uncas took part against him.

Pequods.

Sassacus.

The Indians of northern New England, under various names—often preserved in those of rivers and lakes, had yet the general appellation of Tarenteens or Abenakis. They stretched along the coast of Maine, and extended into New-Hampshire, and were peculiarly ruthless in character. Their bloody night attacks were long the terror of New England,

Abenakis.

CHAP. II.

particularly during their alliance with the French in Canada. Among the tribes of New Hampshire, the Pennicooks became noted, from their grand sachem Passaconaway, who was held in great fear on account of his supposed powers of sorcery.

Pennicooks.

The Iroquois, Mengwe or Mingoes, were found by their earliest discoverers, the pioneers of the settlements in Canada, inhabiting the shores of the St. Lawrence. At first they appear to have been less warlike than the confederacy by which they were surrounded, and by whom they were attacked. These tribes were called by the various appellations of Hurons, Wyandots, and Adarondacks. The Iroquois, pressed by them, receded from the banks of the St. Lawrence, and dividing into five tribes, the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas and Mohawks, they spread themselves by degrees east of Lake Erie, and south of Ontario, along the romantic waters of northern New York, to which they have left their bold and harmonious names.

Iroquois become the Five Nations.

Settle in northern New York.

Here they made a stand, and becoming the most fearless, subtle, and powerful of savages, they overcame the Hurons, fought the Delawares, put in fear all the surrounding tribes, and finally in the contests between France and England, they were courted by both parties as allies, and dreaded by both as foes. Of the Five Nations, the Mohawks were the most warlike. Their chief seat was at Johnstown, on the beautiful river which still bears their name. From this region they sent out their tribute gatherers far east, and south; and when among the more peaceful Indians on the Connecticut river, one or two of their old warriors appeared shouting, "we are come to suck your blood!" there was a fearful cry, "The Mohawks, the Mohawks!" and all fled, or submitted.

They become the most powerful of all the savage tribes.

Of the southern Indians, the most extensive and powerful confederacies were the Creeks, situated mostly in Georgia; the Cherokees in the mountainous region north and west; and the Choctaws and Chickasaws, nearer to the Mississippi.

Creeks, Cherokees, &c.

The Natchez have excited much interest on account of the difference of their language from that of the surrounding tribes. Their chief was called "the Great Sun;" and like the Peruvians, they had fire which they regarded as sacred, and perpetually watched. Natchez, on the Mississippi, marks their location.

Natchez.

The Shawanese, the native tribe of Tecumseh, once resided on the banks of the Suwaney river in Florida, and from thence migrated northward, first to Pennsylvania, and afterwards to Ohio.

Shawanese. Tecumseh.

PART I.

FROM 1492 TO 1643.

PERIOD I.

FROM

THE DISCOVERY OF } 1492 { AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.

TO

THE FIRST PATENT GRANTED BY AN ENGLISH SOVEREIGN TO } 1578. { LANDS IN AMERICA—GIVEN BY Q. ELIZABETH TO SIR H. GILBERT.

CHAPTER I.

First Discovery—Columbus, &c.

We have now taken a brief view of the country as occupied by its aboriginal proprietors. We are soon to behold it usurped by the sovereigns of Europe, from the mere circumstance, that vessels sailing under their protection discovered it.

Supposed right of discovery.

That human arrogance should ever have risen to such a pitch, is astonishing. There is, however, a consoling reflection. The hand of a wise Providence is, in these events, clearly discernible, overruling even the injustice of man to the fulfillment of its designs, for the progressive improvement of the world. To this benevolent intent, it was doubtless necessary that the western continent should, in the fullness of time, be discovered and settled by a civilized people; and these would not have braved the dangers of the ocean, and the hardships of a savage country, unless, from a previous belief, that they had a right to the territory which they should discover and settle.

New World not discovered by accident.

Many thousand years had elapsed since the creation of the world, and the inhabitants of the eastern hemisphere were yet ignorant, that, on the face of the planet which they inhabited, was another continent of nearly equal extent. Nor did they become acquainted with this fact by any fortunate accident; but they owed its proof to the penetration and persevering efforts of a man, as extraordinary, as the discovery which he made.

1437. Birth and rare talents of Columbus.

This was Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, born in 1437. In him were united a rare combination of extraordinary qualities. He possessed a teeming imagination, an ardent courage, a glowing zeal, and all those energetic impulses of the soul which lead to high achievement; and, with these noble qualities, he combined judgment the most grave and solid, prudence and patience the most steady and unoffending, piety the most devout, and, above all, the most untiring perseverance ever manifested by man.

The spirit of the times.

Science was beginning to arouse from the long slumber of the middle ages. The magnetic needle had been invented, and the mariner no longer kept cautiously along the shore; but trusting to this guide, he boldly steered his bark through trackless oceans, in search of unknown countries.

Columbus believes the earth is round, and expects to find the East Indies by sailing west.

Columbus had married the daughter of one of the Portuguese discoverers, then deceased; whose widow, finding with what avidity her son-in-law sought such sources of information, gave to him all the maps, charts, and nautical papers, which had belonged to her husband. Marco Polo, a Venetian, had travelled to the east, and returned with glowing descriptions of Cathay and the island of Cipango, called, generally, the East Indies, and now known to be China and Japan. The rotundity of the earth was a fact admitted by a few of the learned, and fully believed by Columbus, on the evidence of its figure, exhibited in eclipses of the moon. Hence, he believed that those rich countries, concerning which Marco Polo had inflamed his imagination, might be found by sailing west;—and by a false estimate of their situation, he supposed they would be reached by sailing one half the real distance.

Offers his services to reigning sovereigns.

Columbus believed that great advantages would accrue to the nation who should patronize his undertaking; and, with filial respect, he first offered his services to his native state, but had the mortification to find them rejected. He then applied successively, to John II. of Portugal;—through his brother Bartholomew, to Henry VII. of England;—and personally to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. But none of these monarchs manifested, at first, sufficient reach of thought to comprehend his schemes, or generosity to encourage them.

They are accepted by Isabella.

At the court of Spain, he had spent two years in a succession of mortifying repulses; and at length, quite discouraged, he was preparing to follow his brother to England, when he was recalled by a mandate from Isabella. Of all the sovereigns of Europe, this woman was the only one whom he could move to friendship, and confidence in the success of his plan; and to the latest day of his life, he regarded her as the first and best of his friends.

She offers her jewels.

Not knowing how to raise the sum of money requisite for defraying the expenses of the voyage, the queen determined to sacrifice her jewels; but this was prevented by the extraordinary exertions of her ministers.

1492. Columbus discovers the New World.

Columbus made his first voyage, the most interesting of any in the annals of navigation, in 1492; and discovered the first found land of the New World, on the eleventh of October. It was an Island called by the natives Guanahani; but to which he piously gave the name of San Salvador, the Holy Saviour.

Sent home in chains.

In his third voyage he discovered the continent on the coast of South America, fourteen months after the Cabots had reached its shores in the north-east. By the ingratitude of

Ferdinand, he was, like a malefactor, sent home in chains, from the world which his genius had given to the Spanish Monarchy. Americus Vesputius, an ambitious Florentine, having followed him in the career of discovery, received from the public, an honor which belonged to Columbus, that of giving a name to the continent. In 1502, the great discoverer made his fourth and last voyage, when having returned to Spain, his patroness dead, his just claims disregarded, and himself neglected, he sank beneath his sufferings, and died, in the 69th year of his age. His history affords one proof among many, that the divine plan of retributive justice is not fully carried out here, but is to be completed hereafter.

Unjustly deprived of the honor of naming the country.

He dies at Valladolid in Spain. 1506.

Other individuals now became desirous to share with Columbus the honor, and other nations to divide with Spain the profit of the great discovery. Many attempts were made to show that the country had been previously discovered. The Welsh brought forward the story of Madoc, son of Owen Gwyneth, who, in the twelfth century, had sailed west, discovered a country, and afterwards conducted a colony thither, which was heard of no more. If this story be true, there exists no proof that the region found was America.

Twelfth century. Welsh story of Madoc.

The Norwegians discovered Iceland and Greenland, during the ninth century, and there established colonies. Biorn, or Biron, an Icelander, in a voyage to Greenland, during the eleventh century, was driven south-west in a storm, and found a region which, from its great number of vines, he called Vineland; but here, also, proof fails, that the place found had its locality on the American coast.

Norwegian claims on account of Vineland.

CHAPTER II.

English Discoveries—French.

The principal European nations who first discovered and colonized our country, are,

I. The English,
II. The French,
III. The Spanish,
IV. The Dutch.

It was under the reign of the politic, though cruel Henry VII. of England, that the shores of the United States were discovered. The names of the Cabots, should be remembered by American citizens, with that of Columbus; for they equally form connecting links between our history and that of Europe. John Cabot, a native of Venice, had, with his family, settled in England. He and his renowned son, Sebastian, were men of great learning, enterprise, and ability. By a commission of Henry VII., dated March 5th, 1496, (the oldest American

John and Sebastian Cabot 1496. Receive a commission from Henry VII.

state paper of England,) they had authority to discover any heathen countries not before known to Christians. They, defraying the expenses of the voyage, were to possess these countries as the king's lieutenants, paying him one-fifth of all gains.

Cabots discover the Continent. 1497.

They sailed from England in May, 1497, and in June, discovered the Island of Newfoundland, which they called Prima Vista. Steering northward, they made the first discovery of the continent, on the coast of Labrador, in latitude about 55°. On their return they pursued a southerly direction to an uncertain distance.

Sebastian Cabot the supposed discoverer of our coast. 1498.

Sebastian Cabot sailed a second time,—reached Labrador in latitude 58°, thence turning southerly, he became the discoverer of the coast of the United States; along which, he proceeded as far as to the southern latitude of Maryland. It is much to be regretted that so few particulars remain on record, of these two voyages, which form so fundamental a portion of our history.

Francis I. sends out Verrazani. 1524.

Smitten by the common passion of the sovereigns of Europe, for American discovery, Francis I. of France turned aside alike from his elegant and his warlike pursuits, and one year before his defeat at Pavia, he found for his service another Italian discoverer. This was John Verrazani, a Florentine, who reached the continent in the latitude of Wilmington, North Carolina. He then sailed fifty leagues south, but finding no convenient harbor, he returned and cast anchor; being the first European who had afforded the astonished natives the spectacle of the white race. They were received with rude, but fearless hospitality. The color of the Indians, the French compared to that of the Saracens. They looked with wonder upon their wild costume, made of the skins of animals, and set off by necklaces of coral and garlands of feathers. As they again sailed northward along the coast, their senses were regaled by the verdure of the forests, and the perfume of the flowers which they scented from the shores.

His description of the natives on the coast of North Carolina.

Visits the harbor of Newport.

At a fine harbor, supposed to be that of Newport in Rhode Island, Verrazani remained fifteen days, and there found "the goodliest people he had seen." From thence he followed the north-eastern shore of New England, finding the inhabitants jealous and hostile. From the peninsula of Nova Scotia, he returned to France, and wrote a narrative of his voyage, which is the earliest original account of the coast of the United States.

1534. James Cartier discovers the gulf of St. Lawrence.

James Cartier was, however, the mariner to whose discoveries the French trace the extensive empire which they possessed in North America. Cartier, after a prosperous voyage of twenty days, made Cape Bonavista, the most easterly point of Newfoundland. Sailing around the north-eastern extremity of the island, he encountered severe weather and icy seas. Then stretching to the south-west, he discovered, on St. Lawrence's day, the noble gulf which bears the name of that

saint. In July, he entered a bay which, from the heats of the rapidly changing season, he named Des Chaleurs. Coasting thence to the small bay of Gaspé, he there landed and reared a cross, upon which he hung a shield bearing the arms of France, in token that the country was thenceforth a part of its domain. Boisterous weather soon obliged him to return.

1535.

Discovers St. Lawrence river.

In 1535, he sailed on a second voyage, entered the gulf of St. Lawrence, proceeded up the river, to which he gave the same name, and anchored at an island, which, abounding in grapes, he named Bacchus Isle, now the Isle of Orleans. He continued his voyage to the island of Hochelaga; when mounting on an eminence where his spirit was gladdened by the actual view of a beautiful region, he had before seen in vision, he gave it the name of Mont Real. It was then the resort of native tribes, whose language proved them to be Hurons.

Builds a fort on Isle Bacchus.

He returned to isle Bacchus, built a fort, and there suffered not only the unwonted rigors of winter, but the attacks of the scurvy, a terrible malady, to which many of his company fell victims. He returned in the spring with dreary accounts of the country, which, however, he named New France. It was also called Canada, but at what time, or whether from any significancy in the word, is not known.

The lord of Roberval made viceroy of N. France.

France now possessed a country in the New World, through which flowed a river, more majestic than any in Europe. To hold sway over so extensive a region, though a wilderness, seemed to Francis De La Roque, of Roberval, more honorable than to govern a small and cultured domain in Picardy; and he obtained from the king full authority to rule, as viceroy, the vast territory around the Bay and river of St. Lawrence. Cartier was necessary to him, and received the title of chief pilot and captain-general of the enterprise. The prisons were thrown open to find persons willing to become their colonists.

May, **1541.**

Cartier builds a fort near the site of Quebec.

Nothing good could be expected from such beginnings. Cartier sailed up the St. Lawrence, built a fort near the site of Quebec, and there spent a winter, in which he had occasion to hang one of his company, put several in irons, and "whip divers—women as well as men." In the spring he took them back to France, just as Roberval arrived with supplies and fresh emigrants. By him, however, nothing permanent was effected; and after a year, he abandoned his viceroyalty, and, cured, at least for a time, of his inordinate ambition, he returned to Picardy.

1562.

Catharine de Medicis. Coligni.

France was now approaching the terrible crisis of the massacre of St. Bartholomew. The feeble Charles IX. was the nominal sovereign, while his perfidious mother, Catharine De Medicis, possessed the real authority. Coligni, the distinguished high admiral of the realm, was the friend of the Huguenots, a name given to the French Protestants. These were objects of hatred and fear to the monarchs; and when a project was formed by the admiral to plant with them a colony in

Coligni sends out a colony of French Protestants under Ribault.

1564.

America, it found ready favor. He therefore sent out, under the command of John Ribault, distinguished as a brave and pious protestant, two ships laden with conscientious Huguenots, many of whom were of the best families in France. They made land in the delightful clime of St. Augustine; and on the first of May discovered the St. John, which they called the river of May. Sailing along the coast north-easterly, they at length fixed on Port Royal entrance. There they built a fort, and in honor of the king of France, called it Carolina, a name which is preserved in the appellation of two of our States. Ribault left there a colony, and returned to France.

They are carried to England.

The commander of the fort provoked a mutiny, and was slain. The colonists longed for home. They put to sea without suitable provisions, and, forlorn and famishing, were found by a British vessel and carried to England.

1566.

A second French colony build fort Carolina in Florida.

The persevering Coligni soon after sent out another colony under Laudonniere, a seaman of worth and intelligence. Upon the banks of the river of May, with psalms of thanksgiving, they made their dwelling-place and erected another fort, called also Carolina. The next year Ribault arrived with vessels containing emigrants and supplies; and taking the command, the colony seemed happily planted.

CHAPTER III.

Spanish Discoveries—Adventures and Cruelties.—St. Augustine, the first permanent settlement in the United States.

To bring together the discoveries of the same nation, we go back fifty years in the order of time.

Knowledge diminishes the marvellous.

It is impossible at this day to conceive how much our knowledge of the geography of the earth has diminished the marvellous, so rife in the times of which we treat. Wonderful discoveries were continually expected, for such had already been made, and human hope is ever in advance of reality.

Ponce de Leon seeks the fountain of life.

1512.

John Ponce de Leon, a Spanish soldier who had once voyaged with Columbus, had received an impression common in those times, that there existed in the New World a fountain whose waters had power to arrest disease, and give immortal youth. The aged Ponce set forth to seek it, and to conquer a kingdom. He searched among the Bahama Islands, then steered to the north-west. On Easter Sunday, called by the Spaniards Pascua Florida, and a little north of the latitude of St. Augustine, he discovered what he deemed a land of flowers, so brilliant were the forest trees. The fountain of life was not there; but Ponce took possession of the country in the name of the Spanish king, and called it Florida

discovers Florida.

The part of South Carolina in the vicinity of the Combabee river, was soon after visited by a Spaniard, Vasquez De Ayllon. The country was named Chicora, and the river, the Jordan. De Ayllon had two ships. He invited the natives to visit them, and while the unsuspecting throngs stood upon his deck, he hoisted sail, and in a moment they became miserable slaves, torn from their families, and condemned to ceaseless toil. De Ayllon obtained afterwards a commission to conquer the country, but the hostility of the natives could not be overcome, and numbers of Spaniards perished in the fruitless attempt.

1520. Wickedness of Vasquez de Ayllon.

By an unsuccessful effort of the Spaniards under the adventurer Narvaez, to conquer Florida, and the adjoining country, an army of three hundred Spanish, partly mounted cavaliers, wasted away till but four or five returned; and those not until after incredible wanderings and hardships.

1528. Unsuccessful attempt of Narvaez.

They however insisted that Florida was the richest country in the world; and Ferdinand De Soto, already famous as the companion of Pizarro, the cruel conqueror of Peru, and ambitious to be in conquest equally great, listening to the marvellous tales of the wanderers, obtained a commission from Charles V. to conquer Florida at his own cost. His reputation gave him followers; and with high hopes he sailed to Cuba, of which he had been made governor; and there adding to his armament, he landed in 1539 at Espirito Santo in Florida, with six hundred soldiers; an army greater and better appointed than that with which Cortez conquered Mexico. He expected to find mines and cities of gold; and being from time to time deluded by the natives, he pursued these shadows, which ever fled as he approached. He went north, crossed the Alleghany mountains, then marched southerly to Mobile, where he fought a bloody battle with the people of a walled city containing several thousand inhabitants. At Pensacola he met ships from Cuba, with supplies for his exhausted army; and too proud to be wise, he still pursued a phantom, rather than retrace a false step.

De Soto aids in the conquest of Peru.

1539. Lands in Florida with 600 men.

The hope of the precious metals still lured him on, and he now bent his course to the north-west, and in latitude 34° discovered the majestic Mississippi. He continued west until he reached the Wachita, when, becoming at length dispirited, he turned homewards his course, descended that stream to its junction with the Red river, and thence down its current; and where the Red mingles its waters with the Mississippi, there he died; and his body, inclosed in a hollow oak, was committed to the broad stream, from the discovery of which he derives his unenviable fame.

April 25th, **1541.** He discovers the Mississippi.

May 21, **1542.** He dies.

The officer who succeeded him in command, lost no time in conducting the poor remains of the army down the Mississippi, and thence to Cuba; where, no longer perpetually

Remnant of his army go to Cuba.

watched by concealed savage foes, he might once more "sleep out his full sleep."

The cruel Melendez sent from Spain.

When the news reached Spain that Florida had been colonized by French Huguenots, Philip II. found in Pedro Melendez de Aviles a fit agent of his own bigoted spirit; and he gave him the double commission to take possession of that country, and to destroy the heretics. More than five hundred persons accompanied Melendez, among whom were men with their families, soldiers, mechanics and priests. Coming upon the coast south of the settlement, he discovered the harbor of St. Augustine on the day of that saint; and here was now laid the foundation of the city of that name, the oldest by more than forty years, of any within the limits of our republic.

Sept. 8, 1565. He founds St. Augustine.

The French had received from Melendez the terrible notice, that he had come to destroy every person who was not a catholic. Ribault, supposing that the Spaniards would make the attack by sea, embarked to meet them. A tremendous storm drove him from his track, and shipwrecked his whole fleet. The Spaniards, meantime, crossed the forest and attacked by land. Unprepared and surprised, the defenseless fort soon surrendered; when cruel bigotry performed her murderous work upon all,—without distinction of age or sex. The shipwrecked mariners were afterwards found, feeble and exhausted upon the shore. Melendez invited them to come to him and trust to his compassion; they came—and he slew them!

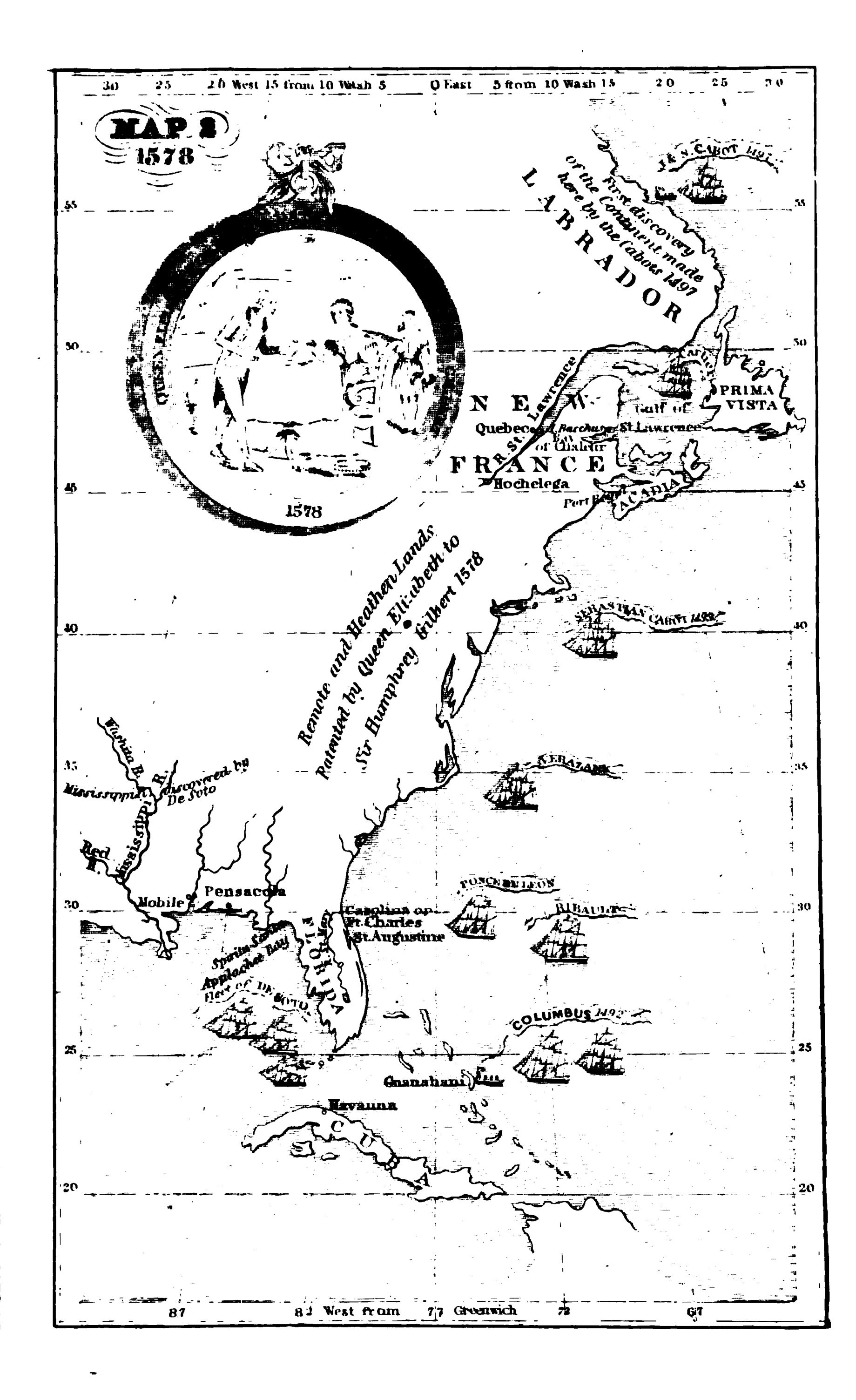
Sept. 21, He destroys fort Carolina and 900 Huguenots.

When the news of this massacre crossed the Atlantic, a cry of vengeance reached the French monarch, for the blood of nine hundred of his slaughtered subjects, but it was unheeded. That a government which seven years afterwards executed, on St. Bartholomew's day, the most horrible of massacres, should have omitted to notice this base destruction of those whom they wished to annihilate, is not surprising. Yet so deep was the feeling among the people of France, that three years afterwards, individuals headed by the gallant chevalier Gouges, made a descent on the settlement of Florida, and put to death two hundred Spaniards.

August 22, 1567. The massacre avenged by the chevalier Gouges.

The Spanish colony was thus checked, but it was not destroyed; and it proved to be the first permanent settlement made by Europeans upon the shores of our republic.

First colony within the U. S.



MAP 2
1578
LABRADOR
First discovery of the Continent made here by the Cabots 1497
J. & S. CABOT 1497
NEW FRANCE
R. St. Lawrence
Quebec
Gulf of St. Lawrence
PRIMA VISTA
Hochelega
ACADIA
1578
Remote and Heathen Lands Patented by Queen Elizabeth to Sir Humphrey Gilbert 1578
Mississippi R.
De Soto
Red R.
Mobile
Pensacola
Appalachee Bay
Fleet of DE SOTO
FLORIDA
St. Augustine
COLUMBUS 1492
Guanahani
Havanna
CUBA
87
West from
Greenwich

PERIOD II.

FROM

PATENT GRANTED BY QUEEN ELIZ- { 1578, } ABETH TO SIR H. GILBERT.

TO

LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS { 1620. } AT NEW PLYMOUTH.

CHAPTER I.

Unsuccessful attempts of Gilbert, Raleigh, and others.

1578. Queen Elizabeth's patent to Gilbert.

The history of English colonization in America begins with two remarkable men, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, and his brother-in-law, Sir Walter Raleigh. The English monarchy claiming the country, in virtue of the discovery of Sebastian Cabot, Queen Elizabeth, the reigning sovereign, gave to Sir Humphrey Gilbert, in 1578, by an open or patent letter, "all such remote, heathen, and barbarous lands," as he should discover in North America, and of which he should take possession; these lands not having been before occupied by any other Christian power. She vested in him and his heirs the full right of property in the soil, and also the complete right of jurisdiction over those countries, and the seas adjoining them; declaring that all who should settle there should enjoy the privileges of free citizens and natives of England: and finally, she prohibited all persons from attempting to settle within two hundred leagues of any place which Sir Humphrey, or his associates, should have occupied for the space of six years. For these privileges, the patentee was to acknowledge the authority of the crown of England as supreme; and pay to the sovereign one fifth of all the gold and silver which should be obtained from these countries.

1579. to 1583. Gilbert's two voyages.

In the first attempt made by Gilbert to plant a colony, he put to sea, but was obliged to return. In the second, he reached St. John's, in Newfoundland, where he took possession of the country for his sovereign, by raising a pillar inscribed with the British arms. He next sought means to secure to the English the fisheries on the banks, which were now so valuable as to be contested by different European nations. From thence he sailed south-westerly, till he reached the latitude of the mouth of the Kennebec. Here the largest of his three vessels struck, and all her crew perished. Gilbert now finding it impossible to proceed, set his face towards England, keeping in the smallest of his remaining vessels, a barge of only ten tons; for his generous heart refused to put any to a

PART I. PERIOD II. CHAP. I

His disasters and death. 1583. Sept. 22.

peril he was himself unwilling to share. The passage was stormy, but his pious mind found comfort in the reflection which, as he sat reading in the stern of his barge, he uttered to his companions in the larger vessel; "we are as near heaven at sea, as on land;" and he might have added in the words of that book which was doubtless in his hand, "Ye shall seek me in the morning but I shall not be;" for in the night the lights of his little bark suddenly vanished, and he was heard of no more.

1584. Raleigh obtains a patent.

The bold and energetic Raleigh, who had in France been a pupil of Coligni, pursued with unabated ardor the great career, in which Gilbert had wasted his fortune, and lost his life. From his courtly demeanor, and brilliant genius, Sir Walter had made himself a favorite with the stately Queen; and he readily gained from her a patent, with privileges no less ample than those which she had granted to his brother.

He sends Amidas and Barlow.

Raleigh had learned from the unsuccessful emigrants of France, the superior mildness and fertility of the south; and thither he dispatched two vessels, under Philip Amidas, and Arthur Barlow. They approached the shore at Pamlico Sound, and according to their florid descriptions, were regaled with "the delicate smell of the flowers" far off at sea; and on landing in Ocracok or Roanoke Island, they found the grapes so abundant on the coast, that the surges of the sea often washed over them.

Beautiful example of native hospitality.

The natives were as kindly as their climate and soil. The king's son, Granganimo, came with fifty of his people, and received them with distinguished courtesy. He invited them to his dwelling at twenty miles distance on the coast; but when they went, it chanced he was not at home. His wife came out to meet them, and with a hospitality which no instance of civilized life can surpass, she ordered some of her people to draw their boat ashore to preserve it, and others to bring the Englishmen on their backs through the surf. Then conducting her guests to her home, she had a fire kindled, that they might dry their clothes, which were wet with rain; while in another room she spread a plentiful repast of fish, venison, esculent roots, melons and fruits. As they were eating, several Indians, armed with bows and arrows, entered. She chid them, and sent them away, lest her visiters should suffer from alarm.

Queen Elizabeth names Virginia.

When the navigators returned to England, and made to Elizabeth their report of this delightful region, she was induced to give it the name of Virginia, as a memorial that the happy discovery had been made under a Virgin queen. The name soon became general throughout the coast.

1585. Seven ships under Grenville.

Raleigh now found many adventurers ready to embark in his project; and in 1585, he fitted out a squadron of seven ships, under the command of Sir Richard Grenville, who followed the course of Amidas and Barlow, and touched at the

same islands; in one of which he cruelly burned a village, because he suspected an Indian of having stolen a silver cup. He then left a colony under Captain Lane, at the island of Roanoke. The colonists, reduced to great distress for want of provisions, the next year were carried to England by Sir Francis Drake, who was returning from a successful expedition against the Spaniards in the West Indies.

Colony at Roanoke under Lane.

Soon after their departure, they were sought by a ship which had been sent by Raleigh with supplies, and afterwards by Sir Richard Grenville. He not finding them, most unwisely left fifteen of his crew to keep possession of the island, and then returned to England. Of this small number nothing was afterwards heard. Probably they were destroyed by the injured and revengeful savages.

Fifteen men lost.

1587. 2d Roanoke colony.

In 1587, Raleigh again sent out a colony of one hundred and fifty adventurers to the same island, under Captain White, who, remaining but one month, returned to England to solicit supplies for the colony. Before he departed, his daughter, Mrs. Dare, gave birth to a female infant, the first child of English parents born in America. The infant was baptized by the name of Virginia.

Virginia Dare, first English child.

The attempts made by Raleigh for the relief of this colony were unremitted, but unsuccessful; for at this time the Span- Armada threatened to overwhelm England itself; and ·ee years elapsed before he could procure the means of sending Captain White to their relief. It was then too late. Not one remained; nor, though repeatedly sought, has any clue to their fate ever been found. Appalled and in danger of perishing himself, White returned, without leaving one English settler on the shores of America.

Raleigh's lost colony.

1589. Raleigh transfers his patent to the London Company.

In consequence of the unfortunate issue of these attempts, Raleigh was easily induced to assign his right of property, together with all the privileges contained in his patent, to a company of merchants in London. This company, satisfied with a paltry traffic with the natives, made no attempt to take possession of the country.

1602. Gosnold visits the New England coast.

In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold, with thirty-two men, sailed from Falmouth, and steering due west, he was the first English commander who reached the country by this shorter and more direct course. He approached the coast near Nahant, but failing to find a good harbor, he bore to the south, discovered and gave name to Cape Cod, which was the first ground in New England ever trod by Englishmen. Thence sailing round Nantucket, he discovered and named Martha's Vineyard, entered Buzzard's Bay, and finding a fertile island, he gave it, in honor of the Queen, the name of Elizabeth. Near its western shore, on an islet in a lake, he built a fort and storehouse, and prepared to leave there a small colony. But the natives became hostile, and his intended settlers would not remain. Having freighted his vessel, mostly with sassafras

Natives hostile.

root, then much esteemed in pharmacy, he hoisted sail and reached England with all his men, after a passage of five weeks, the shortest then known.

1603. Henry IV. of France grants Acadia.

France, wasted by the wars of the league, had now for fifty years neglected her claims to territory on the western continent. At length the commanding genius of Henry IV. awoke to feel the importance of the subject; and in 1603, by letters patent, he granted to the Sieur de Monts, the country called Acadia, extending from the 40th to the 46th degree of North latitude, with the sole jurisdiction. The next year De Monts sailed from France, taking Samuel Champlain as his pilot; and having doubled Cape Sable, he entered an extensive bay, which they called La Baye Francaise, (Bay of Fundy,) and on whose eastern side, he founded Port Royal. Proceeding to examine this bay, they discovered and named the rivers St. John and St. Croix, and sailed along the coast as far as Cape Cod.

De Monts accompanied by Champlain founds Port Royal, i. e. Annapolis.

1606. Establishment of the London Company, and Plymouth Company.

The English becoming alarmed at this encroachment on territory which they claimed, James I., the successor of Elizabeth, divided that portion of North America which lies between the 34th and 45th degree of North latitude into two districts nearly equal; granting the southern part, or first colony of Virginia, included between the 34th and 41st degrees, to a company of merchants called the London Company; and the northern or second colony of Virginia, included between the 38th and 45th degrees, to another corporation, called the Plymouth Company. The king authorized these companies to make settlements, provided they were not within one hundred miles of each other, and vested them with a right of land along the coast, fifty miles each way, and extending into the interior one hundred miles from the place of settlement.

The Plymouth company attempt a settlement at Kennebec.

The London and Plymouth companies prepared to take possession of the lands which had been assigned to them. The first vessel fitted out by the Plymouth Company, in 1606, was taken by the Spaniards. In 1607 they sent out Admiral Raleigh Gilbert, with a hundred planters, under Capt. George Popham, their president. They landed at the mouth of Kennebec river, where they built and fortified a storehouse; but in two or three months, the ships returned to England, leaving only forty-five men. The sufferings of the Sagadahoc colony, under Capt. Popham, were, through the winter, very severe. They lost their storehouse by fire, and their president by death, and the next year returned to England, considering the country "a cold, barren, mountainous desert," where, in the quaint language of that period, they declared, "they found nothing but extreme extremities." This was the first and only attempt to settle this part of the country, till 1620.

Thus, after a period of one hundred and ten years, from the time that Cabot discovered North America, and twenty-four years after Raleigh planted the first colony, there was not, in 1607, an Englishman settled in America.

CHAPTER II.

First settlement of Virginia.

PART I.
PERIOD. II.
CHAP. II.

1607.

IN 1607, the London Company sent out Captain Christopher Newport, with three ships and one hundred and five men, among whom was the navigator, Gosnold, and Captain John Smith, the Father of Virginia. He was already celebrated for his daring and chivalrous exploits, to which he was led by the love of adventure, and of glory; and by a desire to serve both God and man. In boyhood he fought for freedom in Holland; and thence travelled over France, Egypt and Italy. In Hungary he bravely met the Turks in battle, and was promoted to command. In presence of the ladies particularly, he ever showed himself a brave knight, and was often conqueror in single combats. He was repeatedly taken prisoner, and already, both in Turkey and in Russia, had been rescued from destruction by female benevolence.

Captain Smith.

The fleet sailed by the West Indies, and being driven, north of Roanoke by a storm, an accidental discovery was thus made of the entrance of the Chesapeake bay, the boundaries of which were now named Capes Charles and Henry, in honor of the king's sons.

Chesapeake bay discovered.

Stretching at once into the noble bay, the adventurers sailed up the Powhatan river, to which they gave the name of the James, and upon its banks, fifty miles from its mouth, they fixed their residence, and raised a few huts. The place was called Jamestown, an appellation which it still retains; and though it has never risen to wealth or distinction, and is now only discernible by a few falling ruins, still it was the first of the English settlements in the New World; and hence has all the honor among the American states, that antiquity can confer.

Settlement at Jamestown. May 13th.

The colony was under charter government, the instrument having been drawn up by the pedantic James himself. It did not give to the proprietors the power to govern the people who should settle the country, but the right of jurisdiction was reserved to the king. To the colonies no assurance was given, but the vague promise, that they should continue to be Englishmen. Religion was established by law, according to the forms and doctrines of the church of England. There was, for the present, no division of property; and, for five years, all labor was to be for the benefit of the joint stock.

Bad form of government.

The government was to be administered by a council nominated by the king, but to reside in the colony. As soon as the emigrants landed, the king's commission, according to his direction, was opened; the council was organized, and a governor elected. They chose Edward Wingfield, their

Wingfield President.

PART I. PERIOD II. CHAP. II.

1607.

worst man; while Smith, their best, was, from envy, to be excluded even from a seat in the council, although he was one whom the king had nominated. Gathering misfortunes however, and the kindly influence of their good clergyman, Robert Hunt, reversed this sentence; and made the colonists glad to submit to the man, whose talents and zeal for the settlement marked him as their natural head.

Succeeded by Smith.

The neighboring Indians soon annoyed the colony by their petty hostilities. Their provisions failed, and the scanty allowance to which they were reduced, as well as the influence of a climate to which they were not accustomed, gave rise to disease, so that the number of the colonists rapidly diminished. Sometimes four or five died in a day, and there was not enough of the well to give decent burial to the dead. Fifty perished before winter, among whom was the excellent Gosnold. The energy and cheerful activity of Smith threw the only light which glanced upon the dark picture. He so managed as to awe the natives, and at the same time to conciliate and obtain from them supplies of food; while, among the emigrants, he encouraged the faint-hearted, and put in fear the rebellious.

Aug. 22. Death of Gosnold.

Winter at length came, and with it, relief from diseases of climate, and plentiful supplies of wild fowl and game.

The London company, with an ignorance of geography, which even then was surprising, had given directions that some of the streams flowing from the north-west should be followed up in order to find a passage to the South Sea. Smith was superior to the company in intelligence, but he knew the duties of a subordinate, and he therefore prepared to explore the head waters of the Chickahominy, which answered as nearly as possible to their description.

Smith sets out to explore.

1607-8.

Powhatan, the chief or emperor of the savage confederacy inhabiting or wandering about the waters of the James and its tributaries, had been visited by the colonists early after their arrival. His imperial residence consisted of twelve wigwams near the site of Richmond. Next to him in power was his brother, Opechacanough, who was chief of the Pamunkies on the Chickahominy. Smith embarked in a barge on that river, and when he had ascended as far as possible in this manner, he left it, with the order that his party should not land till his return; and with four attendants he pursued his objects twenty miles farther up the river. The Indians had watched his movements, and when the men left in the barge, disobeying his order, had landed, they fell upon them, took them prisoners, and obliged them to discover the track of their captain. He, in pursuit of game, soon found himself hunted by swarms of savage archers. In this extremity he bound to his breast, as a shield, an Indian youth who was with him; and then shot three Indians, wounded others, and kept the whole party at bay. Attempting to re-

Powhatan.

Indians capture Smith.

treat to his canoe while yet watching his foe, suddenly he sank to his middle in an oozy creek. The savages dared not even then touch him, till, perishing with cold, he laid down his arms and surrendered.

They carried him to a fire, near which some of his men had been killed. By his Indian guide and interpreter he then called for their chief. Opechacanough appeared, and Smith politely presented to him his pocket compass. The Indians were confounded at the motions of the fly-needle, which, on account of the mysterious glass, they could see, but could not touch. He told them wonderful stories of its virtues, and proceeded, as he himself relates, "by the globe-like figure of that jewel, to instruct them, concerning the roundness of the earth, and how the sun did chase the night round about the world continually," by which his auditors were filled with profound amazement.

His address.

Their minds seemed to labor with the greatness of the thought, that a being so superior was in their power; and they vacillated in their opinion whether or not it was best to put him to death; and as often changed their conduct. They took him to Powhatan, thence led him round from one wondering tribe to another, until, at the residence of Opechacanough, these superstitious dwellers of the forest employed their sorcerers or powows for three days to practice incantations, in order to learn, from the invisible world, whether their prisoner wished them well or ill.

His treatment by the savages.

The decision of his fate was finally referred to Powhatan. At his residence that majestic savage received him in state, but he condemned him to die. His warriors were around, and his women sitting near him. All were painted with gaudy colors and adorned with feathers. The queen of Apamattuck brought the captive water to wash in, and another Indian queen, feathers to serve as a towel. Others gave him food, as for a feast. Then two stones were brought and laid before the chief, and two savages stood with uplifted war-clubs. Smith was dragged to the spot, and his head placed upon the stones. Pochahontas, his daughter, of tender age, rushed forward, and with cries and tears begged of Powhatan to spare him. He refused. The devoted girl then ran and knelt beside the victim, and laid her young head upon his. Then the stern savage relented, and Smith was saved.

His rescue by Pochahontas.

Smith having now learned much of the Indians, their country, modes of warfare, dispositions and language; and having also by his great address and honorable bearing, won their affection and confidence, his captivity proved, under divine Providence, a means of establishing the colony. During his absence, however, there had been disorder and misrule; and when he returned to Jamestown he found only thirty-eight persons remaining. The spirits of the people were broken; and all, filled with despondency, were anxious to

1608.

State of the colony.

leave a country so inhospitable. He prevailed upon them, however, partly by force and partly by persuasion, to remain till the next year, when Newport arriving from England with some supplies and one hundred and twenty emigrants, hope again revived.

1608.

Smith explores the shores of the Chesapeake.

During the year 1608, Captain Smith explored the Chesapeake bay to its head, discovered its fine streams, and gained new information concerning the native productions and inhabitants of the country. In an excursion which he made up the Rappahannock, he had a skirmish with the Mannahoacks, a tribe descended from the Delawares, and took prisoner a brother of one of their chiefs. From him he first heard of the Iroquois, who, the Indian told him, "dwelt on a great water to the north, had a great many boats, and so many men that they waged war with all the rest of the world."

His decision and wisdom.

Immediately on his return he was chosen president of the council. He found the recent emigrants "goldsmiths and gentlemen." But he promptly gave them their choice, to labor for six hours a day, or have nothing to eat. He represented to the council in England that they should send laborers; that the search of gold should be abandoned, and that "nothing should be expected except by labor."

CHAPTER III.

Early Settlement of Virginia—continued.

New form of government.

The London Company had gradually become enlarged by accessions of men of influence, some of whom were of the nobility and gentry. Without at all consulting the wishes, and against the interests of the colony, they now obtained a new charter, by which they were to hold the lands in fee, and all the powers of government formerly reserved to the crown were hereafter to vest in the company. The council in England, chosen by the stockholders, was to appoint a governor, who was to rule the colonists with absolute sway. The company now collected five hundred adventurers, many of whom were men of desperate fortunes and abandoned characters. They appointed as governor for life the excellent Lord Delaware, and freighted with the emigrants nine ships, of which Capt. Newport was to take the command. As Lord Delaware was not ready to embark with the fleet, the admiral, with Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers, were empowered to govern the colony until his arrival. Newport took into his own ship Gates and Somers. Arriving at the Bermudas, a terrible storm separated the fleet. The admiral's vessel was stranded on the rocky shores of Bermuda, a small

1609.

Lord Delaware.

1609.

ketch perished, and only seven of the vessels reached Jamestown.

Smith now found himself without authority; and the three persons who alone possessed it, were perhaps in the depths of the ocean. His genius, however, sustained him, and he compelled to submission the disorderly gallants who had just arrived.

Pocahontas repeatedly saved the life of Smith, and preserved this earliest English settlement from destruction. In the various fortunes of the colony, she was its unchanging friend, often coming with her attendants to bring baskets of provisions in times of scarcity, and sometimes giving notice of hostile designs. On one occasion, when Captain Smith, with a considerable escort, had visited her father, and was to be feasted, she came privately, and told him that a great number of Indians would be sent to bring in his food, and would, if possible, such was the plot, murder him and his company at table, with their own arms. Otherwise it was intended to kill them in the night. Smith was penetrated with gratitude, that she had again saved him, and wished to give her some testimonial. She turned away with tears, saying it would but betray her, and she was suspected already.

Generous devotion of Pocahontas.

At length, a calamity deprived the colony of its father. An accidental explosion of gunpowder so injured Smith, that no medical skill there, was adequate to the treatment of his case; and delegating his authority to George Percy, brother to the Earl of Northumberland, he returned to England. After his departure, all subordination and industry ceased among the colonists. The Indians, ever on the watch, harassed them with hostilities, and withheld their customary supplies. Their stores were soon exhausted. The domestic animals, which had been sent to breed in the country, were taken and devoured: and, in the extremity of their distress, they even perpetrated, in two instances, the act of feeding on human flesh. Smith left four hundred and ninety persons. In six months, anarchy and vice had reduced the number to sixty, and those so feeble and forlorn, that in ten days more they must all have perished.

Smith leaves Virginia.

Great scarcity and distress.

In the meantime Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on the rocks of Bermuda, had found there the means to construct a vessel; and now approaching Jamestown, they anticipated a happy meeting with their friends. How were their hearts smitten as they beheld the meagre spectres of famine and death which met them. They were obliged to yield to the universal cry, desert the settlement and re-embark with the whole colony. They departed in the morning, and falling down the stream with the tide, they descry, at evening, near the river's mouth, three ships; and Lord Delaware, their paternal governor, arrives, supplies their wants, and turns their hearts to the pious and

Departure of the colony.

June, 1610. its return.

consoling thought that God had delivered them. And then this residue returned, a chastened and a better people. Thus Providence prevented a dissolute band from becoming the founders of our first settled state; and gave a better seed.

The colony again became comparatively flourishing, but in March, 1611, the governor's health unfortunately declined, and he was obliged to leave the country. On the departure of Lord Delaware, Percy was again at the head of the administration, until the arrival of Sir Thomas Dale, in May. Dale had received from the company, power to rule with martial law, which he exercised, but with such moderation, that good order and industry prevailed. The state of the colony, however, was not flourishing, and Dale immediately wrote to England for aid. In less than four months, Sir Thomas Gates arrived, with six ships and three hundred emigrants.

1611. May 10. Sir Thomas Dale arrives.

After Captain Smith's departure, Captain Argall, at the head of a foraging party, learned that Pocahontas was for a season with the family of Japazaws, the chief of the Potomacs. Him, Argall bribed, with a kettle of shining copper, to betray the Indian princess, whom for interested motives he wished to make prisoner. Japazaws concerted with his wife, that she should appear to be seized with an invincible desire to visit Argall's vessel lying in the river. He was to affect anger, and threaten, but at length so far to relent, as to engage to take her to the vessel, if her friend Pocahontas would accompany her. The plot succeeded, and thus the English, by the goodness of her heart, ensnared and made prisoner their benefactress.

Pocahontas is made prisoner.

When she was taken to Jamestown, an unceremonious message was sent to Powhatan, that he must ransom her with certain men and articles, which he was accused with having taken. To this the dignified old chieftain made no reply for three months. In the meantime an English youth of the colony, John Rolfe, wooed the Indian maiden, and obtained her consent to marriage. All were pleased, and the connexion proved a bond of union during the life of Powhatan.

1613. She marries Rolfe.

Pocahontas went with her husband to England, where she received Christian baptism, under the name of Rebecca. Special attention was paid her by the king and queen, at the instigation of Smith. She had been told that he was dead, and when he came to see her she turned away, and for a time could not or would not speak. He kindly soothed her, and at length she addressed him as her father, and endearingly recalled the scenes of their early acquaintance. Having given birth to a son, she was about to return, when she sickened and died, at the age of twenty-two. Her son survived and reared an offspring, which being perpetuated in some of the best families of Virginia, they boast their descent from one who ranks high, not merely on the roll of savages and of women, but of humanity itself.

1616. Baptism of Pocahontas.

1617. Argall's conduct.

In 1617, Captain Argall was made acting governor of Virginia. Lord Delaware having attempted to reach the settlement, died on the passage. Argall governed with so much rigor as to excite universal discontent, and the first complaint of mal-administration ever sent to England, was by a man whom he had unjustly condemned. Not only did he play the tyrant over the colonists, but he who had not hesitated to make Pocahontas prisoner for the advantage of the company, did not now scruple to cheat them for his own. The rumor of his oppressions made emigration unpopular. By the influence of the good Sir Edwin Sandys, the benevolent Yeardly was sent over to take his place.

1619. The first general assembly in Virginia.

The same year, Governor Yeardly called the first general assembly which was held in Virginia, consisting of representatives, chosen from among the people, who were to act conjointly with the governor and council appointed by the company, in all matters of importance. The colonists, who, till then, had been nothing more than the servants of the company, were thus raised to the distinction and privileges of freemen.

In this assembly, which met at Jamestown, eleven boroughs were each represented by two burgesses. For this cheering dawn of civil liberty, the colonists expressed to the company "the greatest possible thanks," and forthwith "fell to building houses and planting corn."

Young women sent as wives.

In order to attach the colonists more entirely to their new settlements, about this time there was sent out, by the advice of Sandys, a considerable number of young women of humble birth, but of unexceptionable character, who were sold to the young planters as wives. The price was at first one hundred, and afterwards, one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. To fail of discharging debts so incurred, was esteemed particularly dishonorable.

1620. Convicts sent to the colony.

About this time were introduced also into the colony, by order of King James, many idle and dissolute persons, then in custody for their offences. They were dispersed through the colony, and employed as laborers.

Slavery commences.

A Dutch ship from Africa arriving at Jamestown, a part of her cargo of negroes was purchased by the colony. This is the commencement of negro slavery in the United States.

CHAPTER IV.

Discovery of the Hudson.—Smith and Argall at the North.

1609

In 1609, occurred the discovery of the Hudson river, which has proved the finest for navigation of any in republican America; and under circumstances which, giving to two nations

PART I.
PERIOD II.
CHAP. IV.

claims to its waters, and their adjoining country, became the occasion of subsequent wars. Henry Hudson, the discoverer, was an Englishman by birth, but was in the service of the Dutch East India Company. The next year, the Dutch sent ships to this river, to open a trade with the natives, but the Court of England disowned their claim to the country. The Dutch, however, followed up their good fortune, and soon erected forts Orange and Manhattan, near the sites of Albany and New York.

In 1608, Champlain, under De Monts, conducted a colony to America, and founded Quebec. Wishing to secure the friendship of the adjacent natives, he consented, the next year, to accompany them on an expedition against the Iroquois, with whom they were at war. They entered upon the lake which now bears, in honor of its discoverer, the name of Champlain, and traversed it until they approached its junction with Lake St. Sacrament, now Lake George. Here, in the vicinity of Ticonderoga, a bloody engagement took place, in which Champlain and his allies were victorious.

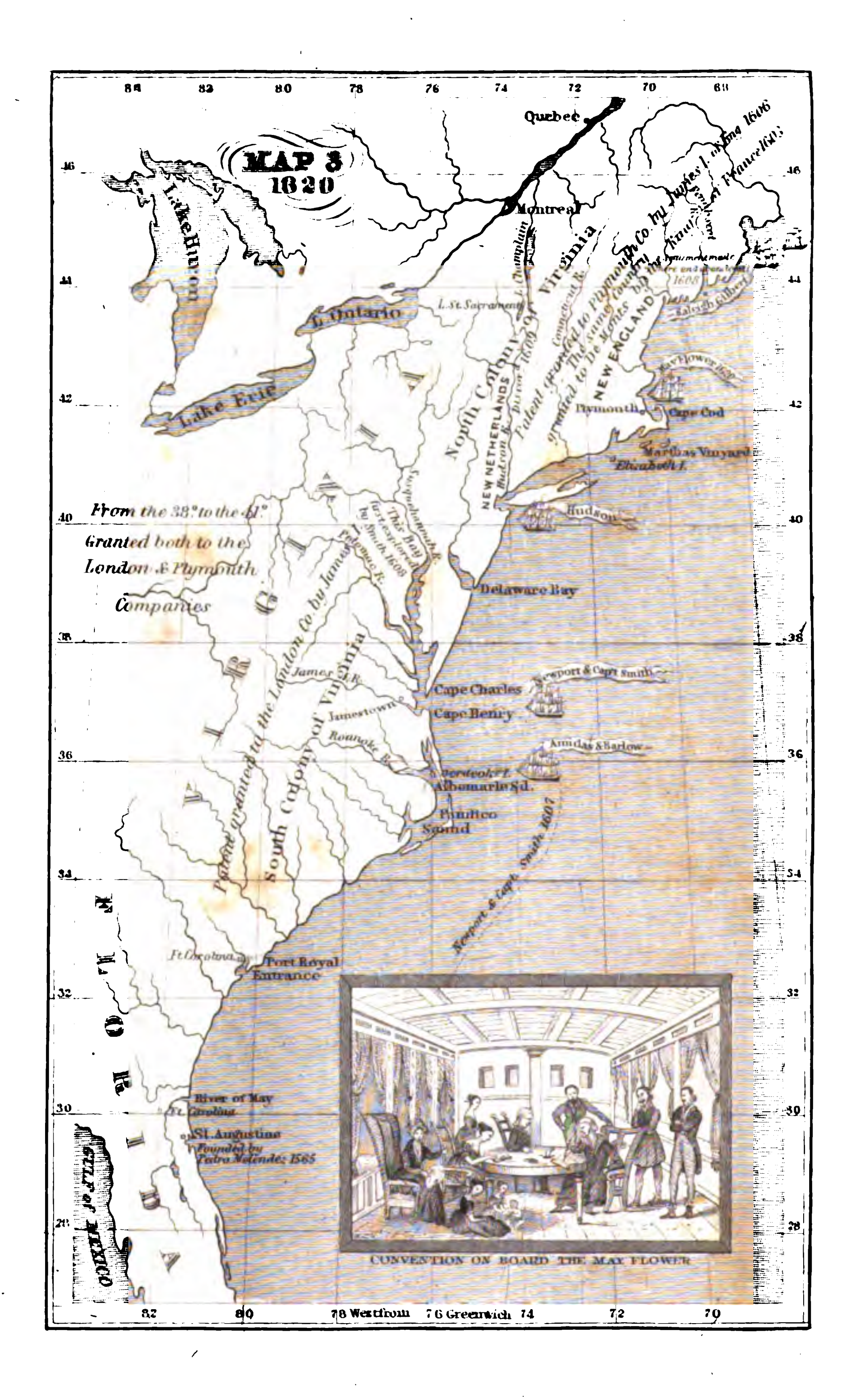
1609. Discovers Lake Champlain.

The Plymouth Company, after the Sagadahoc settlement was relinquished, attempted nothing further for some time, except a few fishing voyages to Cape Cod, or a small traffic with the natives for oil and peltry. At length Captain Smith, after his return from Virginia, being desirous to explore the north-eastern coast, engaged himself as a partner, with four other private adventurers, who fitted out a trading squadron of two ships. Smith sailed in the largest, and the other was commanded by Captain Hunt, before mentioned. He, while Smith was exploring the coast, made a descent upon the country of the Pokanokets, and kidnapped more than twenty of the subjects of Massasoit. Smith accurately examined the shore, with its bays and rivers, from the mouth of the Penobscot to Cape Cod, and having drawn a map, he laid it, on his return, before Prince Charles, with a hint, that so beautiful and excellent a country deserved to bear an honorable name. The Prince listened to his suggestion, and declared that it should thereafter be called New England.

1614. Smith in N. England.

The French having established themselves within the limits of the northern colony of Virginia, Captain Argall was sent from Jamestown to dispossess them. He destroyed Port Royal, and all the French settlements in Acadia. On his return he visited the Dutch at Manhattan, and demanded possession of the country, in the name of the British sovereign. The Dutch traders made no scruple to acknowledge the supremacy of King James, and, under him, that of the governor of Virginia.

Argall subdues the French and Dutch.



CONVENTION ON BOARD THE MAY FLOWER

PERIOD III.

FROM

THE LANDING } 1620 { OF THE PILGRIMS,

TO

THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE CONFEDERACY, } 1643. { BY THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

CHAPTER I.

Ancient Civilization—Christianity—Puritanism—Robinson and his Church.

We have now arrived at a period in our history, when the Pilgrim Fathers of New England, moved by religious devotion, and sustained by Providence, planted themselves upon the desert shores of Massachusetts.

Ancient civilization.

At a period when ancient civilization had attained its full growth, Christianity arose, and introduced a moral element wholly at variance with its principles. For while the Emperor of Rome, its head, was dwelling in splendid palaces, commanding armies, avenging himself of his foes, and extending his bloody conquests over the unoffending, Immanuel, with the moral glory of divine, but suffering virtue, made his advent in a manger, and his exit on a cross.

Christianity

A. D. 2d, 3d, and 4th centuries.

As long as the followers of Christ were a persecuted and afflicted band, they preserved his religion in its purity. But when an attempt was made to blend the heavenly with the human principle,—and the Roman Constantine placed Christianity upon an earthly throne, then its primeval lustre became obscured. After this period, ancient civilization was broken up. The barbarians of Sarmatia and Scandinavia came down upon the Roman empire, wrested it from its masters, and rent it into fragments. National authority was annihilated, and, in the anarchy that prevailed, brute force, the lowest of all appeals, stood chief umpire.

The feudal system.

The dark ages, from the 4th century to the 15th.

Then arose forms of political power, which, though bad, were yet improvements. The chieftain who had an organized band, perpetuated his military arrangements. He gave out his conquered lands to his great captains, and they divided them into lesser portions, to their own retainers. But all held their territories, on condition of military service. Thus central and southern Europe was owned by chiefs, whose power, nay, whose very existence, depended upon a state of war; and the blood of the people dyed the earth, as those steel-clad giants of the dark ages strode over its surface, crushing whatever came in their way.

The course of this feudal tyranny was arrested by another,

PART I.
PERIOD III.
CHAP. I.

which, injurious as it became, yet did service in its day. This was popery, which carried human authority to an extent altogether unexampled; for it assumed the power of God, and demanded the full obedience of the mental and moral, as well as the physical man. Secret, efficient, and unscrupulous in its measures, it awed to submission the proud and the violent; and the comparative calm of despotism succeeded to the depopulating storm of anarchy.

Popery.

Profiting by repose and leisure, the monks now sought out the remnants of ancient literature; and men soon began to examine the position which they occupied in the natural, the moral, and the political world. Light broke in upon the darkness of ages. The discovery of the magnetic needle led the way to that of new continents; and the invention of printing to the Reformation.

The Reformation in the 15th and 16th centuries.

Progress of the reformation in England.

It had, however, little influence in England, until the reign of Henry VIII., the monarch under whom Sebastian Cabot discovered our coast. He made a righteous opposition to the supremacy of the Pope, but from the unrighteous motive, that he might be divorced from a virtuous wife, to wed another, more young and beautiful. The Pope refused to grant him his wish; and he, after keeping Europe in a broil for several years, declared the English Church to be independent of Rome, and himself its head; thus becoming a lesser pope in his own dominions. But the minds of his subjects had received an impulse. Free inquiry was at work on the continent. Tyndal and Coverdale translated the Bible into English, and in spite of the tyrant, the Reformation was making progress. As soon as his death relieved the realm, and under his young son, Edward VI., the English church, as it now exists, took its form. Its liturgy was completed; having been compiled by some of the purest and best of the reformers.

1534. Henry VIII. head of the church in England.

1553. Edward VI.

English Liturgy.

1553. Mary persecutes the protestants of the English churches.

Unhappily Edward's reign was short; and Mary, his successor, was full of bitter prejudices against Protestantism, regarding it as the author of her mother's miseries, and her own early degradation. She idolized her bigoted and cruel husband, Philip II. of Spain; and thus she naturally became a bloody persecutor. The protestants fled on all hands; and at Geneva with Calvin, at Zurich, at Frankfort, and in Holland, they strengthened their faith by the use of the printed scriptures, by the free worship of God, and by communion with kindred spirits among men.

Puritans divide from the English Church.

The exiled protestants were of two parties. The one believed that the English reformers, having rejected all of Romanism that was meretricous, had returned to primitive Christianity. Another party, who were called Puritans, believed that the church of England had stopped short in the Reformation, and left remains of popery; such as the priests' vestments, the ring in marriage, sponsors in baptism, and sundry uncommanded ceremonies. At Frankfort the two parties had

1556. Death of Mary, and accession of Elizabeth.

a public quarrel; and when the death of Mary allowed the English protestants to return to their country, they brought home the contention.

Arbitrary policy of Elizabeth.

Elizabeth was friendly to popery, but she found on her accession, that her people were, in the mass, protestants; and hence she chose that form of protestantism which she could bring the nearest to papacy; she being herself head of the church. Her obsequious parliament by several acts declared her supremacy, enjoined under severe penalties strict conformity to all rites and ceremonies of the English Church; and finally they created a new ecclesiastical tribunal, to try offenses against these and other arbitrary acts, with powers as much at variance with the natural rights of man as those of the Spanish Inquisition. This was denominated the Court of High Commission.

Obsequiousness of the public authorities.

Examples show the spirit of the times. Before this inquisitorial tribunal was brought, on one occasion, Robert Hawkins, who, with about twenty others, men and women, had been found guilty of meeting to worship secretly, contrary to the law against "private assemblies," and had been dragged to prison by the sheriff. Bishop Grindall, who presided, disliked the work of persecution, to which dependence on the Queen compelled him, and he sought to convince the company of the error of their opposition; while he bore with great patience the unmannerly plainness with which the puritans were in the habit of reproving persons in power, calling it "the right of prophecying." "You should not," said the bishop, "trouble the state about such matters as surplices and ceremonies. In these *indifferent* things, you should quietly obey the civil power, and submit yourselves to the prince. They are not commanded as *necessary* in the church." "You," said Hawkins, "have made them necessary, as many a poor man doth feel." He was himself imprisoned two years; and it was this tyrannical assumption of making indifferent things necessary, which the puritans resisted, often to the death.

Robert Hawkins and Bishop Grindall.

An example, showing the spirit of the controversy.

Nor was this all. Others held that in church affairs it was as absolutely sinful to go farther than the word of God warranted, as to stop short of all which it required. Those were opposed to uniting in any degree with the church of England, and hence were called Separatists.

Separatists.

Although the puritans had not yet arrived at an enlightened religious toleration, yet they struck out its principles. In 1564, Sampson and Humphrey, two eminent non-conforming ministers, explicitly plead, before the Court of High Commission, the rights of conscience. "Because," say they, "these things do not seem so to you, you are not to be condemned by us, and because they do not seem so to us, we are not to be condemned by you."

1564.

Puritans plead religious toleration.

But the Puritans were condemned. The clergy by hun-

dreds, to the loss of their places; the laity with them to fines, imprisonment and mutilation, to loss of country, and of life.

CHAPTER II.

Robinson and his Church remove to Holland.

1592.

In 1592, a law was passed requiring all persons to attend the established worship, under penalty of banishment, and if they returned, of death. Among those who could not conscientiously comply with these exactions, were John Robinson and his congregation, of the sect of Separatists, in the north of England.

John Robinson and his congregation.

To enjoy their religion, the pastor and his whole flock determined to exile themselves to Holland. But this was a difficult undertaking. Once they embarked with their families and goods at Boston, in Lincolnshire. But the treacherous captain had plotted with English officers, who came on board the vessel, took their effects, searched the persons of the whole company for money, and then, in presence of a gazing multitude, led them on shore and to prison. They were soon released, except seven of the principal men, who were detained and brought to trial, but at length freed.

1607. Attempt to leave England for Holland.

1608. Second attempt.

Again they bargained with a Dutch ship-master at Hull, who was to take them in, from a common hard by. At the time appointed, the women and children sailed to the place of rendezvous in a small bark, and the men came by land. The bark had grounded; but the Dutch captain sent his boat and took the men from the strand. But the authorities of Hull had in the meantime got notice; and the Dutch commander, at the sight of a large armed company, having a fair wind, with oaths "hoisted anchor and away;" though the pilgrims even wept, thus to leave their wives and children. Behold these desolate women, the mothers of a future nation, their husbands forcibly carried off to sea, while on land an armed multitude are approaching! They are taken, and dragged from one magistrate to another, while their children, cold and hungry and affrighted, are weeping and clinging around them. But their piteous condition and Christian demeanor, softened, at length, the hearts of their persecutors, and even gained friends to their cause.

Distress of the Puritan women.

The men, in the meantime, encountered one of the most terrific sea-storms ever known, continuing fourteen days, during seven of which they saw neither sun, moon, or stars.

At length they all arrived in Holland. They settled at first in Amsterdam. They did not, however, find cause to be satis-

fied, and they removed to Leyden. Here, by hard labor and frugal honesty, they lived highly respected; but after a few years they experienced evils which made them think of another removal. Not only were their own toils constant and severe, but they were obliged to employ their children, so that these were necessarily deprived of education. And the health of the young often fell a sacrifice to the length of time and confined positions in which they labored. Some died, and some became deformed. Their morals also were likely to suffer from the habitual profanation of the sabbath, which they must necessarily witness, and especially from contact with a disbanded soldiery, at this time residing at Leyden. The Pilgrims had heard of America, and in its wilderness they believed they might serve God unmolested, and found a church, where not only the oppressed in England, but unborn generations, might enjoy a pure worship.

Reasons for removal from Holland.

The Dutch wished them to colonize under their government. But they loved their country, though she had shaken them from her lap; and they sent agents to England, to procure, by the influence of Sir Edwin Sandys, a patent under the Virginia Company.

For the encouragement of this company, almost disheartened by the repeated failures at Chesapeake Bay, Robinson, and Brewster, the ruling elder of his church, wrote to Sir Edwin, showing, in five particulars, the difference of their motives, their circumstances and characters, from those of other adventurers. 1. "We verily believe the Lord is with us, to whose service we have given ourselves, and that he will graciously prosper our endeavors, according to the simplicity of our hearts therein. 2. We are all well weaned from the delicate milk of our mother country, and inured to a strange and hard land, where we have learned patience. 3. The people are as industrious and frugal as any in the world. 4. We are knit together in a sacred bond of the Lord, whereof we make great conscience, holding ourselves tied to all care of each other's good, and of the whole by every, and so mutual. 5. It is not with us as with other men, whom small discontentments can discourage, and cause to wish themselves at home again. We have nothing to hope for from England or Holland, and our lives are drawing towards their period."

Substance of a letter to Sir Edwin Sandys, showing the character of the Pilgrims.

By the aid of Sandys, the petitioners obtained the patent. But they needed money. To provide this, their agents formed a stock company, jointly, with some men of business in London, of whom Mr. Thomas Weston was the principal; they to furnish the capital, the emigrants to pledge their labor for seven years, at ten pounds per man; and the profits of the enterprise, all houses, lands, gardens, and fields, to be divided at the end of that time among the stockholders, according to their respective shares.

Business contract with London merchants.

August 3d. 1620.

They then prepared two small vessels, the May-Flower

and the Speedwell; but these would hold only a part of the company, and it was decided that the younger and more active should go, while the older, among whom was the pastor, should remain. If they were successful, they were to send for those behind; if unsuccessful, to return, though poor, to them.

1620. The parting at Delft-Haven.

Previous to their separation, this memorable church worshipped together for the last time, on an appointed day, when they humbled themselves by fasting, and "sought of the Lord a right way for themselves and their children." When they must no longer tarry, their brethren accompanied them from Leyden to the shore at Delft-Haven. Here the venerable pastor knelt with his flock upon the ground; and the wanderers, while tears flowed down their cheeks, heard for the last time, his beloved voice in exhortation and in prayer for them. "But they knew they were PILGRIMS, and lifted up their eyes to heaven, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits." From Delft-Haven they sailed to Southampton in England.

Leave Holland. July 21.

Their leading men.

Among the leaders of the party was Elder Brewster, who at this time was fifty-six, but sound in body, as in spirit. Of the seven who were taken at Boston, it was Brewster who was most severely dealt with. John Carver was near his age, beloved and trusted, as he was good and wise. William Bradford, was strong, bold, and enduring; but withal, a meek and prudent Christian. Next these, in honor, superior in native endowments, as in estate and family descent, was Edward Winslow. He was at this time twenty-six Bradford was thirty-two. Allerton and Hopkins were also leading men. Miles Standish had been an officer in an army, sent by Elizabeth to aid the Dutch against the Spaniards; and he, as was the case with Winslow, falling in with Robinson's people, about three years before their removal from Holland, accompanied them to America.

Sept. 6. Final departure from England.

Arrival off Cape Cod. Nov. 9th.

After remaining in Southampton a fortnight, the Pilgrims put to sea. But misfortunes befalling, they returned, left the Speedwell, and finally, to the number of one hundred, they set sail from Plymouth, in the solitary May-Flower. On the 6th of September, they took their last, sad look of their native shore. After a stormy and perilous passage, they made land, on the 9th of November, at Cape Cod. The mouth of the Hudson had been selected as the place of their settlement, and they accordingly steered southerly; but soon falling in with dangerous breakers, and all, especially the women, being impatient to leave the ship, they determined to return and settle on or near the Cape. The next day they turned the point of that singular projection, and entered the harbor now called Provincetown.

Political compact signed in the cabin of the May Flower.

They fell on their knees to thank the kind Power who had preserved them amidst so many dangers, and then "they did," says Cotton Mather, "as the light of nature itself directed them, immediately, in the harbor sign an instrument as the

foundation of their future and needful government;" solemnly combining themselves in a civil body politic, to enact all such ordinances, and frame all such constitutions and offices, as from time to time should be thought most meet and convenient for the general good; all which they bound themselves to obey.

1620.

Importance of the transaction to the rights of man.

This simple, but august compact, was the first of a series by which the fetters of a vast system of political oppression have been broken. Upon some parts of the old continent that system still remains; building upon the fiction, that sovereigns own the world and its inhabitants, having derived all from God; and that the people are to have only such a measure of personal freedom, and such possessions as kings may choose to bestow. Here was assumed for the first time the grand principle of a voluntary *confederacy* of independent men; instituting government, for the good, not of the governors, but of the governed.

One hundred of the Pilgrims.

There were the same number of persons on board the May-Flower as had left England; but one, a servant, had died, and one, a male child, Peregrine White, was born on the passage. Carver was immediately chosen governor, and Standish captain.

Nov. 11th. They go on shore.

No comfortable home, or smiling friends, awaited the Pilgrims. They who went on shore waded through the cold surf to a homeless desert. But a place to settle must be found, and no time was to be lost. The shallop unfortunately needed repairs, and in the meantime a party set out to make discoveries by land. They found "a little corn, and many graves;" and in a second excursion they encountered the chilling blasts of a November snow storm, which laid in some the foundation of mortal disease. The country was wooded, and tolerably stocked with game.

Shallop repaired and excursions made.

Dec. 6th. Party sail in the shallop.

When the shallop was finished, Carver, Bradford and Winslow, with a party of eighteen, manned the feeble bark, and set forth. Steering along the western shore of Cape Cod, they made, in three days, the inner circuit of the bay. "It was," says one of the number, "very cold; for the water froze our clothes, and made them many times like coats of iron." They landed occasionally to explore; and at night, inclosed with only a slight barricado of boughs, they stretched themselves upon the hard ground. On the second morning, as their devotions closed, they received a shower of Indian arrows; when, sallying out, they discharged their guns, and the savages fled. Again they offered prayers with thanksgiving; and proceeding on their way, their shallop was nearly wrecked by a wintry storm of terrible violence. After unspeakable dangers, they sheltered themselves under the lee of a small island, where, amidst darkness and rain, they land, and with difficulty make a fire. In the morning they find themselves at the entrance of a harbor. The next day was the Sabbath. They rested, and kept it holy, though all that was dear to them depended on their promptness.

Attacked by the Nauset Indians. Dec. 8.

Stormy evening of the 9th, land on Clark's island.

Dec. 14th. Pilgrims land on Plymouth rock.

Dec. 25th, begin to build.

The next day, a day ever to be observed in the annals of New England, the Pilgrims landed on the rock of Plymouth. Finding the harbor good, springs abundant, and the land promising for tillage, they decided to settle here, and named the place from that which they last left in England. In a few days they brought the May-Flower to the harbor; and on the 25th of December they began building, having first divided the whole company into nineteen families, and assigned them contiguous lots, of size according to that of the family, about eight feet front and fifty deep to each person. Each man was to build his own house. Besides this, the company were to make a building of twenty feet square, as a common receptacle. This was soonest completed, but was unfortunately destroyed by fire.

The pilgrims suffer much, but repine not.

Their huts went up but slowly, for though their hearts were strong, yet their hands had grown feeble, through fatigue, hardship and scanty fare; and many were wasting with consumptions. Daily some yielded to sickness, and daily some sunk to the grave. Before spring, half of their number, among whom was the governor and his wife, lay buried on the shore. Yet they never repined, or repented of the step they had taken; and when, on the 5th of April, the May-Flower left them, not one so much as spoke of returning to England; but they rather confessed the continual mercies of a "wonder-working Providence," which had carried them through so many dangers, and was making them the honored instruments of so great a work.

April 5th. **1621.**

CHAPTER III.

The Savages—Massasoit's Alliance—Winslow's Visit to the Pokanokets

March 16. Visits of Samoset,

and Massasoit.

The removal of the savages by the plague, before the arrival of the Pilgrims was regarded as a special interposition of Providence in their favor. They had as yet seen but few of the natives, and those hostile, when Samoset, an Indian, who had learned a little English at Penobscot, boldly entered their village, with a cheerful "Welcome Englishmen." He soon came again, with four others, among whom was Tisquantum, who had spread favorable reports of the English among his countrymen, and was afterwards of great service as an interpreter. They gave notice that Massasoit, the sachem of the Pokanokets, was hard by. Appearing on a hill, with a body of attendants, armed, and painted with gaudy colors, the chief desired that some one should be sent to confer with him. Edward Winslow, famed for the sweetness of his disposition and behavior, as well as for talents, courage, and

efficiency, was wisely chosen. Captain Standish found means, (for neither civil or military organization had been neglected,) to make a martial show, with drums and trumpets, which gave the savages wonderful delight.

Pilgrims enter into alliance with Massasoit.

The sachem, on coming into the village, was so well pleased with the attentions paid him, that he acknowledged the authority of the king of England, and entered into an alliance, offensive and defensive, with the colonists, which remained inviolate for more than fifty years.

1621. July. Embassy to Massasoit by Winslow and Hopkins.

In July, Edward Winslow and Stephen Hopkins went on an embassy to Massasoit, at Montaup. Their object was to negotiate a traffic in furs, and to preserve amity with the natives. Much to his delight, they gave the sachem a red coat, from Governor Bradford, who had succeeded Carver. They hinted that his subjects were somewhat too free with their presence at Plymouth, though himself and his particular friends should always be welcome. They mentioned that on their first arrival they had found a small quantity of buried corn, which in their necessity they had appropriated, but they now wished to discover and remunerate the owners; and finally, they requested that the Pokanokets would sell their furs to the colony.

Massasoit consults his council and grants the Indian trade.

Massasoit gathered his council. "Am I not," said he, "commander of the country? Is not such a town mine?—and such an one?—going on to the number of thirty,—and finally, should not all bring their furs to him if he wished it?" The Sannops ejaculated a hearty affirmative to each successive proposition, and the matter was happily adjusted. The trade, thus secured to the colony, proved of great consequence.

Nov. The ship Fortune arrives.

The ship Fortune arrived in November, and brought over thirty-five persons to join the settlers. The corn which they had found in their excursions from Cape Cod providentially preserved them; for they had planted it, and the crop was their dependence, scanty though it proved, for their second winter.

Narragansetts threaten war. Jan. 1622.

Massasoit feared the Narragansetts, and was doubtless on that account desirous of cultivating the friendship of the English. Canonicus, the old hereditary chieftain of that confederacy, perhaps offended at this intimacy, or regarding the whites as intruders, meditated a war against them; which he openly intimated by sending to Governor Bradford a bunch of arrows tied with the skin of a rattlesnake. Bradford stuffed the skin with powder and ball and sent it back; and nothing more was heard, at that time, of war.

1623. March 1st. Winslow visits Massasoit in his sickness.

News came to Plymouth that Massasoit was sick. Accompanied by "one Master John Hampden," believed by some to be the celebrated Englishman of that name, then on a visit to the colony, Winslow taking suitable articles, went to Montaup. He found the Indians bewailing, and practicing their noisy powows or incantations around the sightless chieftain.

Affectionately he extended his hand and exclaimed, "Art thou Winsnow?" (He could not articulate the liquid l.) "Art thou Winsnow? But, O, Winsnow! I shall never see thee more." Winslow administered cordials, and he recovered. He then revealed a conspiracy which the Indians had formed and requested him to join. "But now," said he, "I know that the English love me."

He recovers and reveals a plot.

Agreeably to Massasoit's advice, that a bold stroke should be struck, and the heads of the plot taken off, the intrepid Standish, with a party of only eight, went into the hostile country, attacked a house where the principal conspirators had met, and put them to death. In justice to the Indians, it should be stated that they were provoked to this conspiracy by the lawless aggressions of "Master Weston's men," a colony of sixty Englishmen, who had come over in the fall of 1621, sent by Thomas Weston, once the friend of the Pilgrims. These, after consuming the scanty stores of the half famished colonists during the winter, had made at Weymouth a short-lived and pernicious settlement. The pilgrims had been more alarmed at this Indian conspiracy, on account of the horrible news from Virginia, of the great Indian massacre there.

The conspirators cut off.

Master Weston's men.

1624. to 1626.

Notwithstanding all the hardships—all the wisdom and constancy, of the colonists, the partners of the concern in London complained of small returns; and even had the meanness to send a vessel to rival them in their trade with the Indians. Winslow went to England and negotiated a purchase for himself and seven of his associates in the colony, by which the property was vested in them; and they sold out to the colony at large, for the consideration of a monopoly of the trade with the Indians for six years.

The property of the colony vested in Winslow and others, then in the whole.

New Plymouth now began to flourish. For the land being divided, each man labored for himself and his family, and not for the public, or for distant usurers. Their government was a pure democracy, resembling that now exercised in a town meeting. Each male inhabitant had a vote; the governor had two. At first some delicacy was felt, as they had no charter, being north of the bounds of the Virginia company, but at length they proceeded to the exercise of all the powers of self-government. After the establishment of the Grand Council of Plymouth, of which mention will soon be made, they received from it a charter, by which they exercised these rights, under the authority of England.

Their government.

New charter.

Numbers of their brethren of the church at Leyden came over within the first few years to join the settlement; and Winslow relates that the people of Plymouth gave a thousand pounds to assist them to emigrate. But the good Robinson was not permitted to enter the land of his hopes and affections. He died in Leyden, 1625, to the great grief of the Pilgrims, who had kept their church without a pastor, Elder Brewster

1625. Death of Robinson.

officiating, in hopes, until they heard of his death, again to enjoy his ministrations.

1620. Prosperity of N.Plymouth.

Ten years after its first settlement, New Plymouth had three hundred inhabitants; and had no other colony followed, there is every reason to believe they would have sustained themselves. Their history forms a striking contrast with that of colonies where men were sent by others to labor in distant lands, or induced by worldly motives to enlist under ambitious leaders. Like the Captain of their Salvation, the Pilgrims were self-devoted. No man took from them, but they voluntarily laid down what pertained to this life, in the cheerful and assured hope of a better. Faithfulness they regarded as their concern; reward, as that of their Heavenly Master.

CHAPTER IV.

Grand Council of Plymouth.—New Hampshire.

1620. Grand council of Plymouth receive from James I. a sweeping patent of lands, called New England.

In November, 1620, the same month in which the Pilgrims arrived on the American coast, James I. issued a charter to the duke of Lenox, the marquisses of Buckingham and Hamilton, the earls of Arundel and Warwick, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and thirty-four associates, styling them the "Grand Council of Plymouth, for planting and governing New England, in America." This patent granted them the territory between the "fortieth and forty-eighth degrees of north latitude, and extending throughout the main land from sea to sea." This territory, which had been previously called North Virginia, now received the name of New England, by royal authority.

From this patent were derived all the subsequent grants, under which the New England colonies were settled. But either from sinister motives, sheer ignorance of the geography of the country, or reckless disregard to consequences, the affairs of this corporation were transacted in a manner so confused, that endless disputes and difficulties were occasioned.

Sir F. Gorges and Captain Mason.

Sir Ferdinando Gorges had been an officer in the navy of Elizabeth, and a companion of Sir Walter Raleigh. Various circumstances had bent his mind strongly to the ambition of founding a colony in America. Perhaps he imagined it would become a principality or a dukedom. He was hence the prime mover in getting up the Grand Council of Plymouth; and was made its President. Similar motives actuated Captain Mason, and he became its Secretary.

1621. March 9th. Mason's patent called Mariana.

Mason procured from the Grand Council the absurd grant of "all the land from the river of Naumkeag, (Salem,) round Cape Ann to the mouth of the Merrimack, and all the country

lying between the two rivers, and all islands within three miles of the coast." The district was to be called Mariana.

1622. Gorges and Mason obtain a charter of Maine and N. H.

The next year, Gorges and Mason jointly obtained of the Council another patent of "all the lands between the Merrimack and Kennebec rivers, extending back to the great lakes, and river of Canada." This tract received the name of Lacaonia. Under this grant some feeble settlements were made at the mouth of the Piscataqua, and as far up the river as the present town of Dover.

CHAPTER V.

Colony of Massachusetts Bay.

From 1603 to 1625.

THE persecution of the Puritans continued unabated during the reign of James I., the successor of Elizabeth, and many of the ablest divines of England, obliged to feel the rigor of the law or violate their consciences, were wandering in foreign lands, or meditating a removal.

Mr. White, of Dorchester, England, the active patron of the Massachusetts settlement.

Among the latter was Mr. White, a minister of Dorchester, in the south of England—a puritan, though not a separatist. Having learned what godly quietness his brethren of New Plymouth enjoyed, he turned his eyes in that direction, and projected another colony to America. Encouraged by him, as early as 1624, a few persons established themselves, first at Cape Ann, and afterwards on the site of Salem.

1628. Patent for Massachusetts.

Their representations of the country, together with the solicitation of White, induced several gentlemen of Dorchester to purchase of the Grand Council of Plymouth, in 1628, a patent "of that part of New England which lies between three miles north of the Merrimack river, and three miles to the south of Charles river, and extending from the Atlantic to the South Sea." Thus the avaricious Council covered by a second grant, lands which they had already conveyed by a former one to Mason.

June. John Endicot pioneer of Salem, finds Roger Conant already there.

John Endicot, a rugged puritan, was the leader; and in Salem, began the "wilderness-work for the colony of Massachusetts." He brought over his family, and other emigrants to the number of one hundred. Roger Conant and two others, from New Plymouth, had selected for him this spot, then called Naumkeag, for their settlement, and Conant was there to give to Endicot and his party such welcome to the New World as the desert forest could afford.

1629. Royal charter to the Massachusetts Bay Company.

The next year, the proprietors obtained of King Charles a charter, confirming the patent of the Council of Plymouth, and conveying to them powers of government. They were incorporated by the name of the "Governor and Company of

Massachusetts Bay, in New England." The first general court of the company was held in England, when they fixed upon a form of government for the colony, and appointed Endicot governor.

1629. Charlestown founded.

About three hundred persons sailed for America during this year, a part of whom joined Mr. Endicot at Salem, and the remainder, exploring the coast for a better station, laid the foundation of Charlestown.

Some of the nobility and gentry favor N. England.

In the meantime other pious puritans, with similar views to those of White, were meditating similar projects in other and opposite parts of England. The pious family of the Earl of Lincoln, in the North-East, regarded the religious enterprise with enthusiastic admiration; as did also John Winthrop, a native of the county of Suffolk, and others of rank and fortune.

A large emigration planned of the "best."

A more extensive emigration was now thought of than had been before attempted. But an objection arose; the colony was to be governed by a council residing in England. To obviate this hindrance, the company agreed to form a council of those who should emigrate, and who might hold their sessions thereafter in the new settlement.

Winthrop.

Sails April 16, **1630.** Fifteen hundred persons emigrate.

On the election, the excellent John Winthrop was chosen governor. He had afterwards for his eulogy, a praise beyond that of any other person in the colony. "He was," say they, "unto us as a mother, parent-like distributing his goods, and gladly bearing our infirmities, yet did he ever maintain the figure and honor of his place with the spirit of a true gentleman." The company had determined to colonize only their "best." Eight hundred accompanied Winthrop, and during the season, seventeen vessels were employed, bringing over, in all, fifteen hundred persons.

Arrival of the Arbella at Salem, June 21.

Winthrop and his friends found no luxurious table spread for them in the wilderness; but they freely imparted the stores which they brought, to the famished and enfeebled sufferers whom they met. Regarding Salem as sufficiently peopled, the newly-arrived located themselves without delay beyond its limits. Their first care, wherever they went, was to provide for the ministration of the gospel. In August, Charlestown had a church, at the head of which was the ardent, eccentric, and benevolent Wilson,—ever ready to encourage the desponding, either in poetry or prose. Dorchester soon after had a church, gathered by Mr. Warham, who afterwards emigrated to Windsor, Connecticut. Boston, Roxbury, Lynn, and Watertown, followed in their order; so that at the end of two years, Massachusetts had seven churches, supplied with devout and learned ministers.

1632. The seven churches of Massachusetts.

Hardships endured. Death of Arbella and Isaac Johnson.

Unused, as many of this company of settlers were, to aught but plenty and ease, the hardships before them, though borne with a willing mind, were too much for the body, especially in the case of women. Many died, though in the joy and

peace of believing. Among these, was the beloved Arbella Johnson, of the noble house of Lincoln. Her husband, Isaac Johnson, the principal of the emigrants in respect to wealth, felt her loss so severely, that he soon followed her to the grave. He made a liberal bequest to the colony, and died "in sweet peace."

Affairs of government.

By the royal charter, the colonists were empowered to elect from among themselves, annually, a governor, deputy-governor, and eighteen assistants; and to hold general courts every year, for the purpose of choosing officers, and making all such necessary ordinances as were not repugnant to the laws of England. It was agreed that important regulations were to be enacted in an assembly of all the freemen, and a meeting was convened at Boston, in October, when Winthrop was re-elected governor, and Thomas Dudley, who had been a faithful steward to the earl of Lincoln, was chosen deputy-governor.

1631. Church membership necessary to a voter.

At first, those not members of any church were allowed to vote. But in May, 1631, the general court decided that church-membership should be a necessary qualification. For this, Massachusetts has been censured. But why, it was asked, should those who left their homes for the express reason that they wished to live in a community constituted in a certain manner, be bound to admit among them the very causes of disturbance which they had ventured their lives and wasted their fortunes to avoid? They had purchased and taken to themselves a desolate corner of the earth, and felt that they had a right to enjoy it unmolested. Although this reasoning is plausible, yet when they afterwards attempted to carry out their principles by force, they were led to such unjustifiable acts, as proved it to be unsound.

Reasoning plausible but unsound.

1631. Roger Williams first to teach religious freedom.

To believe strongly in the immutability of truth, and of right, is a chief element of moral greatness, and one to which our earliest fathers owed their elevation of character and action. They assumed not to judge for others in things indifferent, but they insisted that all must believe the true, and do the right, not considering that we may not on certain subjects assume to judge for others what these are. But it was not until the doctrines of Roger Williams were promulgated, that religious toleration was understood. That remarkable man joined the settlement in 1631, and was soon located at Salem.

Uncas. 1632.

This year, also, some of the most renowned of the Indian chiefs visited Boston to tender their allegiance. From the country of the Narragansetts came the grand warrior Miantonomoh, associate sagamore, and nephew to Canonicus; and from the river of the Pequods, appeared the subtle Uncas, who declared to the authorities that "his heart was not his own, but theirs."

To cultivate friendship with the pilgrims, the governor,

with the excellent Wilson, now become pastor of the church of Boston, went on foot to visit New Plymouth. Bradford, still the governor, and Brewster, the ruling elder, met and conducted them to their homes. Though but little of the cheer of earth could be furnished, yet they partook together on the Sabbath, of "the heavenly feast;" and each of the parties spoke in turn of the glorious things pertaining to the inheritance of the saints in light.

October 28. Visit to the Pilgrims.

The northern colonies had a good understanding with the Virginians, receiving from them supplies of corn. They also had a friendly traffic with the Dutch, who had settled at the Hudson river. These signs of prosperity were reported in England, where persecution was as yet unrelenting; and the consequence was, a fresh emigration. The Griffin brought over a noble freight of three hundred, among whom were the fathers of Connecticut, Hooker and Haynes; and the pious and learned Cotton. The latter was settled in Boston, and there became influential in the organization of the churches.

1633. July and August, the Griffin brings 300 emigrants.

As the settlements in Massachusetts had now become numerous, and had already extended more than thirty miles from Boston, it became impracticable for all the freemen to attend the general court. This led to an innovation, which altered the constitution of the government from a *simple* to a *representative democracy*. It was made lawful for "the freemen of every town to choose two or three of their own number, to confer of, and prepare such public business as by them shall be thought fit to consider of at the next general court;" and it was ordained, that these persons should have the full power and voices of all the freemen, for whom they were chosen to act. An exception was, however, made in the case of election to offices, in which every freeman was, as heretofore, to give his own vote. For this purpose, the whole body met once a year, to hold the court of election. Besides this, three other general courts were holden each year by the representatives, which number was, however, soon limited. The Mosaic laws were made the basis of their criminal code.

1634. Massachusetts becomes a representative democracy, but elections still held by all.

Charles I., the son and successor of James I., was no less violent in his religious and political despotism; and emigrants continued to flock to New England. In the year 1635 not less than three thousand arrived, among whom was Hugh Peters, and also the younger Henry Vane, much known in the subsequent history of England for his high political career, for his able and consistent defense of the principles of freedom, and for the violent death which, after the accession of Charles II., he suffered with such unexampled christian triumph. The lofty bearing of the high born stranger, his profound religious feeling, and his great knowledge, so wrought in his favor, that, disregarding his youth, the people rashly withdrew their suffrages from the good Winthrop, and chose Vane governor, the year after his arrival.

1625. James I. succeeded by Charles I.

1635. 3000 emigrate to New England. Hugh Peters. Henry Vane.

Vane is chosen governor. **1636.**

CHAPTER VI.

Rhode Island and its first Founder.

PART I.
PERIOD III.
CHAP. VI.

Roger Williams.

ROGER WILLIAMS possessed one of those rare minds, which looks upon truth with an eagle gaze; and what he saw clearly, that he maintained with invincible courage. But the war he waged, was with "soul-oppression." Having been a puritan minister, he had been driven from England by those persecutions for opinion, which, like the confusion of languages at Babel, drove men asunder, and peopled the earth. When Williams arrived in Massachusetts, he proclaimed, that the only business of the human legislator is with the actions of man as they affect his fellow-man; but as for the thoughts and feelings of his mind, and the acts or omissions of his life, as respects religious worship, the only lawgiver is God; and the only human tribunal, a man's own conscience.

His arrival, February 5, **1631.**

His views of religious toleration.

Hence he condemned as unjust the church-membership restriction of the right of suffrage, all laws to compel attendance on devotional exercises, and all taxation to support public worship. Great was the astonishment caused, and the disturbance made, by what was called this "ill egg of toleration." Williams, the eloquent young divine, frank and affectionate, had, however, won the hearts of the people of Salem, and they invited him to settle with them as their pastor. The general court forbade it. Williams withdrew to Plymouth, where he remained as pastor for two years, and then returned to Salem, where he was again gladly received by the people.

Disapproved by the authorities of Massachusetts.

1635.

He is settled at Salem.

Contends with the general court.

The court punished the town for this offense by withholding a tract of land to which they had a claim. Williams wrote to the churches, endeavoring to show the injustice of this proceeding; whereupon the court ordered, that until ample apology was made for the letter, Salem should be disfranchised. Then all, even his wife, yielded to the clamor against him; but he declared to the court before whom he was arraigned, that he was ready to be bound, or if need were, to attest with his life, his devotion to his principles. The court, influenced by Mr. Cotton, pronounced against him the sentence of exile. Winter was approaching, and he obtained permission to remain till spring. The affections of his people revived, and throngs collected to hear the beloved voice, soon to cease from among them. The authorities became alarmed, and sent a pinnace to convey him to England; but he had disappeared.

Salem disfranchised.

Williams is banished.

1636.

He is an unsheltered wanderer.

Now a wanderer in the wilderness, he had not, upon many

a stormy night, either "food, or fire, or company," or better lodging than the hollow of a tree. At last, a few followers having joined him, he fixed at Seckonk, since Rehoboth, within the limits of the colony of Plymouth. Winslow was now governor there; and he felt himself obliged to communicate to Williams that his remaining would breed disturbance between the two colonies; and he added his advice to that privately conveyed to Williams by a letter from Winthrop, "to steer his course to Narraganset Bay."

He goes to the Narragansetts.

Williams now threw himself upon the mercy of Canonicus. At first, the sachem was ungracious. The English, he said, had sought to kill him, and had sent the plague among his people. But Williams won upon him by degrees, and he extended his hospitality to him and his suffering company. He would not, he said, *sell* his land, but he freely gave to Williams, whose neighborhood he now coveted, and who was favored by his nephew, Miantonomoh, all the neck of land between the Pawtucket and Moshasuck rivers, "that they might sit down in peace and enjoy it forever." Thither they went, and with pious thanksgiving named the goodly place Providence.

His reception by Canonicus.

Receives a gift of land, and founds Providence.

1636.

The acquaintance of Williams with the Narragansetts was opportune; for by its means he learned that a conspiracy was forming to cut off the English, headed by Sassacus, the powerful chief of the Pequods. The Narragansetts had been strongly moved by the eloquence of Mononotto, associate chief with Sassacus, to join in the plot. They wavered, but Williams, by making a perilous journey to their country, persuaded them rather to unite with the English against their ancient enemies. He wrote to Governor Winthrop, who immediately invited Miantonomoh to visit him at Boston. That chieftain went, and there entered into a treaty of peace and alliance with the English; engaging to them the assistance of the Narragansetts against the Pequods, should they persist in hostility.

He makes a perilous journey to the Narragansetts, to serve his persecutors.

Roger Williams became a Baptist; and founded, in Providence, the first Baptist church in America.

CHAPTER VII.

Connecticut and its Founders.

The Dutch and English both claimed to be the original discoverers of Connecticut river, but the former had probably the juster claim. The natives along its valley were kept in fear by the more warlike Pequods on the east, and the terrible Mohawks in the west; and hence they desired the presence of the English, as defenders. As early as 1631, Wahquimacut, one of their sachems, being pressed by the Pequods,

The Dutch the probable discoverers of Connecticut river.

PART I.
PERIOD III.
CHAP. VII.

1631.

went to Boston and afterwards to Plymouth, earnestly requesting that an English colony might be sent to his country, which he truly described as a delightful region. Governor Winthrop declined his proposal; but Edward Winslow, then governor of Plymouth, favored the project, and visited and examined the valley.

The Plymouth people had been, some time previous, advised by the Dutch to settle on Connecticut river; and they now determined to pursue the enterprise. They fixed on the site of Windsor, as the place to erect a trading-house. But delays occurred, and the Dutch having repented of their former moderation, and now anxious to secure the territory for themselves, erected a small trading fort, called the house of Good Hope, on a point of land in Sukeag, since Hartford, at the junction of the Little river with the Connecticut.

Dutch fix at Hartford.

October, 1633.

Plymouth people at Windsor, erect the first house in the State.

The materials for the Plymouth trading-house being put on board a vessel, Captain Holmes, who commanded, soon appeared sailing up the river. When opposite to the Dutch fort, he was commanded to stop, or he would be fired upon; but he resolutely kept his course, and the Windsor house, the first in Connecticut, was erected and fortified before winter.

Patent of Connecticut granted to English noblemen.

The younger Winthrop their agent.

Such was the condition of the puritans in England, and such the reputation of their success in America, that even some of the nobility belonging to the sect, meditated emigration. The Grand Council patented Connecticut to the Earl of Warwick, a friend and frequent hearer of Thomas Hooker. That nobleman subsequently transferred his patent to Lord Say and Seal, and Lord Brooke, with others. John Winthrop, a son of the worthy governor of Massachusetts, a man in whom high natural endowments had received the teachings of science and religion, having been sent to England on business for Massachusetts, took an agency for the two Lords patentees, and was directed by them to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut river, and within it, houses proper for persons of rank, as well as those for laborers.

1631.
Extent of the patent.

The patent granted all that part of New England which extends "from Narragansett river one hundred and twenty miles on a straight line, near the shore, towards the south-west, as the coast lies toward Virginia, and within that breadth, from the Atlantic ocean to the South Sea."

1633.
to
1635.
Thomas Hooker and others of the Bay, determine to remove.

Before Mr. Winthrop's commission was known, Thomas Hooker and his church had determined to leave Newtown, since Cambridge, and plant themselves upon Connecticut river; having obtained for that object a reluctant permission from the general court of Massachusetts.

A party in advance of Hooker.

Other parties around the Bay were also in motion. In August, a few pioneers from Dorchester selected a place at Windsor near the Plymouth trading-house; and others from Watertown fixed on Pyquag, now Wethersfield.

Having made such preparations as they were able, a party

intending to be in advance of Hooker, set out in October, with their families, amounting in all to sixty persons, men, women and children. To proceed rapidly across a trackless wilderness, through swamps and over mountains, was impossible, and when the tedious journey was accomplished, winter was at hand; and it set in earlier than usual, and was uncommonly severe. They not only lacked comfortable dwellings, but having sent their furniture and provisions round by shipping, storms had delayed or wrecked their vessels. After enduring such hardships as human nature shudders to contemplate, most of the party, to save life, got on board a vessel, and at length reached Massachusetts. A few remained, who lived on malt and acorns. Their cattle, too, fared hardly, browsing in the woods; and numbers of them died from starvation. The resolute puritans were not however discouraged, but most of those who left the settlement in the winter, returned in the spring with Hooker and his company.

Hardships endured.

Return to the Bay.

Winthrop in the meantime arrived with his commission, and commenced building the projected fort. A few days afterwards, a Dutch vessel, which was sent from New Netherlands, appeared off the harbor to take possession of its entrance. The English having by this time mounted two pieces of cannon, prevented their landing; and proceeded to complete the fort, which was named after the two Lords patentees, Say-Brook.

Winthrop builds a fort at Saybrook.

Dutch attack it and are repulsed.

Engaged as were all parties concerned, in planting the wilderness for the same object—the unmolested enjoyment of a common religion—the ample subjects of contention, now opened by conflicting claims, were all, though not without difficulty, peaceably adjusted. The Pilgrims, in the exercise of their wonted virtues, sold their claim to lands at Windsor, to the people of Dorchester; and the patentees were content that the Massachusetts settlement should proceed.

Differences amicably adjusted.

Thomas Hooker is regarded as the principal founder of Connecticut. In him a natural "grandeur of mind" was cultivated by education, and chastened by religion and adversity. Although commanding and dignified in his ministerial office, he was in policy, an overmatch for the crafty. In private life he was generous, compassionate, and tender. So attractive was his pulpit eloquence, from "the fervor with which he breathed out his holy soul," and from the great flexibility of his manner, tones, and copious imagery, by which he adapted himself to all subjects and all occasions, that in England he drew crowds, often from great distances, of noble, as well as plebeian hearers. And when for his conscientious non-conformity, not to the doctrines of the English church, but to the legal imposition of its rites and ceremonies, the ecclesiastical authorities silenced him, no less than forty-seven of the regular clergy remonstrated; and plead, though vainly, for his restoration.

Thomas Hooker.

His character and pulpit eloquence.

PART I. PERIOD III. CHAP. VIII.

1633. His meeting with his church at Boston.

His congregation in England esteemed his ministry as so great a blessing, that when persecution drove him from his native land, they desired still to be with him, although in these "ends of the earth." A portion of his people had preceded him, and were already settled at Newtown, since Cambridge. As he landed, they met him on the shore. With streaming eyes he pressed them to his bosom, crying out, "Now I live, if ye stand fast in the Lord!"

His motives for removal.

His pervading mind had been active in planning the operations of the preceding year, for he had determined, soon after his arrival, on taking his flock to a separate ground. There remained persecuted friends in England, who were yet to join them; and for their sake, he deemed it wise to make more extensive room; and he was attracted by the locality of the broad and beautiful valley of the Connecticut.

John Haynes.

Associated with Hooker, both in counsel and action, was John Haynes, a gentleman of excellent endowments, of unaffected meekness, and possessed of a very considerable estate. So desirous were the people of Massachusetts to detain him, that they made him their governor; but he would not separate himself from his friend and pastor.

June, 1636. Hooker and his church journey across the wilderness.

Warned by the calamities of the preceding autumn, Hooker would not delay, although his wife was so ill as to be carried on a litter; but the company departed from Newtown early in June, driving their flocks and herds. Many of them were accustomed to affluence; but now, they all, men, women and little children, travelled on foot, through thickets, across streams and over mountains, lodging at night upon the unsheltered ground. But they put their cheerful trust in God, and we doubt not the ancient forest was, night and morning, made vocal with His praise.

Settle at Hartford and by good conduct, insure success.

At length they reached their destined location, which they named Hartford. The excellent Haynes was chosen chief magistrate; and the soil was purchased of the natives. The succeeding summer was one of the utmost exertion. Houses were to be built, lands cleared, food provided for the coming winter, roads made, the cunning and terrible savage to be guarded against, and, chiefly, a church and state to be organized. All was to be done, and all was accomplished by wisdom, union, and labor.

CHAPTER VIII.

Connecticut.—The Pequod War.

How firmly the little state had become established in a short time, is shown from the shock which it now met and

repelled. The Pequods were endeavoring to unite the Indian tribes in a plot to exterminate the English, especially those of this colony, named from its river, Connecticut. They had sought, as we have seen, the alliance of their former enemies, the Narragansetts, but through the influence of Roger Williams, Miantonomoh, the war-chief of that nation, remained true to the whites. Uncas, the Mohegan sagamore, formerly a vassal, and of the same family with Sassacus, was now his inveterate foe.

1636. The Pequods seek to gain the Narragansetts.

The Pequods murdered Captain John Oldham, near Block Island. They made other attacks, and carried away some prisoners. They cut off stragglers from Saybrook, and had become so bold as to assault the fort, and use impudent and threatening language. Every where they were, or seemed to be, lurking, with purposes of murder. The whole settlement, men, women and children, were in the feverish condition of intense and continual fear. They neither ate, slept, or labored, or even worshipped God in the sanctuary, without arms and ammunition at hand.

July. Hostility of the Pequods.

Distress of the settlers.

1637.

A general court was called on the last of May, at Hartford. Thirty persons had already been killed, and the evidence was conclusive that the savages designed a general massacre. The court, therefore, righteously declared war.

May. The court declare war against the Pequods.

The quota of troops from the three towns now settled, shows the rapid progress of the settlement. Hartford was to furnish ninety men, Windsor forty-two, and Wethersfield eighteen, making one hundred and fifty. John Mason was chosen captain. The troops embarked at Hartford, sailed down the river, and along the coast, to Narragansett Bay. Miantonomoh furnished them two hundred warriors, Uncas sixty. There were actually embodied of the English, only seventy-seven, of whom twenty, commanded by Captain Underhill, were from Massachusetts. Guided by a Pequod deserter, they reached Mystic, one of the two forts of Sassacus, at dawn of day. Their Indian allies showed signs of fear, and Mason arranging them at a distance around the fort, advanced with his own little army. If they fell, there was no second force to defend their state, their wives and helpless children. As they approach, a dog barks, and an Indian sentinel cries out, "Owannox, Owannox!" the English! the English! They leap within the fort. The Indians fight desperately, and victory is doubtful. Mason then seizes and throws a flaming brand, shouting, "we must burn them." The light materials of their wigwams were instantly in a blaze. Hemmed in as the Indians now were, escape was impossible; and six hundred, all who were within the fort, of every sex and age, in one hour perished.

Route of the troops under Mason.

May 26. The Pequod fort at Mystic attacked.

Is burnt with all its inmates.

Three hundred Pequods issuing from the other and royal fortress of Sassacus, pursued Mason with infuriated rage, as he retreated to the Pequod river, where he embarked on

1637.

board his vessels which met him there. Two of the English were killed, and twenty wounded.

Sassacus killed.

The subjects of Sassacus now reproached him as the author of their misfortunes; and to escape destruction, he with his chief captains fled to the Mohawks: but he was afterwards slain by a revengeful subject. Three hundred of his warriors, having burned his remaining fort, fled along the sea coast. Massachusetts had raised a body of men to aid in the war, which on account of the theological disturbance, arrived too late for the battle. These, under Captain Patrick, now joined with forty men under Mason, pursued the fugitive savages, traced them to a swamp in Fairfield, and there fought and defeated them.

Pequods pursued and defeated at Fairfield.

Nearly one thousand of the Pequods were destroyed; many fled, and two hundred, besides women and children, remained as captives. Of these, some, we are grieved to relate, were sent to the West Indies and sold into slavery; and the remainder divided between the Narragansetts and the Mohegans. The two Sachems, Uncas and Miantonomoh, between whom was mutual hatred, now engaged to live in peace. The lands of the Pequods were regarded as conquered territory, and the name of the tribe was declared extinct.

The Pequods as a tribe extinct.

The prowess of the English had thus put the natives in fear, and a long peace ensued. All the churches in New England commemorated this deliverance, by keeping a day of common and devout thanksgiving.

First public thanksgiving.

1639.

The war had fallen heavily upon the colony. Their farming and their finances were deranged; but order and industry restored them. In 1639, they formally conjoined themselves to be one state or commonwealth, "to maintain the purity of the gospel, the discipline of the churches, and in all civil affairs, to be governed by the constitution which should be adopted."

Constitution and civil government.

This constitution ordained two annual general courts, one to be held in May, at which the whole body of freemen should choose a governor, deputy-governor, six magistrates, and other necessary officers. Church membership was not made a necessary qualification for a voter, or even for a magistrate, although it was for the office of governor. The towns were to send deputies to the general assembly, for the transaction of all business, except the election of officers. All taxes were to be apportioned by a special committee, consisting of delegates from the several towns. The governor and four magistrates might constitute a general assembly, at which the former had a casting vote. So wisely was the "foundation-work" of a public organization performed by the fathers of Connecticut, that less has been found to alter here than in any other state; and it has hence been called throughout the union, "the land of steady habits."

Their civil order and arrangements, more permanent than in the other states.

CHAPTER IX.

New Haven and its Founders.

PART I.
PERIOD III
CHAP. IX.

Theophilus Eaton, a man of consequence in England.

THEOPHILUS EATON and John Davenport, puritans of much distinction in England, were regarded as the Moses and Aaron of the colony of New Haven. Eaton had been a deputy-governor of the East India company, and a public functionary at the court of Denmark; he had married a daughter of the Bishop of Chester, and was possessed of a large estate. Davenport, the son of an English lawyer, was early pious; and entering the ministry, he became eminent in London as a preacher.

John Davenport an eminent divine.

In attempting to dissuade Cotton from puritanism, Davenport had become its disciple, and thus exposed himself to persecution. He believed that the reformation in England had stopped short; and that "the ark might as well be got off from the mountains when it had once rested, as a reformation to be reformed where it had once stopped:" and hence he was seized with an ardent desire to realize his visions of perfection in church organization, which he thought could only be where a church should be constituted "in the first assay," in entire accordance with the scriptures; and Cotton had written to him from America, that the order there settled "brought to his mind the new heavens and the new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness."

His views of theology.

Among the serious virtues of that soul-expanding day, was one little known in times when a paltry spirit of levity prevails: that of high and devoted friendship. Such existed between Davenport and Eaton, and appears to have been the mainspring in producing Eaton's emigration.

Friendship between Eaton and Davenport.

The two friends collected their associates, and arrived at Boston, July 26th, 1637. Massachusetts was desirous of securing such settlers, but they preferred a separate establishment; and seeking a commercial station, they explored the coast, fixed on Quinnipiac, and in 1638, they moored their vessels in its harbor. The company had made some little preparation for the settlement the preceding summer, yet many sufferings were to be endured. The spring was uncommonly backward; their planted corn perished repeatedly in the ground, and they dreaded the utter failure of the crop; but at length they were cheered by warm weather, and surprised by the rapid progress of vegetation.

July 6. **1637.** They arrive at Boston.

1638. They reach Quinnipiac.

The first Sunday after they arrived, they met and worshipped under a large tree, when Mr. Davenport preached to them concerning the temptations of the wilderness. Not long after, the free planters assembled in a large barn belonging to

April 18.

Mr. Newman, and subscribed what, in distinction from a church union, they termed a plantation-covenant. By this, each church was to be begun by seven of their best and most pious men, called "the seven pillars" of the church, who were to be selected by twelve, chosen by the people at large for the purpose. The planters solemnly bound themselves, "until otherwise ordered, to be governed in all things of civil, as well as religious concerns, by the rules which the Scriptures held forth to them."

The seven pillars of wisdom's house.

1639.

Civil government established.

Under this covenant they continued until the next year, when they formed themselves into a body politic, and established a form of government. The governor and magistrates were to be elected by such of their number as were church members, and were to hold annually a general court, to regulate the affairs of the colony. Eaton was chosen governor. To the place, which they held by purchase from the natives, they gave the name of New Haven.

Mr. Eaton governor.

CHAPTER X.

Massachusetts.—Antinomianism and Intolerance.

As long as the Puritan fathers consisted of only a few united brethren, who accorded in religious views, all was harmonious; and the error which afterwards led to intolerance, remained latent. But human opinion flows on like a river, and its course cannot be stayed by human means. Already had the theology of Geneva, the head-quarters of puritanism, undergone a change; and Vane, recently there, had come over with newer lights; and at this time, "a master-piece of women's wit," Anne Hutchinson, of Boston, had, by her powers of reasoning, and eloquence of expression, promulgated opinions unthought of before, and highly offensive.

Mrs. Hutchinson.

She began in meetings of her own sex, with the simple scriptural proposition, that justification is of faith, and not of works—the divine life formed in the soul, and not in outward observances. She was regarded as aiming a reproach at the sanctity of manners, then so carefully cultivated, especially among the clergy. These censured, but failing to silence her, a bitter controversy ensued. At last, she went the length of denying the necessity of good works, even as an evidence of faith. This was Antinomianism, and it was regarded as a most alarming heresy; and so many had embraced it that the utmost distress pervaded the minds of the puritans; who seemed now destined to lose that great blessing of gospel purity, for which they had sacrificed so much.

Her opinions.

Opposed and censured by the clergy.

1636.

Governor Vane takes her part.

Governor Vane, believing Mrs. Hutchinson to have been

wronged, sought to defend her, by pleading the just principles of religious toleration. Mr. Cotton, it is believed, was touched on the side of his personal vanity, by the preference which the eloquent lady gave to him over his clerical brethren. It is certain that he was her advocate, as was also her brother-in-law, Mr. Wheelright, who was a minister, and Mr. Coddington, a respectable magistrate, and many others.

Mr. Cotton. Mr. Wheelright.

The wrath of the opposition was especially kindled against Mr. Vane; and although he was the idol of yesterday, to-day he was denounced as a heretic and a hypocrite. Such excitement prevailed at the ensuing election, at which Winthrop was reinstated as governor, that the zealous Wilson climbed a tree to harangue the people. Even the call made by Connecticut in her distress, for assistance against the Pequods, who would, if they destroyed the sister colony, be next with the midnight tomahawk at their own doors, was regarded with less interest than this controversy; and hence the Massachusetts troops, whom Wilson was to accompany as chaplain, did not arrive until the little army of Mason had accomplished, against fearful odds, the reduction of the Pequod fort.

1637. Great excitement. Mr. Wilson's zeal.

In this extremity, a synod of ministers was assembled. Mr. Davenport had opportunely arrived from London, and Mr. Hooker, desirous to prepare minds for political as well as religious union, recrossed the wilderness from Hartford. Vane had returned to England to be a leader and champion of liberty in the long parliament, and Cotton, as he now expressed to the synod his views of the controversy, seemed scarcely to differ from his brethren. The opinions of the heresiarch were unanimously condemned by the synod, and herself and the most determined of her adherents banished.

A synod condemn the opinions of Mrs. Hutchinson.

She is banished with her adherents.

Mrs. Hutchinson, excommunicated from the church, an outcast from a society which had but now followed and flattered her, went first to Rhode Island, to join the settlement which her followers had there made; thence she removed with her family to the state of New York, where she met death in its most appalling form—that of an Indian midnight massacre.

1638, to 1643. Mrs. Hutchinson destroyed by Indians in New York.

Some of the first fathers of New England, especially the clergy, were men of extensive learning. The greater number of these had been educated at the university of Cambridge; but all, of every rank and occupation, held learning in profound esteem. Hence some of their earliest cares were to provide the means of instruction for their children. At the general court in September, 1630, the sum of four hundred pounds was voted to commence a college building, and Newtown, which had been fixed on as its location, received the name of Cambridge. In 1638, Mr. John Harvard, a pious divine from England, dying at Charlestown, left to the college a bequest of nearly eight hundred pounds; and gratitude perpetuated his name in that of the institution. All the several colonies cherished the infant seminary by contributions;

1630. Massachusetts gives four hundred pounds to begin a college.

1638. Mr. John Harvard makes a bequest.

regarding it as a nursery, from which the church and state were to be replenished with qualified leaders.

1638.
Followers of Mrs. Hutchinson obtain Rhode Island.

RHODE ISLAND. The most respectable of the banished followers of Mrs. Hutchinson went south, headed by William Coddington and John Clarke, who, as a baptist, had also been persecuted; and by the influence of Roger Williams, they obtained from Miantonomoh the noble gift of the island of Aquetneck, called Rhode Island, on account of its beauty and fertility. Here they established a government, on the principles of political equality and religious toleration; and Coddington was made chief magistrate.

Mr. Wheelright and others found Exeter.

NEW HAMPSHIRE. Another portion of the disciples of Mrs. Hutchinson, headed by her brother-in-law, Mr. Wheelright, went north; and in the valley of the Piscataqua founded Exeter. It was within a tract of country lying between that river and the Merrimac, which Wheelright claimed by virtue of a purchase made of the celebrated Indian sorcerer, Passaconaway, the chief sachem of the Pennicooks; and of less powerful chiefs of smaller tribes. This claim interfered with that conveyed by the patent to Mason and Gorges, and was accordingly disputed.

1629.
Wheelright's Indian patent.

In the meantime small independent settlements were made along the water courses, by emigrants from Massachusetts and the other colonies; but they did not flourish, for they imprudently neglected the culture of their lands, present necessities being scantily supplied by fish and game.

1641.
New Hampshire settlements, become a part of Massachusetts.

In 1641, these settlements, induced by a sense of their weakness, petitioned Massachusetts to receive them under its jurisdiction. The general court granted their request, and they were incorporated with that colony.

CHAPTER XI.

Delaware—Maryland—Virginia.

1627.
The Swedes and Fins colonize the east side of Delaware river.

WHILE the other sovereigns of western Europe were extending their dominions by colonizing America, Gustavus Adolphus, the hero of his age, sent over a number of his subjects from Sweden and Finland. They settled on the east side of the Delaware, calling that river Swedeland-stream, and the country, New Sweden.

1629.
The Dutch the west side.

In 1629, the Dutch purchased a tract of land on the west side of the same river, near Cape Henlopen. This nation, as well as the Swedes, claiming the country, dissentions afterwards arose among the settlers.

1631.
Clayborne plants a colony on Kent Island.

MARYLAND. In 1631, William Clayborne obtained from Charles I. a license to traffic in those parts of America for

which there was not already a patent granted. Clayborne planted a small colony on Kent island, in Chesapeake bay, opposite to the spot where Annapolis now stands.

George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore.

George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, had represented in the English Parliament his native district of Yorkshire. The favor of the monarch and the principal ministers had been manifested by influential appointments at court; but these he resigned to make a public profession of the Roman catholic faith. To enjoy his religion unmolested, he wished to emigrate to some vacant tract in America. He had fixed on Virginia as a desirable location, and accordingly made a visit to that colony. The people there would not encourage a settlement, unless an oath was taken, to which he could not in conscience subscribe. Finding he must seek an asylum elsewhere, he explored the country to the north, and then returned to England. The Queen, Henrietta Maria, daughter to Henry IV. of France, gave to the territory the name of Maryland, and Lord Baltimore obtained it by a royal patent.

1628. Visits Virginia.

Fixes on Maryland, and obtains a patent. April 15. 1632.

Cecil Calvert the second Lord Baltimore, obtains the same patent.

He died at London in 1632, before his patent passed to a legal form; but his son, Cecil Calvert, the second Lord Baltimore, by the influence of Sir Robert Cecil, obtained the grant intended for his father.

Its limits.

By this patent he held the country from the Potomac to the 40th degree of north latitude; and thus, by a mere act of the crown, what had long before been granted to Virginia, was now taken away; as what was now granted was subsequently given to Penn, to the extent of a degree. Hence long and obstinate altercations ensued.

Leonard Calvert sails, Nov. 1633. Arrives at the Chesapeake. February, 1634.

Lord Baltimore appointed as governor his brother, Leonard Calvert, who, with two hundred emigrants, sailed for America near the close of 1633, and arrived at the Potomac early in 1634. Here they purchased of the natives, Yamaco, one of their settlements, to which was given the name of St. Mary. Calvert thus secured by a pacific course, comfortable habitations, some improved lands, and the friendship of the natives. Other circumstances served to increase the prosperity of the colony. The country was pleasant, great religious freedom existed, and a liberal charter had been granted, which allowed the proprietor, aided by the freemen, to pass laws, without reserving to the crown the right of rejecting them. Emigrants accordingly soon flocked to the province from the other colonies and from England.

Commences a flourishing settlement on the Potomac.

Generosity of the proprietary and gratitude of the colony.

Thus had the earliest settlers of this beautiful portion of our country established themselves, without the sufferings endured by the pioneers of former settlements. The proprietary government, generally so detrimental, proved here a nursing mother. Lord Baltimore expended for the colonists, within a few years, forty thousand pounds; and they, "out of desire to return some testimony of gratitude," voted in their

PART I. PERIOD III. CHAP. XI.

assembly, "such a subsidy as the low and poor estate of the colony could bear."

1642. Lord Baltimore invites the puritans.

Lord Baltimore invited the puritans of Massachusetts to emigrate to Maryland, offering them "free liberty of religion." They rejected this, as they did a similar proposition from Cromwell, to remove to the West Indies.

Clayborne, the evil genius of Maryland. 1635. to 1642.

The restless, intriguing Clayborne, the evil genius of Maryland, had been constantly on the alert to establish a claim to the country, and to subvert the government of the good proprietary. In his traffic with the natives he had learned their dispositions, and he wrought them to jealous hostility. In England, the authority of the long Parliament now superseded that of the king, and those who derived their authority from him; and of this, not only Clayborne, but other disorderly subjects of Lord Baltimore, were inclined to take undue advantage. Thus the fair dawn of this rising settlement was early overcast.

1562. The slave-trade begun and upheld by the English.

VIRGINIA. England was interested in the slave-trade as early as 1562, when Sir John Hawkins took by fraud a cargo of negroes from Africa, and sold them in Hispaniola. So depraved at that time was the public sentiment, that numbers of the most consequential persons engaged in it; and even the Queen herself became afterwards a party to this atrocious merchandize.

1620. Introduced into Va.

In August, 1620, a Dutch ship brought into James river twenty negroes, and sold them as slaves. Thus, and on so small a scale, began an evil so vast in its consequences, and so difficult now to eradicate.

1621. Sir Francis Wyatt. Improved constitution.

In 1621, Sir Francis Wyatt arrived as governor, bringing from the company in England a more perfect and permanent constitution for the colony. The power of making laws was vested in the general assembly. No regulations however could be enforced, until they had received the sanction of the general court of the company in England. At the same time, the orders of the company were not binding upon the colony, without the sanction of their assembly. These liberal concessions not only gratified the settlers, but encouraged emigrants; and a large number accordingly accompanied Governor Wyatt to the province.

Cotton first planted.

This year, cotton was first planted in Virginia, and "the plentiful coming up of the seeds," was regarded by the planters with curiosity and interest.

1622. Indian massacre.

Opechancanough, the brother and successor of Powhatan, had determined to extirpate the whites, and regain the country for its savage lords. For this purpose he formed a conspiracy to massacre all the English; and during four years, he was, with impenetrable secrecy, concerting his plan. To each tribe its station was allotted, and the part it was to act prescribed. On the 22d of March, 1622, at mid-day, they rushed upon the English, in all their settlements, and butchered men,

Three hundred persons cruelly murdered.

women, and children, without pity or remorse. In one hour, nearly a fourth part of the whole colony was cut off. The slaughter would have been universal, if compassion, or a sense of duty, had not moved a converted Indian, to whom the secret was communicated, to reveal it to his master, on the night before the massacre. This was done in time to save Jamestown and the adjacent settlements.

Retaliation of the whites.

A bloody war ensued. The English, by their arms and discipline, were more than a match for the Indians, and they retaliated in such a manner as left the colonists for a long time free from savage molestation. They also received considerable accessions of lands by appropriating those of the conquered natives.

1624. London company dissolved, and Virginia becomes a royal province.

In 1624 the London company, which had settled Virginia, was dissolved by King James, and its rights and privileges returned to the crown. The pretext for this unjust stretch of royal authority, was the calamities which had befallen the province, and the dissentions which had agitated the company.

James meditates making a code for Virginia. He dies. 1625.

James now appointed commissioners to inquire into affairs in Virginia, that he might frame proper regulations for the permanent government of the colony. Pleased with such an opportunity of exercising his talents as a legislator, he began his task, but death prevented its completion.

1636. Sir John Harvey displaced by the people.

The Virginians, however, continued under the special power of his successor, Charles I. His arbitrary measures were particularly felt during the administration of Sir John Harvey, whom in 1636 he sent over. The colonists rose in opposition to his authority, and appointed John West as their governor; but the king, highly offended at their conduct, restored Harvey to his office, with powers more ample than before.

Replaced by the king.

1639. Sir Francis Wyatt. Extraordinary law to regulate the currency.

Sir Francis Wyatt superseded Harvey in 1639. In consequence of English laws restricting the culture of tobacco, which was not only the staple commodity, but the circulating medium of the colony, it was now much raised in price: and the legislature passed a law that no man need "pay more than two thirds of his debt during the stint."

1641. Sir William Berkeley. The colony declare their intention not to be taxed but by themselves.

After two years, Sir William Berkeley was sent over to succeed Wyatt. The colonists were now confirmed in their enjoyment of the elective franchise. Great harmony prevailed, notwithstanding the assembly took a high tone in respect to their political rights; boldly declaring "that they expected no taxes or impositions, except such as should be freely voted for their own wants."

6

CHAPTER XII.

Charles I.—The Long Parliament.—The New England Confederacy.

PART. I.
PERIOD III.
CHAP. XII.

1620 to 1630.

1630, to 1633. Large emigrations.

WHILE the first settlement of New England was yet struggling for existence, it was regarded as too feeble to excite among the ruling party of England, other feelings than those of pity. But the persecuted opponents of the government looked upon the pilgrims as Christian heroes, adventuring all to open a way of escape for the oppressed; and at the reception of good news from New England, their hearts burned within them, and the precious papers were carried from town to town, and listened to as prophetic messages of hope. Then followed the emigration of numbers among them of the most worthy, and the consequent withdrawal of their substance.

English court displeased with Massachusetts.

The government perceived in these movements a spirit of condemnation of their own proceedings, and of approval and honor, of a religion which they hated. And they were truly informed by some, who returned dissatisfied from Massachusetts, that not only was this religion established by its laws, but the use of the English liturgy was prohibited. Various other charges were made against the province, showing that it was casting off dependence upon the English crown, and assuming sovereign powers to itself.

April 10th, 1634. Appoint commissioners with arbitrary powers.

Much displeased, the king determined that the audacious colonies should be brought to submission, both in church and state; and he made archbishop Laud himself chief of a council, which was appointed with full powers to govern the colonies in all cases whatever.

This council decreed that a governor general should be sent over, and Sir Ferdinando Gorges was accordingly appointed. He was, however, prevented from leaving England by untoward accidents.

Singular temerity.

January, 1635.

The arbitrary measures of Laud and his coadjutors pointed with peculiar hostility at the liberties of Massachusetts. These the people valued more than life, and few and poor as they were, they determined to resist; and the general court voted six hundred pounds for fortifications.

Massachusetts arraigned on a writ of quo warranto.

The Grand Council of Plymouth, as it had its beginning and course, so also it had its end in little better than knavery. We have seen that its individual members, Gorges and Mason, had been its patentees. These persons, wishing to make good certain claims to territory in Massachusetts, now gave up their patent to the crown; petitioning for redress against that colony, which they averred had forfeited its charter, by exceeding its powers and territorial limits. Willing to humble their "unbridled spirits," the court of king's bench issued

a writ against the individuals of the corporation of Massachusetts Bay, accusing them with certain acts, by which they had forfeited their charter, and requiring them to show warrant for their proceedings. At a subsequent term, the court pronounced sentence against them.

December, 1634.

Emigration forbidden, but persecution increases it.

3000 come to N. England in 1638.

The rapid emigration to the colonies had attracted the attention of the council, and they had passed laws, prohibiting any person above the rank of a servant from leaving the kingdom without express permission; and vessels already freighted with emigrants had been detained. But these prohibitions were in vain; for persecution, conducted by the merciless Laud, grew more and more cruel, and in one year, three thousand persons left England for America.

Puritan nobility wish to emigrate as a privileged order. Reply of Massachusetts. 1636.

Among others, several of the puritan nobility thought of emigrating, particularly the Earl of Warwick, Lord Brook, and Lord Say and Seal. They endeavored to procure resolutions to be passed in the colonies, establishing hereditary nobility, and making the magistracy perpetual in certain families. To this, Mr. Cotton, in the name of the court of Massachusetts, replied, "When God blesseth any branch of a noble or generous family with a spirit and gifts fit for government, it would be a taking God's name in vain to put such a talent under a bushel, and a sin against the honor of the magistracy to neglect such in our public elections. But if God should not delight to furnish some of their posterity with gifts fit for magistracy, we should expose them rather to reproach and prejudice, and the commonwealth with them, than exalt them to honor, if we should call them forth when God doth not, to public authority." For these sound reasons, the plan for hereditary nobility was set aside in New England, and these noblemen remained at home, where they belonged to a privileged order.

April 6. 1638. Threatening letter to Winthrop. His reply.

Still determined to humble Massachusetts, the lords of the council now sent a threatening letter to Governor Winthrop, requiring him, on account of the legal proceedings, to send back the charter of that province. To procrastinate, the governor plead that no fair trial had passed; and with great meekness of manner, he made excuses and suggestions, which in fact, contained a counter-menace.

Great change in the affairs of England.

Imminent was now the danger of the colonies; but that Providence which had so often interposed its shield, saved them from ruin, by giving to the cruel Laud and his royal master, subjects of attention at home. Oppression, and perhaps the successful escape and resistance of their brethren in America, had so wrought upon the public mind in England, that matters had now come to the test of open opposition to the government. In Scotland, Charles had attempted to enforce the use of the English liturgy. Riots had followed, and the "Solemn League and Covenant" been made, by which the Scottish people bound themselves to oppose all similar attempts. The tide of popular opinion became resistless.

Laud ruined. 1640. Charles engaged in civil war.

Laud's party was ruined, and himself imprisoned; while the king was engaged in a bloody civil war with his revolted subjects.

Long Parliament favors N. England.

Puritanism now reigned triumphant in England, and its disciples had no inducement to emigrate. Nay, some, as Vane and Hugh Peters, returned. The Long Parliament had begun its rule; and its leaders were desirous to honor, rather than humble New England. But so jealous were the colonies of their liberty, that they declined all interference of a British parliament in their affairs, even if it were to do them good. And when to the Westminster assembly of divines, Cotton, Hooker and Davenport were invited, they, especially Hooker, saw no sufficient cause to leave their flocks in the wilderness. England was no longer their country; but that for which they had suffered, though recent, was already dear to these noble patriots, as the infant to the mother.

1642. Three New England ministers invited to the "assembly of divines" but decline.

Safety without and peace within, to be secured by UNION.

A UNION was meditated. Dangers from without as obviously taught these small republics to confederate for mutual protection, as it did the independent men on board the May-Flower. Internal peace was to be secured, as well as external safety; and an essential part of both these compacts, was the solemn promise of their framers to yield a conscientious obedience to the powers they created.

Two commissioners from each colony.

Two commissioners having been appointed by each of the four colonies, Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut and New Haven, they met at Boston, May, 1643, where they drew up the Articles of Confederation; and all signed them immediately, except the Plymouth delegation. They had not at first been empowered to sign, but soon receiving the requisite authority, the instrument was completed. Rhode Island was not permitted to become a member of the confederacy, unless it became an appendage to Plymouth, which that colony very properly refused. The style adopted was that of the United Colonies of New England. Their little congress, the first of the New World, was to be composed of eight members, two from each colony. They were to assemble yearly in the different colonies by rotation, Massachusetts having, in this respect, a double privilege. They were to consult together on all matters of mutual defense and protection; and for their general well-being as a moral, and especially as a religious community: yet they were not empowered to legislate in such a manner as to abridge the independent action of the separate colonial assemblies.

Articles of confederacy signed at Boston.

Rhode Island rejected.

Commissioners to meet annually.

Although this confederacy was nominally discontinued after about forty years, yet its spirit remained. The colonies had learned to act together, and when common injuries and dangers again required united action, modes and precedents were at hand. Hence we regard the Confederacy of the four New England provinces, as the germ of the Federal Union.

Why this is regarded as the germ of the Federal Union.

Vi-cis-si-tude,

Em-bas-sa-dor.

Em-barrass-ment.

In-tel-li-gi-ble,

In-dict-a-ble

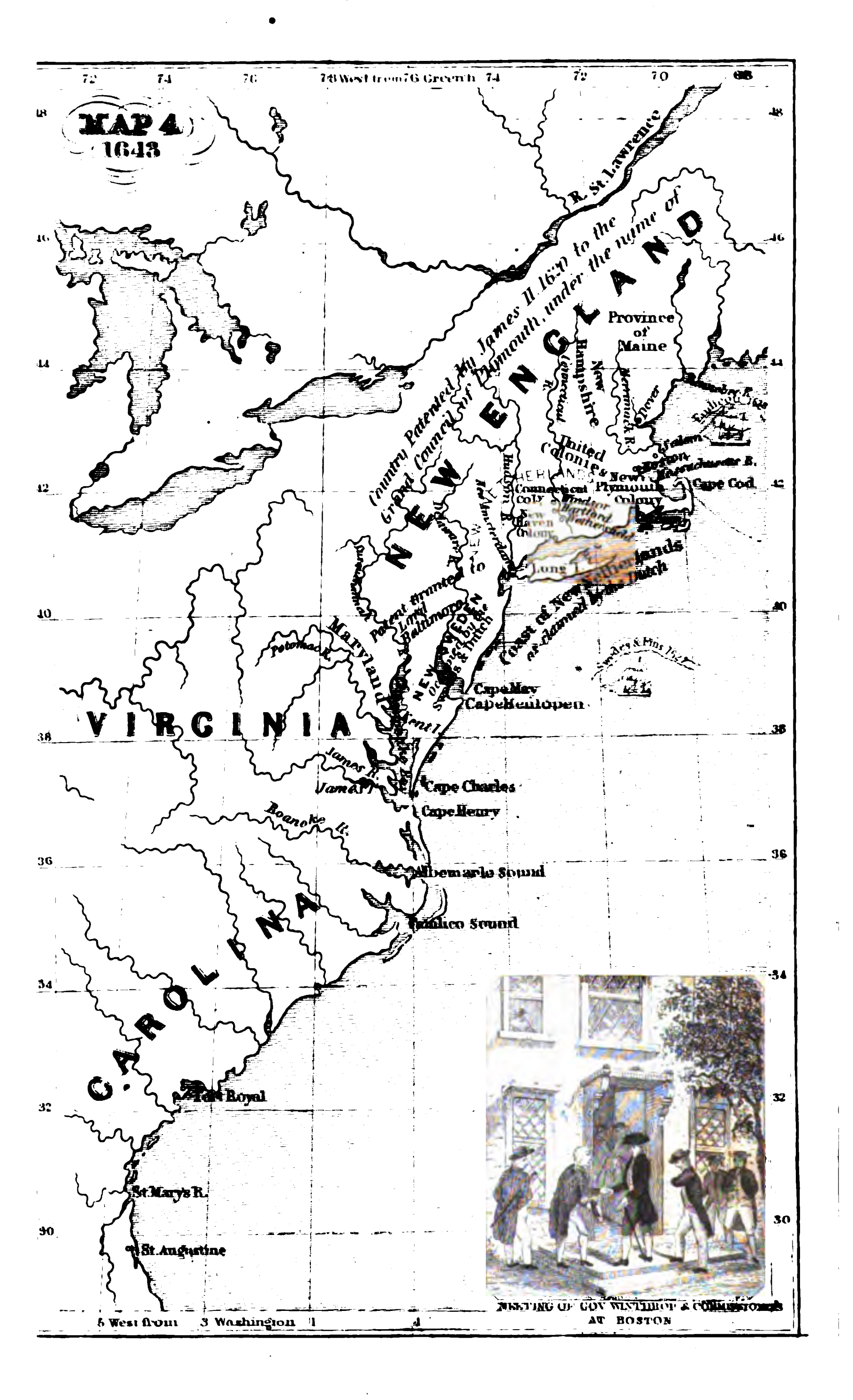
In-flam-ma-ble

Ir-rep-ar-ra-ble

Ir-ras-ci-ble,

..c-tier-a-ble.

Ir-rel-e-vant.



MEETING OF GOV WINTHROP & COMMISSIONERS AT BOSTON

PART II.

FROM 1643 TO 1763.

PERIOD I.

FROM

THE CONFEDERACY OF { 1643 } THE FOUR N. E. COLONIES.
TO
THE NEW CHARTER { 1692. } OF MASSACHUSETTS.

CHAPTER I.

Virginia Prospers.—Second Indian Massacre.—Navigation Act.—Bacon's Rebellion.

DURING the first years of the administration of the cavalier Sir William Berkeley, the Virginians asserted and enjoyed great political liberty, and consequent prosperity. Nor was this checked by the ascendancy of puritanism in England.

1644. April 18. Second Indian massacre.

In 1644, the aged Opechancanough once more struck for the inheritance of his forests, by another attempt to cut off, simultaneously, the scattered colonial population. Scarcely had the warfare begun, and the English aroused to resistance, when the Indians were struck with panic and fled. The Virginians pursued them vigorously, and killed three hundred. The chief was taken prisoner, then inhumanly wounded. His proud spirit suffered from his being kept as a public spectacle, and he welcomed relief by death.

Death of Opechancanough.

1649. Charles I. beheaded. Cromwell.

Charles I. had perished on the scaffold; and the powerful mind of Cromwell led the policy of England. To promote her commercial prosperity, he continued, and perfected a system of colonial oppression in respect to trade, by the celebrated "Navigation Act." By this the colonies were not allowed to find a market for themselves, and sell their produce to the highest bidder, but were obliged to carry it direct to the mother country. The English merchants bought it at their own price; and thus they, and not the colonist, made the profit on the fruits of his industry. At the same time the act prohibited any but English vessels from conveying merchandise to the colonies; thus compelling them to obtain their supplies of the English merchant, of course at such prices as he chose to fix upon his goods. Even free traffic among the colonists was prohibited.

1651. The "navigation act" oppresses the colonies.

Restoration of Charles II.

Charles II. was restored in 1660. Berkeley, after various changes, was at the moment exercising the office of governor

under the authority of the assembly of Virginia, by whom he had been elected. The fires of rejoicing were kindled in the province, and Berkeley changed his style, and issued his mandates in the name of Charles. The monarch afterwards confirmed him in his office.

It operates against Virginia.

But prospects grew dark. Notwithstanding the loyalty of Virginia, to none of the colonies had the suppression of the English monarchy wrought more good; and on none did the restoration operate more disastrously.

Aristocratical and plebeian classes.

The Virginians were divided into two classes. The first comprised the few persons highly educated, and possessed of extensive domains. These looked down from an aristocratical eminence, upon the second and more numerous class of servants and laborers; among whom were some that for crimes in England, had been sent to America. A blind admiration of English usages pervaded the aristocracy; and Berkeley was now placed in a position, where the aspiring prejudices of a weak understanding, carried him far from the track of a sound and benevolent policy.

The people stripped of their rights.

The rights of the people were on all hands restricted. Episcopacy was made a yoke of oppression. The affairs of the church were placed in the hands of vestries,—corporations who held, and often severely used, the right to tax the whole community. The assembly, composed of aristocrats, made themselves permanent, and their salaries large; while the navigation act crippled commerce, and deprived agriculture of its natural stimulus. The right of suffrage was unrestrained, but the power of electing the burgesses being taken away, the meetings of the freemen were of little avail; for their only remaining right was that of petition.

1660. Grant of lands between the Rappahannoc and Potomac. Charles gives away all Virginia for 31 years. **1673.**

A shock was now given by which even the aristocracy were aroused. Charles, with his wonted profligacy, gave away Virginia for the space of thirty-one years. He had, immediately on his accession, granted to Sir William Berkeley, Lord Culpepper and others, that portion of the colony lying between the Rappahannoc and Potomac; and now, to the covetous Lord Culpepper, and to Lord Arlington, another needy favorite, he gave the whole province; nor, though his loyal subjects sent over agents to entreat him, would he be persuaded to revoke the grant.

1675. John Washington kills six Indian chiefs and brings on war.

On the north, the Susquehannah Indians, driven by the Senecas from the head of the Chesapeake, had come down, and having had provocation, were committing depredations upon the banks of the Potomac. John Washington, the great grandfather of the hero of the revolution, with a brother, Lawrence Washington, had emigrated from England, and was living in the county of Westmoreland. Six of the Indian chiefs came to him to treat of peace, he having been appointed Colonel. He wrongfully put them to death. "They came in peace," said Berkeley, "and I would have sent them in peace.

though they had killed my father and mother." Revenge inflamed the minds of the savages, and the midnight war-whoop often summoned to speedy death the defenseless families of the frontier.

1676.

The people make Bacon their leader.

The people awoke in their might. They desired to organize for self defense, and in a peremptory manner demanded for their leader Nathaniel Bacon, a popular young lawyer. Berkeley refused to grant him a commission. New murders occurring, Bacon assumed command, and with his followers departed for the Indian war. Instigated by the aristocracy, Berkeley declared him and his adherents rebels.

Popular liberty prevails.

The people, in a fresh insurrection, required of the governor the election of a new house of burgesses; and he was forced to submit. Bacon having returned from his expedition, was elected a member for Henrico county. Popular liberty now prevailed, and laws were passed with which Berkeley was highly displeased. Bacon, fearing treachery, withdrew to the country. The people rallied around him, and he returned to Jamestown at the head of five hundred armed men.

Civil war between the governor and Bacon's party.

Berkeley met them, and baring his breast, exclaimed, "a fair mark, shoot." Bacon declared that he had come only for a commission, their lives being in danger from the savages. The commission was issued, and Bacon again departed for the Indian warfare. Berkeley in the meantime withdrew to the sea-shore, and there collecting numbers of seamen and loyalists, he came up the river with a fleet, landed his army at Jamestown, and again proclaimed Bacon and his party rebels and traitors.

Jamestown burnt by Bacon's party.

Bacon having quelled the Indians, only a small band of his followers remained in arms. With these he hastened to Jamestown, and Berkeley fled at his approach. In order that its few dwellings should no more shelter their oppressors, the inhabitants set them on fire, the owners of the best houses applying the match with their own hands. Then leaving that endeared and now desolated spot, Bacon pursued the royalists to the Rappahannoc, where the Virginians, hitherto of Berkeley's party, deserted and joined his standard. His enemies were at his mercy; but his exposure to the night air had induced disease, and he died.

October 1. Bacon dies.

The party of Bacon, now without a leader, broke into fragments, and the royalists were again in the ascendant. As the principal adherents of Bacon, hunted and made prisoners, were one by one brought before Berkeley, he adjudged them, with insulting taunts, to instant and ignominious death. Thus perished twenty of the best citizens of Virginia. "The old fool," said Charles II., who when he learned these transactions sent him orders to desist, "the old fool has shed more blood than I did for the murder of my father."

The government of England had become sensible of the grievances sustained by Virginia, and was about to grant her

1677. Virginia receives a new charter. Lord Culpepper's bad administration.

a new charter with extensive privileges; but the news of Bacon's rebellion reaching them, it was withheld. After the restoration of tranquillity, a charter was, however, granted, but with restricted powers; the one suppressed having secured the people from British taxation, and that granted, expressly allowing it.

Lord Culpepper was made governor for life. His administration was one of grinding oppression; his only spring of action being the love of money. His power was great, as he was one of the two who had received from the monarch the grant of the province, and he bought the remaining right of lord Arlington. But Charles II. took occasion to annul his charter, on a report of the discontents of the people, and Virginia again became a royal province.

He loses his patent.

1683. Is succeeded by Lord Howard of Effingham.

Lord Howard, the next governor, was also actuated by the usual sordid motives of the needy nobility who sought office in America. The colonies were oppressed, and the rights of the people were taken away; but a spirit to resist was left.

1684. A Grand Council at Albany.

A common source of fear to all the English colonies was now found in the position of the Indians of the Five Nations. They had subjugated the Hurons, and the smaller tribes in their immediate vicinity, and had stretched their conquests westward toward the Mississippi. They had attacked the Indians of the Alleghanies; and by occasional depredations had spread terror along the frontiers of the English settlements, from Northampton on the Connecticut, to the western boundaries of Maryland and Virginia. This produced a grand council at Albany, in which Lord Howard, and Colonel Dongan, now governor of New York, together with delegates from the northern provinces, met the sachems of the Five Nations. The negotiations were friendly. A great tree of peace was planted, whose branches "should reach the sun," and extend their broad shelter alike to the red man and the white.

The colonies make peace with the Five Nations.

CHAPTER II.

Maryland.—Clayborne's Insurrection.—Civil war.—Restoration of Lord Baltimore.

1645. Insurrection in Maryland.

WHEN the civil war between the king and parliament began, Clayborne espoused the cause of the latter; and in 1645 he returned to Maryland, where he had sufficient influence to raise an insurrection, and compel Governor Calvert to fly to Virginia for safety.

The rebellion was, however, quelled. The next year, Calvert returned, and quiet was restored.

The conflict between the king and parliament, which shook

the government of England, had its various influence on her colonies, according to their religious and political sentiments. Parliament having obtained the supremacy, the New England colonies, which during the contest had espoused its cause, were favored in return; while the southern colonies were viewed with suspicion. Commissioners were consequently appointed in 1651, for the purpose of "reducing and governing the colonies within the Bay of Chesapeake." This gave rise to a civil war between the catholics of Maryland, who adhered to the proprietor; and the protestants, who espoused the cause of parliament. Calvert, the proprietary governor, was at first allowed to retain his station, on consenting to acknowledge the authority of parliament; but he was unable to preserve peace. He and his party were obliged, in 1652, to surrender the government. In an assembly under the victorious party, it was declared that no catholic should have the protection of the laws. Quakers and Episcopalians were also persecuted.

The Long Parliament

1651. Civil war in Maryland.

1652. Government surrendered to Parliament.

Cromwell respected the rights of the proprietors of Maryland, but he would not make himself unpopular with the puritans, who were their opponents. Hence during the whole protectorate, Maryland remained in an unsettled condition. Clayborne with the puritans possessed the actual power, while Lord Baltimore, with only the apparent sanction of Cromwell, appointed Josias Fendall to act as his lieutenant. Yet the same Fendall was the year before engaged in making the famous "disturbance" in Maryland; of which little is known, except that it involved the province in heavy expenses. After delays and difficulties, the whole colony submitted to Fendall as the agent of Lord Baltimore. The representatives of the province convened, and encouraged by Fendall, voted themselves a lawful assembly, without dependence on any power but that of the sovereign of England.

Singular position of Maryland.

1657. Josias Fendall's "disturbance."

Charles II. re-established the proprietary government, and made George Calvert, the eldest son of Lord Baltimore, governor of the province. On the death of his father, he went to England. During his absence the people had made laws extending the right of suffrage. On his return he annulled them. This was displeasing to the people. The clergy of the church of England charged the fault to the predominance of papacy, and the English ministry forbade any Roman catholic to hold an office in the colony.

1675. Death of Cecil, Lord Baltimore.

1681.

Nor did the accession of a catholic king produce any happy results to Lord Baltimore, for James had resolved that all charters should be annulled, and a *quo warranto* was issued against that of Maryland. But the regal tyranny of the monarch was short-lived. His own family united in the conspiracy against him, and "the Revolution" placed his daughter and her husband upon the throne.

1685. James II.

1688. The Revolution. William and Mary.

The agent now appointed by Lord Baltimore convened an assembly, in which he asserted, that the power of the pro-

prietary over them was derived from the Almighty, through the king; and he demanded that they should acknowledge this divine right of kings and lords, by a special oath of allegiance. This the people refused, and the usual vexations of such disagreements succeeded.

CHAPTER III.

New York settled by the Dutch—Taken by the English.

In what respects New York is pre-eminent.

We here commence with the early colonization of a state which ranks first in the union, in respect to wealth and population. It contains the finest river for navigation, possesses the commercial capital, and holds a position, which alone connects New England with the South and West. To give an unbroken sketch of its early history, we shall go back in time, deviating from our general plan.

1609. Holland Independent of Spain.

Holland was one of those kingdoms which the early Fathers of New England were wont to say, "the Lord had sifted for good seed to sow the wilderness." It was just after this nation had succeeded in its struggle against the bloody tyranny of Philip II. of Spain, and established an independent federal government, that Henry Hudson, an Englishman by birth, but in the service of the Dutch East India Company, sailed from the Texel for the purpose of discovering a northwest passage to India; but being unsuccessful, he coasted along the shores of Newfoundland, proceeded south as far as Delaware and Chesapeake Bays, then returning northward, he became the discoverer of the noble river which bears his name.

Sept. 12. Hudson river discovered.

1614. Emigrants found New York.

In 1614, a company of merchants having received permission from the State's General, fitted out a squadron of several ships, and sent them to trade to the country which Hudson had discovered. A rude fort was constructed on Manhattan Island. One of the captains of the squadron, Adrian Blok, sailed through the East river and determined the insulated position of Long Island. He probably entered Connecticut river, and it is fully believed that he examined the coast as far as Cape Cod.

Foundation of the Dutch claim to Connecticut.

1615. Fort Orange, i. e. Albany, founded.

The next year the adventurers sailed up the Hudson, and on a little island, just below the present position of Albany, they built a small fort, naming it fort Orange. But no families had emigrated. The Dutch were then merely traders. Afterwards they changed their location, and fixed where Albany now stands.

1619. to 1621. Disciples of Grotius emigrate.

Holland was torn by factions. Grotius, the most enlightened of her sons, was sentenced to imprisonment for life, and

the disciples of his school were now ready to emigrate. To promote trade, the "West India Company" was formed, with full powers. The willing settlers were sent over. Cottages clustered around Manhattan fort, now called New Amsterdam, and Peter Minuets was made its first governor.

1621. Treaty with the Pilgrims.

In 1627, an envoy was sent from New Netherlands to New Plymouth; friendly civilities were interchanged, and a treaty of peace and commerce made with the Pilgrims.

1629. College of Nineteen grant manors and soon dispose of the best lands.

The State's General interposed, and made a new company, styled "the College of Nineteen." They decreed that whoever should conduct fifty families to New Netherlands, the name now given by the Dutch to the whole country between Cape Cod and Cape May, should become the patroon, or lord of the manor, with absolute property in the lands he should colonize, to the extent of eight miles on each side of the river on which he should settle; and as far interior as the situation might require. The soil however must be purchased of the Indians. "The company," it was stipulated, "would furnish the manor with negroes, if the traffic should prove lucrative."

1630. The Van Renselaer patent.

Many settlements were now made, and a great part of the best land was soon appropriated. The Indian chiefs conveyed to the excellent Van Renselaer the tract around Fort Orange to the mouth of the Mohawk, and the College of Nineteen gave a patent. Six years afterwards the grant was extended twelve miles further to the South.

1631. The Dutch settle on the Delaware.

De Vries conducted from Holland a colony which settled Lewistown, near the Delaware; a small fort called Nassau, having been previously erected by the Dutch.

Minuets succeeded by Van Twiller.

In consequence of disagreements among the company in Holland, Peter Minuets returned, having been superseded by Walter Van Twiller. Minuets became the leader of a colony of Swedes.

1633. Swedes settle on the Delaware.

The Dutch were now curtailed of the territory which they claimed on Connecticut river, by the settlement of Hooker and others; and also, by the subjects of Gustavus Adolphus led by Minuets, of that on the banks of the Delaware.

Keift succeeds Van Twiller.

Difficulties also arose with the savages. Governor Keift, who had succeeded Van Twiller, had an inconsiderable quarrel with the Manhattan Indians. Notwithstanding, when the Mohawks came down upon them, they collected in groups, and begged him to shelter and assist them. Instead of this, the barbarous Keift sent his troops, and at night murdered them all—men, women and helpless babes—to the number of a hundred! Indian vengeance awoke, as well it might, and its tokens sped quickly from tribe to tribe.

1643. His barbarity to the natives.

No English family within reach of the Algonquins was safe. The Dutch villages were in flames around, and the people fleeing to Holland. Near New York, the family of Anne Hutchinson, and many others, were massacred; and

Vengeance of the Indians.

in New England, all was jeopardy and alarm. The Dutch troops defended themselves, having placed at their head Captain Underhill, who had been expelled from Massachusetts. At this time is supposed to have occurred a bloody battle at Strickland's plain, in Greenwich, Connecticut; of which, however, the details seem strangely lost.

Battle of Strickland's plain.

1645. Peace made by the mediation of the Mohawks.

The Mohawks who were friendly to the Dutch, at length interfered, and the congregated Indian sachems met in council with the whites, on the ground of the battery in New-York. "The tree of peace was planted, and the tomahawk buried beneath its shade."

1648. Death of Keift.

Keift, execrated by all the colonies, was remanded to Holland; and, on his return, perished by shipwreck on the coast of Wales.

1650. Governor Stuyvesant visits Hartford.

Stuyvesant had succeeded to his office before his departure. He went to Hartford, and there entered into negotiations. The Dutch claims to Connecticut were relinquished, and Long Island was divided between the two parties.

1664. Contest between the Swedes and Dutch.

The Dutch had built fort Casimir on the site of Newcastle, in Delaware. The Swedes conceiving this to be an encroachment on their territory, Rising, their governor, by an unworthy stratagem, made himself its master. In 1655, Stuyvesant, acting by orders received from Holland, embarked at New Amsterdam with six hundred men, and sailing up the Delaware, he subjugated the Swedes. New Sweden was heard of no more; but the settlers were secured in their rights of private property, and their descendants are among the best of our citizens.

Swedes conquered, and the name of New Sweden lost.

1654. The people claim civil rights.

Many emigrants now came to New Netherlands, from among the oppressed, the discontented, and the enterprising of other colonies, and of European nations. At length the inhabitants sought a share of political power. They assembled, and by their delegates demanded that no laws should be passed, except with the consent of the people. Stuyvesant very unceremoniously let them know that he was not to be directed "by a few ignorant subjects;" and he forthwith dissolved the assembly. The "Nineteen" highly approved his course; and charged him not "to allow the people to indulge such visionary dreams, as that taxes should not be imposed without their consent."

Their petition rudely rejected by Stuyvesant.

But popular liberty, though checked here, prevailed in the adjoining provinces; and they consequently grew more rapidly, and crowded upon the Dutch. The Indians made war upon some of their villages, especially Esopus, now Kingston; and New Netherlands could not obtain aid from Holland. The States General had given the whole concern into the hands of the Nineteen, they to pay all expenses; and this council refused to make needful advances.

New Netherlands in trouble.

March 12, 1664. Charles II. grants New York to his brother.

In the meantime, Charles II. had granted to his brother James, then Duke of York and Albany, the territory from the

banks of the Connecticut to those of the Delaware. Sir Robert Nichols, a confidential officer of his household, was dispatched with a fleet to take possession. Nichols brought over commissioners to New England, and landed them at Boston. Taking in from Long Island the younger Winthrop, now governor of Connecticut, he sailed to New Amsterdam, and suddenly demanded of the astonished Stuyvesant to give up the place. Winthrop advised him to do so, but the faithful Dutchman replied that a tame surrender "would be reproved in the father-land;" and he would have defended his post if he could. But the body of the people preferred the English rule to that of the Dutch, the privileges of Englishmen having been promised them. Nichols therefore entered, took possession in the name of his master, and called the place New York.

Sends Colonel Nichols.

New Amsterdam surrendered to the English. Sept. 3, 1664.

A part of the English fleet, under Sir George Carteret, sailed up the Hudson to fort Orange, which surrendered and was named Albany. The Dutch fort on the Delaware was also taken by the English. The rights of property were respected, and a treaty was made with the Five Nations. The whole line of coast from Acadia to Florida, was now in possession of the English.

September. Fort Orange and the forts on the Delaware surrendered.

CHAPTER IV.

Pennsylvania and its Founder.

The great and good man, to whom Pennsylvania owes its origin, was the son of Vice Admiral, Sir William Penn; and was born in London in 1644. He was regarded as a child of great promise. At eleven years of age, being, as he relates, at Oxford school, he was suddenly surprised "with an inward comfort, and an external glory in the belief of God, and his communion with his soul." Nothing, through a long life, ever shook his faith in the reality of this divinely communicated "inner light."

1644. Birth of Penn.

His conversion.

At fifteen he entered Oxford College; but though an excellent scholar—his religious sensibilities having been farther excited by the preaching of Thomas Loe, a Quaker, he was led to some irregularities as a student, involving a contempt of the authority, which caused his expulsion. His father, disappointed in the ambitious hopes which the uncommon talents of his son had raised, used every means, not excepting fatherly chastisement, to cure him of what he considered his whimsical obstinacy. All his efforts failing, he turned him from his door. But a generous nature, with the persua-

1659. He enters Oxford College.

PART II. PERIOD I. CHAP. IV.

sions of his wife, soon made him relent, and restore his son to his favor.

1662. Penn travels on the continent.

William was next sent to travel in France and Italy, where he spent two years. He returned with an elegant polish of manners, which delighted his father. But the admiral soon found, that wherever his religion was concerned, his son had the same peculiar views, and the same unbending spirit as before.

1666. His father sends him to Ireland.

His father next sent him to Ireland, in hopes that the splendid court of his friend, the Earl of Ormond, now Lord Lieutenant of that kingdom, would make him a man of the world. Having the agency of his father's large estates in Ireland, William applied himself to business with so much ability, that his father was delighted with his success. But he again heard the preacher, Thomas Loe, and became a decided member of the Quaker Society, and as such, he was persecuted and imprisoned. His father hearing of this, recalled him to England. Mortified at his oddities, but proud of his talents, the impassioned father entreats and beseeches,—even with tears. The affectionate son struggles between his love for his earthly, and that for his Heavenly Parent; and decides that he must, at whatever cost, be in subjection to the Father of his spirit.

He again hears Thomas Loe.

1667. His father recalls him.

Again vainly attempts to influence him to renounce quakerism.

The admiral is willing to endure much, and finally proposes to compromise, and allow his son's peculiarities, provided he will consent partially to wave the Quaker custom of wearing the hat in every human presence; and uncover his head before the King, the Duke of York, and himself. Penn reflected that his spiritual strength and comfort depended upon obedience to his inward monitor. Christianity taught that the outward act should never belie the heart; and "hat-worship," he believed could not otherwise be practiced. He therefore refused his father's proffer, and was again excluded from the shelter of his roof.

1670. Penn a preacher and author.

Penn now became a preacher and an author; and was ere long cast into prison for his violation of the severe laws respecting public worship; and though released by his father's mediation, he was soon re-committed. His fearless eloquence on one occasion, gained the jury to his cause. He was accused before the Mayor and Recorder of London, of holding a private meeting with his brethren, for religious worship; and though the court directed, threatened, and kept the jury two days without "meat, drink, fire or tobacco," these twelve bold jurors would not find a bill against the prisoner. For this the court fined them, and cast them into prison for their fine. Such was the spirit of the times.

Example of English trial by jury in the 17th century.

Recall of Penn. Death of his father.

Admiral Penn, when his health failed, recalled his beloved son. He gave a charge on his death-bed to his friend, the Duke of York, who accepted the office, to watch the fate of

William, and, as far as possible, shield him from the evils to which his peculiar tenets must expose him.

Soon after his father's death, Penn is again in prison. But notwithstanding this, we soon find him allying himself in marriage to a family of high respectability, and to a woman of extraordinary intelligence, beauty and goodness. That he had now the public confidence, also appears from the trust reposed in him by the assignees of Edward Billinge, while the high order of his talents was manifested by his legislation for the two Jerseys.

1672. He marries Gulielma, daughter of Sir William Springett.

His thoughts were by this turned to America; and the sufferings of his dear persecuted brethren, led him to plans of colonizing there, which he proceeded to put into operation. His father had left claims to the amount of sixteen thousand pounds against the crown; and Penn, finding that there was a tract yet ungranted, north of Lord Baltimore's patent, solicited and obtained of Charles II., a charter of the country, "which was bounded on the east by the river Delaware, extending westward through five degrees of longitude, and stretching from twelve miles northward of Newcastle, to the forty-third degree of latitude, and was limited on the south by a circle of twelve miles drawn around Newcastle, to the beginning of the fortieth degree of north latitude." It was called by the king, Pennsylvania.

1681. March 4. Penn receives the grant of Pennsylvania.

Soon after the date of this grant, two other conveyances were made to Penn by the Duke of York; one of which embraced the present state of Delaware, and was called the "Territories." The other was a release from the Duke, of any claims to Pennsylvania.

Obtains Delaware.

He next prepared a liberal constitution of civil government, for those who should become his colonists. Having sent out three ships, loaded with emigrants, and consigned to the care of his nephew, Colonel Markham, he left Chester on board the Welcome, and with one hundred settlers, sailed for his province, his benevolent heart full of hope and courage.

Sept. 9, 1682, Penn sails for America.

He landed at Newcastle, and was joyfully received by the Swedes and Dutch, now amounting to two or three thousand. The next day, at their court-house, he received from the agent of the Duke of York, the surrender of The Territories. He then, with blended dignity and affection, assured the delighted throngs, that their rights should be respected, and their happiness regarded.

Arrives at Newcastle, October 28.

In honor of his friend, the Duke, he next visited New York; but immediately returning, he went to Upland, which he named Chester. Here a part of the pioneers, with Markham, had begun a settlement, and here Penn called the first assembly.

Visits New York. Names Chester.

It consisted of an equal number from the province and The Territories. By its first act, all the inhabitants, of whatever extraction, were naturalized. Religious freedom was established among the people, but all officers and electors

December 4. The first assembly attend to business.

1682.

must be believers in Jesus Christ. Penn was the first legislator, whose criminal code admitted the humane principle, that the object of punishment is not merely to prevent crime, but to reform the offender. Hence, his code seldom punished with death. The assembly sat three days, and passed fifty-nine laws; an evidence that the time which belonged to the public, was not here consumed either in personal abuse or pompous declamation.

Pass in three days fifty-nine laws.

Penn visits Lord Baltimore.

Penn next paid a visit of friendship and business to Lord Baltimore at West River. Though they differed on the question of boundaries, yet friendly feeling pervaded the interview.

Directions had been given to Colonel Markham, who preceded Penn, that the natives should be treated kindly and fairly; and accordingly no land had been entered upon but by their consent. They had also been notified that Penn, to whom they gave the name of Onas, was to kindle a council fire at a certain time, in order to meet and establish with them a treaty of perpetual peace. On the morning of the appointed day, under a huge elm at Shackamaxon, now a suburb of Philadelphia, William Penn, majestic in person, beautiful in countenance, graceful, though plain in manner and attire, his only ornament being a sash of pale blue, stood and held in his hand the roll of peace. Sending around his loving glance, he sees "far as his eyes can carry," among the trees of the forest, its painted and plumed children gathering towards him. The chiefs come forward and half encircle him. The principal sachem puts upon his own head a horned chaplet, the symbol of his power. At once every warrior lays down his bow and tomahawk, and seats himself upon the ground. The grand chief then announces to Onas that the nations are ready to hear his words, believing him to be an angel sent to them by the Great Spirit.

Holds his great council with the Indians.

Indian ceremonies.

Penn gave them instructions, and solemnly appealed to the Almighty who knew his inmost thoughts, that it was the ardent desire of his heart to do them good. "He would not call them brothers or children, but they should be to him and his, as half of the same body." The chiefs then gave their pledge for themselves, and for their tribes, "to live in love with him and his children, as long as the sun and moon should endure." The treaty was then executed, the chiefs marking down the emblems of their several tribes. The purchases of Markham were confirmed, and others made.

Protestations which were proved true by actions.

The treaty completed.

After this, Penn went to a villa which his nephew had built for his residence, opposite the site of Burlington, and called Pennsbury. Here he gave directions for laying out towns and counties, and in conjunction with the surveyor, Holme, drew the plan of his capital, and in the spirit of "brotherly love," named it Philadelphia.

Penn lays out and names Philadelphia.

Vessels came fast with new settlers, until twenty-two, bearing two thousand persons, had arrived. Some came so

Throngs of settlers.

late in the fall, that they could not be provided with house-room in the rude dwellings of the new city; and "the caves" were dug in the banks of the river to receive them. Providence fed them by flocks of pigeons, and the fish of the rivers; and the Indians, regarding them as the children of Onas, hunted to bring them game.

March 10, 1683. A second assembly.

Penn again met the legislature, and gave them legal assurances that they should have liberty "to amend or add to their charter," (the fundamental compact between himself and them,) "whenever the public good required."

Lord Baltimore claims the Territories.

The boundaries between Pennsylvania and Maryland had not yet been adjusted by the two proprietors; and Lord Baltimore attempted to possess himself of The Territories by ejecting the settlers on their refusal to pay him quit-rent. Penn remonstrated. The general court of Pennsylvania strongly asserted his claim, and The Territories remained under his jurisdiction.

August 4. 1684. Penn embarks for England.

Penn had left beyond the ocean his beloved family. Letters from England spoke of the sufferings of his quaker brethren, and he believed that he might exercise an influence there to check persecution. He embarked on the fourth of August, and wrote on board the ship an affectionate adieu to his province, which he sent on shore before he sailed. He said, "And thou, Philadelphia, virgin of the province! my soul prays for thee; that, faithful to the God of thy mercies, in the life of righteousness, thou mayest be preserved unto the end!"

His farewell to Philadelphia.

CHAPTER V.

New Jersey—its Settlement, and various Claimants.

1664. New Jersey granted to Berkeley and Carteret.

Previous to the surrender of the Dutch, the Duke of York made a grant of that part of his patent lying between the Hudson and Delaware, to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. This tract was called New Jersey, in compliment to Sir George, who had been governor of the isle of Jersey. In 1664, before the grant to Berkeley and Carteret was known, three persons from Long Island purchased of the natives a tract of the country, which was called Elizabethtown, where a settlement was commenced. Other towns were soon settled by emigrants from the colonies, and from Europe. Thus opposite claims were created, which caused much discord between the proprietors and inhabitants. In 1665, Berkeley and Carteret formed a constitution for the colony, and appointed Philip Carteret governor. He made Elizabethtown the seat of government.

Elizabethtown previously settled.

PART II. PERIOD I. CHAP. V.

1672. Disputes between the settlers and proprietors.

In 1672, the disputes of the settlers became violent. The inhabitants of Elizabethtown, who had purchased the soil of the natives, refused to pay rent to the proprietors, and carried their opposition so far, as to expel the governor and substitute his son. The father returned to England, and obtained from the proprietors such conditions as quieted the colonists; and thus the proprietary government was restored.

Lord Berkeley sells his right.

Berkeley and Carteret had heretofore held the province as joint property, but the former becoming weary with the care of an estate which yielded him neither honor nor profit, sold his share to Edward Byllinge. That gentleman, becoming involved in debt, found it necessary to assign over his property for the benefit of his creditors; and William Penn was one of his assignees.

Penn causes New Jersey to be divided. 1676.

New Jersey was now jointly held by Sir George Carteret, and Penn, as agent for the assignees of Byllinge. But Penn perceiving the inconvenience of holding joint property, it was mutually agreed to separate the country into East and West Jersey; Carteret receiving the sole proprietorship of East Jersey, and Penn and his associates, that of West Jersey.

The "concessions."

Penn in the first place divided West Jersey into one hundred shares, which were separately disposed of, and then, in that spirit of righteousness whereby he won the confidence of all, he drew up the articles called "the concessions;" by which the proprietors ceded to the planters the privileges of free civil government, expressly declaring "we put the power in the people." He examined Indian claims, and by fair purchase extinguished them. Religion was left free, and imprisonment for debt prohibited. Such was his influence, that in two years he sent over eight hundred new settlers, mostly quakers,—persons of excellent character, and good condition.

East Jersey purchased in 1683, by twenty-four quakers.

In 1682, East Jersey, the property of Carteret, being exposed to sale, it was purchased by twelve quakers, under the auspices of Penn. In 1683, the proprietors doubled their number, and obtained a new patent from the Duke of York.

The persecuted find a refuge in East Jersey.

East Jersey was now free from religious intolerance. This was the era of those civil wars of Great Britain in which Graham of Claverhouse, and other royal officers, hunted the Cameronian Scots like wild beasts. Hundreds of the sufferers now came to East Jersey, and there, bringing their industrious and frugal habits, they were blessed with security, abundance, and content.

1678. Andross usurps the government of the Jerseys.

Sir Edmund Andros, when governor of New York, under pretence of the claims of the Duke of York, usurped the government both in East and West Jersey, and laid a tax upon all goods imported, and upon the property of all who came to settle in the country.

Penn restores it, 1681, to the proprietors.

Penn received complaints of these abuses, and with such strength of argument opposed the claims of the duke, that the commissioners to whom the case was referred adjudged the

duties to be illegal and oppressive, in consequence of which, in 1680 they were removed, and the proprietors reinstated in the government. Edward Byllinge was appointed their governor; and the next year, 1681, he summoned the first general assembly held in West Jersey. In 1682, the people, by the advice of Penn, amended their government. Contrary to the wishes of the proprietor, the next year they proceeded to elect their own governor.

1681. First general assembly.

CHAPTER VI.

Miantonomoh.—Rhode Island and Connecticut obtain Charters.—Elliot, the Apostle of the Indians.

1643. Miantonomoh seeks the life of Uncas,

MIANTONOMOH sought the life of Uncas, because he was aware that he could not make him unite in a conspiracy, which he was exciting against the whites. A Pequod whom he hired, wounded the Mohegan chief, and then fled to him for protection. He refused to surrender the assassin to the demand of the court at Hartford, but dispatched him with his own hand. Again he practiced to take the life of Uncas by means of assassination, and again failed.

Miantonomoh then drew out his warriors openly against him, in violation of a treaty to which the authorities of Connecticut were a party. Uncas met and vanquished him by a stratagem, and took him prisoner; but he resigned him to the court. They deliberated, and then returned the noble savage to his captor. Uncas killed him, without torture, but with circumstances of cannibal barbarity.

but loses his own.

During the supremacy of the Long Parliament, puritanism was favored, and the New England colonies enjoyed a happy season of liberty and peace.

1643. Rhode Island obtains a charter by the help of Vane.

In 1643, Roger Williams was sent to England as agent for the Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, to obtain a charter of civil government. He found the affairs of the colonies in the hands of the earl of Warwick, and seventeen commissioners, who had been appointed by parliament, with much the same powers as had been given to those appointed by the king, in 1634. By the assistance of Vane, now one of the commissioners, he obtained from them a free charter of incorporation, dated March, 1644. The form of government provided by this incorporation, was essentially similar to that established in the adjacent colonies.

1651. John Clarke and Williams procure another.

Yet the state was unsettled. Coddington had received from England power to govern the Islands. Williams, in conjunction with John Clarke, recrossed the ocean, and finding a "sheet anchor" in Vane, he procured an extended

charter including the islands, and confirming the limits of the state as they now exist.

R. Island first in religious freedom.

Rhode Island, if not great in territory, is rich in the fame of having been the first to set the example, since followed by the nation at large, of entire "soul-liberty" in matters of religion.

Difference between the noble and the base in mind.

Williams lived to old age, honored and beloved. Yet did he meet, at times, the ingratitude which has almost invariably followed the benefactors of mankind. The people who owed their all to him, became on one occasion his foes, and abused him for being too generous, themselves in this case not being the recipients. Williams wisely and cheerfully took his own part, and plainly told them, that they were but finding "a sponge wherewith to wipe out their own obligations." If the sun shines upon the planets, we cannot therefore expect those opaque bodies will shine back in the same manner upon the sun. Those people, doubtless, considered that it was the part of Williams to shine, and theirs to be shone upon.

1659. Cromwell succeeds the Long Parliament.

The Long Parliament had done evil by assuming to make their own places permanent; and the good which they effected, could not save them from political destruction. After bringing Charles I. to the block, they were themselves superseded by Cromwell's single authority. The restrictions on colonial commerce, which so unjustly oppressed the provinces for the benefit of the parent country, were, as has been seen, embodied by his master-mind in the celebrated "Navigation Act."

1651. Navigation act recapitulated.

By this, be it remembered, the colonies were obliged to sell all their productions to English merchants, and purchase from them all needed supplies; so that the colonist not only was prohibited from finding his own market, and selling to the highest bidder, what his own industry had produced,—but he was also forbidden to supply his wants, where he could find the most favorable terms. The commerce of the colonies was thus "cut with a double edge;" and these restrictive laws were passed one after another, to the number of nineteen.

1663. Further oppressive restrictions.

The one of 1663, did not allow the provincials to be the carriers of their own produce, but required them to employ British shipping; another, in 1672, forbade the free trade of the colonies with each other. The provinces, especially those of New England, considering these laws as wholly unjust, and also objecting on the ground that they were passed in a parliament where the colonies were not represented, they evaded them, and as far as possible, chartered their own vessels, and traded wherever they pleased.

1662. Connecticut sends Winthrop to England, who obtains a charter.

When Charles II. was restored, his power was acknowledged in New England; but the colonies had melancholy forebodings. Yet the authorities of Connecticut, by the eminent Winthrop, even at this difficult period, successfully applied to the court of England for a charter. They plead, that they had obtained their lands by purchase from the

natives, and by conquest from the Pequods, who made on them a war of extermination; and they had mingled their labor with the soil. The aged Lord Say and Seal, moved the Earl of Manchester in their behalf. Winthrop appeared before the king with such a gentle dignity of carriage, and such appropriate conversation, as won the royal favor. It is said he brought to the mind of Charles some interesting recollections, by the present of a ring, which had been given to his grandfather as a pledge, by an ancestor of the monarch.

The younger Winthrop.

1662.

The charter which Winthrop obtained, granting privileges greater than any other which the government of England had given, was worded in Connecticut. The wise fathers there, did not send their agent without his business being thoroughly prepared.*

Great privileges of Connecticut charter.

Union of New Haven with Connecticut.

1665.

The liberal charter, granted by the king, included New Haven. That province, however, had not been consulted, and justly felt aggrieved; as a relinquishment of its separate existence was thereby required. But at length, the great expediency of the measure becoming fully apparent, the union of New Haven with Connecticut was completed. Winthrop was chosen governor, and received seventeen successive annual elections.

Winthrop governor.

1664.

Four commissioners

Colonel Nichols, who was sent over to command the expedition against New Netherlands, was one of four commissioners, who had been appointed by the king, not only for the reduction of the Dutch, but for humbling the colonies. For this purpose, they were empowered to hear and determine all matters of complaint, and to examine and regulate them, as seemed for the good of the king's service.

The colonists considered this appointment an invasion of their chartered rights; yet no direct opposition was made to the proceedings of the commissioners, except by Massachusetts, whose firmness in resisting every exercise of their power, deeply offended them; and two of their number, Carr and Cartwright, left the country in high displeasure. Cartwright was taken prisoner by the Dutch on his passage home, and Carr died the next day after his arrival, or immediate measures would probably have been taken against that colony.

Nichols, Maverick, Carr and Cartwright sent to rule the colonies.

This was the period of the labors of John Elliot. When Hooker, in the days of his persecution, had kept a school at Little Baddow, in England, the youthful Elliot had been his usher, and a resident in his family; and to this blessed pe-

John Elliot.

* From Hooker's management, may have originated a system of unwritten law, which, whether good or bad, has for many years past become incorporated with the political usages of this country; and is known as the "caucus system." Hooker's maxim was, "a church within a church," the business for which the many were to be called together, first digested and prepared by the few. Mr. Stone, who was Mr. Hooker's colleague in the ministry, had an expression for the same plan, when, in an advanced state of progress, the matter in question had come before the full assembly of the persons who were to decide it. His idea of perfection was, "a speaking aristocracy in the face of a silent democracy."

riod, the "apostle of the Indians" traced the spiritual light which shone so brightly upon his missionary career.

1631. Arrives in Boston.

He came to Boston in his twenty-seventh year. He was settled at Roxbury in 1632, having been previously married to a lady well suited by the excellence of her Christian spirit, to sympathize in his devout aspirings, and by a wise prudence, to supply his lack of care for the physical wants of himself and family.

1646. His first meeting with the Indians at Nonantum, or Newtown.

Elliot had beheld with pity the ignorance and spiritual darkness of the savages, and his fixed determination was to devote himself to their conversion. He first spent some years in the study of their language. The General Court of the province had passed an order requesting the clergy to report concerning the best means of spreading the gospel among the natives; and Elliot took this time to meet with the Indians at Nonantum, a few miles west of Boston. His meetings for religious worship and discourse were frequent, and in different places, as favorable opportunities could be found, or made. His efforts to teach the natives the arts and usages of civilized life, were also unremitted and arduous; "for civility," it was said, "must go hand in hand with Christianity." These efforts and their effects, exhibit the children of the forest in a most interesting point of view, and show the transforming power of the gospel. Their dispositions and lives underwent a real change. Some of their numbers became teachers, and aided in the conversion of others.

Many Indians converted.

Natick. **1654.**

In 1654, an Indian church was collected at Natick, a town having been previously built.

1657. Elliot completes his translation of the Bible.

In 1655, Elliot had completed his translation of the New Testament into the Indian language, and in two years more the old was added. Thus the mighty labor of learning the difficult tongue of the Indians, of making from its oral elements a written language, and that of translating the whole Bible, was, by zeal and persevering labor, accomplished. It was the first Bible printed in America. But both the Indian and his language are now extinct, and Elliot's Bible is a mere literary curiosity. In the expense, he had been much assisted by an English "Society for the Propagation of the Gospel."

Number of praying Indians. **1674.**

In 1674, there were fourteen towns of "praying Indians," and six gathered churches. The Indian converts had much to encounter. Their great chiefs hated Christianity; for although it made their subjects willing to do the right, yet it set them to reflect, and thus to find out that there was a right for them to have, as well as to do; and this tended to subvert the absolute arbitrary sway, which the sachem, however he might allow it to slumber, did actually possess; and which he naturally felt unwilling to relinquish. Of these chiefs, Philip of Pokanoket was peculiarly the foe of the Christian religion. If he had embraced it, the fortunes of his family and his race might have been changed.

Christianity hated by the great sachems.

CHAPTER VII.

King Philip's War,—Its dreadful consequences.—Destruction of the Narragansetts and Pokanokets.

PART II.
PERIOD I.
CHAP. VII.

PHILIP was the younger of the two sons of Massasoit. He had become embittered against the English by circumstances attending the death of his brother, which he ascribed to them; and though he was thus left sole chieftain of the Pokanokets, yet he deeply felt his loss, and bitterly resented it.

Indians generally jealous and hostile.

The extension of the whites had now alarmed the savage nations. They remembered that their ancestors had reigned sole lords of the forest. Now, their hunting-grounds were abridged; and the deer, the bear, and other animals on which they depended for subsistence, were frightened away by the hum of civilization. The new race, whom their fathers received when a poor and feeble band, were now gradually spreading themselves over the land, and assuming to be its sovereigns. Nothing remained to the native savage, but to be driven by degrees from the occupations and possessions of his forefathers; or to arouse, and by a mighty effort, extirpate the intruders.

Narragansetts under Conanchet.

This was the spirit which, emanating from Philip, spread itself throughout the various Indian tribes. The Narragansetts, so long friendly, were now under the rule of Conanchet, the son of Miantonomoh, and doubtless he remembered the benefactions which his father had bestowed upon the whites, and their refusal to hear his last plea for mercy.

Sausaman's disclosure and death.

Philip had not proceeded farther than to work upon the minds of the Indians by secret machinations, when Sausaman, one of the natives whom Elliot had instructed in Christianity, gave to the English intimations of his designs. Sausaman was soon after murdered. On investigation, the Plymouth court found that the murder was committed by three of Philip's most intimate friends; and forthwith they caused them to be executed.

1675. June 24. Swansey attacked.

The savages no longer delayed; but on the 20th of June, Philip's warriors began by attacking Swansey, in New Plymouth. The colonists appeared in defense of the town, and the Indians fled. Receiving fresh troops from Boston, the united English force marched into the Indian towns, which on their approach were deserted. But the route of the savages was marked by the ruin of buildings which had been burned, and by the heads and hands of the English, which were fixed upon poles by the way-side. The troops finding that they could not overtake them, returned to Swansey.

The commissioners of the colonies meeting at Boston, were

1675. July 5. Congress raise an army.

unanimous in deciding that the war must be prosecuted with vigor, and each colony furnish means, according to its ability. Of the thousand men which they determined to send immediately into the field, Massachusetts was to furnish five hundred and twenty-seven, Connecticut three hundred and fifteen, and Plymouth one hundred and fifty-eight. Subsequently the commissioners voted to raise double this number.

They compel the Narragansetts to make peace.

The army was sent from Swansey into the country of the Narragansetts, and negotiating, sword in hand, with that confederacy, on the 15th of July, a treaty of peace was concluded. The commissioners, among other stipulations, agreed to give forty coats to any of the Narragansetts who should bring Philip alive, twenty for his head, and two for each of his subjects, delivered as prisoners.

Philip attacked at Pocasset.

The Indian king retreated with his warriors to a swamp at Pocasset, near Montaup. There, on the 18th, the colonists attacked them, but gained no decisive advantage. Philip then made his head-quarters with the Nipmucks; but by the spirit of his destructive movements, he seemed to be everywhere present.

Battle at Brookfield.

Captain Hutchinson, with a company of horse, was sent to treat with those Indians, but being drawn into an ambush, near Brookfield, he was mortally wounded, and sixteen of his company were killed. The enemy then burned the town.

Sept. 18. Battle of Bloody Brook.

Intending to collect a magazine and garrison at Hadley, Captain Lathrop, with a corps of the choicest young men, selected from the vicinity of Boston, was sent to transport a quantity of corn from Deerfield to that place. They were suddenly attacked by the Indians, and though they fought with great bravery, they were almost all cut off. The brook, by which they fought, flowed red, and to this day is called "Bloody Brook."

October. Springfield burned.

In October, the Springfield Indians, who had previously been friendly, concerted with the hostile tribes, and set fire to that town. While its flames were raging, they attacked Hadley.

Dreadful condition of the Colonies.

Dreadful beyond description was now the condition of the colonists. The object of the Indians was totally to exterminate them, and aimed equally at the lives of the armed and the defenseless. They were withheld by no restraints of religion, and their customs of war led them to the most shocking barbarities. The previous state of peace and security, in the course of which, the whites had spread themselves over a large extent of country, and mingled their dwellings with those of the Indians, rendered their situation more perilous. The Indians, thus acquainted with their haunts and habits, ambushed the private path, rushed with the dreadful war-whoop upon the worshiping assembly; and during the silence of midnight, set fire to the lonely dwelling, and butchered its inhabitants. When the father of the family was to go forth in

The American savage a terrible foe.

1675.

the morning, he knew he might meet his death-shot as he opened his door, from some foe concealed behind his fences, or in his barn: or he might go, and return to find his children murdered during his absence. When the mother lay down at night, with her infant cradled on her arm, she knew that before morning it might be plucked from her bosom, and its brains dashed out before her eyes. Such were ever the consequences of savage warfare; but at no time during the settlement of the country, were they so extensively felt as during the year through which this war continued.

Conanchet violates the treaty.

Conanchet again manifested hostility. In violation of the treaty, he not only received Philip's warriors, but aided their operations against the English. On the 18th of December, one thousand troops were collected from the different colonies. Captain Church commanded the division from Massachusetts, Major Treat that from Connecticut, and Josiah Winslow, of Plymouth, was in supreme command. After a stormy night passed in the open air, they waded through the snow sixteen miles; and about one o'clock on the afternoon of the 19th, they arrrived near the enemy's fortress.

His fort in Kingston, R. Island.

Dec. 19. is destroyed.

It was on a rising ground in the midst of a swamp, and was so fortified with palisades and thick hedges, that only by crossing a log which lay over a ravine, could it be approached. The snow was deep, but the footsteps of the whites were providentially directed to this entrance, and though commanded by a block-house fortified and manned, the officers led the men directly across the narrow and dangerous bridge. The first were killed, but others pressed on, and the fort was entered. Conanchet and his warriors fought with desperation, and forced the English to retire; but they continued the fight, defeated the savages, and again entering the fort, they set fire to the Indian dwellings. One thousand warriors were killed; three hundred, and as many women and children, were made prisoners. About six hundred of their wigwams were burnt, and many helpless sufferers perished in the flames.

The English lose 230 in the assault.

Sufferings of the Indians by fire and sword:

by famine and cold.

The wretched remains of the tribe took shelter in the recesses of a cedar swamp, covering themselves with boughs, or burrowing in the ground, and feeding on acorns or nuts, dug out with their hands from the snow. Many who escaped a sudden, thus died a lingering death. Conanchet was made prisoner in April, and was offered his freedom if he would enter into a treaty of peace. The chieftain indignantly refused, and was put to death.

Conanchet's death.

1676. Philip attempts to gain the Mohawks.

The English pursued the war with energy. In the spring of 1676, the colonial troops were almost universally victorious. Jealousies arose among the different tribes of savages, and while great numbers were slain, many deserted the common cause. Philip had attempted to rouse the Mohawks against the English, and had, for this purpose, killed a number of the

tribe, and attributed their death to the whites. His perfidy was detected, and he fled to Montaup, whither he was pursued by Captain Church.

In the midst of these reverses, Philip remained unshaken in his enmity. His chief men, as also his wife and family, were killed or made prisoners; and while he wept at these domestic bereavements, with a bitterness that evinced the finest feelings of human nature, so averse was he to submission, that he even shot one of his men who proposed it. After being driven from swamp to swamp, he was at last shot near Montaup, by the brother of the Indian whom he had thus killed. Of the scattered parties which remained, many were captured. Some sought refuge at the north. These afterwards served as guides, to those parties of hostile French and Indians, who came down and desolated the provinces.

1676. Philip is killed.

In this dreadful contest, New England lost six hundred inhabitants. Fourteen towns had been destroyed, and a heavy debt incurred. Yet the colonies received no assistance from England; and they asked none. The humane Irish sent the sufferers some relief.

Disastrous consequences of the war.

Destruction of ten towns of the praying Indians.

If Philip's war was to the whites disastrous, to the savage tribes it was ruinous. The Pokanokets and the Narragansetts henceforth disappear from history. The praying Indians were mostly of the Massachusetts confederacy; and although they suffered much, being suspected by the red men because they were Christians, and by the whites because they were Indians, they yet had a remnant left. Elliot watched his flocks of the wilderness, and exposed himself to many dangers on their account; and the wreck of four towns remained from the fourteen, which the converts numbered before the war.

CHAPTER VIII.

The Regicides.—New Hampshire and Maine.—Charter of Massachusetts annulled.

The three regicides.

The regicides, a term, which in English and American history refers especially to those men who signed the death warrant of Charles I., were, after the restoration of his son, proscribed. Three of their number, Goffe, Whalley, and Dixwell, came to America. They were at Boston and Cambridge, and under romantic circumstances were shielded from their pursuers at New Haven. At length, Whalley and Goffe found refuge in the house of Mr. Russel, minister of Hadley, where they lived in profound concealment. Goffe had been a military commander. Looking from the window of his hiding place, he saw, on a Sabbath day, as the people were

collecting for public worship, a body of ambushed Indians stealing upon them. Suddenly he left his confinement and appeared among the gathering worshippers, his white hair and beard, and loose garments streaming to the winds of autumn. He gives the alarm and the word of command, and the men, already armed, are at once formed in proper order, and bearing down upon the foe. When they had conquered, they looked around for their preserver. He had vanished during the fray; and they fully believed that he had been an angel sent from heaven for their deliverance.

Oct. 1. **1675.** Goffe at Hadley.

Of the three judges who cast themselves upon the Americans, not one was betrayed. The meanest of the people could not be induced by the price set upon their heads to give them up; and they now rest, in peaceful graves, upon our soil.

In 1677, a controversy, which had subsisted for some time between the government of Massachusetts and the heirs of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, relative to the province of Maine, was settled in England, and the province assigned to the latter. Upon this, Massachusetts purchased the title, and Maine became a province of that colony.

1677. Massachusetts purchases Maine.

In 1675, the claims of Mason in New Hampshire were revived. From the time that the settlements there had formally submitted to the government of Massachusetts, these claims had lain dormant; but upon a hearing of the parties, it was determined by the judges in England, that the towns on the Piscataqua were not within the limits of Massachusetts.

1675. Mason successful.

In 1679, a commission was made out by order of Charles II. for the separation of New Hampshire from the jurisdiction of Massachusetts, and its erection into a royal province. The assembly was to be chosen by the people, the president and council to be appointed by the crown. This colony now manifested energies worthy of the later patriotic and independent spirit of a state, which, from its firmness of character, no less than its sublime piles of mountains, is called "the Granite State." The people first thanked Massachusetts for the care she had taken of their infant condition; and next determined "that no law should be valid, unless made by the assembly, and approved by the people."

1679. New Hampshire a royal province, shows a free spirit.

Mason was authorized to select, and he chose Edward Cranfield, a needy speculator, and sent him from England to be the governor of New Hampshire. But Cranfield's visions of wealth were short-lived. He could neither out-wit, nor over-awe the rugged patriots; nor could Mason, with all the advantages of law, eject them from their lands, though for many years his agent, Cranfield, gave them great annoyance.

1682. Mason sends Cranfield to rule New Hampshire.

Notwithstanding the northern colonies had suffered so severely from Philip's war, and had never petitioned for, or

received any aid from the mother country, while they were yet mourning their slaughtered sons—and rebuilding their ruined habitations, England was planning their humiliation.

Proceedings in England against Massachusetts. Randolph sent over. 1682.

The people of Massachusetts, though often called to account, had continued to disregard the navigation acts, and had refused to send agents to the court of England, to answer for the charges of neglect brought against them. Edward Randolph was therefore sent from Great Britain, in 1679, as inspector of customs in New England. He being resolutely opposed in the execution of the duties of his office, soon returned, and made statements in England which caused still more violent measures against the colonies.

Charter of Massachusetts annulled.

In 1682, he came again to Boston, bringing a letter of complaint from the committee of plantations in England, who again directed that agents should repair to the court of London, fully empowered to act for the colonies. It was understood to be the intention of the king, to procure from these agents a surrender of the charter of Massachusetts, or to annul it by a suit in his courts, in order that he might appoint officers who would be subservient to his views. Agents were sent, but were instructed to make no concessions of chartered privileges, but to defend them as rights; of which the king being informed, he proceeded according to modes of law to cancel the charter.

Two parties in Massachusetts.

Massachusetts was, however, assured that in case of peaceable submission, the government should be regulated for her good. The representatives of the people in the general court considered that it was better "to trust in the Lord, than to put any confidence in princes." On the other hand, the governor and his associates were in favor of humble submission to the king's pleasure. Here was the commencement of two parties in this province; the patriots, who defended the rights of the colonies; and the prerogative men, who were in favor of complete submission to the royal authority. Agents were sent by the former to make defense of their rights, but, before they arrived in England, the charter was annulled.

Charles II. succeeded by James II. 1685.

Attempts to deprive Connecticut and R. Island of their charters.

1686. Sir E. Andros in N. England.

Charles II. died in 1685, and was succeeded by the Duke of York, under the title of James II. He declared that there should be no free governments in his dominions; and accordingly ordered writs to be issued against the charters of Connecticut and Rhode Island. These colonies presented letters and addresses, which, containing expressions of humble duty, the king construed them into an actual surrender of their charters; and, affecting to believe that all impediments to the royal will were removed, he proceeded to establish a temporary government over New England. Sir Joseph Dudley was appointed president in 1686; but in December, of the same year, he was succeeded by Sir Edmund Andros, as governor general, in whom, with a council, was vested all the powers of government.

Sir Edmund began his career with the most flattering professions of his regard to the public safety and happiness. It was, however, well observed, that "Nero concealed his tyrannical disposition more years than Sir Edmund did months." He assumed control over the press, and appointed the detested Randolph, licenser.

Soon after the arrival of Andros, he sent to Connecticut, demanding the surrender of her charter. This being refused, in 1687, he came with a guard to Hartford, during the session of the general assembly, and in person required its delivery. After debating until evening, the charter was produced, and laid on the table where the assembly were sitting. The lights were extinguished, and one of the members privately conveyed it away, and hid it in a cavity of a large oak tree. The candles were officiously relighted, but the charter was gone; and no discovery could be made of it, or, at that time, of the person who carried it away. The government of the colony was, however, surrendered to Andros.

1687. Charter of Connecticut hid in the Charter Oak on Wyllis Hill.

Massachusetts, where Sir Edmund resided, was the principal seat of despotism and suffering. In 1688, New York and New Jersey were added to his jurisdiction; and for more than two years, there was a general suppression of charter governments throughout the colonies, and a perpetual series of tyrannical exactions.

1688. to 1689.

But retribution was at hand. The monarch made himself detested at home, and his governor, by carrying out his measures, incurred the hatred of the colonies. His subjects, and even his own family, conspired against James. The British nation, putting aside the fiction of the divine right of legitimate sovereigns, asserted that of human nature, by declaring that an oppressed people may change their rulers. They forced the king to abdicate, and consummated "the Revolution" by placing his daughter Mary, with her husband William, the ablest statesman of Europe, as sovereigns on the throne of England.

1688. "The Revolution" in England.

Great was the joy of New England. Even on the first rumor of the British Revolution, the authorities of Boston seized and imprisoned Andros and Randolph. As a temporary government, they organized a committee of safety, of which the aged governor Bradstreet accepted the presidency; though he knew that, if the intelligence proved false, it might cost him his life.

Andros and Randolph imprisoned. 1689.

The change of government, produced by the removal of Andross, left New Hampshire in an unsettled state. Mason had died in 1685, leaving his two sons heirs to his claims. The people earnestly petitioned to be again united with Massachusetts, but their attempts were frustrated by Samuel Allen, who had purchased of the heirs of Mason, their title to New

New Hampshire. 1685. Mason dies. Allen buys his title.

Hampshire. Allen received a commission as governor of the colony, and assumed the government in 1692.

Connecticut and Rhode Island resume their charters. Massachusetts denied hers.

When the intelligence was confirmed, that William and Mary were seated on the throne, Rhode Island and Connecticut resumed their charters; but, on the application of Massachusetts, the king resolutely refused to restore her former system of government. Andros, Randolph, and others, were, however, ordered to England for trial.

CHAPTER IX.

New York.—Its Governors.—Effects of the Revolution in England.

Good administration of Nichols.

AFTER the surrender of the Dutch, Colonel Nichols entered upon the administration of the government of New York, which he conducted with great prudence, integrity, and moderation. The people, however, continued without civil rights, all authority being vested in the royal governor and council. Nichols returned to England, and was succeeded by Lord Lovelace.

Lovelace. 1667.

In 1673, England and Holland were again involved in war, and Holland sent over a small fleet to regain her American possessions. This force arrived at New York, and demanded a surrender, which was made without resistance. The Dutch took immediate possession of the fort and city, and soon after of the whole province.

1673. Dutch take New York.

The next year, 1674, the war terminated, and New York was restored to the English. The Duke of York, to prevent controversy about his title to the territory, took out a new patent, and the same year appointed Sir Edmund Andros governor.

1674. New York restored to the English.

In the year of Philip's war, Andros conducted an expedition against Connecticut. He claimed jurisdiction over that part of the colony west of the river, by virtue of its having been included in the grant to the Duke of York. This territory had, however, long before, been granted by the original patentees to the colony of Connecticut. Andros, with an armed force, arrived off Saybrook fort. The governor and council, being apprised of his design, sent a few troops under Captain Bull, who conducted himself with such spirit, that Andros, jocosely declaring his horns should be "tipped with gold," made no further attempt.

1675. Andros is repulsed at Saybrook.

In 1682, Andros, was removed from the government of New York. The succeeding year was a happy era in the history of this colony. The excellent Colonel Dongan arrived as governor, and the desires of the people, for a popular

1682. Dongan. 1683. First general assembly.

government, were now gratified. The first general assembly was convoked, consisting of a council and eighteen representatives. By the declaration of the governor, they were invested with the sole power of enacting laws and levying taxes; but the laws could have no force, until ratified by the proprietor. Governor Dongan surpassed all his predecessors, in attention to affairs with the Indians, by whom he was highly esteemed.

1685. Duke of York succeeds to the crown as James II.

When the Duke of York became sovereign of England, it might have been hoped that he would have favored his own province, but his government was no where more tyrannical and unpopular.

1688. The English Revolution agreeable to New York.

The news from Europe, that the inhabitants of England had resolved to dethrone him, and offer the crown to William, of Orange, elevated the hopes of the disaffected. But no active measures were taken till after the rupture at Boston, when several captains of the militia convened to concert measures in favor of the prince of Orange.

Among these was Jacob Leisler, an active militia captain, and a favorite of the people. He was not, however, a man of talents, but received the guiding impulses of his conduct from the superior energies of his son-in-law, Jacob Milborne. By the counsel of this intriguing Englishman, Leisler, at the head of forty-nine men, took possession of the fort of New York, and declared in favor of William, but this declaration, opposed by the authority of the city, at first had few adherents, until a report got footing, that three ships were approaching, with orders from king William, when his party was augmented by the addition of six captains and four hundred men from New York, and seventy men from East Chester.

Leisler assumes to act as king William's agent. 1689

Dongan, who was about to leave the province, then lay embarked in the harbor, having, a short time previous, resigned his government to Francis Nicholson, the lieutenant governor. He, being unable to contend with Leisler's party, soon joined Governor Dongan. Leisler, now in possession of the fort, sent an address to William and Mary as soon as he received the news of their accession to the throne.

Governor and lieutenant governor depart.

The magistrates, at the head of whom were Colonel Bayard and Mr. Courtland, the mayor, opposed Leisler; but finding it impossible to raise a party against him in New York, they retired to Albany.

The magistracy of New York oppose Leisler.

In the month of December, a packet arrived, directed "to Francis Nicholson, Esq., or, in his absence, to such, as for the time being, take care for preserving the peace, and administering the laws, in their Majesties' province of New York, in America." Leisler considered this packet as directed to himself, and, from this time, issued his commissions as lieutenant governor.

December. Letter from England.

The people of Albany, in the meantime, were determined

1690.
Milborne takes the fort at Albany.

to hold the garrison and city for king William, independent of Leisler; and on the 26th of October they formed themselves into a convention for that purpose; but Milborne undertook its reduction; and the distress of the country, in consequence of an Indian irruption, gave him the desired success.

1691.
Sloughter governs New York.

King William now turned his attention to the colonies, and commissioned Henry Sloughter as governor of New York. Never was a governor more needed, and never was one more destitute of every qualification for the office. He refused to treat with Leisler; but put him and several of his adherents to prison. Finally, that unfortunate man, together with his son-in-law, perished upon the gallows. Their execution was disapproved by the people; and their property, which was confiscated, was afterwards restored to their descendants.

Leisler and Milborne executed.

A Congress meets at New York, May 1691.

This was the period of king William's war, in which New York suffered with the other provinces. It was in May, 1691, that a general convention met in New York; thus extending the system begun by the four New England colonies, and preparing the way for the grand American Confederacy.

CHAPTER X.

Persecution of the Quakers in Massachusetts.

The Puritans of New England had now redeemed from the wilderness a home; and they believed, that they had, collectively, the right of any single householder, to exclude from it whoever they regarded as dangerous to its peace. But a father, who should exclude his children on account of opinion, would violate the rights of conscience. A christian sect had arisen in England, called in derision Quakers, who, acknowledging the inward guidance of the Holy Spirit, went forth, as they believed, under its direction, to bear testimony against a ceremonious worship, outward ordinances, a ministry depending upon man for its call and support, and the customary compliments and fashions of the world. At places of public worship, where by penal laws their attendance was sought to be enforced, they sometimes spoke against the doctrines and practices of the ministers who officiated. For this, and for their boldness in spreading opinions deemed dangerous to the existing profession of religion, George Fox, who was considered their founder, and many of his fellow labourers, were imprisoned and cruelly used.

Proceedings of the Quakers in England.

1649.
Geo. Fox.

The founders of New England knew the Quakers by report of their enemies; and might never have heard how pure and holy were their morals, and how benevolent their intentions; and when two Quaker women, Ann Austin and Mary Fisher, arrived at Boston with the avowed purpose of propagating their opinions, they were rigorously imprisoned by the autho-

July 11, 1656.
Ann Austin and Mary Fisher arrive.

rities, and their books burned. Eight other Quakers soon after came and were treated in like manner. The commissioners sitting at Boston, recommended that the several United Colonies, make laws prohibiting the ingress of Quakers and other notorious heretics; and should any come, that they be secured and removed. The four colonies made laws accordingly.

August 7. Eight other Quakers.

But it was Massachusetts, that the Quakers regarded as the seat of a persecuting spirit, which they felt moved to attack; as also the established religion, which they denounced as mere outward observance, and unspiritual formality. Yet this religion was what the Puritans had sacrificed every thing to enjoy, and was in their eyes the model of perfection, and to their hearts dearer than life. But all their vigilance and severity failed to keep out the determined Quakers.

September. Commissioners of the U. C. at Boston.

Puritans baffled by the Quakers.

William Robinson and Marmaduke Stevenson were the first executed; Mary Dyer stood on the gallows with them joyfully waiting her turn, when she was reprieved and carried away. But soon, supposing herself again called by the Holy Spirit, she came back and was hanged, bearing a bold testimony. William Leddra was also executed; but the people of Massachusetts began to revolt at these cruelties. Wenlock Christison was condemned to die. He told the tribunal at which Gov. Endicot presided, that they had no right to put him to death. They violated the laws of England, whose vengeance they would experience, and finally everlasting punishment for their sins; and, said he, "it is all in vain, for every one you put to death five more will come. Ten will rise up in my place, that you may have torment upon torment; this is your portion, for there is no peace to the wicked." Whether pricked in conscience, or put in fear, the authorities soon afterwards opened their prison doors, and released Christison with 27 others; whipping through the streets of Boston, one man and one woman. Charles II. soon after interfered for the Quakers, and by letter to the governor, forbade further violent proceedings.

1660. Three hanged.

1661. Leddra hanged.

Christison condemned.

His severe rebuke to his judges.

He is released with 27 others.

CHAPTER XI.

Jesuit Missionaries of France.—Their Discoveries.

From the devotion of the Puritans and the Quakers, we turn to that of the Jesuit Missionaries of France: and in all, we perceive "the operation of that common law of our nature, which binds the heart of man to the Author of his being," and which in its noblest impulses, sends him forth with ardent desires to toil, to suffer, and to die, in any cause, which he believes divine. The Jesuit Missionaries possessed this desire to extend the benefits of Christian redemption to the heathen; yet they unfortunately mingled worldly policy with religious enthusiasm; and sought not only to win souls to Christ, but subjects to the king of France.

Religious devotion of some kind natural principle.

The Catholics, already in Canada, seconded their efforts.

PART II. PERIOD I. CHAP. XI.

1634. Brebeuf and Daniel accompany the Hurons, and make many converts. Ahasistari.

In 1634, two missionaries, Brebeuf and Daniel, left Quebec, in company with a party of wild Hurons; and endured the toil and hardship of a journey of some hundred miles up the Ottawas and along its waters. The wilderness east of Lake Huron, was the country of these savages, and there they erected the chapel of St. Joseph. Throngs of the native Hurons came to be instructed, and were soon numbered as converts. to Christianity. The Christian villages of St. Louis and St. Ignatius soon arose amidst the forest. "Let us strive," said one of their chiefs, "to make the whole world embrace the faith in Jesus."

1640. Montreal founded.

In 1640, Montreal was founded, to give the missionaries a starting point nearer the scene of their operations.

1634. to 1649. Sixty missionaries.

Within thirteen years, the wilderness of the Hurons was visited by sixty missionaries, mostly Jesuits. Making the Huron settlement their central station, they carried the gospel to the surrounding tribes; and thus visited and became the first European explorers of the southern portion of Upper Canada, of which they took possession for the French king.

One of these missionaries, Isaac Jouges, undaunted by the terrors of the Mohawk name, went, accompanied by the pious chief, into their country, and was made their prisoner. The noble Huron might have escaped. "My brother," he exclaimed to the missionary, "I made an oath to thee that I would share thy fortune, whether death or life. Here am I to keep my vow." He met the flames as a Christian martyr. Jouges, though cruelly treated, survived, and was ransomed by the Dutch.

Death of Ahasistari.

1645. Peace between the French and Five Nations.

At Three Rivers, a peace was concluded between the French and the Five Nations, whose orators declared that they "had thrown the hatchet so high into the air, and beyond the sky, that no arm was long enough to reach and bring it down." The savages also made peace among themselves.

1646. Father Jouges put to death at the fort of Johnstown.

Father Jouges, in the spirit of martyrdom, attempted a permanent mission among the Five Nations. Arriving at the Mohawk castle, he was accused of blighting the corn of the Indians by spells of sorcery. Being condemned, he received his death blow with composure. His head was hung on the palisades of the fort, and his body thrown into the placid stream.

War was resumed. The fierce Mohawks scattered the Wyandots, triumphed over the Hurons, and marked for destruction the missionary stations of the Jesuits.

1648. The Iroquois destroy St. Josephs.

In the rude chapel of St. Joseph, while the village is blazing around, the venerable Father Daniel is hastening to administer baptism to those who had too long delayed. The barbarians approach, reeking with the blood of the helpless, and the missionary goes calmly to meet them. Awe-struck, they hesitate,—then discharge a shower of arrows. Their victim bled from many wounds; but he lifted up his hands

and voice, and preached Jesus, until his death-stroke was given.

March 16. 1649. Massacre at St. Ignatius and St. Louis.

The next winter a thousand warriors of the Iroquois made a night attack on the village of St. Ignatius, and surprised and slew its four hundred sleeping inhabitants.

St. Louis shared a similar fate. The missionaries Brebeuf and Lallemand were taken prisoners and tortured, the first for three, the last for seventeen hours. They died rejoicing in fire; and the zeal of their brethren was unabated.

Mohawks menace the French.

The pride of the Mohawks grew with their conquests; and they now menaced and insulted the French, carrying off the governor from Three Rivers, and a priest from Quebec.

1654. Le Moyne and other French missionaries among the Iroquois.

According to the Indian custom, some of the vanquished Hurons had been adopted into the families of the conquerors. And when at length the Iroquois, tired of war, received a messenger of peace, it was the Jesuit, Le Moyne, who had been with the Hurons, that was the envoy. The Father found among them numbers of his affectionate Huron converts. The hope revived in his bosom, that the whole west might yet receive Christianity, and become subjected to the French. Le Moyne settled on the Mohawk river. Other missionaries, Chaumont and Dablon, went and received a welcome among the Onondagas. A rude chapel was there constructed in a day; and the services of the Romish church, chanted by native worshippers. They were soon too numerous to be contained within its walls. The Cayugas now desired a missionary, and received the fearless Mesnard. The Oneidas and the Senecas also listened to the gospel of peace.

A chapel at Onondaga.

Missionaries are expelled. War with France ensues. 1659.

But their natures were averse to its dictates, and they soon broke through its unaccustomed restraints. Their warriors sought the extermination of the neighboring Eries, and often brought to the villages captives, whom they tortured, though of tender sex and years. The missionaries opposed their cruelties and incurred their displeasure; and after vainly soliciting aid from Canada, they abandoned their missions. Their return was but the signal for a renewed war between the French and the Five Nations. So ended the attempts of the French to colonize New York.

1665. Allouez discovers the southern shores of Lake Superior.

Father Claude Allouez, bent on a voyage of discovery, early in September, passed Mackinaw into Lake Superior; and sailing along the high banks and pictured rocks of its southern shore, he rested, beyond the bay of Keweena, on that of Chegoimegon. Here was the great village of the Chippewas.

An Indian council.

A grand council of ten or twelve tribes was, at the moment, assembled to prevent the young braves of the Chippewas and Sioux from taking up the tomahawk against each other. In this assembly came forward the missionary, and stood and commanded in the name of his heavenly, and of his earthly master, that there should be peace.

8*

Founds the mission of St. Esprit, and preaches to new nations.

The Indians listened with reverence. They had never before seen a white man. Soon a chapel was built, and there they devoutly chanted their vesper and matin hymns; and the mission of St. Esprit was founded. The scattered Hurons and Ottawas here collected around the missionary. He preached to the Pottawotamies, the Sacs and Foxes, the Illinois and the Sioux. From each, he gained descriptions of their country,—their lakes and rivers,—of which he made reports to his government. He especially dwelt on what he had heard of the great river "Mesipi." He urged the sending of small colonies of French emigrants, to make permanent settlements in the west.

1668. St. Mary's founded.

A small company, headed by two missionaries, Claude Dablon and James Marquette, founded the first French settlement within the limits of the United States. It is at St. Mary's, on the falls between the Lakes Superior and Huron.

1669. Green Bay.

Allouez founded a mission at Green Bay.

1671. Marquette collects the Hurons at St. Ignace.

Marquette selected a young Illinois as his companion, and learned from him the language of his nation. He collected the remains of the Hurons at the point St. Ignace, north of Mackinaw; built a chapel, and established a mission; and from thence visited the adjacent tribes. These heard with astonishment, that he had formed the bold design of exploring the great river of the west,—notwithstanding their assertions, that its monsters devoured men and canoes, its warriors never spared the stranger, and its climate was rife with death.

1673. Follows the Wisconsin to the Mississippi.

Marquette walked from Green Bay, followed the Fox river, and crossed the Portage from its head waters to those of the Wisconsin, when, with no companion but the missionary Joliet, he embarked upon its bosom, and followed its course, unknowing whither it would lead. Solitary they floated along, till, in seven days, they entered with inexpressible joy, the broad Mississippi. They continued to float with its lonely current, until, near the mouth of the Moingona, they perceived the marks of population. Disembarking, they found, at fourteen miles from the river, a village of the natives.

Indian courtesy.

Old men met them with the calumet, told them they were expected, and bade them enter their dwellings in peace. The missionaries declared, by the council-fire, the claims of the Christian religion, and the right of the king of France to their territory. The Indians feasted them, and sent them away with the gift of a peace-pipe, embellished with the various colored heads and necks of bright and beautiful birds.

Discovers the mouth of the Missouri.

Sailing on their solitary way, the discoverers heard afar a rush of waters from the west; and soon the vast Missouri came down with its fiercer current to hasten on the more sluggish Mississippi. They saw, and passed the mouth of the Ohio, nor stopped, till they had gone beyond that of the

Arkansas. There they found savages who spoke a new tongue. They were armed with guns,—a proof that they had trafficked with the Spaniards, or with the English in Virginia. They showed hostile dispositions, but respected the peace-pipe, the white flag of the desert.

1774. Returns to Green Bay.

Marquette now retraced his course to the Illinois, entered and ascended that river, and beheld the beautiful fertility of its summer prairies, abounding in game. He visited Chicago, and in September was again at Green Bay.

1675. Marquette dies near Lake Michigan.

The next year, on the banks of the little stream now called by his name, Marquette retired for devotion, from the company with which he was journeying,—to pray, by a rude altar of stones, beneath the silent shade. There, half an hour afterwards, his dead body was found. He was buried on the shore of the lake, and the Indian fancies that his spirit still controls its storms.

1679. La Salle.

As Joliet, the companion of Marquette, was returning from the west, to carry the tidings of their discovery, he met at Frontenac, now Kingston, the governor of the place, the energetic and highly gifted La Salle. His genius kindled by the description of the missionary, into all the enthusiasm of fresh discovery. La Salle repaired to France, and was commissioned to complete the survey of the great river.

Builds the first sailing vessel on Lake Erie.

Founds Mackinaw.

He returned to Frontenac, built a wooden canoe of ten tons, and carrying a part of his company to the mouth of Tonnewanta Creek, he there built the first sailing vessel which ever navigated Lake Erie. On his way across the lakes he marked Detroit as a suitable place for a colony, gave name to Lake St. Clair, planted a trading house at Mackinaw, and finally cast anchor at Green Bay.

1679. Hennepin with La Salle.

Here, to mend his fortunes, he collected a rich cargo of furs, and sent back his brig to carry them to Niagara. Then, in bark canoes, he moved his party south, to the head of the lake; and there constructed the Fort of the Miamis. His brig was unfortunately lost; but, with a small company, he steered resolutely west, accompanied by the Jesuit Hennepin. They reached, through many discouragements by disaster, treachery, and climate, the river Illinois; and following its waters four days' journey below Lake Peoria, La Salle there built a fort, which, in the bitterness of his spirit, he called Creve-coeur. Here he sent out a party under Hennepin to explore the sources of the Mississippi, and himself set forth on foot to return to Frontenac.

1680. He explores to St. Anthony's Falls.

Hennepin followed the Illinois to its junction with the parent stream, ascended that river above the falls, to which he gave the name of St. Anthony. He afterwards reported, though falsely, that he had discovered the sources of the Mississippi.

La Salle returned to his fort on the Illinois, built a small vessel, and the next year, he, with his company, sailed down

PART II. PERIOD I. CHAP. XII.

that tributary till he reached the "Father of Rivers;" and still floating with the current, now landing to erect a cabin, now to raise the cross and proclaim the French king lord of the country, La Salle passed on till he reached the mouth of the Mississippi. To the country he gave the name of Louisiana, in honor of his sovereign, Louis XIV.

1684. La Salle passes from the Upper Mississippi to the ocean.

Returning to France, the government sent him to colonize the country which he had visited; but his fleet took a wrong direction, and he was carried, with his party, to Texas, where he made the settlement of St. Louis. Attempting to go to Louisiana on foot, a discontented soldier of his party gave him his death-shot. Texas was regarded as an appendage to Louisiana.

1685. He misses his way and discovers Texas. He is killed. 1687.

CHAPTER XII.

North and South Carolina.—The Great Patent.—Mr. Locke's Constitution.

After Charles II. was restored, his rapacious courtiers, taking advantage of his improvident good nature, obtained for their services real or pretended, from him who had little else to give, large tracts of American territory. Nor was that monarch, as we have already seen, at all scrupulous when a favorite was to be gratified, if what he gave had before been granted, or if it belonged to other nations. Thus, in 1663, he gave Carolina which was claimed by Spain, to Lord Clarendon the historian, Lord Ashley Cooper Earl of Shaftsbury, General Monk afterwards Duke of Albemarle, Lord Craven, the two Berkeleys, Sir John Colleton, and Sir George Carteret.

Patent of Carolina given 1663. to Lord Clarendon and others.

They first received a tract which had, in 1630, been granted to Sir Robert Heath. Their ambition rising with the occasion, they now stretched their thoughts to the glory of founding a sovereignty, which should not only yield them money, but the fame of legislators; and in 1667, Charles granted them the whole of the country, from the mouth of the river St. Johns to 36° 33′ north latitude, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean. To frame a government for the future empire, was a task assigned by the company to the aristocratic philosopher, Shaftsbury; and to aid him in the important labor, he engaged the services of his friend, the well-known John Locke. In the mean time, the younger Berkeley, who was governor of Virginia, was to extend his rule over the whole territory.

1630. Heath's patent from 30° to 36° N. lat. The grant extended, 1667. and takes in all the southern part of the United States.

But settlers were wanted, and to procure these, various inducements were held out by the company. Two settlements had already been formed within their precincts. One of these,

Settlement at Albemarle proves the nucleus of N. C.

near the Sound, called, from the title given to the restorer of Charles II., Albemarle, was begun at an early day by enterprising planters from Virginia; and enjoying entire liberty, it had been augmented from that and other colonies, whenever religious or political oppression had scattered their people. About the time in which the great patent was granted, this settlement had so increased as to form, for convenience, a simple democratic government.

1663. Forms a democracy.

The other colony was to the south of this, on Cape Fear or Clarendon river; and had been originally made by a little band of adventurers from New England. They, as well as the former colony, had purchased their land of the natives;—they had occupied it, and they claimed, as a law of nature, the right of self-government. They were not, however, satisfied with the country, and most of them deserted it to find a better. In the meantime, a number of planters from Barbadoes, desiring to re-establish themselves in independence, had purchased lands of the sachems, and settled on the Cape Fear river, near the neglected territory of the New Englanders.

Settlement at Cape Fear, the first in S. C.

They requested of the proprietors a confirmation of the purchase they had made of the Indians, and of the power which they had assumed to govern themselves. As a state must have inhabitants, their request was partially granted; and one of their number, Sir John Yeamans, was appointed their governor. The settlement, in 1666, contained 800 persons.

Sir J. Yeamans. 1666.

Thus the germs of liberty had, in the Carolinas, begun to vegetate strongly in a virgin soil. And when the great aristocratical constitution of Locke and Shaftsbury, constituting three orders of nobility, was sent over, in 1670, the ground was already preoccupied. These dwellers in scattered log cabins in the woods, could not be noblemen, and would not be serfs: and the succeeding years in these colonies present a fruitless struggle, in which the agents of the proprietors attempt to organize a system, incompatible with the condition and wishes of the settlers already there, and equally uninviting to such emigrants as they needed; emigrants who could clear the forest, and contend with savage nature. Eventually, the interest of the proprietors prevailed over their pride. The inhabitants took their own way in regard to government, and in 1693, the constitution of Locke and Shaftsbury was formally abrogated. Its impolicy is now a by-word.

1670. The constitution of Locke found unsuitable.

1693. It is abrogated.

William Sayle, the first proprietary governor of Carolina, brought over a colony, with which he founded old Charleston. Dying in 1671, his colony was annexed to that of governor Yeamans. In 1680, the city was removed to the point of land between the two rivers, which received, in compliment to Lord Shaftsbury, the names of Ashley and Cooper. The foundation of the present capital of the south was laid, and the name of the king perpetuated in that of Charleston.

1670. Governor Sayle.

1680. Charleston founded.

During the year 1690, king William sent out a large body

1690. French Protestants settle in Virginia and Carolina.

of French Protestants, who had been compelled to leave their country by the arbitrary measures of Louis XIV. To a part of these, lands were allotted in Virginia on James river, and others settled in Carolina on the banks of the Santee, and in Charleston. They introduced the culture of the vine, and were among the most useful settlers of the province.

CHAPTER XIII.

French and Indian War.

1688. The English Revolution produces the war with France.

JAMES II. of England, and Louis XIV. of France, were common descendants of the Gallic sovereign, Henry IV.; and when the English, displeased by the refusal of James to sustain the English church, and by his avowed papacy, leagued with his children, and ejected him from the throne, the king of France gave the royal fugitive a resting place in the castle of St. Germain, near Paris: and, considering his cause as that of all sovereigns, who maintain that legitimate kings hold their authority by divine right, he made the quarrel of James his own. England, to justify herself, took a ground, which is important as an advance in political equity,—that government is for the benefit of the governed, and that any nation has a right to reform its own. Hence a war ensued between England and France, which affected the American colonies of both; and is known in our annals as "King William's war."

Called, in the colonies, King William's war.

The fisheries on the Atlantic coast were regarded as of prime importance; and, on this account, Acadia was highly valued. To protect it, the two Jesuits, Vincent and Bigot, collected a village of the savage Abenakies on the Penobscot; and the Baron De St. Castine, a French nobleman, whose character seems a compound of ambition, intrigue, and bigotry, established there a trading fort. In 1686, a fort built at Pemaquid was taken by Castine; and thus the French claimed, as Acadia, all Maine east of the Kennebec; and they artfully obtained great ascendancy over the natives.

1686. Baron Castine.

1689. Iroquois surprise Montreal.

In August, 1689, fifteen hundred warriors of the Iroquois, actuated by revenge for supposed wrongs, surprised Montreal; and a horrible night of burning and murder preceded a morning of desolation. One thousand of the French were killed, and twenty-six made prisoners. Colden says, "the Five Nations were at this time an overmatch for Canada." Fort Frontenac, and its warlike stores, were abandoned in terror, and the Iroquois took immediate possession.

The tribe of Pennicooks, in New Hampshire, had lost several of their number by the treachery of the whites, who

had taken and sold them into slavery. The emissaries of Castine instigated them to vengeance. At Dover, in that state, the venerable Major Waldron, a magistrate and a trader among the Indians, hospitably admitted two squaws to sleep by his fire. At dead of night, they let in a war party from without. The sword of the veteran defends him until he is overpowered by numbers. They then place him upon a long table, mock him with a jeering call to "judge Indians;" and then, those indebted to him for goods, draw gashes on his breast, saying, "here I cross out my account." Besides him, twenty-two others were killed, twenty-nine made captive, and the town burnt.

Pennicooks attack Dover. Major Waldron.

Governor Frontenac, at Quebec, now planned to send, through the snow, three parties. The first, after a difficult march of twenty-two days, arrive at Schenectady, the night of the 18th of February, and, separating into small parties, they invest every house at the same moment. The people sleep until their doors are broken open, and themselves dragged from their beds. Their dwellings are set on fire; men and women are butchered and scalped, and children have their brains dashed out, or are cast into the flames. Sixty persons thus perished by the hands of the savages; twenty-seven were carried captive, and most of the small number which escaped, lost their limbs in attempting to flee naked, through a deep snow, to Albany.

1690.
Schenectady destroyed by French and Indians.

One of the leaders of this expedition was d'Iberville, who afterwards conducted a colony from Canada to the mouth of the Mississippi, and became the founder of Louisiana.

The second party of French and Indians, leagued for midnight murder, are sent against the pleasant settlement at Salmon Falls on the Piscataqua. At break of day—a day which, for fifty of their number, had no morrow, the peaceful inhabitants were waked to experience the horrors of Indian warfare, aided and directed by French ingenuity. The third party from Quebec, in like manner, destroyed the settlement at Casco Bay in Maine.

Destruction of Salmon Falls. March 18.

Of Casco Bay.

Fear and terror were on every side. The General Court of Massachusetts sent letters of request to the several governors of the provinces, pursuant to which they convened at New York. In consequence of the bold resolves of this congress, two important measures were adopted. Connecticut sent General Winthrop with troops to march through Albany, there to receive supplies, and to be joined by forces from New York. The expedition was to proceed up Lake Champlain, and was destined to reduce Montreal. Leisler and Milborne failed to furnish the supplies, and thus defeated the project.

May 1.
1691.
Congress at New York.

First measure of the congress attempted and fails.

Massachusetts sent forth a fleet of thirty-four sail under Sir William Phipps. He took Port Royal, reduced Acadia, and thence proceeded up the St. Lawrence, with the design of capturing Quebec. But Count Frontenac, on the summons

Second measure.
Sir William Phipps invades Canada.

1691.
November.
He fails, and loses a part of his fleet.

of Phipps to surrender, took his messenger, blindfolded him, and then wheeled his little handful of men in such successive rounds, as to make the messenger believe, by his sense of hearing, that a numerous succession of troops were marching before him. And he made him use his hands to feel the strength of the fortifications. Nevertheless, the intrepid envoy delivered a bold demand of surrender; but he carried back a proud defiance. When, however, Phipps learned that the party of Winthrop, which he expected from Montreal, had failed, he abandoned the project, and returned to Massachusetts with a part of his fleet, a storm having wrecked the remainder.

Massachusetts' first trial of the "credit system."

Great expenses were by these means incurred, which had drained the treasury; and the general court authorized, for the first time, the emission of paper money, or notes of credit, making them in all payments a legal tender.

The effect of their military failure was most unfortunate for the colonies. The Five Nations blamed the English for their inactivity, and appeared inclined to make peace with the French, and the frontiers were more than ever exposed. To preserve the respect of the warlike Iroquois, Major Schuyler, of Albany, in the summer of the year 1691, with the aid of three hundred Mohawks, passed Lake Champlain; and at La Prairie, engaged eight hundred French troops, and after a severe conflict, killed a number equal to that of his own forces.

1691.
Peter Schuyler's prowess at La Prairie.

In none of the colonies did the Revolution in England produce a greater change than in Massachusetts. In 1692, king William, who had refused to restore its former government, granted a new charter, which, extending its limits, but restricting its privileges, commenced a new era in the history of this colony. Massachusetts now embraced, besides the former territory, Plymouth, Maine, and Nova Scotia; extending north to the river St. Lawrence, and west to the South Sea, excepting New Hampshire and New York; and including, also, Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard, and the Elizabeth islands.

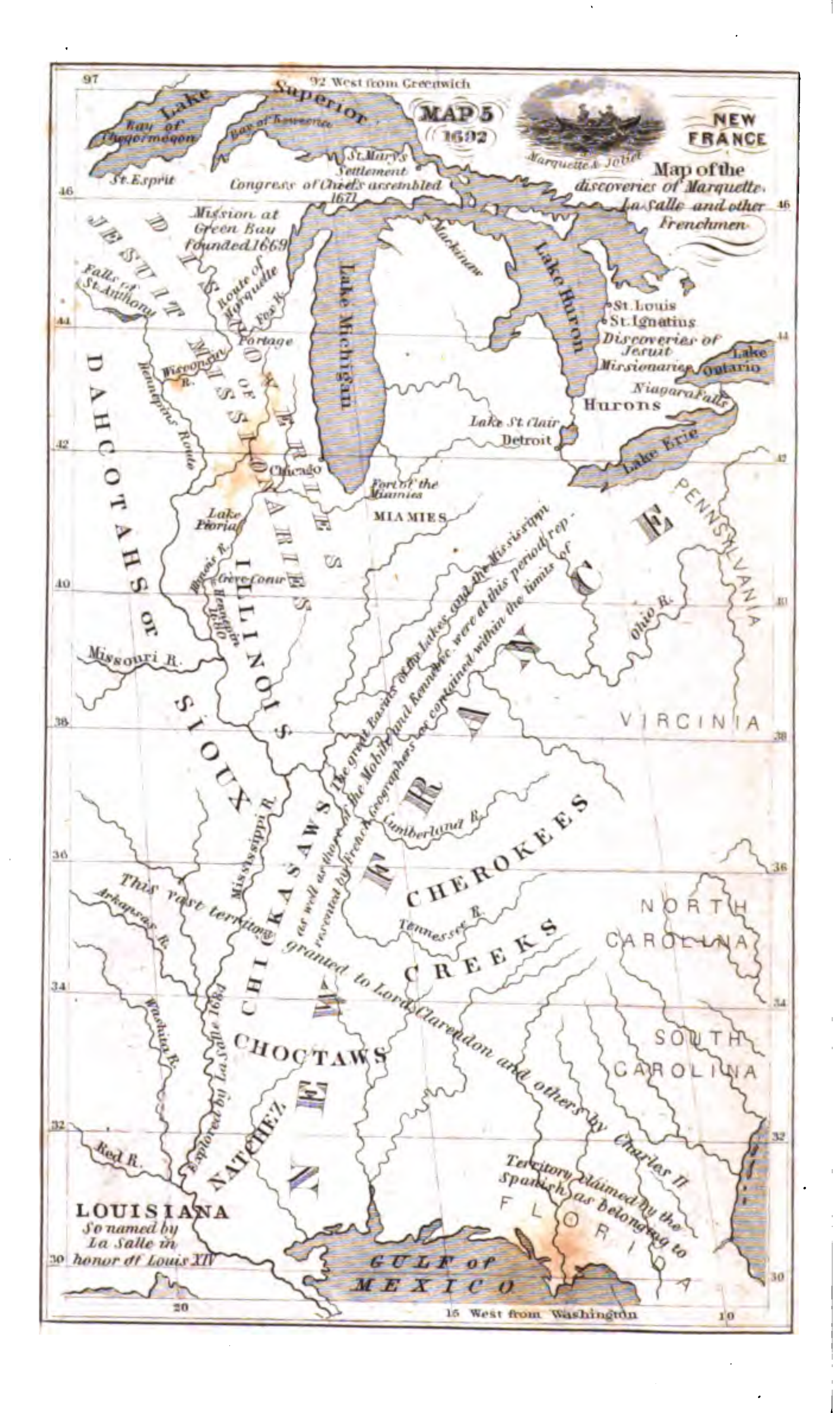
1692.
New charter of Massachusetts.

Territories added.

Almost the only privilege which the new charter allowed the people, was that of choosing their representatives. The king reserved to himself the right of appointing the governor, lieutenant governor, and secretary; and of repealing all laws within three years after their passage.

Liberties abridged.





MAP 5
1692
NEW FRANCE
Map of the discoveries of Marquette, La Salle and other Frenchmen
Marquette & Joliet
92 West from Greenwich
15 West from Washington
Lake Superior
Bay of Chegoimegon
Bay of Keweena
St. Esprit
St. Mary's Settlement
Congress of Chiefs assembled 1671
Mission at Green Bay founded 1669
Route of Marquette
Fox R.
Portage
Falls of St. Anthony
Lake Michigan
Mackinaw
Lake Huron
St. Louis
St. Ignatius
Discoveries of Jesuit Missionaries
Lake Ontario
Niagara Falls
Hurons
Lake St. Clair
Detroit
Lake Erie
Wisconsin R.
Hennepins Route
Chicago
Fort of the Miamies
MIAMIES
Lake Peoria
Illinois R.
Creve Coeur
Hennepin 1680
Missouri R.
DAHCOTAHS OF SIOUX
ILLINOIS
CHICKASAWS
CHOCTAWS
NATCHEZ
CHEROKEES
CREEKS
PENNSYLVANIA
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
FLORIDA
Ohio R.
Cumberland R.
Tennessee R.
Mississippi R.
Arkansas R.
Washita R.
Red R.
Explored by La Salle 1684
The great Basins of the Lakes and the Mississippi as well as those of the Mobile and Kennebec were at this period represented by French Geographers as contained within the limits of
NEW FRANCE
This vast territory granted to Lord Clarendon and others by Charles II
Territory claimed by the Spanish as Belonging to
LOUISIANA So named by La Salle in honor of Louis XIV
GULF OF MEXICO
97
46
44
42
40
38
36
34
32
30
20
10

PERIOD II.

FROM

THE NEW CHARTER } 1692 { OF MASSACHUSETTS.

TO

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT } 1733. { OF GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE.

CHAPTER I.

Sir William Phipps.—Cotton Mather.—Salem Witchcraft.—Schools.—Yale College.

May 14th. 1692. New charter brought over by Sir William Phipps.

The new charter was received at Boston, May 14th, 1692. The officers to be appointed under it, were nominated by Increase Mather, a minister of Boston, sent to England as agent for the colony. He gave the nomination for governor to Sir William Phipps, a favorite parishioner of his son, the learned Cotton Mather, also a minister of Boston, and the eccentric historian of the New England churches. Phipps was a native of Pemaquid in Maine, and his boyhood was spent in tending sheep. He was then made apprentice to a trade; but being active and enterprising, he went to England, and at length acquired riches and a title, by his success in raising, by means of a diving bell, the treasures of a Spanish wreck. He, as well as the lieutenant-governor, and the twenty-eight assistants now appointed for Massachusetts, were all, such men as readily took advice from the clergy.

Superstition worse than war or tyranny.

Amidst the difficulties under which the northern colonies labored, from the war with the French and Indians, and with the new and disagreeable aspect of political affairs, others of a different, though not less disagreeable nature, opened upon the people of Massachusetts.

1645. The delusion respecting witchcraft begins in Springfield.

The delusion, with respect to the supposed intercourse with evil spirits, was now at its height. The first settlers brought it with them from the mother country. Laws, making witchcraft a capital crime, existed in England, and were early enacted in Massachusetts. The mania began in Springfield in 1645, when some individuals were accused and tried, but acquitted. Some few years after, persons at Boston, Charlestown, Dorchester, and Cambridge, were arraigned, and some actually executed for the supposed offense.

1692. Prevails in Salem.

But Salem was the devoted place where this superstition was converted into a phrenzy. Some young women, perhaps in part deluded by their own imaginations, complained of being strangely affected. Their complaints, attributed to this alarming cause, were reported and magnified; at length they became prime heroines in a gossiping and credulous neigh-

borhood. This encouraged others to set up for the same distinction; and witches, of course, increased with the number bewitched.

Convictions on improper and insufficient grounds,

At first, it was old women only, who were suspected of having leagued with the devil, to inflict upon the diseased the various torments which they asserted that they felt, and which they often appeared to the spectators actually to feel. The magistrates of the people's choice, had, with Bradstreet, their governor, previous to the arrival of Phipps, discountenanced these persecutions; but the new authorities, under the influence of the clergy, of whom, in this particular, Cotton Mather was the leader, pursued a course which placed the accused in situations where "they had need to be magicians not to be convicted of magic." They were confronted with those who accused them, and asked, Why do you afflict these children? If answered, I do not afflict them, they commanded them to look upon the children. They would then fall into fits, and then declare they were thus troubled by the persons apprehended. On such evidence were these unfortunate persons condemned to execution.

And procured by incompetent and prejudiced witnesses.

Malice and revenge carried on the work which superstition began. Private resentment was never more fiendish in its measures, than in the accusations which were got up and brought to fatal issues, by Samuel Parris, the minister of Salem. He had bitter animosities against several of his parishioners. Rebecca Nurse, amiable but reflective, opposed this tyrant of his church. Two children, his daughter and his niece, accused her, and she was committed to prison. Parris also denounced her publicly as a "devil." Her sister, Sarah Cloyce, rose and left the meeting-house. She was herself soon the tenant of a prison. Yet another victim was taken from the same family. Mary Easty, knowing the worth and innocence of her dear imprisoned sisters, spake,—yet with mildness, against the injustice which condemned them. She was soon forced from her children and her home, herself accused of intercourse with evil spirits, and made a prisoner; with the horrible expectation that, she must close a virtuous life by the violent death of a malefactor—her only crime, that she was unreconciled to the legal murder of her beloved sisters, the fate she was now to share. Beside these innocent persons, seventeen others were hung at Salem. Among them was Mr. Burroughs, a worthy clergyman. The prisons were full of those committed for trial.

Three sisters victims to the animosity of the minister at Salem.

Twenty executions in July, August and September.

The general court, on assembling, took ground against these proceedings. They perceived that none were safe; but that the best of the community were at the mercy of the worst. They abolished the special court organized by Phipps, and presided over by Stoughton, the lieutenant governor, by which these executions had been sanctioned. The public were addressed on the subject through the press by the independent

October. The General Court take ground against the special court.

Calef, of Boston; and the eyes of men were at length opened. The prisoners were set free; and the memory of the transaction soon became, what it still continues to be, a source of national sorrow and humiliation.

Massachusetts early passes laws to establish common schools.

We have already seen that Massachusetts led the way in the establishment of a university. Laws were also enacted, which showed that the rulers felt the importance of rightly instructing all their youth in the rudiments of learning, human and divine.

1646. The court at Hartford order a code of laws for common education.

But not one of the colonies enjoyed a repose so uninterrupted as Connecticut; and therefore none had in this respect so great advantages to show the bent of the puritan mind in regard to the improvement of the human race by the right training of the young. As early as 1646, the general court ordered Mr. Ludlow to compile a body of laws to regulate the education of children.

1650. Fundamental laws respecting common schools passed.

This he brought forward, and enactments were made, whose liberality, considering the straitened means of these early fathers, should make their descendants of this day blush for their degeneracy. "Forasmuch," says the statute, "as the good education of children is of singular behoof and benefit to any commonwealth, and whereas many parents and masters are too indulgent and negligent of their duty in that kind," The court therefore order "that the selectmen of every town, in the several quarters where they dwell, shall have a vigilant eye over their brethren and neighbors, to see that none of them shall suffer so much barbarism in any of their families as not to endeavor to teach, by themselves or others, their children and apprentices, so much learning as to enable them to read the English tongue," in order that they may be acquainted, first with the laws of God in the Scriptures, and second with the laws of the commonwealth which they are required to obey. And if any parent or master should be found guilty of this "barbarism," he was, in the first place, to be fined, and if, after due admonition of this kind, he still neglected his duty, the youth of his family were to be taken out of the hands of such unfaithful guardians, and placed under the especial charge of the magistrates, who were to see that they were duly instructed.

The "barbarism" of ignorance treated severely.

Children taken from parents who neglected to give them common learning.

Common schools established where there were 50 families. Grammar schools besides, where were 100.

But to make more certain the important object of educating the young, and to the end say they, "that learning be not buried in the grave of our forefathers," the Lord assisting our endeavors, it is ordered, "that all the townships with fifty householders shall keep a school, and pay for the same in such way as they see fit. And further, that if any town has one hundred householders, they shall keep and maintain a grammar school, where young men can be fitted for a university.

1654. Mr. Davenport proposes a college.

New Haven had also provided by law for common schools; and in 1654, Mr. Davenport proposed the institution of a col-

1656. Governor Hopkins' donation.

lege, and the town gave lands for the object. Governor Hopkins of Connecticut, who for several years was alternately with Haynes the chief magistrate of that colony, dying in London, bequeathed, for such an institution, four or five hundred pounds. The school was located at Saybrook.

1701. Ten clergymen obtain a charter and a small endowment.

The clergy of Connecticut, feeling the need of a college nearer than at Cambridge, to furnish learned men as ministers, ten of their number obtained from the general assembly a charter of incorporation, together with an annual grant of £120. Thus constituted as trustees, they held their first meeting at Saybrook; chose officers, and made laws for the infant university.

1717. The college removed to New Haven.

The location was inconvenient, and more money being subscribed to fix the college at New Haven than at rival places, it was removed thither, and received at the same time accessions of books in its library, already begun, and in its funds. The most liberal of the donors was Elihu Yale, a native of New Haven, who had made a fortune in India. His name has in that institution a nobler monument, than the silent column which rises over the grave of the warrior, or the mausoleum of the prince, whose adorning figures are those of marble, not of living and improving youth.

Elihu Yale a benefactor. The college receives his name.

Harvard and Yale.

It is remarkable that the two earliest universities of the United States continue to enjoy the highest celebrity, although many others now exist.

N. England management.

Early in this period a political event is recorded, which, as it passed away without leaving any result, would be omitted by historians, but that it is a pleasant as well as striking instance of New England management; less dignified, but sometimes less troublesome, than more direct methods of refusal to yield to powers regarded as usurped.

Gov. Fletcher attempts to take command of the Connecticut militia.

Colonel Fletcher, governor of New York, was empowered to take command of the militia of Connecticut. The colony immediately dispatched General Winthrop as an agent to remonstrate with the king and council against this extraordinary power. Colonel Fletcher, however, went to Hartford in 1693, and, in his majesty's name, demanded the surrender of the militia to his command. Captain William Wadsworth, the man by whom the charter was hid, paraded his company; but as an attendant of Fletcher began to read his commission, the captain gave command to "drum;" and when Fletcher called out "silence!" the captain raised his voice higher in a second order, "drum, drum, I say." At length Fletcher gave up in despair, perhaps fearing, if he persisted, that Wadsworth would, in good earnest, fulfil his threat, and "make daylight shine through him."

1693. October 26. He is foiled by Captain Wadsworth.

1706.

In 1706, the first Episcopal church in Connecticut was established at Stratford.

Agreeable to the recommendations of the general assembly of Connecticut, in 1708 delegates from the churches of Con-

necticut met at Saybrook and framed the ecclesiastical constitution called the "Saybrook Platform." By this the ministers of the churches in the several counties were to hold annual associations. All the clergy in the state were to meet in each county by rotation, and their meeting was termed a general association.

1708. "Saybrook Platform."

CHAPTER II.

European Politics.—Peace of Ryswic, which closes King William's War.—Queen Anne's War soon begins.

King William's war had been feebly pursued. Settlements on Oyster river were, however, destroyed by the French and Indians, and the fort at Pemaquid, which Sir William Phipps had rebuilt by the special direction of the sovereigns, had been taken. In 1697, peace was made at Ryswick, in Germany, by which it was stipulated that all places captured during the war should be restored. Thus again had the barbarous appeal to arms been to no other purpose but that of multiplying human woes.

1697. Peace of Ryswic.

But the parties profited little by the lesson, and war was soon renewed. Louis XIV. of France, had violated former treaties by placing his grandson, the Duke of Anjou, on the throne of Spain, and proclaiming, as king of England, James, the son of James II.

In America he had given orders to Villeborne, his governor, to extend Acadia to the Kennebec, to claim the exclusive right to the fisheries on the coast, and to seize all English vessels which should be found fishing upon them. In May, 1702, England, now under Queen Anne, declared war against both France and Spain; and the contests of the parent states again involved their American colonies.

1702. England declares war against France and Spain.

Notwithstanding the eastern Indians had given a solemn assurance of peace with New England, yet they now devastated Maine from Casco to Wells. Deerfield, in Massachusetts, was surprised at midnight, February, 1704, by a party of French and Indians, under Heurtel de Rouville. The sentinel of the fort being asleep, and the snow of such a depth as to allow them to pass over the palisades, they silently entered, and scalped and murdered, or secured as prisoners, the wretched inhabitants. Only a small number escaped by flight. Forty-seven were killed, and one hundred and twenty carried captive to Canada.

1704. Deerfield surprised by French and Indians.

Early in the assault, the house of the Rev. John Williams, the minister of the place, was attacked by about twenty Indians, who, after murdering two of his children, secured as

prisoners, himself, his wife, and his five remaining children. Mrs. Williams, on the second day, faltered in the march, and, according to the Indian custom, was cruelly put to death.

1704. Colonel Church destroys their settlements.

Roused by these inhumanities, the veteran warrior, Benjamin Church, mounted on horseback and rode seventy miles to offer his services to Dudley, now governor of Massachusetts, in behalf of his distressed fellow citizens. He was sent with five hundred soldiers to the eastern coast of New England, to attack the enemy in their own settlements; and, ascending the Penobscot and St. Croix rivers, he destroyed several of their towns, and took a considerable number of prisoners.

1705. Prisoners exchanged.

In 1705, Vaudreuil, now governor of Canada, proposed to Governor Dudley, a treaty of neutrality. Arrangements were accordingly made for an exchange of prisoners, and thus a large proportion of those taken at Deerfield were finally released. Among the number was Mr. Williams and some of his children. One young daughter remained, married, and raised a family in the tribe which adopted her. In the years 1706 and 1707, small parties of French and Indians hovered about the frontiers, burning, scalping, and making prisoners of the wretched inhabitants.

1710. English take Port Royal.

In 1710, Colonel Nicholson sailed from Boston in a fleet, part of which he had brought from England, and besieged Port Royal; which, after a few days' resistance, surrendered, and its name, in honor of the queen, was changed to Annapolis.

The Dutch encourage Indian outrages.

New York being protected by the Five Nations, a lucrative trade was carried on with these Indians; and the Dutch traders at Albany and Schenectady sometimes permitted predatory parties from Canada to pass from the northern parts of the province, in their attacks on the frontiers of New England, that they might enjoy the benefit of their plunder.

Peter Schuyler befriends the N. England people.

Colonel Schuyler, whom the Iroquois called Quider, having great influence over these savages, thus had frequent knowledge of their designs, and notified the people of Massachusetts of the places marked for destruction.

1713. Peace of Utrecht closes Queen Anne's war.

Queen Anne's war was closed by the treaty of Utrecht, by which Acadia was ceded to the English. For more than ten years this war had exposed the frontiers to continued attacks from a savage foe, checked the prosperity of New England, and effectually prevented the progress of settlements to the north and east.

Its disastrous effects.

The inhabitants had been constantly harassed with calls for military service, and were obliged to watch day and night lest they should be surprised and murdered, or what was not less dreaded, doomed to savage captivity. Agriculture was necessarily neglected, a heavy public debt incurred, and a state of general depression ensued.

1710. Palatines settle in the provinces.

The Palatines of Germany, having been reduced to great indigence by the wars in that country, sent to England to

solicit charity of Queen Anne. This princess having obtained for them grants of land in America, about six or seven thousand arrived during the year 1710, and planted themselves in the provinces of New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Carolina.

1714. George I.

In 1714, Queen Anne dying, George I., of the house of Brunswick, ascended the throne of England.

1713. Massachusetts now takes in all Maine.

After the treaty of Utrecht, by which France ceded to England the whole of Acadia, the general court of Massachusetts extended its jurisdiction to the utmost bounds of the province of Maine; and enterprising fishermen and traders not only revived the desolated villages, but on the eastern bank of the Kennebec erected new forts, and planted new settlements around them.

Father Ralle's war. 1717 to 1724.

Father Rasles, a Jesuit missionary of France, had for many years ministered in a rude chapel at Norridgewock on the Kennebec, among his savage converts of the Abenakies. Some of these now crossed the desert to Quebec, and consulted with Vaudreuil, the governor of Canada. Returning, they determined to resist the English occupancy, and maintain by war their own right to the country, hoping that the French would ultimately assist them.

Brunswick burned. Ralle and his party destroyed.

The Indians began hostilities by burning Brunswick. The general court of Massachusetts then offered a bounty on Indian scalps. They had ascertained, by getting possession of the papers of Father Rasles, that both he and the governor of Canada were in the counsel of the savages, and were the instigators of their depredations. A party from New England, in August, 1724, destroyed Norridgewock, and exercised a cruel and fatal vengeance upon the aged Jesuit. He was the last of that devoted order, who, in the wilds of America, had labored to attain, simultaneously, two incompatible objects, a spiritual kingdom for a heavenly Master, and a temporal one for an earthly sovereign.

He is the last of the Jesuit missionaries.

1726. August 6. Peace with the eastern Indians.

The Indians now found, that though instigated by the French, they were not supported by them, and their sachems at St. John's concluded a peace with the colonists, which, as French missions were now at an end, proved durable. English trading houses flourished, and the eastern boundary of New England remained undisputed.

CHAPTER III.

Fletcher introduces Episcopacy into New York.—Piracy.—The Jerseys united and joined with New York.

PART II. PERIOD II. CHAP. III.

1692. Colonel Fletcher succeeds Sloughter.

GOVERNOR Sloughter of New York died in 1691, and in 1692, Colonel Fletcher arrived with the commission of governor. Fletcher was a good soldier, and having fortunately secured the friendship of Major Schuyler, he was, by his advice, enabled to conduct the Indian affairs of the colony, to the acceptance of the people. He was, however, avaricious, irascible, and a bigot to his own mode of faith, which was that of the church of England.

1693. He causes Episcopal ministers to be settled,

Under pretence of introducing uniformity into the language and literature, as well as the religion of the colony, the inhabitants of which were a heterogeneous mixture of Dutch and English, he brought into the assembly, a bill for the settlement, throughout the province, of Episcopalian ministers, such as should be by himself selected. The assembly, after much debate, agreed that the ministers should be settled in certain parishes, but left the choice to the people. This was very offensive to the governor, who, after an angry speech, dissolved the assembly. Episcopalian ministers were, however, settled in several parishes; and thus was introduced, a religious order, which, at this day, forms so respectable a portion of the population of the state.

and introduces Episcopacy.

1698. Bellamont succeeds Fletcher.

In 1698, Richard, earl of Bellamont, an Irish peer, succeeded governor Fletcher. During the late wars, the seas were infested with English pirates, some of which had sailed from New York, and Fletcher was suspected of having countenanced them. Bellamont was particularly instructed "to put a stop to the growth of piracy," and, for this purpose, was promoted to the command, not of New York only, but of Massachusetts Bay and New Hampshire. As no appropriations were made by the colonial governments for this purpose, a private adventure against the pirates was agreed on, and one William Kid was recommended to the earl as a man of integrity and courage, who well knew the pirates and their places of rendezvous. Kid undertook the expedition, and sailed from New York; but he soon turned pirate himself. After some time, he burnt his ship and returned to the colonies. There is a vague tradition still existing, that he brought large quantities of money, which he caused to be concealed in the earth. He was apprehended at Boston, sent to England for his trial, and there condemned and executed.

Sends out Kid to stop piracy, who turns pirate.

1699. Is executed.

The increase of the number of proprietors in West Jersey, had introduced great confusion into that province; disputes

constantly arising, not only among the settlers, but between the proprietors themselves; so that for three years it might be said that West Jersey had no regular authority whatever. On this account, in 1698, the proprietors surrendered the right of government to the crown. Queen Anne united it with the east province, and New Jersey, as the whole was now called, was to be ruled jointly with New York by a royal governor, having a separate council and assembly of representatives.

1689. to 1692. No government in West Jersey.

The Queen appointed, as governor of the two provinces, the worthless Lord Cornbury, who, as well as herself, was a grandchild of Lord Clarendon. He rendered himself odious to the people, squandering, for his own use, large sums of money, which had been appropriated for public purposes, and left to his disposal as governor. In 1708, the assemblies of New York and New Jersey, no longer willing to submit to his government, drew up a complaint against him, and sent it to the queen. She removed him, and appointed Lord Lovelace in his room. After a short administration, Lovelace was succeeded by Sir Robert Hunter, known as the friend of Dean Swift, and he, in 1719, by Peter Schuyler, so often mentioned as the mediator between the whites and Indians, he being the oldest member of the council. Commissioners were, at this time, appointed to draw the line of partition between the provinces of New York, New Jersey, and Connecticut.

The Jerseys united, and joined to New York.

1698. Lord Cornbury's bad administration.

1708. Lovelace.

1710. Hunter.

1719. Schuyler.

In 1720, Mr. Burnet succeeded Schuyler. In order to deprive the French of their supplies for the Indians, he instituted measures to stop the trade between New York and Canada; and by this means displeased the merchants. They being thus prohibited from a direct traffic with Canada, built a trading house at Oswego, which, in defiance of the protest of the French, and the displeasure of the Iroquois, was, in 1727, converted into a fortress. At length Burnet became so unpopular with the merchants, that, though generally acceptable to the people, he was superseded in the government by Colonel Montgomery.

1720. Burnet.

Oswego built. 1722. Fortified. 1727.

Montgomery.

On his death, the command devolved on Rip Van Dam, he being the oldest member of the council, and an eminent merchant. He passively permitted the encroachments of the French, and during his administration, they erected a fort at Crown Point, which commanded Lake Champlain, and which was within the acknowledged limits of New York.

Van Dam.

George I. died in 1727, and was succeeded by his son, George II.

1727. George II.

CHAPTER IV.

Pennsylvania.—Penn's second visit.—Maryland restored

PART II.
PERIOD II.
CHAP. IV.

Penn influential at court.

AFTER William Penn's arrival in England, he became one of the most influential persons in the kingdom; for when the Duke of York was made king, under the title of James II., he manifested for him much confidence and affection. The influence thus possessed at court was never used for selfish purposes, but mainly to obtain benefits for distressed Quakers, and laws in favor of general toleration.

1692. William Penn deprived, for two years, of the government of Pennsylvania.

When James became an exile in France, Penn was suspected, by his successor, of holding with him a treasonable correspondence; and upon vague charges to this effect, he was a number of times imprisoned. In 1692, the government of Pennsylvania was taken from him, and Fletcher, governor of New York, appointed by the crown to rule his province. After strict scrutiny, the conduct of Penn was found to be irreproachable; and in 1694, he was restored to the favor of the king, and reinstated in his government; but not immediately returning to Pennsylvania, he appointed the worthy Thomas Lloyd his deputy governor.

1699. He visits it.

In 1699, Penn again visited his colony. Finding great complaint and disaffection respecting the government, he granted, in 1701, a new and liberal charter. To the assembly it gave the right of originating bills; to the governor the right of rejecting laws passed by the assembly, of appointing his own council, and of exercising the whole executive power. This charter was accepted by the assembly, although it did not satisfy the discontents of the people.

1701. Grants new privileges.

1703. The Territories separate from Pennsylvania.

The Territories rejected it altogether; and in 1703, they were allowed to form a separate assembly, Penn still appointing the same governor over both provinces. Immediately after this third charter was granted, Penn, having settled a government which has given him the glory of being one of the greatest of lawgivers, went to England, no more to visit his beloved province; and the executive authority was administered by deputy governors appointed by himself.

Maryland. **1716.** Lord Baltimore reinstated.

In the year 1716, the government of Maryland, which, since the accession of William and Mary, had been held by the crown, was restored to Lord Baltimore, the proprietor. It continued in his hands and those of his successors until the American Revolution.

CHAPTER V.

The Huguenots.—War with the Spaniards.—Tuscaroras and Yamassees.

PART II.
PERIOD II.
CHAP. V.

A DISSENSION arose in Carolina between the proprietary governors and the inhabitants, on account of the unwillingness of the English Episcopalians to admit the French Protestants who had settled in the colony to a seat in the assembly. Considering the French as their hereditary enemies, and regarding their difference of religion with all the bitterness of the times, they could not be reconciled to their participating in the rights of freemen. They affected to consider them as foreigners, and proceeded to enforce the laws of England against them as such. They even declared that marriages, solemnized by French ministers, were void; and that the estates of those thus married should not descend to their children. The Huguenots, countenanced by the proprietary governor, peacefully submitted for a time to the discouragements of such a situation; and remained in the province, hoping for a favorable change.

Dissensions in Carolina.

Meekness of the French Protestants.

The people, still complaining, John Archdale, one of the proprietors, was sent, in 1695, as governor of North and South Carolina, with full power to redress grievances. Having restored order, he left the country the next year, but without giving to the French their civil rights. In a short time, however, their correct deportment overcame all prejudices, and they were admitted to the privileges of citizens and freemen.

1695. Gov. Archdale restores order.

About this time a vessel from Madagascar, touching at Carolina, the captain presented Governor Archdale with a bag of seed rice, giving him, at the same time, instructions as to the manner of its culture. The seed was divided among several planters. From this accident arose the cultivation of this staple commodity of Carolina.

Rice introduced from Africa.

The proprietary governor, invested with arbitrary powers, resided in the southern province, and governed the northern by his deputy. In that land of rivers and vine-clad forests, liberty roamed at large. The settlers had been early visited by George Fox, who found them "a tender people" to receive the doctrines of inner light and outward nonconformity; but the deputy governor, though his powers were ample, could never execute them, quarrel as he might, beyond the limits of the peoples' will.

George Fox, the founder of the sect of Quakers, visits North Carolina.

On the breaking out of Queen Anne's war, an attempt was immediately made by Governor Moore, of South Carolina, against the Spanish province of St. Augustine. The expedition was unsuccessful, and so heavy was the expense, that, to pay the debt incurred, the assembly, for the first time, resorted to the expedient of a paper currency.

May, **1702.** Gov. Moore's expedition.

The first paper currency of S. C.

1703. Moore subdues the Apalachian Indians.

In 1703, Governor Moore proceeded against the Appalachian Indians, whom the Spaniards had instigated to hostility. He marched into the heart of their settlements, and laid in ashes their towns between the Altamaha and Savannah. Some of the captives who were taken, the avaricious governor employed in cultivating his own fields, while others were sold for his personal emolument.

1706. Spanish invasion repelled.

The Spaniards, aided by the French, took their turn for invasion; and Charleston was justly alarmed at the approach of five hostile ships, commanded by Le Feboure. Land forces were also on the march from St. Augustine. But the summons of the invaders to surrender, and their consequent attack, was met by the people with a spirit kindred to that manifested by Charleston in the days of the revolution; and Le Feboure and his party retired with loss.

1707.

In 1707, another colony of French Protestants settled on a branch of the Neuse river.

1712. War with the Tuscaroras.

In 1712, the Tuscaroras, and other Indians of North Carolina, formed, with all the cruel subtlety of the savage character, a plot for exterminating the entire white population. Having kept their design profoundly secret until the night fixed for its execution, they then entered the houses of the poor Palatines of Germany who had recently settled on the Roanoke, and murdered men, women, and children. A few who escaped gave the alarm, and the remaining inhabitants, collecting into a camp, kept guard night and day, until aid could be received from South Carolina. That colony sent to their relief six hundred militia, and three hundred and sixty Indians, under Captain Barnwell. Although a wilderness at this time separated the northern from the southern settlements, yet Barnwell penetrated it, boldly attacked the Indians, killed three hundred, and took one hundred prisoners. Those who survived, fled to the chief town of the Tuscaroras, where they had erected a wooden breastwork for their security; but here Barnwell's troops surrounded them, and they at last sued for peace. The Tuscaroras had lost one thousand men in the course of this war, and they soon after left their country and united with the Iroquois, making the sixth nation of that confederacy.

They are pursued and vigorously attacked by Barnwell.

Being defeated they unite with the Iroquois.

1715. War of the Yamassees in S. C.

In 1715, the Yamasees, who resided northeast of the Savannah river, secretly instigated a combination of all the Indians from Florida to Cape Fear against South Carolina. The Creeks, Apalachians, Cherokees, Catawbas, and Congarees, engaged in the enterprise,—and it was computed that their whole force exceeded six thousand fighting men. The southern tribes fell suddenly on the traders settled among them, and, in a few hours, ninety persons were massacred. Some of the inhabitants fled precipitately to Charleston and gave the alarm.

Formidable parties were also penetrating the northern fron-

tier, and approaching Charleston. They were repulsed by the militia, but their route was marked by devastation. Governor Craven adopted the most energetic and judicious measures. At the head of twelve hundred men he marched towards the southern frontier, and overtook the strongest body of the enemy at a place called Saltcatchers, where an obstinate and bloody battle was fought. The Indians were totally defeated, and the governor, pressing upon them, drove them from their territory, and pursued them over the Savannah river. Here they were hospitably received by the Spaniards of Florida, and, long afterwards, they made incursions into Carolina. Nearly four hundred of the Carolinians were slain in this war.

Battle of Salt Catchers.

The Yamassees settle in Florida.

These events, in their consequences, had heightened the dissensions, already existing between the people of the province and the proprietors. The legislature had applied to the company for aid and protection, which was denied. For temporary relief, large emissions of paper money were next resorted to. Directions were given by the proprietors to the governor, to reduce the quantity in circulation. The assembly then resolved to appropriate the lands, from which the Indians had been driven; but the proprietors refused to sanction this necessary proceeding. A memorial was presented against their chief justice, Trott, and the receiver-general, Rhett, who, for tyrannical measures, had become extremely obnoxious to the colony; and a request was made that they might be removed from office. They were, however, not only retained, but thanked for their services.

Evils of the proprietary government.

Their contempt of the people.

A general combination was now formed throughout the colony, to subvert the proprietary government; and the inhabitants bound themselves to stand by each other, in defense of their lives and liberties. This was done with such secrecy and despatch, that, before the governor was informed, almost every inhabitant of the province was engaged in the combination. A letter was despatched to Mr. Johnson, then the governor, from a committee of the representatives of the people, informing him that they were to wait on him for the purpose of offering him the government of the province, under the king; as they were resolved no longer to submit to that of the proprietors. Johnson refused, and endeavored to suppress the spirit of revolt; but it had diffused itself beyond his control: and, at last, the people elected Moore governor of the province.

1719.
Carolinians revolt and choose a governor.

The colonists stated their situation to the crown, when it was decided that the proprietors had forfeited their charter; and that both the Carolinas should be taken under the royal protection. Nicholson, known in the history of the northern provinces, was, in 1720, appointed governor, and, early the following year, he arrived at Charleston, where he was received with every demonstration of joy. Peace having been made between Great Britain and Spain, he had been instructed to

The crown assumes the government, and appoints Nicholson.
1720.

cultivate the friendship of the Indians, and also of the Spaniards of Florida. He accordingly held treaties with the Cherokees and Creeks, in which boundaries were settled and other necessary regulations made. Having thus secured the province from assaults without, Governor Nicholson, by the encouragement and support which he gave to literary and religious institutions, soon caused its internal affairs to assume a new aspect.

1729. North and South Carolina separated.

The revolution was completed in 1729, by an agreement between the crown and seven of the proprietors, whereby, for a valuable consideration, they surrendered their right and interest, not only in the government of these provinces, but also in the soil. North and South Carolina were at the same time erected into separate governments.

CHAPTER VI.

Extension of the French Empire.—New France.

1699. Pensacola settled.

In 1699, Pensacola was settled by three hundred Spaniards from Vera Cruz. Scarcely were they established when a fleet under Le Moine d'Iberville, a Canadian Frenchman, who had been distinguished as a discoverer and a warrior, appeared along their coast, carrying several hundred persons, mostly from Canada.

February 3. d'Ibberville enters the Mississippi.

The company at first erected their huts on Ship Island, near the entrance of Lake Borgne. After three weeks, d'Ibberville proceeded with forty men, and stemming the turbid current, he entered the mouth of the Mississippi, and sailed up the stream, probably to Red River. Then, on his return, he passed through the bay which bears his name, and the lakes which he called Maurepas and Pontchartrain, to the bay of St. Louis. On the small bay of Biloxi he erected a fort, and around it his few emigrants were planted.

1702. Mobile founded.

Leaving them under the command of his brother, Bienville, he went to France. The climate proved fatal to numbers, and in 1702, the chief fortress was transferred to the western bank of the Mobile, where was made the first European settlement in Alabama.

1716. Natchez founded.

In 1716, Bienville went up the Mississippi and built fort Rosalie, on the site of Natchez, the oldest European settlement of the grand valley south of the Illinois.

1718. New Orleans founded.

False ideas of the wealth of Louisiana had been spread in France for purposes of land speculation: and in 1718, three ships came over, bearing eight hundred emigrants, who founded a city, and in honor of the regent of France, named it New Orleans. By this occupancy, as well as by her

discoveries, France laid claims to the extensive territory of Louisiana.

The French claimed also, in virtue of the discovery of Champlain, the basin of the lake which bears his name, and in 1713, they erected on its banks the fort at Crown Point. Soon after the treaty of Utrecht, they reared the fortress of Niagara. A colony of one hundred was led to Detroit as early as 1707, by De La Motte Cadillac, and another in 1712, by Anthony Crozat, who had obtained from Louis XIV. a patent for the exclusive trade of Louisiana. A few years after, a French interpreter, having obtained leave of the Iroquois to build his dwelling among them, made a small settlement at Lewistown.

1713. Crown Point built. Niagara. Detroit. 1707. to 1712. Lewistown. 1721.

Since the discoveries of the Jesuits, the French had been in possession of the various western routes from the St. Lawrence to the Mississippi; and Chicago, Vincennes, and Kaskaskia were, at the close of this period, growing settlements. De Lisle, the royal geographer of France, represented New France as extending to the remotest waters, which flowed west to the Mississippi, south to the Mobile, and north to the St. Lawrence; and it was the aim of the government to connect this vast territory by a line of military posts. The English in America had viewed their claims and their operations with alarm, but had been tardy in counter-movements. Large tracts, inhabited by savage nations, yet intervened between the fortresses of the two nations; but the period drew nigh when their conflicting claims were to be decided by an appeal to arms.

Extent of New France as represented by the French.

CHAPTER VII.

New England.—Controversy in Massachusetts respecting a fixed salary for the royal governor.

THE fears of England that her American colonies would finally throw off her yoke, and erect an independent government, increased with their growing strength. A bill had been brought into the house of commons to unite all the charter governments to the crown, but it was defeated; agents of the colonies being present in the house of lords to defend their rights.

1701. Attempt to unite the charter governments to the crown.

The governors appointed by the crown had hitherto been supported by the voluntary appropriations of the colonial assemblies. The government of England perceived, that, by leaving them dependent for their salaries on the pleasure of those they governed, they would be likely to subserve their interest rather than that of the crown: and in 1702, the gov-

1702. Royal governors denied in Massachusetts a fixed salary.

ernor of Massachusetts, then Sir Joseph Dudley, a native of the colony, but a tool of royalty, laid before the assembly his instructions from the queen, to demand for himself, and the other officers of the crown, a settled and permanent salary. The assembly declined complying with this request. In the other colonies, the same attempt was made by the royal governors, but notwithstanding their demands met with opposition, they were finally successful. In Massachusetts this was but the commencement of a series of controversies between the representatives of the crown and those of the people, which were continued through many succeeding years.

Massachusetts, to defray the expenses of the late war, had made such large emissions of paper money, that gold and silver were banished from the province. The paper depreciated, and the usual commercial evils ensued. The attention of the colony was directed to remedy these, and three parties were formed—"the first," says Marshall, "a very small one, actuated by the principle which ought always to govern—that honesty is the best policy, were in favor of calling in the paper money, and relying on the industry of the people to replace it with a circulating medium of greater stability." The second, which was numerous, were in favor of a private bank, the bills not redeemable in specie, but landed security to be given. The third party were for a public bank, the faith of the government to be pledged for the value of the notes, and the profits accruing from the bank to be applied for its support. This party prevailed, and fifty thousand pounds, in bills of credit, were issued. The bank, however, failed of its desired effect. Governor Shute succeeded Dudley, and, by his recommendation, another emission of bills of credit was made to the amount of one hundred thousand pounds. The consequence of this was, rather to heighten than allay the existing difficulties; as it was found, that the greater the quantity of this factitious substitute for money, the less was its value.

Embarrassments in the currency.

A bank.

1706. Shute succeeds Dudley.

The commercial evils of the times, being, by the people, ascribed to the operation of the public bank, its friends, among whom was the governor, were unpopular; and those who had favored a private bank, at the head of whom was a Mr. Cooke, became the dominant party. A majority of the general court were also of this party; and they refused to raise the salary of the governor, notwithstanding the depreciation of the currency. They also elected Mr. Cooke their speaker; the governor objected, alleging that he had a right to negative their choice. The house denied this right, persisted in their choice, and were, by the governor, dissolved.

The "patriot Cooke"

Assembly dissolved.

The irritated people, in almost every instance, chose the same representatives, and when the next session commenced, much ill-temper was shown on their part. Among other proceedings, justly displeasing to the governor, was the omission of the customary vote, at the commencement of the session.

1707. The same members rechosen.

for the payment of half his yearly salary; and when the tardy appropriation was made, it was reduced from six to five hundred pounds.

Governor Shute contends in vain for a fixed salary.

At the next meeting, the governor, in the name of the crown, again demanded a fixed and adequate salary. This subject was insisted on, and caused more violent disputes than any which had yet occurred. In the course of the contest, the people repeatedly asserted the principle, to maintain which, they eventually took up arms, that none but themselves or their representatives had a right to control their property.

1722. Charter liberties still further abridged.

Governor Shute, wearied with contention, left the province in 1722, went privately to England, and preferred complaints against Massachusetts, in consequence of which, two clauses, additional to her charter, were sent out, and, at length, reluctantly submitted to, from the fear of something worse; the one affirming the right of the governor to negative the choice of speaker; and the other, denying to the house of representatives the right of adjourning itself for any period longer than two days.

1728. Burnet governor of Massachusetts and New Hampshire.

In 1728, Mr. Burnet, who had been removed from the magistracy of New York, was appointed to that of Massachusetts and New Hampshire. He was instructed by his sovereign to insist on a fixed salary. The general court were no longer as in the administration of Shute, violent and provoking in their measures, but resisted with calmness and caution, endeavoring to evade and postpone a decisive answer. They voted Governor Burnet the unusual sum of one thousand seven hundred pounds; three hundred for his travelling expenses, and fourteen hundred for his salary. He accepted the appropriation for his expenses, but rejected that for his salary.

Burnet removes the court from Boston to Salem.

The people of Boston took a lively interest in the dispute, and the governor, believing that the general court were thus unduly influenced, removed them to Salem. Continuing firm to their purpose, he kept the court in session several months beyond the usual time, and refused to sign a warrant on the treasurer for the payment of the members.

1729. Burnet dies.

In April, 1729, after a recess of about three months, the general court again convened at Salem, but proving refractory on the subject of the salary, the governor adjourned them, and they met at Cambridge in August. Unable to make any impression, Burnet felt so severely the difficulties of his position, that he sickened with a fever, and died on the 17th of September.

1730. Belcher succeeds: Massachusetts carries her point.

His successor, Mr. Belcher, who arrived at Boston in August, 1730, renewed the controversy; but the court, after two or three sessions, succeeded with him, (and by consent of the crown,) in a policy which they had vainly attempted with Burnet, that of paying him a liberal sum for present use, without binding themselves for the future.

1719. Londonderry settled.

In 1719, more than one hundred families emigrated from the north of Ireland, and settled in the town of Londonderry, in New Hampshire. They introduced the foot spinning-wheel, the manufacture of linen, and the culture of potatoes.

Aurora Borealis.

A phenomenon, singular at the time, and not yet satisfactorily explained, alarmed the people of New England in 1719. This was the *Aurora Borealis*, first noticed in the country on the night of the 17th of December. Its appearance, according to the writers of the day, was more calculated to excite terror than later appearances of the same kind.

1723. First settlement in Vermont.

In 1723, a fort was built on Connecticut river, in the present town of Brattleborough, under the direction of lieutenant governor Dummer, of Massachusetts, and hence it was called Fort Dummer. Around this fort was commenced the first settlement in Vermont.

About this period, a new colony was projected in England. The country, between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers, although within the limits of the Carolina grant, was still unoccupied by European settlers. The patriotic deemed it important that this region should be planted by a British colony, otherwise, it was feared, it would be seized by the Spaniards from Florida, or the French from the Mississippi. At the same time, a spirit of philanthropy was abroad in England, to notice the distresses of the poor, especially those shut up in prisons, and to provide for their relief.

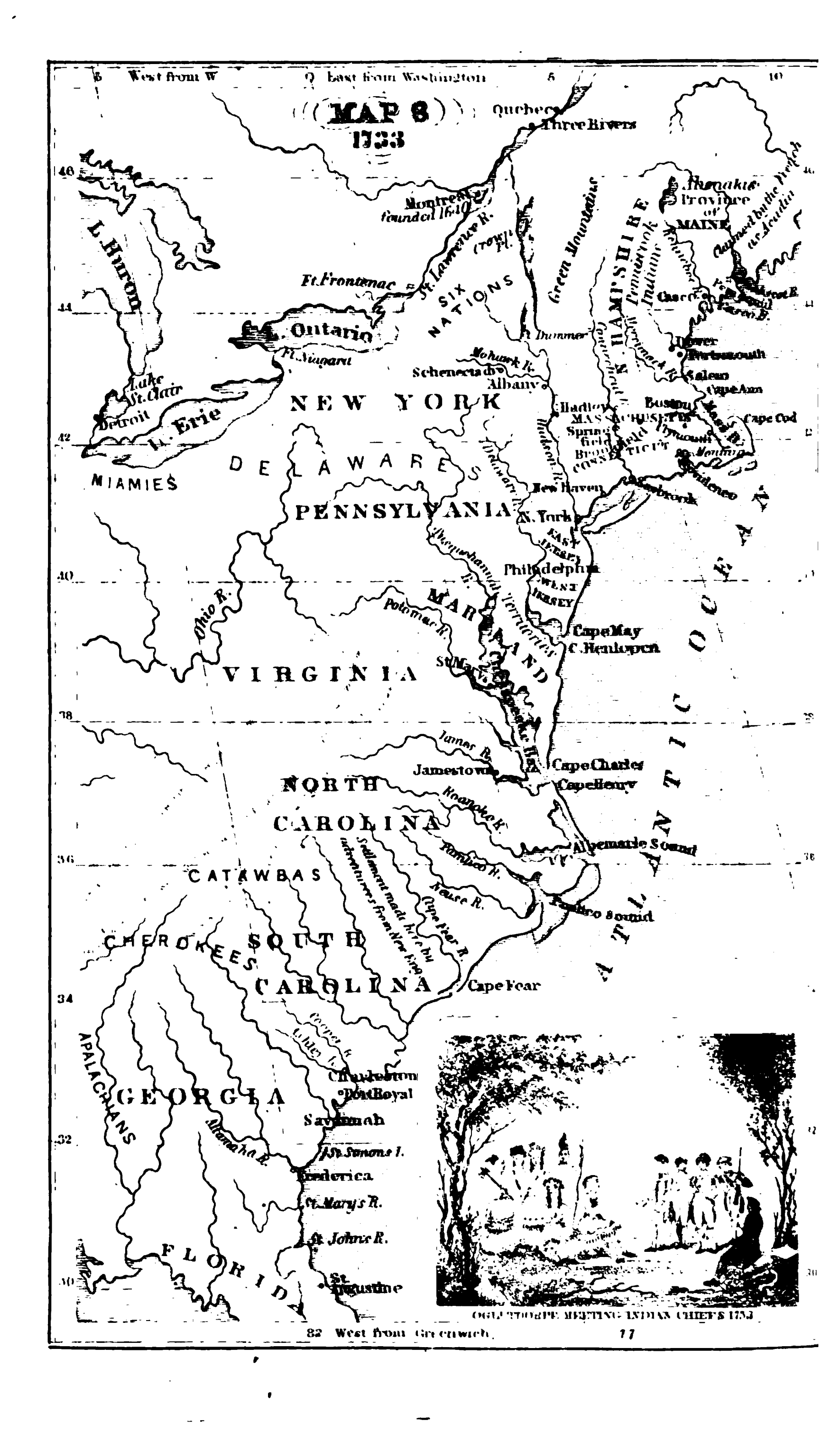
Oglethorpe and others plan a settlement.

Actuated by these generous considerations, a number of gentlemen in England, of whom James Oglethorpe was the most zealous, formed a project to settle this tract by such of the suffering poor as might be willing to seek, in the new world, the means of subsistence.

1732. Georgia granted to a company in England.

To this company, the territory between the Savannah and Altamaha, now, in honor of the king, denominated Georgia, was granted; and with its settlement was completed that of the thirteen veteran colonies, which fought the war of the revolution, and whose emblematic stars and stripes still decorate the banner of American Independence.





OGLETHORPE MEETING INDIAN CHIEFS 1733

PERIOD III.

FROM

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT } 1733 { OF GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE.

TO

THE PEACE OF PARIS, } 1763. { WHICH CLOSES THE FRENCH WAR.

CHAPTER I.

Georgia and Carolina engaged in war with the Spaniards of Florida.—The Slave Trade.—War of the French with the Chickasaws.

OGLETHORPE having prepared for the settlement of Georgia, by the assistance of a corporation consisting of twenty-one persons, who were called "Trustees for settling and establishing the colony of Georgia," embarked in November, 1732, with one hundred and sixteen emigrants for America.

Oglethorpe sails for America.

Large sums of money had been subscribed, which were applied to the purchase of clothing, food, arms, agricultural utensils and transportation, for such indigent persons as should be willing to cross the Atlantic and begin a new settlement.

Supplies furnished for the colony by the benevolent in England.

They arrived at Charleston, January 15th, 1733. Governor Johnson, sensible of the importance of having a barrier between his people and the southern Indians, gave them all the aid in his power, and accompanied them to the place of their destination. This was Yamacraw Bluff, since called Savannah, which they reached on the first of February, and Oglethorpe immediately commenced a fort.

First settlement made at Savannah.

His next care was to propitiate the Indians. The tribe settled at Yamacraw was considerable. The Creeks, at this period, could muster 2,500 warriors; the Cherokees, 6,000; the Choctaws, 5,000; and the Chickasaws, 700; amounting in the whole to 14,200. Aware, that without the friendship of these nations, his colony could not even exist, much less prosper, Oglethorpe summoned a general meeting of the chiefs, fifty of whom met him in council at Savannah. By means of an interpreter, he made them the most friendly professions, which they reciprocated; and these amicable dispositions passed into a solemn treaty.

The Indian tribes.

Enters into friendly relations.

Soon after these occurrences, Georgia was increased by five or six hundred emigrants; but most of them were idle, and many of them vicious. In order to procure a more efficient population, eleven townships of 20,000 acres each, were laid out on the Savannah, Altamaha, and Santee rivers, and divided into lots of fifty acres each; one of which was to be given to

Fifty acres to be given to each settler

every actual settler. This arrangement proved so attractive, that a large number of emigrants soon arrived. Highlanders from Scotland built the town of Inverness, afterwards Darien, on the Altamaha; and Germans, a town which they called Ebenezer, on the Savannah.

1736. Scotch, and Germans settle in Georgia.

The charter granted to the trustees of Georgia, vested in them powers of legislation for twenty-one years, and they now proceeded to establish regulations for the government of the province, in which the interests of humanity were regarded more than those of trade.

Civil government.

1736. Oglethorpe builds three forts on territory claimed by the Spaniards.

In 1736, Oglethorpe erected three forts, one on the Savannah, at Augusta; another called Frederica, in the vicinity of the Scotch settlement, on the island of St. Simons; and a third, named Fort William, on Cumberland island. The Spaniards remonstrated, and insisted on the evacuation of the country as far as the thirty-third degree of north latitude.

Is made commander-in-chief in Carolina and Georgia.

Oglethorpe about this time returned to England. That nation being determined to maintain their claim to the disputed territory, appointed him commander-in-chief of the British forces in Carolina and Georgia, and sent him back with a regiment of six hundred men. On his arrival in America, he established his head-quarters at Frederica.

1738. Insurrection of slaves at Stono, near Charleston, S. C. caused by the Spaniards.

About this time, a number of slaves near Charleston, influenced by the Spaniards, rose in a body, armed themselves by forcing open a magazine at Stono, and thence proceeding south twelve miles, they killed all the whites they met, and compelled the negroes to join them. At length, becoming intoxicated, they were attacked and overcome by the men of a worshipping assembly, who, according to law, went armed. Most of them were put to death.

October 23, **1739.** Oglethorpe invades Florida, May, **1740.** His attempt unsuccessful, and disasters ensue.

England had now declared war against Spain; Oglethorpe invaded Florida, and invested Diego, a small fort, about twenty-five miles from St. Augustine. After a feeble resistance, it capitulated, and he returned. A short time after, he blockaded St. Augustine with 2,000 men. But this expedition proved unsuccessful, and produced the unfortunate results of an increase of the public debt, and a temporary distrust between the people and their general.

Charleston burned.

The same year, Charleston, in South Carolina, was destroyed by fire. To relieve the sufferers, the British parliament generously voted £20,000.

1742. June. Georgia invaded by the Spaniards. Bravery of the Scotch under M'c-Intosh.

In May, 1742, a fleet was sent from Havanna, from which, late in June, debarked a Spanish army at St. Simons. Oglethorpe, with his wonted energy, had collected troops and posted himself at Frederica. He was not in sufficient force openly to attack the enemy, but was himself attacked by a party of Spaniards. His troops, particularly the Highlanders, under Captain M'c Intosh, fought bravely,—repulsed, and slew two hundred of the enemy at "the Bloody Marsh."

Oglethorpe, on being informed of a division in their camp,

next determined on a surprise, and marched his army, during the night, within two miles of their entrenchments, when a French soldier of his party discharged his musket and ran into their lines. Discovery defeated every hope of success, and Oglethorpe returned to his camp. He then adroitly planned to make the Spaniards believe that the deserter was a spy, and was giving them information to mislead them. He wrote him a letter, urging him to give the Spaniards such an account of the situation of his army as should induce them to attack him, or would, at any rate, serve to detain them in their own camp, until the succours which he expected should arrive. This letter, as Oglethope had contrived, fell into the hands of the Spaniards; who, having loaded the deserter with irons, were deliberating upon its contents, when they perceived off the coast some ships of war, which South Carolina had sent to Oglethorpe without his knowledge. Panic-struck, the Spaniards embarked, and left the coast in such haste that their artillery, provisions, and military stores, fell into the hands of the Georgians.

Oglethorpe attempts a surprise and fails.

Makes advantage of his discomfiture to punish a deserter, and rid the country of the Spaniards.

Georgia, in its early settlement, was distinguished by the peculiar humanity in which it was founded. The chivalric Oglethorpe "sought not himself, but others;" and for ten years he gave his disinterested services, without claiming so much as a cottage or a farm. Though a brave warrior, compassion was the leading trait of his mind. Hence the imprisoned debtors of England, the unfortunate adherents of the Scottish Stewarts, and those holy persecuted men, the missionary Moravians of Germany, each found in him a father. His mercy was also extended to the African; and he would not, at first, allow a slave in his colony.

Oglethorpe distinguished for compassionate kindness.

But at that day, the nations of Europe, especially England, were permitting their ships to go to Africa, and there, for a trifle, they purchased of victors, their captives—of parents, their children—and of slave-breeders, their young negroes: and where their shipmasters could not buy, they could steal. As the African youth walk abroad in the twilight, they are seized, and hurried to the slave-ship. It is crowded, and they are manacled. Water and food fail; disease agonizes their frames. . They shriek,—they seek to burst their chains, that they may plunge into the deep. But youth and life are strong within them, and perhaps they survive—to be carried to different marts—sold like cattle—and bought to labor beneath burning suns, till they die!

Computed that England took from Africa a number equal to that carried away by all other nations.

Horrors of the slave-ship.

Such is the history of annual tens of thousands which were, at that period, carried wherever the slave-dealer could find, or make a market. Before the American Revolution, *nine millions* had thus been taken from Africa. Some hundreds of thousands were brought to this country. But when they were once bought by the Anglo-American colonists, their condition, in far the greater proportion of cases, became better than it

Nine millions taken from Africa.

Authority Abbe Raynal, as quoted by Mr. Bancroft

was elsewhere; incomparably better than it had been in their own country, where scarce a gleam of moral light illumined the darkness of their minds.

Slaves at length admitted into Georgia.

The refusal of Oglethorpe to allow the Georgians to possess slaves, when the adjoining colonies carried on their plantations by their labor, was greatly injurious to its pecuniary prosperity; and at length, even the pious Moravians, a party of whom were, for a time, in Georgia, agreed, that if their salvation was regarded, it was, under the circumstances, proper to own and employ them. This opinion at length prevailed, it being also justified by the ardent and eloquent Whitfield, who, with the two Wesleys, the three founders of the sect of Methodists, sympathized with Oglethorpe in his benevolence; and each spent some time in America, assisting him in his enterprise. Whitfield founded, near Savannah, a house for orphans.

The Moravians, Whitfield, and the two Westleys, in Georgia. 1734 to 1740.

1752. Georgia a royal province.

In 1752, the trustees, wearied with a troublesome and profitless charge, resigned their office, and Georgia became a royal province.

April. 1732. Louisiana. Bienville governor.

Louisiana, after having been for fourteen years under a company of avaricious speculators formed at Paris, reverted to the French crown; and Bienville was appointed governor. The Chickasaws were the dread of the Louisianians They had incited the Natchez to commit cruel murders upon the whites, which had ended in the entire destruction of that peculiar nation; the Great Sun himself, with four hundred of his subjects, having been sold into slavery. The Chickasaws occupied a large and beautiful tract, east of the Mississippi, and on the head of the Tombecbee. This they would not allow the French to occupy, but maintained their own independence. Between the two rivals, they favored the English rather than the French.

1735. The Chickasaws trouble the French.

The Natchez are ruined.

1736. The French make war with the Chickasaws.

It was concerted, in France, that a force, under Bienville, should ascend the Tombecbee to meet an army collected from the region of the Illinois, under the young and valorous d'Artaguette. At the time appointed, the ardent young warrior, with his small army, was in the country of the hostile savages; but the laggards from the south had not seasonably arrived. After a brave effort to subdue the Chickasaws, he was overcome. Bienville at length arrived, but the Indians, aware of his approach, and aided by English traders, received their army in such a manner that they threw their artillery into the Tombecbee, and, crest-fallen, returned down its stream. The Chickasaws compelled the brave d'Artaguette to witness the torture and death of his companions, one of whom was the same Vincennes who had given his name to the capital of Illinois. The young warrior was then dismissed to go and relate to the whites the deeds of the Chickasaws.

d'Artaguette and his party destroyed by the dilatory movements of Bienville.

Four years afterwards, a larger French and Indian force, aided by troops from Canada, invaded the country of the Chick-

1740.

asaws; but sickness wasted them, and at length Bienville, who led them, was glad to treat with the Indians on their own terms. On his return he talked largely of having subdued them; but he left the country in their possession. They guarded it from the occupancy of the French; and as the event proved, kept it for the English.

CHAPTER II.

Old French War.—Capture of Louisburg.—French and English claims to the Basin of the Mississippi.

1744. War between England and France.

As France and Spain were at this time governed by different branches of the house of Bourbon, it was not to be expected that the former nation would long continue at peace, while the latter was at war with Great Britain. Accordingly, in 1744, war was proclaimed between England and France.

Louisburg, the capital of the island of Cape Breton, had been fortified with great care and expense, and was now called, from its strength, the Dunkirk of America; while, from its position, it commanded the navigation of the St. Lawrence, and the fisheries of the adjoining seas.

Shirley plans an attack, which is opposed, then sanctioned by the court of Mass.

On this fortress, Governor Shirley of Massachusetts, now meditated an attack. He first applied to the British ministry for naval assistance; but, without waiting for returns, he laid open his designs to the general court of the colony, having previously required of the members an oath of secrecy. The plan being thought too great, too hazardous, and too expensive, it was apparently abandoned; but an honest member, who performed the family devotions at his lodgings, inadvertently discovered the secret by praying for the divine blessing on the attempt. The people approving the project, with which they became thus accidentally acquainted, were clamorous in its support. It was revived by the court, and after a long deliberation, the vote in its favor was carried by a single voice.

1745. Forces commanded by Colonel Pepperell.

Troops were immediately raised by Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, to aid those of Massachusetts. The command of these forces was given to Colonel William Pepperell, a merchant of Maine, who sailed on the 25th of March, and arrived at Canso on the 4th of April.

British naval force under Commodore Warren.

The day before leaving Boston, an express-boat, which had been sent to the West Indies to ask the assistance of Commodore Warren, returned with the intelligence that he had declined to furnish the aid required. The resolute colonists rashly determined to proceed without his co-operation; but subsequently he received orders from England, and hastened with his squadron to join the colonial armament. The whole

PART II. PERIOD III. CHAP. II.

fleet arrived at Chapeau Rouge bay, on the 30th of April. Its appearance brought to the French the first intelligence of the meditated attack.

April 30. Arrive at Louisburg.

The army effected their landing in the vicinity of the fortress, though not without opposition. Colonel Vaughan, of New Hampshire, conducted a detachment through the woods, and against all sober calculation, succeeded in possessing himself of a battery which commanded the place. The siege was now commenced. For fourteen nights successively did these hardy veterans perform a drudgery, which, from the want of roads, would have been impossible for oxen, by drawing to the battery the cannon from the landing-place, two miles through a deep morass. Commodore Warren now captured the Vigilant, an expected ship, having on board five hundred and sixty men, and stores for the garrison. Preparations were immediately made for an assault upon the fort by sea and land. A mutiny had occurred in the French garrison before the arrival of the English; which, giving to the soldiers a disposition to desert, rendered a sortie from the fort impracticable. In view of these discouraging circumstances, the governor, on the forty-ninth day of the siege, surrendered Louisburg, and the island of Cape Breton. When the New England men entered the place as conquerors, and beheld the strength of the works, some of them were half frightened at what they had attempted, and quite astonished at what they had achieved.

Hardihood and resolution of the besiegers.

Commodore Warren takes the Vigilant.

June 16. Louisburg surrenders.

The French, exasperated at their loss, sent a powerful armament, under d'Anville, with orders to ravage the whole coast of North America. Tempest, disease, and other disasters attended this force, and the fleet returned to France without having effected any other object than that of alarming the colonies.

1746. Colonies frightened by a great French fleet.

Peace was proclaimed in 1748, and a treaty signed at Aix la Chapelle, by commissioners from England, France, and Spain, the basis of which was the mutual restoration of all places taken during the war: and Louisburg, to the grief and mortification of the colonies reverted to the French. Its capture, had, however, done credit to their military prowess, as it had been by far the most brilliant exploit of the entire war;—a war which showed the wretched condition to which the European people were reduced by a knavish policy on the part of their rulers, the miserable counterfeit of wisdom. The blood and treasure of the many had been spent without result, for the gratification of the few; and peace was now concluded without any settlement of differences, which were still existing, and which were ready at any moment to break out again into open hostility. This was especially the case in regard to the American claims of the contracting powers.

1748. Peace of Aix la Chapelle.

A war without results, and a peace without security.

The French, in virtue of the discoveries of Champlain, Marquette, La Salle, and others, claimed all the lands occupied by the waters flowing into the St. Lawrence and the

Extent of New France as stated by French geographers.

Lakes; and all watered by the Mississippi and its branches. In fact, our whole country, according to their geographers, was New France, except that east of the great ranges of mountains, whose streams flow into the Atlantic; and of this portion they claimed the basin of the Kennebec, and all Maine to the east of that valley.

British claim to the same territory.

The British, on the other hand, asserted a right to the entire country, on account of the discovery of Cabot, as may be seen by their early patents, to which they gave an extension from the Atlantic to the Pacific. This title they had sought to strengthen. The chiefs of the confederate Iroquois had set up a claim, that their nations had, at some indefinite period, conquered the country of the Mississippi; and this title, such as it was, the English had bought.

An approaching contest.

But in this contest for the right, which was rather with the savage occupants of the soil, than with either of the disputants, one thing was evident; the question would ultimately be settled between them, by an appeal to arms; and the crisis approached.

Chain of forts from the St. Lawrence to the Mississippi.

The French had formed the vast plan of a chain of forts to connect their settlements, recently made at the mouth of the Mississippi, with their earlier colonies on the St. Lawrence. They had accomplished their purpose in part, having fortresses along the lakes as far as the southern shore of Lake Erie, where they had two forts, one at Presque Isle, and another on French creek, twelve miles south. On the Mississippi, and on the Ohio and its branches, they had also their fortifications.

1750. Ohio Company are complained of to Dinwiddie.

A number of gentlemen, mostly in Virginia, of whom Lawrence Washington was one, procured, in 1750, an act of the British parliament, constituting them "the Ohio Company," and granting them six hundred thousand acres of land on or near the Ohio river. They caused the tract to be surveyed, and opened a trade with the Indians in the vicinity. This becoming known to the French, the governor of Canada complained to the authorities of New York and Pennsylvania, threatening to seize their traders if they did not quit their territory; and several of their number were accordingly taken and carried to the fort at Presque Isle.

1752. He selects Washington as his envoy

The governor of Virginia, the zealous and active Dinwiddie, alarmed at these movements on the part of the French, had sent a trader among them as a spy, who returning, increased his fears by vague accounts of the French posts near Lake Erie, without gratifying his curiosity as to the number or object of their forces. Dinwiddie determined, although the season was advanced, to send immediately a trusty person to require the French commandant to quit the territory; and also to bring back such an account of his strength and position, that if he refused peaceably to retreat, some feasible method of ejectment might be adopted. A young man of twenty-two,

an officer of the militia, was chosen. His figure was commanding, his air inspired respect and confidence. His name was GEORGE WASHINGTON.

CHAPTER III.

George Washington.—His birth, parentage, and education.—His conduct in places of trust, private, and public.

The American Washingtons. John, Lawrence; Augustine, GEORGE WASHINGTON, born in Westmoreland, Virginia. February 22, 1732.

LAWRENCE WASHINGTON, the grandfather of George, and Augustine Washington his father, had continued the family residence in Westmoreland county, where his great grandfather, John, already mentioned, had fixed his seat: and there, he who is now regarded as the Father of his Country, was born on the 22nd of February, 1732, one year before the last of the old thirteen colonies was settled by Oglethorpe. In 1734, his father removed, with his family, to Stafford county, opposite to Fredericksburg, on the Rappahannock; little thinking that his playful boy, then but two years old, was marked by Providence for a career so elevated.

1743. His father dies.

In 1743, Augustine Washington died, and left to each of his sons valuable landed estates. To Lawrence, his oldest, he bequeathed a beautiful tract on the bank of the Potomac; and to George, the lands and mansion where he died. George was the oldest offspring of a second marriage; and his mother,

His excellent mother his sole guardian.

Mary Washington, was, by his father's will, his sole guardian. She was a rare woman, affectionate, judicious, firm and energetic: and it was under her maternal guidance, and in the common school, that Washington developed those physical, intellectual, and moral elements, which formed his greatness. When in school he was assiduous, pains-taking, and exact in

His early moral character.

the performance of his exercises; and he was, at the same time, so true in his words, so righteous in his actions, and so just in his judgment, that his school-mates were wont to bring their differences before him for decision. Superior also in

His activity.

bodily health and vigor, he excelled in athletic sports, and adventurous exploits. He loved the military; and tradition reports that the first battles in which he commanded, were the mimic engagements, which he taught to his school-fellows.

He learned to read and to write well, and he thoroughly mastered arithmetic. This was all which the school helped him to

His limited advantages over balanced by great self-exertion.

acquire. Of himself he practiced composition; and he happily formed a style suited to the lofty tone of his moral sentiments, and the directness and energy of his character. The higher mathematics he learned with pleasure and mental profit, his object being to prepare himself for the occupation of surveyor

He set every thing down in his books, his diagrams, his observations on manners, and his rules of behavior. Nothing was too laborious, or too tedious for his determined mind.

His brother Lawrence was early an officer in the British navy. He was under that Admiral Vernon in 1740, who brought over in thirty sail of the line 27,000 men; and who, in attempting to take Carthagena, witnessed such great sufferings from disease and death in his army. It was in commemoration of his beloved commander, that Lawrence Washington gave the name of Mount Vernon to his estate. Noticing the military turn of his young brother, he procured for him a midshipman's warrant in the British navy; but his mother interfered and prevented his acceptance.

1740. Admiral Vernon. Lawrence Washington wishes to make his brother George a British midshipman.

Lawrence Washington had married a relative of Lord Fairfax; and through this connection, George became acquainted with that family, by whose elevated society he derived various advantages. To survey the great estates of Lord Fairfax, now residing in Virginia, he first began his career of active life. Though a boy of just sixteen, he was intrusted with what would have been responsible, arduous, and difficult duty, to a sound and able man. Among the forest wilds of the Alleghanies, the young surveyor frequently ranged alone; but on the summits he rejoiced in the beauty of the earth and sky; and in the valleys he examined well all rare and curious things. He had often no bed to lodge in, and no roof to shelter him; and with his own hands he dressed the game which his musket had procured. Sometimes, however, he shared the wigwam, and the unpalatable fare of the native. But these hardships were an important preparation for the service he had afterwards to perform. His employment also was lucrative; and he discharged its duties in a manner that made men regard him as a youth of extraordinary promise.

March, **1748.** He becomes a surveyor among the mountains.

Cheerfully encounters hardships.

He gains property and honor.

He was only nineteen when he was made an adjutant general of the Virginia militia, with the rank of Major. About this time he accompanied to the West Indies his brother Lawrence, now declining with a pulmonary disease. His voyage was advantageous to himself, from his great observation and industry; but his brother's disease remained, and he died during the next year. By his will he left George his executor; and gave him a reversionary title to the Mount Vernon estate.

1751. Made Adjutant with title of Major.

1752. Receives a title to the Mount Vernon estate.

Major Washington was now placed over one of the four divisions into which Dinwiddie had portioned the militia of "the Dominion" the style then given to Virginia. He introduced a uniform discipline, and infused throughout his command, his own military spirit. It was at this period that he was chosen by the governor as his envoy to the French. The seat of government for Virginia was Williamsburg. Thither Washington repaired, and was furnished with instructions, and dispatches; the most important of which was a letter

He commands the northern division of the Va. militia.

He sets out to bear Dinwiddie's letter across the wilderness, December 4, **1753.**

from Dinwiddie, to St. Pierre the French commandant, requiring him with threats, to withdraw from the territory belonging to the English sovereign.

Nov. 31. His rout from Williamsburg to Cumberland.

Washington departed on the 31st of November, to traverse more than five hundred miles, much of the way, a pathless, as well as a wintry desert. His route lay through Fredericksburg, Alexandria, and Winchester, to Will's Creek, since Cumberland. Here, taking leave of every vestige of civilization, and having procured Mr. Gist, agent of the Ohio company, as interpreter and guide, his party of eight plunged into the recesses of the wilderness. They passed through snow and storms, over mountain precipices, and down among thickets into flooded valleys, to ford unbridged and swollen rivers, on frail and dangerous rafts. Coming upon the Youghiogeny they followed it to the Monongahela and that to its junction with the Alleghany. "The Fork," as the site of Pittsburg was called, was then a desert, but Washington noticed, and afterwards reported it, as a suitable place for a fort.

Dec. 14. Leaves Cumberland and passes a trackless wilderness.

At Logstown on the Ohio, he meets the Half-king.

From the Fork, he went down the river twenty miles to Logstown, where he was to deliver friendly greetings from Dinwiddie to the great chief of the Southern Hurons, Tanacharison, or the Half-king; whose friendship was courted both by French and English. The chief received him with kindness. He had been, he told Washington, to the French camp and had there made a set speech, in which he declared to the officers, that the land in question, belonged neither to the English nor the French; but the Great Spirit had given it to the Indians, and allowed them to make it their residence. "I desire you therefore," said he, "to withdraw, as I have our brothers, the English; for I will keep you at arm's length."

He relates to Washington the speech he had made the French.

Goes with Washington to the French camp.

After Major Washington had attended a friendly council with the Indians, Tanacharison and three of his principal men, accompanied him north, more than a hundred miles to the encampment at French Creek. Here St. Pierre, who had been but a few days in command of the post, received him with the courteous bearing and hospitable attentions of the French gentleman. But to Dinwiddie's request, that he would leave the territory which belonged to the British, he replied, after two days consultation with his officers, that it did not become him to discuss treaties; such questions should rather be addressed to the governor-general, the Marquis du Quesne; he acted under his orders, and those he should be careful to obey.

St. Pierre's gentlemanly treatment of Washington and soldierly reply to Dinwiddie.

Tanacharison's constancy.

Washington and his party, by previous concert, had been making every possible observation on the state of the forces and camp, and now receiving the reply of St. Pierre, he was desirous to depart; but the French were tampering with the Indians, and unwilling to dismiss the Half-king, until they had corrupted his fidelity; but in this they failed.

The return of Washington in the dead of winter, was full of

startling and perilous adventure. Once a treacherous guide aimed his musket at him, but it missed fire; and once, on the Alleghany river, he and his guide, having made in a day, with one poor hatchet, a miserable raft, they at sunset, trusted themselves upon it, to cross the swollen river, amidst large masses of floating ice. It came down upon them, and threw them from their raft into ten feet water. But they saved themselves by swimming to an island.

The perils of Washington's return.

Major Washington arrived at Williamsburg on the 16th of January, having been absent only eleven weeks. The boldness, energy, and prudence, with which he had met and overcome dangers, and the ability which he had manifested in the discharge of his trust, sunk deep into the minds of his countrymen; and his written reports were published with applause, not only through the colonies, but in England.

Returns Jan. 16. **1754.** After 11 weeks absence. Is greatly applauded.

Troops were now raised in Virginia; and Washington was made lieutenant colonel and intrusted with the command. In April, 1754, he marched into the disputed territory, and, encamping at the Great Meadows, he there learned that the French had dispossessed the Virginians of a fort, which in consequence of his recommendation they were erecting at the Fork, and which the French finished, and named Fort du Quesne. He was also informed that a detachment of French troops, had been sent against him, and were encamped but a few miles west of the Great Meadows.

1754. He is again sent with a force to maintain the English claims.

French build Fort du Quesne.

Surrounding their encampment, he surprised, and defeated them. The commander de Jumonville* was killed with ten of his party. On his return to the Great Meadows, he was reinforced by regulars from New York and South Carolina, and erected there a small stockade called Fort Necessity.

Washington surprises and defeats a party. 10 killed, 22 made prisoners, May 28.

With less than 400 men, Washington now marched to dislodge the enemy from Fort du Quesne; but after proceeding thirteen miles he received the intelligence that they had been reinforced from Canada, when he reluctantly relinquished the enterprise and retired. Unable to continue his retreat, from a failure of expected munitions, he entrenched his little army within Fort Necessity. A party of 1,500 French, under Monsieur de Villiers, soon followed and assaulted the fort; the Americans bravely resisted, from ten in the morning until dark. Washington deeming it folly longer to contend with so unequal a force, signed, in the course of the night, articles of capitulation,† by which the fort was surrendered; but the garri-

French reinforced and Washington disappointed of supplies.

Is obliged to capitulate at Ft. Necessity. July 3.

* Washington has been unjustly censured in this affair. It has been represented that de Jumonville came as an envoy and was murdered. But he came in arms, with a warlike party, and they were lurking and concealing themselves in the woods, and had been so concealed for three days. The French had forcibly dispossessed the English at Fort du Quesne. Washington followed the orders he had received from Dinwiddie, and the house of burgesses approved his conduct.

† Washington not understanding the French language, a Dutch captain by the name of Vanbraam, translated to him and his officers, the articles of capitulation. It was afterwards found that Washington had signed what he knew

son permitted to march out with the honors of war, and return unmolested to their homes.

CHAPTER IV.

Congress at Albany.—Convention of governors meet Braddock in Virginia.

British propose a UNION among the colonies.

THE British cabinet had perceived that a war was inevitable. Accordingly, in their instructions to the colonies, in 1753, they directed them to cultivate the friendship of the Six Nations; and recommended what they had at a former period proposed, though not formally, that a *union* be formed among the colonies for their mutual protection and defense. Agreeably to these instructions, a congress was held at Albany, June 14, 1754, to which delegates were sent from Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland. About one hundred and fifty Indians of the Six Nations were present, with whom the convention concluded an explanatory and pacific treaty; and then proceeded to consider the subject of the proposed union. Their situation, with regard to the French, called for immediate and effectual measures; and it was unanimously resolved "that a union of the colonies was absolutely necessary for their preservation." Desiring that their counsels, treasure, and strength might be employed in due proportion against the common enemy, a committee, consisting of one member from each colony represented, was appointed to draw a plan of union. That which was drawn by BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, of Pennsylvania, was substantially adopted and signed on the 4th of July, twenty-two years before this great statesman signed that more important instrument, which he also assisted in forming—the Declaration of Independence.

1754. June 14. 7 colonies send delegates to Albany.

Articles of union drawn by Benjamin Franklin. July 4.

The delegates from Connecticut alone refused their consent to this plan, and on the ground, that it gave too much power to the presiding general, who was to be appointed over the colonies by the crown. It was presented to the colonial legislatures and the British parliament for their sanction; but it was rejected by both; by the colonies, because it gave too much power to the crown; and by the crown, because it gave too much power to the people: thus showing how widely different, even at this period, were the views of Great Britain and her colonies, respecting the rights of the latter; and foreboding the contest and separation which afterwards followed.

Delegates from Connecticut wisely cautious.

nothing of, in, at least, two respects. One was a promise, not to bear arms for a year against the French; and another, an expression which made him a party to the slander against himself, as the murderer of de Jumonville, a peaceful envoy. Vanbraam was suspected of treachery.

The ministry, having rejected this scheme of union, proposed to Gov. Shirley and others, that the governors of the colonies, (most of whom were appointed by the crown,) attended by one or more of their council, should meet, from time to time, to concert measures for the general defense, with power to draw on the British treasury for such sums of money as they needed; which sums were, however, to be reimbursed by a tax, to be imposed on the colonies. But the colonies were not so to be drawn into a consent to submit to taxation, by Great Britain, and they rejected the plan. As the only alternative, the crown then resolved to carry on the war with British troops, and such auxiliary forces as the colonial assemblies might voluntary furnish; and to this the Americans cheerfully assented.

Artful plan to make the colonies consent to taxation rejected.

1755.

The establishment of French posts on the Ohio, and the attack upon Col. Washington, were stated by the British government, as the commencement of hostilities; and 1,500 troops, under Gen. Braddock, were dispatched from England. On his arrival in America, he requested a convention of the colonial governors to assemble in Virginia, to concert with him a plan of military operations.

Braddock arrives with 1,500 men.

Assembles the governors.

Four expeditions were here resolved upon. General Braddock was to attack Fort du Quesne; Gov. Shirley was to lead the American regulars and Indians against Niagara; the militia of the northern colonies were to be directed against Crown Point; and Nova Scotia was to be invaded.

Plan of the campaign.

Early in the spring, the French sent out a powerful fleet, carrying a large body of troops, under the Baron Dieskau, to reinforce the army in Canada.

For the expedition against Nova Scotia, three thousand men, under generals Monckton and Winslow, sailed from Boston on the 20th of May. They arrived at Chignecto, on the Bay of Fundy, the first of June. Here they were joined by 300 British troops, and proceeding against Beau Sejour, now the principal post of the French in that country, invested and took possession of it, after a bombardment of five days. The fleet appearing in the river St. Johns, the French set fire to their works, and evacuated the country. Thus, with the loss of only three men, the English found themselves in possession of the whole of Nova Scotia.

June. English subdue the French in Nova Scotia.

Col. Washington, on his return from the Great Meadows, had public thanks voted him by the house of burgesses. He rejoined his regiment at Alexandria, and was ordered by the governor to fill up his companies by enlistments—go back immediately—conquer the French, and build a fort beyond the mountains. He wrote to a member of the council, showing the folly and impracticability of the scheme; and it was given up.

Washington receives an absurd order to march back in the winter.

Dinwiddie had new plans. He reorganized the militia into independent companies, so that there was now no higher office

Is deprived of his rank.

than captain. Washington promptly offered his resignation; but his services being needed, he was warmly solicited to remain, and it was hinted that he might keep his commission. This he indignantly rejected, as neither rank or emolument were offered with it; and he wrote, that those who supposed he would accept it on such terms must think him "more empty than the commission itself."

He manifests a proper spirit.

Braddock, when he arrived, requested Col. Washington to become one of his military family, preserving his rank. This Washington did not hesitate to accept, because he knew his own value to his country, and wished to improve in military skill. Gen. Braddock marched from Virginia on the 10th of June; but such were the delays occasioned by the difficulty of procuring horses, wagons, and provisions, that, by the advice of Washington, he left the heavy baggage behind, under the care of Col. Dunbar, with an escort of 600 men, and placing himself at the head of 1,200 select troops, he proceeded by more rapid marches, towards Fort du Quesne.

Becomes aid to Braddock.

June 10. Braddock's army begin their march.

Braddock was not deficient in courage, or military skill; but he was wholly ignorant of the mode of conducting warfare in American woods and morasses, and at the same time he held the opinions of the colonial officers in contempt. Nevertheless, Washington had ventured to suggest the expediency of employing the Indians, who, under the Half-king, had offered their services, as scouting, and advanced parties. Braddock not only disdained the advice, but offended the Indians by the rudeness of his manner. Thus he rashly pushed on, without knowing the dangers near.

Braddock contemns and disregards advice.

Washington had, the day before, rejoined the army, from which he had been for a short time detained by severe illness. It was noon, on the ninth of July, when from the height above the right bank of the Monongahela, he looked back upon the ascending army, which, ten miles from Fort du Quesne, had just crossed the stream for the second time. Every thing looked more bright and beautiful than aught he had ever witnessed before. The companies, in their crimson uniform, with burnished arms and floating banners, were marching gaily to cheerful music as they entered the forest.

July 9. Fine appearance of Braddock's army.

Suddenly there burst upon them the Indian war-whoop, and a deadly fire, from opposite quarters, and from unseen foes. Many fell. Panic-stricken, their ranks broke, and they would have fled, but Braddock rallied them; and, a bigot to the rules of European warfare, he constantly sought to preserve a regular order of battle. Thus he kept his men like sheep penned in a fold, fair marks for a foe beyond their reach, and whose numbers were so much inferior to their own, that they had not dreamed of defeating, but only expected to annoy and delay the British army. Their places of concealment were two ravines on each side of the road; but Braddock would neither retreat, or pass beyond that fatal spot

They fall into an Indian ambuscade, and by Braddock's folly are cut up and defeated.

The Indians, singling out the officers, shot down every one on horseback, Washington alone excepted. He, as the sole remaining aid of the general, rode by turns over every part of the field, to carry his orders. The Indians afterwards averred that they had specially noticed his bearing, and conspicuous figure, and repeatedly shot at him; but at length they became convinced that he was protected by an Invisible Power, and that no bullet could harm him. After the battle was over, four were found lodged in his coat, and two horses had been killed under him; but the appointed guardian of his country, escaped without a wound.

The officers shot down, except Washington.

His wonderful preservation.

Braddock, who had been undismayed amidst continued showers of bullets, at length received a mortal wound. Upon his fall, the regular troops fled in confusion. Washington formed, and covered their retreat with the provincials, whom Braddock in his contempt had kept in the rear. The defeat was total; sixty-four officers out of eighty-five, and nearly half the privates, were killed or wounded.

Braddock killed, also, 64 officers, and nearly 600 privates.

Enemy's loss small, but not known.

The flight of the army was so precipitate, that it made no halt till it met the division under Dunbar, then about forty miles in the rear, where Braddock died. To this division was communicated the same spirit of flight, and they continued to retreat till they reached Fort Cumberland, one hundred and twenty miles from the place of action. The command now devolved on Colonel Dunbar, who withdrew the regulars to Philadelphia, leaving the whole frontier of Virginia open to the depredations of the French and Indians.

The army flee.

Dunbar in command.

Leaves Virginia defenseless.

The French at Fort du Quesne attempted to seduce the Cherokees from the English interest. Some of their tribe gave notice of this to the governor of South Carolina, who, at their suggestion, met a council of the Cherokee chiefs in their own country, and concluded with them a treaty of peace and amity, in which they ceded to Great Britain a large tract of land in South Carolina.

Treaty with the Cherokees.

CHAPTER V.

Remainder of the campaign of 1755.—Campaign of 1756.

June. **1755.**

The troops destined for Crown Point, amounting to more than 4,000, arrived at Albany the last of June. They were under the command of Gen. William Johnson, and Gen. Lyman. Here they were joined by a body of Mohawks, under their sachem, Hendrick.

Johnson and Lyman.

Lyman advanced with the main body of the army, and erected Fort Edward on the Hudson, for the security of the

Erect Fort Edward.

batteaux, provisions, artillery, and other necessaries, requisite for the expedition, which were forwarded from Albany by Johnson. The army were thus employed for six weeks.

Move to Lake George.

Towards the last of August, Johnson removed his force, and encamped at the south end of Lake George. Here he was engaged in preparing to cross the lakes.

Baron Dieskau attacks and defeats a detachment under Williams and Hendrick.

In the mean time the Baron Dieskau led an army from Montreal for the defense of Crown Point. Not finding there his foe, he proceeded south to seek him, till within three miles of the American camp he fell in with a detachment under Hendrick and Col. Williams. He fought and conquered them; killed the leaders, and followed the flying to the camp. Johnson, now aware of his approach, was prepared; and when Dieskau made the attack, he was repulsed, and his army in turn sought safety by flight. He was pursued by the Americans, who, as Johnson had been wounded early in the action, were led by Gen. Lyman. Dieskau was found alone in the woods, seated on the ground, reclining against a tree, pale and bleeding. His wounds proved mortal.

Is defeated by the main body.

Johnson's honors tarnish his character.

Johnson, in representing this affair to the British, made no mention of Gen. Lyman, but obtained for himself £5,000 and a baronetcy. The public impression was, that the reward belonged at least equally to Lyman. But the success was important, and Johnson, afterward Sir William, was the commander.

The remains of the French destroyed.

The poor dispirited remains of Dieskau's army halted at French Mountain, where they were the next day cut off by a detachment from Fort Edward. Their dead bodies were thrown into a small lake, since called "the Bloody Pond." May the time soon come, when the pure waters of our mother earth shall no longer be dyed by the blood of her children, barbarously shed by each other's hands!

Sir William Johnson wastes the campaign in building Fort William Henry.

The success at Lake George revived the spirits of the colonies; but Sir William Johnson, instead of proceeding with his army to reduce Crown Point, employed the remainder of the campaign in strengthening the works at Fort Edward, and erecting, at the scene of his achievements on the southern shore of Lake George, a fort, which he called William Henry. On the last of November, the troops, except six hundred who were left to garrison these forts, returned to their respective colonies.

1755. August 21. Shirley loses the campaign for want of supplies.

The enterprise against Niagara was undertaken by Gov. Shirley in person. He did not arrive at Oswego until the 21st of August, and he there waited for supplies until the season was too far advanced for crossing Lake Ontario. Leaving 700 men, under Col. Mercer, to garrison the fort, he returned to Albany.

May 17. War declared.

In 1756, war, after having actually existed for two years, was formally proclaimed between France and England.

By the destruction of Braddock's army, the frontiers of

Pennsylvania and Virginia were left to the mercy of the savages. Washington, at the head of his regiment, did his utmost to oppose them; and he strenuously urged that offensive measures should be again adopted, and especially against Fort du Quesne, which he knew was their starting point.

The mortifications and difficulties of the colonial officers exemplified by Washington's affair with Dagworthy.

In common with the other colonial officers, Washington was subject to mortifications which he keenly felt, from the assuming manners of inferior officers bearing royal commissions: and not only this, but his whole force was, on one occasion, in danger of falling into confusion, by the conduct of a company of regulars stationed within his precincts, under one Dagworthy, who held the king's commission as captain. To prevent general insubordination, Washington appealed to Dinwiddie. He gave him advice which, either through weakness or treachery, was calculated to mislead; but he took not the responsibility of directing Dagworthy to obey Col. Washington as his superior. In the mean time, Shirley having been made commander-in-chief, Washington mounted his horse, and though in winter, rode five hundred miles, to Boston, where, laying the case before that amiable patriot, he received the requisite order, and returning, he soon reduced Capt. Dagworthy and his men to due subjection.

1755. Shirley made commander-in-chief.

1756. February 4. Washington goes to Boston.

1756. Campaign ill-ordered in England.

The campaign of 1756 had been, during the preceding autumn, provided for by the colonists; but the bad arrangements of the British cabinet palsied their efforts. Although Shirley had been appointed by the crown, commander-in-chief of the forces, yet Winslow, in consequence of his success in Nova Scotia, had the confidence of the people, without which troops could not be raised. The generous Shirley ceded his claim, and the unfinished plans of the preceding campaign were to be again attempted.

Shirley's magnanimity.

June. Abercrombie sent out governor of Virginia and commander-in-chief.

July 29. Lord Loudon succeeds him.

Gen. Abercrombie was in the spring sent from England to take the supreme command; and after him Lord Loudon came over as commander-in-chief of all the forces, and governor of Virginia. The British officers still paraded their authority, and assumed offensive airs of superiority over those of the colonies; but, though considerable bodies of British troops were in the field, thousands of the colonists called from their homes, and heavy expenses were going on, yet nothing of consequence was effected, during the whole campaign.

CHAPTER VI.

Campaigns of 1757 and 1758.

PART II. PERIOD III. CHAP. VI.

1757.

Montcalm besieges Fort William Henry.

THE campaign of 1757 was made no less disgraceful to the English, than the former, by the futile schemes, and inefficient measures of Lord Loudon. It is chiefly memorable in our annals, for the dreadful "massacre at Fort William Henry." Montcalm, the French commander, had early concentrated his forces, amounting to 9,000 regulars, Canadians and Indians, on the shores of the Champlain, at Ticonderoga. Passing up Lake George, he laid siege to Fort William Henry, which was commanded by Col. Monroe, a British officer. Gen. Webb was at the time lying at Fort Edward, with the main British army, four or five thousand strong. Monroe, being vigorously pressed, while he defended himself with spirit, earnestly entreated Gen. Webb for aid. But he entreated in vain, and necessity compelled him, on the 2d of August, to surrender. By the articles of capitulation, Montcalm engaged that the English should be allowed to leave the fort with the honors of war; and, in order to protect them from the Indians, that an escort should be provided to conduct them to Fort Edward.

August 2. Monroe compelled to surrender.

Stipulates for the honors of war and protection.

Indians kill their prisoners.

Soon after, a detachment of the French took possession of the works. At the same moment, the Indians, who had engaged to serve in the war on the promise of plunder, irritated at the terms of the surrender, rushed over the parapet, and began their outrages. Monroe, feeling the horrors of his situation, with his troops exposed at midnight, within the camp, to the cruelty of the savages, vainly attempted to conduct them forth; but no sooner had he put them in motion, than he found, that, bad as was their position within, it was worse without; for the woods were infested with ferocious Indians, thirsting for blood and plunder. He complained to Montcalm, and, demanding the promised escort, left the camp at morning, to begin his march for Fort Edward. The French, themselves intimidated, gave them only the poor meed of advice, to yield up their private property as a means of appeasing the furious savages, and saving life. They attempted this, and threw them their money and effects; but their rapacity increasing with this partial gratification, they rushed, tomahawk in hand, upon the English, now a band of desperate fugitives, who, stripping off their clothes, were glad to escape naked, with their lives. The sick, the wounded, the women, and the children unable to escape, were murdered. Webb, on receiving intelligence of the capitulation, ordered five hundred men to meet the captured troops, and conduct them to his camp.

Montcalm fails of his engagement, and the Indians rob and murder without restraint.

The few who survived were discovered flying through the woods, singly or in small parties—some distracted, and many bleeding with the horrid cuts of the tomahawk—faint, and nearly exhausted.

The British careful of offending the Americans during the war.

There is little in the separate civil history of the colonies, during this period, which deserves particular attention. In all their proceedings with the royal governors, as well as in their direct intercourse with Great Britain, the colonists evinced that jealousy of their liberties, which prevented any bold attempt, on the part of Great Britain, to enforce restrictive measures, especially during the war.

1757.
Dispute between the proprietors and inhabitants of Pa.
Franklin sent to England from Pa.

In Pennsylvania, a dispute arose between the proprietary governor and the assembly, respecting the right of the proprietors to exempt their own lands in the province from a taxation, the object of which was to pay for the defense of those lands. To adjust this dispute, Benjamin Franklin was sent to England, and the business was soon closed, by the proprietors submitting their property to be taxed, provided the assessments were fair and equitable.

The elder William Pitt.
His eloquence, patriotism, and energy.

The languid and spiritless manner in which the war had been conducted, and its consequent ill success, aroused both England and America, and produced a reaction which brought forward as prime minister, the greatest statesman of the British annals, William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham. So powerful was his eloquence and so austere his patriotism, that he controlled at length the energies of the government, and the spirit of the people. His dreaded voice fearlessly denounced the selfishness and pusillanimity of the public agents. With intense search he found out worth, and resolutely brought it forward for public employment. His perseverance was equal to his energy; and his efforts were guided by a judgment, which while it was rapid, was, at the same time, profound and comprehensive.

1758.
Pitt calls on the colonies, promising to redress their grievances.
He is trusted, and the colonies renew their exertions.

Aware that the colonies were in danger of becoming discouraged by the inefficiency of the parent country, the minister assured them, in a circular which he addressed to the governors of the provinces, that an effectual force should be sent against the French; and he exhorted them to use their utmost exertions to raise men in their respective colonies, pledging himself that their own choice should direct by what officers their troops should be commanded; and that those of the colonies should no longer be made inferior to British officers of the same rank. Reassured and animated by this call, the colonists renewed their efforts, and increased their army to twenty thousand.

1758.
An army of 50,000 in America.
From Mass. 7,000, Conn. 5,000, N. H. 3,000,

Gen. Abercrombie was appointed to succeed the earl of Loudon in the command of all the British forces in America. An armament was sent out under Admiral Boscawen, conveying 12,000 British troops commanded by General Amherst, which, with the British forces previously in America, and the provin-

Plan of operations.

cials, made up an army far greater than had ever before existed in America. These troops were all in readiness for action early in the spring. Nor were they delayed by irresolution as to the objects to be attempted. These having been well considered the preceding winter, three expeditions were resolved on, against Louisburg, Crown Point, and Fort du Quesne.

A large armament sails to attack Louisburg.

The possession of Louisburg was deemed important, principally, because it would, by opening the gulf of St Lawrence to the English, facilitate the seizure of the capital of Canada; the grand project of the British minister having in view the absolute destruction of the French power in America. The enterprise against this fortress was conducted by the land and naval commanders, Amherst and Boscawen, with 20 ships of the line, and 14,000 men. The armament left Halifax on the 24th of May, and arrived before Louisburg on the 2d of June.

July 6. Louisburg surrenders.

James Wolfe the master-spirit of the military.

6,000 prisoners sent across the Atlantic.

A regular siege, the best conducted of any which had ever been laid in America, placed, on the 6th of July, this fortress in the hands of the British. It was by his gallant conduct during this siege, that JAMES WOLFE began his high career of military renown. The loss of Louisburg was deeply felt by France, and its gain by England and her rejoicing colonies. The garrison and mariners, to the amount of nearly 6,000, were sent prisoners to England, and the inhabitants of the place were transported to France. With Louisburg the whole island of Cape Breton, and that of St. John's, fell under the power of the British.

July 5. Abercrombie proceeds against Ticonderoga.

Lord Howe killed.

Gen. Abercrombie at the head of 16,000 men, proceeded against Ticonderoga and Crown Point. On the 5th of July he crossed Lake George, and debarking at its northern extremity, he attempted, with unskillful guides, to pass the three miles of dense woods which lay between his army and Ticonderoga. As he approached that fort, a detachment of the French fell upon him, and an engagement ensued in which the assailants lost 300 men; but of the British, fell the amiable Lord Howe; a young officer of great promise, and much beloved both in England and America.

The British repulsed with a loss of 2,000.

Abercrombie, learning that reinforcements were daily expected by the French, without waiting for his artillery, made a brave but imprudent assault upon the fort, and was repulsed with the heavy loss of nearly 2,000 killed and wounded.

August 27. Colonel Bradstreet takes Fort Frontenac.

He then retired to his former quarters, on the south side of Lake George. Here he consented, at the solicitation of Col. Bradstreet, to detach him with 3,000 men, against Fort Frontenac. With these troops, who were mostly provincials, he marched to Oswego, embarked on Lake Ontario, and landed on the 25th of August within a mile of the fort, opened his batteries, and in two days forced this important fortress to surrender. As this fort, afterwards named Kingston, contained the military stores which were intended for the Indians, and

for the supply of the south-western troops, its demolition contributed to the success of the expedition against Fort du Quesne.

General Forbes deceived by interested persons into the wrong measure of opening a new road to Fort du-Quesne.

To Gen. Forbes, with an army of 8,000 men, was assigned the capture of this fort. Early in July the army marched from Philadelphia to Ray's Town. Washington, gratified that the expedition was at length to be undertaken, was at Cumberland with the Virginia militia, whom he commanded, and who were in readiness to join the main army. Here he learned to his surprise, that Gen. Forbes, induced by the citizens of Philadelphia, had decided to open a new road from Ray's Town to the Ohio. In vain Washington remonstrated. The new road was made, and he, as became his duty, rendered every possible assistance. But before the army had arrived, the weather became so cold and the men endured such severe sufferings, that a council of officers decided that they must abandon their object and return. This they were about to do, when they received such intelligence of the weakness of the French garrison, that they roused to fresh effort, and on the 25th of November reached du Quesne. But it was only a solitary pile of ruins which they found. On the preceding night the French had set fire to the fort, and embarked to go down the Ohio.

The French burn the works and leave the place to the English, Nov. 25.

While the army were engaged in making the new road, Major Grant with a detachment had been suffered to throw himself forward, so as to encounter the full force of the French garrison. He was totally defeated and made prisoner, with eighteen of his officers. Three hundred of his party were either killed or taken by the enemy.

Unfortunate capture of Major Grant with 300 men.

New works were erected on the site of du Quesne, and named Fort Pitt. Now, under the appellation of Pittsburg, this place is the Manchester of America. The neighboring Indians were invited to the fort, and peace was re-established with their chiefs. Gen. Forbes, exhausted with fatigue, died on his way to Philadelphia.

Grand council at Easton.

More distant Indian tribes also felt that their safety, since the capture of Fort du Quesne, was best consulted by peace with the English, and at a grand council held in Easton, Penn., deputies from the Six Nations met with those from New England, and from the tribes ranging along the eastern Alleghanies, as far south as North Carolina. On the part of the English, Sir William Johnson and the governors of New York and New Jersey, entered with them into friendly relations, and the calumet sent up to heaven a far more grateful odor than the steam of reeking battle-fields.

CHAPTER VII.

The Campaign of 1759.

PART II. PERIOD III. CHAP. VII.

1759.

The plan of the campaign embraces three objects; 1. To capture Ticonderoga and Crown Point. 2. To take Niagara and Montreal. 3. To capture Quebec.

THE campaign of 1759, had for its object the entire reduction of Canada. After the disaster of Ticonderoga, the chief command of the British forces was given to Gen. Amherst. The army was divided into three parts, exhibiting the following order. The first division, under Wolfe, was to make a direct attempt upon Quebec. The second, under Amherst, was ordered to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then proceed northerly; and the third, under Gen. Prideaux, consisting of provincials and Indians, was to reduce Niagara, then to go down the St. Lawrence, and, jointly with the second detachment, attack Montreal. Thus the several divisions were to enter Canada by different routes, but were all destined, eventually, to meet before Quebec, and it was against that key-stone of the arch, which sustained the French power in America, that the grand final effort was to be made.

1759. July 6. Prideaux killed in besieging Niagara. The fortress surrenders.

Prideaux besieged Niagara on the 6th of July. He was killed by the bursting of a shell, and the command devolved upon Sir William Johnson. The French gave battle to the English, but the Indians in their alliance deserted them in the heat of the engagement, and victory declared in favor of the English. The garrison, consisting of 600 men, fell into the hands of the British, who now possessing this important post, all communication between the northern and southern possessions of the French was barred, and the quiet behavior of the Indians secured.

Pitt sustains Wolfe.

Provides him a choice army.

After the taking of Louisburg, Wolfe returned to England. Pitt, who had discerned his extraordinary qualities while he was yet obscure, and had brought him forward against the prejudices of the King, and resolutely sustained him, confided to him the command against Quebec. His subordinate officers were carefully chosen. He was provided with a choice army of 8,000 men, and a heavy train of artillery. Admirals Saunders and Holmes, seamen of great merit, commanded the fleet.

June. He lands his troops on the Isle of Orleans.

It was late in June when the army debarked upon the Island of Orleans. From this spot Wolfe reconnoitered the position of his enemy, and saw the full magnitude of the difficulties which surrounded him. The city of Quebec rose before him, upon the north side of the St. Lawrence; its upper town and strong fortifications, situated on a rock, whose bold and steep front continued far westward, parallel with the river, its base near to the shore; thus presenting a wall, which it seemed impossible to scale. From the northwest came down the

St. Charles, entering the St. Lawrence just below the town; its banks high and uneven, and cut by deep ravines; while armed vessels were borne upon its waters, and floating batteries obstructed its entrance. A few miles below, the Montmorenci leapt down its cataract into the St. Lawrence; and, strongly posted along the sloping bank of that river, and between these two tributaries, the French army, commanded by Montcalm, displayed its formidable lines.

Difficulties of his position.

The first measure of Wolfe, was to get possession of Point Levi, opposite Quebec. Here he erected and opened heavy batteries, which swept from the lower town, the buildings along the margin of the river; but the fortifications, resting on the huge table of rock above, remained uninjured.

July 9. at Pt. Levi.

Perceiving this, Wolfe next sought to draw the enemy from his entrenchments, and bring on an engagement. For this purpose he landed his army below the Montmorenci; but the wary Montcalm eluded every artifice to draw him out. Wolfe next crossed that stream, with a portion of his army, and attacked him in his camp. The troops which were to commence the assault fell into disorder, having, with irregular ardor, disobeyed the orders of the general. Perceiving their confusion, he drew them off with the loss of four hundred men, and recrossed the Montmorenci. Here he was informed that his expected succors were likely to fail him. Amherst had found Ticonderoga and Crown Point vacated, and was preparing to attack the French forces withdrawn from these forts to the Isle aux Noix. Prideaux had lost his life, but his plans were carried out by Sir William Johnson. But the enemy were in force at Montreal; and from neither division of the British army could the commander at Quebec now hope for any assistance.

He attacks Montcalm near Montmorenci.

Loses 400.

Amherst is preparing to attack the French at Isle aux Noix.

At this point of the enterprise, Wolfe was severely tried. Success seemed to fly from his grasp; yet he knew that success alone would be the criterion of his merit. He sighed frequently. His countenance sometimes flashed with his lofty designs; and sometimes sunk in gloom, as he dreaded their failure, which he determined not to survive. His mind towered above the sensibilities of his heart, and he kept on his course; but his bodily health failed. When, however, he was again able to mingle with the army, every eye was raised to him with affection and hope.

Wolfe perplexed.

The plan which he had revolved in his mind, and, with the approbation of his officers, had determined to attempt, was to scale, in the night, and at some distance above Quebec, the bold precipice on which the fortifications were built, and thus reach the level plain above, called the Heights of Abraham.

Resolves to attempt scaling the Heights of Abraham.

Montcalm perceiving that something was to be attempted, dispatched M. de Bourgainville, with one thousand five hundred men, to move higher up the St. Lawrence and watch

PART II. PERIOD III. CHAP. VII.

September. He returns to Orleans.

the motions of the English. Wolfe, pursuant to his plan, broke up his camp at Montmorenci, and returned to Orleans. Then embarking with his army, he directed Admiral Holmes, who commanded the fleet, in which himself and the army had embarked, to sail up the river several miles higher than the intended point of debarkation. This movement deceived De Bourgainville, and gave Wolfe the advantage of the current and the tide, to float his boats silently down to the destined spot.

He gains the plains of Abraham, and prepares for battle. Sept. 13.

This was done about an hour before daylight. Wolfe was the first man who leaped on shore. When he saw the difficulties around him, he said to some one near, "I do not believe there is a possibility of getting up, but we must do our endeavor." The rapidity of the stream was hurrying along their boats, and some had already gone beyond the narrow landing-place. The shore was so shelving, that it was almost impossible to ascend; and it was lined with French sentinels. One of these hailed, and was answered by a captain, who fully understood the French language, and who had been especially instructed for this purpose. Escaping these dangers at the water's edge, they proceeded, though with the utmost difficulty, to scale the precipice, pulling themselves up by the roots and branches of the trees and the projecting rocks in their way. The first party who reached the heights secured a small battery, which crowned them; and thus the remainder of the army ascended in safety; and there, on this lofty plain, which commands one of the most magnificent prospects which nature has formed, the British army, drawn up in a highly advantageous position, were, in the morning, discovered by the French.

British loss, 100 killed, 500 wounded. French killed and wounded, 1,000. Prisoners, 1,000.

Montcalm, learning with surprise and deep regret, the advantage gained by his opponent, left his strong position, crossed the St. Charles, and displaying his lines for battle, intrepidly led on the attack. Being on the left of the French, he was opposed to Wolfe, who was on the right of the British. In the heat of the engagement both commanders were mortally wounded.

Death of Wolfe; of Montcalm.

The wound with which Wolfe fell was the third which he had received in the battle. He was removed from the field; but he watched it with intense anxiety, as faint with the loss of blood, he reclined his languid head upon the supporting arm of an officer. A cry was heard, "they fly, they fly!"—"Who fly?" he exclaimed. "The enemy," was the reply. "Then," said he, "I die content;" and expired. Not less heroic was the death of Montcalm. He rejoiced when told that his wound was mortal; "For," said he, "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

1759. Sep. 18. Quebec surrenders.

After the battle, the affairs of the English were conducted with great discretion by General Townshend; whereas, the French, in their panic, appear to have yielded at once to the

suggestions of their fears. The capitulation of Quebec was signed within five days after the battle. Townshend gave favorable terms to the garrison, for he knew that the resources of the French were by no means exhausted.

General Townsend returning to England, General Murray was left in command with a garrison of 5,000 men. The French army retired to Montreal; and M. de Levi, who had succeeded Montcalm, being, in the course of the winter, reinforced by Canadians and Indians, returned the following spring, with a force of 6,000 to Quebec. General Murray left the fortress, and the Heights of Abraham became the scene of another battle more bloody, though not equally important in its consequences with the first. The armies on each side sustained the loss of 1,000 men. The battle was not decisive, but the advantage was on the side of the French, who maintained their ground while the English retired within the fortress. Here they were closely invested until they received reinforcements, when M. de Levi, abandoning all thoughts of obtaining possession of Quebec, returned to Montreal, where Vaudreuil, the governor, assembled all the force of Canada.

1760. French attempt to regain Quebec.

In the mean time, General Amherst had made arrangements for assembling before this place all the British troops, from Lake Ontario, Lake Champlain, and Quebec. Here they fortunately arrived within two days of each other, and immediately invested the place. Vandreuil found the force too strong to be resisted; and on the 8th of September, he surrendered Montreal, Detroit, Mackinaw, and all the French possessions in Canada.

Sep. 8. Canada surrendered.

CHAPTER VIII.

Wars with the Indians.—English politics.—Peace of Paris.

The French, in retiring from Fort du Quesne, passed into Louisiana. On their route, they had intrigued with the Cherokees, who continued a predatory war upon the Carolinians. General Amherst sent Colonel Montgomery with a body of regulars to their relief. Being joined by such forces as could be raised in Carolina, he marched into the Cherokee country, destroyed all their lower towns, and was approaching Etchoc, the first of their middle settlements, when he was attacked, in an almost impenetrable thicket, by a large body of savages. In the battle which ensued, the English claimed the victory; but so great was their loss, that they immediately retreated from the country.

1760. Colonel Montgomery defeated by the Cherokees.

1761. The English defeat them, lay waste their country, and compel them to peace.

The savages continuing hostile, the following year General Amherst detached several regiments under Colonel Grant, who, early in June, gave battle to the Cherokees, at the place where Colonel Montgomery had encountered them. The English prevailed, and, pursuing their enemy to Etchoc, burned their dwellings, and laid waste their country. The savages being humbled, peace was restored.

English less popular with the Indians, than the French.

Interesting events, closely connected with the cession of the French territory, were already in progress among the savages of the northwest. We have seen with what deep policy the missionaries and the traders of that nation had won the hearts of the Indians. Said one of their orators, "when the French arrived, they came and kissed us. They called us their children, and we found them fathers." When the more haughty, and less attentive English were preparing to take possession of the western ports, Pontiac, the highly gifted chief of the Ottawas, who sought, like Philip, to regain the primitive independence of his race, made use of the attachment of the red men to the French, to unite them in a general conspiracy against their conquerors. As the English had expelled the French, if the Indians could exterminate them before their power were fully established, they would again be lords of the forest. The plan of Pontiac was not inferior in boldness, to that formed by Pitt for the final conquest of Canada. It was no less than a simultaneous attack upon all the British posts near the lakes. Pontiac, by his inventive genius, his eloquence, and his energy, had acquired such power over the northwestern tribes, that all was arranged without discovery. On the 7th of July, 1763, nine of the British forts were surprised and captured by the Indians.

1762. Pontiac contrives the daring scheme of cutting off all their posts.

1763. July 7. Nine of the British posts captured.

Pontiac had arranged plans of stratagem which had thus far succeeded. At Maumee, the commanding officer had been lured forth by the piteous entreaties of a squaw, who feigned to plead for a wounded man, dying without the fort. Such, by savages in ambush, he himself was soon made.

Maumee one of the nine taken by stratagem. July 7.

At Mackinaw, a more important post, the Indians had gathered by hundreds. They began among themselves a spirited game at ball. One of the two parties who played, drove the other, as if by accident, towards the palisades which inclosed the grounds of the fort. They came on, shouting, and sporting, and the soldiers went forth to view the game. At length the ball was thrown over the pickets, and the Indians jumped after it within the inclosure. Then began the butchery. The soldiers of the garrison, appalled and unprepared, could make no resistance. The commandant, Major Henry, is writing within his room. He hears the Indian war-cry, and the shrieks of the murdered; and, from his window, perceives four hundred savages, cutting down with their tomahawks, his dearest friends. He sees them scalping them

July 7. Mackinaw also taken by a stratagem contrived by Pontiac.

Horrible scene witnessed by the commandant.

while yet in their death struggles, their necks beneath their feet, or their heads held between the knees of the scalpers. They had already taken the fort. Through strange perils, Henry himself escaped to relate the horrible scene.

Pontiac chose to command in person at Detroit, that post being regarded as the key to the upper country. On the 6th, the Indians, to the number of six hundred, had collected in the woods around the fort. In the evening, a squaw who had been kindly treated, betrays to Major Gladwyn, the commandant, the designs of the savages. On the 7th, Pontiac, with a party of his chiefs, present themselves as in peace, desiring to hold a council with the officers within the fort. They are admitted, but to their surprise immediately surrounded by the garrison, fully armed. Major Gladwyn approaches Pontiac, lifts his blanket, and finds a short rifle concealed beneath it. Similar ones are sought for and found upon each of his party. Thus unexpectedly discovered, Pontiac himself was disconcerted. The Indians from without were not let in; but the chief escaped, or was suffered to go forth.

Pontiac plans to take Detroit, but his stratagem is betrayed and defeated. July 7.

He then besieged the fort, holding the garrison confined for many months, and cutting off supplies and reinforcements. At length his allies grew weary of war, and peace was concluded. Pontiac died three years afterwards.

He holds the garrison besieged.

It was during this period, that the "United Brethren," or Moravians, planted themselves in America. A short time before Oglethorpe's emigration, these persecuted Germans had been expelled from their native land, and in a town in Poland, we find them with Count Zinzendorf, son to one of the first officers of the court, as their spiritual head. They were closely united as brethren and sisters, and believed themselves called to spread the gospel to benighted regions. To labor for the salvation of the heathen aborigines, they sought and obtained means of introducing several of their number into this country. A part went first to Georgia, where they remained until, in the war with the Spaniards, they were required to take up arms. But regarding Christianity as opposed to war, they left Georgia, and joined the other division, who had settled at Nazareth and Bethlehem, in Pennsylvania.

Germans from Moravia expelled to Poland.

They regard themselves as divinely called.

Some go to Georgia.

1740. They soon join others in Pennsylvania.

Here the society increased their territory by purchase and by gift from the savages. They erected buildings, holding their goods in common. Brother Rauch soon penetrated to the savage residences east of the Hudson, where, nine miles east of Rhinebeck, he established a mission, which was called Shekomeko. Others followed, and two chapels were erected within the confines of Connecticut. Instances among the Indian converts of a total change of life and habits, of sacrifices and sufferings willingly endured—of religious emotions, pathetic and sincere, evinced the transforming power of the gospel.

They make Nazareth and Bethlehem their central position.

1743. Found a mission in New York, and two in Connecticut.

1746. April. Are expelled and return to Pennsylvania, where they flourish.

Jealousies on the part of the whites, that the Moravian teachers would act the same part as the French Jesuits had formerly done, caused them to be expelled from New York. They returned to Nazareth and Bethlehem, and were followed by forty-six of their attached converts. These they provided for, and watched over as children. Here they spread their settlements, to two of which they gave German names, signifying "Tents of Peace"* and "Tents of Grace"† At Mahony they had a mission-house, where nearly twenty of their number were lodged.

Spanzenberg, American bishop. A visit from Count Zinzendorf. Zeisberger.

The learned Augustus Spanzenberg was the first American bishop of the Moravians. Count Zinzendorf himself came over to visit them, accompanied by his daughter. David Zeisberger went intrepidly forth to confer with the chiefs of the six nations at the great council-fire at Onondaga. They received him with courtesy; but they gave not the same encouragement to the mission, as did the less warlike Delawares.

Sufferings during the French war.

1755. Nov. 24. Indian massacre at Mahony.

The breaking out of the French war was the signal of trouble and distress to the Moravians. Desiring peace with all, they yet incurred the suspicions and hostilities of each of the three parties, English, French, and Indians. Of the latter, a party mostly of Shawanese, made a midnight attack on the mission-house at Mahony, killed twelve of the missionaries and burned the house. The Moravians called in their outposts, and sheltered their converts in Bethlehem and Nazareth until the war was passed; then, with fresh alacrity, they prepared to extend their efforts along the Susquehanna, and across the mountains, to the wild regions of the Ohio.

October 1761. Pitt resigns. Lord Bute.

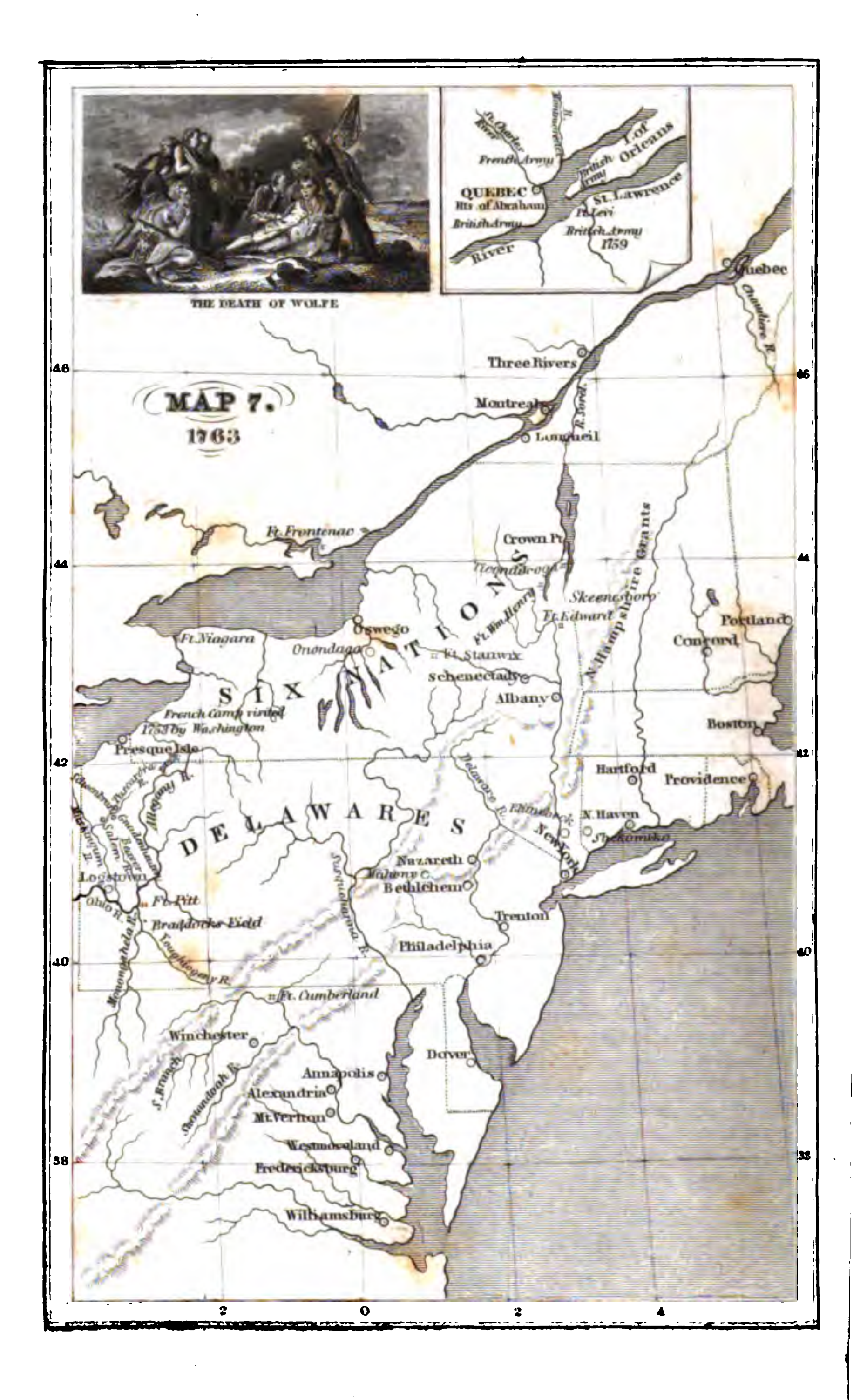
George III. succeeded to the throne of England soon after the capture of Quebec; and Mr. Pitt, not finding his influence with the new king sufficiently great to allow him the measures for which alone he was willing to become responsible, resigned the seals in October, 1761; and the following year, the earl of Bute was made prime minister. The first object of the new administration was to restore peace; and contrary to the wishes of the nation, the preliminaries were settled. Scarcely was this accomplished, when Lord Bute resigned his place, which was given to Mr. George Grenville.

1763. Peace of Paris.

The definitive treaty was signed at Paris in February, 1763, by which England obtained from France all her possessions in America, east of the Mississippi, excepting the island of New Orleans; the navigation of that river being left open to both nations. From Spain she obtained Florida in exchange for Havana, which had been captured during the war. And France, at the same time, gave to Spain the territory of Louisiana.

---

* Friedenheuten. † Gnadenheuten.



MAP 7.
1763
THE DEATH OF WOLFE
QUEBEC
Hts. of Abraham
French Army
British Army
British Army
British Army 1759
I. of Orleans
St. Lawrence
River
Pt. Levi
Quebec
Three Rivers
Montreal
Longueil
Ft. Frontenac
Crown Pt.
Ticonderoga
Skeenesboro
Ft. Edward
Ft. Wm. Henry
Oswego
Onondaga
Ft. Niagara
Ft. Stanwix
Schenectady
Albany
SIX NATIONS
DELAWARES
French Camp visited 1753 by Washington
Presque Isle
Alleghany R.
Logstown
Ft. Pitt
Ohio R.
Braddocks Field
Monongahela R.
Ft. Cumberland
Winchester
S. Branch
Shenandoah R.
Annapolis
Alexandria
Mt. Vernon
Westmoreland
Fredericksburg
Williamsburg
Dover
Philadelphia
Trenton
Nazareth
Bethlehem
Susquehanna R.
Delaware R.
New York
N. Haven
Hartford
Providence
Boston
Concord
Portland
N. Hampshire Grants
Chaudière R.
R. Sorel
46
44
42
40
38
2
0
2
4

PART III.

FROM 1763 TO 1789.

PERIOD I.

FROM

THE PEACE {1763,} OF PARIS,

TO

THE DECLARATION {1776.} OF INDEPENDENCE.

CHAPTR I.

Causes of the Revolutionary War.

WE come now to trace the causes by which England lost her colonies, and America gained her independence.

Honest patriots in England and America differ widely in opinion concerning the right.

If we look back upon the general current of events, we shall find, that the determination which was made by England, soon after the peace of Paris, to tax her American colonies, and their subsequent resistance, to which the revolution is often solely referred, were themselves events naturally arising from the wide diversity of public sentiment and feeling, on certain subjects; so intimately connected with their mutual relations, that, in one way or another, the discontents thence arising, must, sooner or later, have come to the test of open and determined opposition. If a father fully believes himself justly possessed of power over his son, or an elder brother over a younger, which the son, or younger brother, solemnly considers as a mere tyrannical assumptiôn, to which he cannot submit, without degrading himself to a state of slavery, it is not difficult to predict, that, without a change of opinion, on one side or the other, a contest must arise; and, if the power of the elder party cannot force submission from the younger, a separation must ensue.

The term mother country misunderstood.

Perhaps, the figurative language, by which England was called the mother country, had no inconsiderable share in giving to the nation, to which all allowed a parental name, the idea that she had rights similar to those which a parent has over a child; whereas, to the English then on the stage, *that* old England, which our forefathers left, was as much a parent land, as to the Americans. Had the epithet been used in common, and the language of the parties, such as showed them to be, what they really were, fellow subjects of the same

laws, and brethren of the same blood, England might not have been unjust, nor her colonies driven to revolt.

Subjects of disagreement between the two parties.

England believed, contrary to the opinion of the colonies, that she had a right to change their governments, although established by royal charters. She maintained that she could, at her pleasure, regulate and restrict their commerce; and to this opinion the colonies did not in general object; but, in particular cases, they believed she carried this power to an oppressive extent. Finally, she claimed a right to collect from the provinces, a revenue, either by external duties imposed for the regulation of trade, or by internal taxes, on articles to be consumed by the colonists. It was the subject of *internal taxation*, on which the most decided opposition of opinions prevailed. The Americans did not dispute the right of the British, in respect to external taxes, except when carried to a vexatious extent, as in the case of the law, called the Sugar Act; but the subject of internal taxes, having been deeply considered, they deliberately determined not to submit to their imposition in any manner, or by any assembly, except by one composed of their own representatives.

Internal taxation made by Americans the ground of resistance.

It has been already seen in how many instances, the British, acting consistently with these views, had attempted what the colonists considered encroachments upon their rights; and that they had reluctantly submitted, evaded, or resisted, as the circumstances of the occasion, or the apprehended importance of the contested right, seemed to require. In many instances, they had opposed the governors sent over by the crown; and those, by their complaints, had made the English government believe that their American provinces were, by degrees, shaking off the authority of the crown, and tending to a state of independence; to prevent which, measures must be taken to HUMBLE and SUBJUGATE them.

England determined to humble and subjugate America.

Such was the state of affairs at the commencement of the late war, between England and France, in which the colonies had so deep an interest, and in which they bore so large a share. While pressed by a common enemy, these causes of dissension remained latent; but as soon as this war terminated, and while yet the colonies were rejoicing in being delivered from a foe, who had so long instigated the savages to midnight murder, the government of England began to deliberate by what means they could best bend the stubborn provincials, to what they considered due subjection. This was not, however, the only motive of the British ministry, in the acts which ensued. The expenses of the war had added more than three hundred millions of dollars to their national debt. To find the means of defraying its annual charges, and other increased expenditures, was now the difficult duty of the British government.

Delay till the close of the French war.

As early as 1760, the mutual jealousies between the colonies and the mother country appeared in Massachusetts, on

the occasion of an attempt to enforce the act, by which duties were laid on foreign sugar and molasses, which, having been considered oppressive, had been evaded. The custom-house officers were directed, in case of suspecting these articles to be concealed, to apply to the superior court of the colony for what were termed, "writs of assistance," which were a kind of general search warrant. Any petty custom-house officer, armed with one of them, might, on pretence of searching for these articles, invade, at his pleasure, the family retirement of any gentleman in the province.

1760. Difficulty in enforcing the sugar act.

The people of Boston determined to oppose the granting of writs of assistance, and employed two of their most eminent lawyers, Oxenbridge Thatcher and James Otis, for this purpose. The latter of these gentlemen defended the cause of American rights with such impetuous eloquence, that one who heard him, John Adams, afterwards himself so highly distinguished, said, "Otis was a flame of fire! Every man of an immensely crowded audience went away ready to take arms against writs of assistance. Then and there was the first scene of opposition to the arbitrary claims of Great Britain; then and there American independence was born." The writs were, however, under certain restrictions, granted; but such was their unpopularity, that they were little used.

February, **1761.** Speech of James Otis against writs of assistance.

In 1762, plans were on foot for changing the American governments. This much dreaded measure had, as was learned, by intercepted letters, been recommended by Sir Francis Bernard, who, in 1760, had arrived in Massachusetts, as the royal governor. Bernard, in his letters, charged the colonists with being hostile to British rule, and aiming at absolute independence. He said "the attempt to enforce the Sugar act," which, though enacted in 1733, had been evaded, "had caused more alarm than the massacre at Fort William Henry." He avowed the opinion, that parliament had full power to alter the colonial governments, and to change their respective boundaries, notwithstanding the royal charters; he counselled, that several of the smaller provinces should be consolidated, to make one more respectable, and more easily governed; he recommended the establishment of a hereditary nobility, and asserted the right of parliament to tax the colonies; but suggested the expediency of admitting into that body, representatives from America. The publication of these letters caused great alarm and bitter resentment against the man, who, as they believed, had thus acted the part of deadly hostility to their vital interests.

1762. Governor Bernard. Intercepted letters, recommend measures hostile to the colonies.

CHAPTER II.

British Taxation.—The Stamp Act.

PART III. PERIOD I. CHAP. II.

1764. Stamp duty proposed, and others made perpetual.

In 1764, Lord Grenville gave notice to the American agents in London, that it was his intention to draw a revenue from the colonies, and that he should, in the ensuing session of parliament, propose a duty on stamps. He wished them to communicate with their constituents, and learn whether any other duties, equally productive, and more agreeable to the colonies, might be substituted. Soon after, resolutions were passed in the house of commons, continuing, and making perpetual, the odious duties on sugar, and molasses, and some other articles imported into the colonies, and subjecting supposed offenders to be tried by courts of admiralty, in such a manner as would deprive them of trial by jury, and might take them far from their homes.

Massachusetts, Virginia, and New York take bold ground.

The colonial agents in London informed their respective colonies of the intended system of taxation. A great alarm was excited. Massachusetts instructed her agents to deny the right of parliament to impose taxes upon those who were not represented in the house of commons. The house of burgesses in Virginia appointed a committee to prepare an address to the king and parliament, expressing their sense of the destructive consequences of such a measure. The assembly of New York also sent petitions, which, in a spirit more bold and decided than those from any other colony, asserted their own rights, and the limitations of British power. Associations were formed in all the colonies to encourage home manufactures, and prohibit, as much as possible, the use of British goods. The tendency of this judicious measure was to make the colonists less dependent, and, by operating injuriously on the British merchants, to make them a party against the ministry.

Societies formed to injure the British trade in America.

Neither Sir R. Walpole nor Mr. Pitt would venture to tax the colonies.

The British government were aware that they had to deal with a spirited people; yet they closed their eyes to the full evidence of the stern independence of the American character. Sir Robert Walpole, in the reign of George II., had understood it better, when, in reply to those who advised him to raise a revenue by taxing America, he said, "he left that to those who should come after him—who had more courage than himself;" and Mr. Pitt, also, when, according to his own expression, he did not choose "to burn his fingers with an American tax."

1765. Grenville introduces into parliament the *Stamp Act*.

Notwithstanding the opposition, which, in truth, was not unexpected, in 1765, Lord Grenville, pursuant to his declared intention, introduced into the British parliament, his plan

for taxing America, to commence with duties on stamps. In the house of commons, the project, though ably supported, met with ardent and animated opposition. It was on this occasion, that Colonel Barre was roused to that unpremeditated effort of eloquence, which has made his name, to this day, appear to Americans, like that of a friend.

1765. Colonel Barre asserts that Great Britain owes more to the colonies than they to her.

In answer to Charles Townshend, he having caught that orator's last expression, he rose and exclaimed, "Children planted by your care! No! Your oppressions planted them in America! They fled from your tyranny to an uncultivated land, where they were exposed to all the hardships to which human nature is liable, and, among others, to the cruelties of a savage foe, the most subtle, and I will take it upon me to say, the most terrible, that ever inhabited any part of God's earth. They nourished by your indulgence! No! They grew by your neglect! When you began to care about them, that care was exercised in sending persons to rule over them, whose character and conduct has caused the blood of these sons of liberty to recoil within them. They protected by your arms! They have nobly taken up arms in your defense! The people of America are as truly loyal as any subjects the king has, but a people jealous of their liberties, and they will vindicate them."

He declares that they are loyal, but will vindicate their liberty.

Neither the eloquence of Colonel Barre, the petitions of the London merchants, nor the remonstrances of the colonies, could prevent the passage of the stamp act. Of three hundred, who voted in the house of commons, only fifty were against it; in the house of lords, there was not a single dissenting voice; and the royal assent was readily obtained.

March 22nd. British government pass the stamp act.

By this act, no written instrument could be legal, unless the paper was stamped on which it was drawn; and this stamped paper was to be purchased, at exhorbitant prices, of the agents of the British government.

Provision was made for the recovery of penalties for the breach of this act, as of all others relating to trade and revenue, in any admiralty, or king's marine court, throughout the colonies. These courts proceeded in trials, without the intervention of a jury. This act, both in regard to the suspension of what the colonists regarded as one of the most important of their rights, that of trial by jury, and also in regard to that extension of jurisdiction, by which they were liable to be called to trial, for real or supposed offenses, to distant provinces, was, next to that for direct taxation, the most obnoxious to the colonies of any aggression of the British government.

Courts of admiralty. Trial by jury suspended.

Anticipating opposition to these measures, parliament passed laws for sending troops to America, and obliging the inhabitants of those colonies to which they should be sent, to furnish them with quarters, and all necessary supplies.

Act for quartering troops in America.

The stamp act was to take effect on the first day of November. The night after its passage, Dr. Franklin, then in

Franklin's letter.

London as agent for Pennsylvania, wrote to his friend Charles Thompson, "The sun of liberty is set; you must light up the candles of industry and economy." "Be assured," said Mr. Thompson, in reply, "we shall light up torches of quite another sort."

Thompson's reply.

On the arrival of the stamp act, the smothered feelings of the colonists broke forth into one general burst of indignation. The house of burgesses in Virginia were at that time in session. It was here that the first public opposition was made to the odious act; and the man, by whom the resolutions, which expressed this opposition, were introduced, was the eloquent and ardent Patrick Henry, then a young lawyer, and a member of the house. Of his five celebrated resolutions, the first four asserted the rights and privileges claimed by the colonists; the last declared they were not bound to yield obedience to any law, imposing taxes upon them, excepting such as were passed by the general assembly of the colony. These resolutions, more especially the last, were warmly opposed by the house of burgesses; but the bold and irresistible eloquence of Henry finally prevailed, and they were passed by a majority of a single voice. In the heat of the debate, the conduct of the king was, for the first time in any public body in America, arraigned; and Patrick Henry, in this, dared what might have cost him his life. He asserted that the king, in assenting to the law for taxing the colonies, had acted the part of a tyrant; and alluding to the fate of other tyrants, he exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III."—he was interrupted by the cry of "treason!"—pausing for a moment, he deliberately concluded—"may profit by their example;—if this be treason, make the most of it."

Spirited opposition.

May 29. The five resolutions of the house of burgesses in Virginia.

PATRICK HENRY. His daring eloquence makes the first public opposition.

The next day the members were alarmed, on considering the bold stand which they had taken; and in the absence of Henry, the fifth resolution was rescinded; but it had already with the others gone forth, and, although at first cautiously circulated, all were at length openly published, and produced violent excitements throughout the country.

CHAPTER III.

Congress at New York—Repeal of the Stamp Act.

BEFORE the proceedings in Virginia had become known in Massachusetts, the general court of that colony had assembled, and adopted measures to produce a combined opposition to the oppressive measures of parliament. Letters were addressed to the assemblies of the other colonies, proposing that a congress, composed of deputies from each, should meet to

A congress proposed by Massachusetts. Delegates elected from nine colonies.

consult on their common interests. This proposition was not agreed to by all, and indeed it met, at first, a general opposition. Delegates were, however, elected from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina.

1765.
Oct. 7.
First continental congress. Their declaration of rights.

On the first Tuesday in October, which was the day designated by Massachusetts for the meeting of the congress, the delegates assembled at New York. Their first measure was to draw up a declaration, in which they asserted that the colonists were entitled to all the rights and privileges of natural born subjects of Great Britain; that the most essential of these were an exclusive right to tax themselves, and the privilege of trial by jury; and that the late acts of parliament, imposing taxes on the inhabitants without their consent, and extending the jurisdiction of the courts of admiralty, had a manifest tendency to subvert these rights and liberties. The congress then prepared an address to the king, and petitions to both houses of parliament. The colonies which were not represented in this congress, also forwarded to England similar petitions.

Petitions to the king and parliament.

Odious features of the stamp act.

Must be obeyed or civil government suspended.

As the day approached on which the stamp act was to take effect, the popular feeling against it increased. Had duties been laid on articles of convenience or luxury, these might have been dispensed with; but this law was so framed, that the evil intended as a penalty for disobedience, was no less than the suspension of the whole machinery of the social order, and the creation of a state of anarchy. Neither trade nor navigation could proceed; no contract could be legally made, no process against an offender could be instituted, no apprentice could be indented, no student could receive a diploma, nor even could the estates of the dead be legally settled, until the stamp duty was paid.

Colonists determined to to make it impossible for any officer to distribute stamps.

Measures were taken to make the situation of all concerned in its collection so unpleasant, that no one might be found hardy enough to engage as an officer. At Boston, in the month of August, the populace, after burning the effigy of Mr. Andrew Oliver, the proposed distributer of stamps, assembled at his house, broke his windows, and destroyed his furniture. Mr. Oliver then formally pledged himself to have no concern in the execution of the obnoxious statute. The houses of an officer of the court of admiralty, and of one of the custom-house officers, were entered, and their effects purloined. But the greatest damage was done in the mansion of Lieut. Gov. Hutchinson, whose loss in furniture, plate, pictures, and money, was very considerable; and was a chief item in a claim which Great Britain afterwards made against Massachusetts. In New Haven, Mr. Ingersol, like Mr. Oliver, was obliged to declare his resolution not to become a distributer. Similar scenes occurred in other places.

August.
Mr. Oliver, of Boston, roughly used, also Governor Hutchinson, and Mr. Ingersol of New Haven.

The first of November, the day on which the act was to

take effect, was ushered in by the tolling of bells, as for a funeral procession, and signs of mourning and sorrow appeared in all the colonies. In New York, the stamp act was hawked about with a death's head attached to it, under the title of the "Folly of England and the ruin of America." "In Portsmouth, New Hampshire," says Dr. Holmes, "a coffin, neatly ornamented, and inscribed with 'LIBERTY, aged CXLV years,' was prepared for the funeral procession, which began from the state house, attended with two unbraced drums. Minute guns were fired until the corpse arrived at the grave, when an oration was pronounced, in honor of the deceased. Scarcely was the oration concluded, when, some remains of life having been discovered, the corpse was taken up. The inscription on the lid of the coffin was changed to LIBERTY REVIVED! The bells suddenly struck a cheerful sound, and joy again appeared in every countenance."

Nov. 1. Day of the stamp act. Singular demonstrations.

In Portsmouth, N. H. is enacted Liberty's death, burial and resurrection.

In fine, the opposition to the law was general and systematic. Even the women, animated by the same spirit, united with the men in their exertions to prevent the importation of British goods; and cheerfully relinquished every species of ornament, which was manufactured in England. The proceedings of the courts of justice were suspended, in order that no stamps might be used; and those engaged in disputes were earnestly and effectually exhorted, by the leading men, to terminate them by reference.

1765. The women unite to prevent the use of British goods.

In the mean time, a change had taken place in the British ministry; the authors of the stamp act had been removed, and their places supplied by those who were supposed to be more favorable to the interests of the colonies. The Marquis of Rockingham was made lord of the treasury, and the Duke of Grafton and General Conway, secretaries of state. They were now at a loss how to proceed, for they perceived that measures must be taken, either to repeal the obnoxious statute, or oblige the Americans to submit to it, by force of arms. In January, 1766, the petitions of congress, and other papers relating to the affairs of America, were laid before the house of commons. After their examination, a resolution was introduced by General Conway, declaring that parliament "had full power to bind the colonies, and people of America, in all cases whatsoever;" which, after an animated debate, was adopted.

Lord Grenville succeeded by the Duke of Grafton.

1766. January. Parliament declares its right to bind the colonies.

The next day, the ministry, now bent on a repeal of the stamp act, instituted inquiries upon the subject, and among other persons, Dr. Franklin was examined before the house of commons. He gave it as his opinion, that the acts of parliament for taxing America, had alienated the affections of the people from the mother country, and that they would never submit to the stamp duty, unless compelled.

Feb. 10. Dr. Franklin examined before the house of commons; declares the colonies will not submit.

The resolution to repeal that act, was opposed by Lord Grenville and his adherents, who were answered by Mr. Pitt. That great statesman maintained, that taxation was no part of

Bill to repeal the stamp act advocated by Mr. Pitt.

the governing or legislative power which parliament had a right to exert over the colonies; and concluded with a motion, "that the stamp act be repealed, totally, absolutely, and immediately.

Passes the commons; advocated in the house of lords by Lord Camden.

The bill for its repeal, at length passed the commons, and was sent to the house of lords, where it met with much opposition. But the cause of the colonies was ably advocated by Lord Camden. "My position," said he, "is this; I repeat it, I will maintain it to my last hour—taxation and representation are inseparable. This position is founded on the laws of nature; it is more—it is itself an eternal law of nature: for whatever is a man's own is absolutely his own; no man has a right to take it from him without his consent. Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury; whoever does it, commits a robbery." The bill for repeal at length passed the house of Lords, but with it was another, called the "declaratory bill," in which the resolution was repeated, that "parliament had a right to bind the colonies *in all cases* whatsoever.

March 18. Passes the house of lords, but its salutary effect destroyed.

CHAPTER IV.

Second attempt to tax America.—Opposition.

1766. Colonies jealous and watchful.

ALTHOUGH the repeal of the stamp act gave joy to the colonists, yet, while a principle was at the same time asserted, upon which, any future ministry, with the sanction of parliamentary authority, might oppress them, they continued a jealous watch over the British government.

General Conway recommended to the colonies, to make compensation, to those who had suffered in attempting to enforce the stamp act. Governor Bernard laid this recommendation before the assembly of Massachusetts, as a requisition with which they must of necessity comply. With this they were offended, as it disabled them, they said, from voluntarily granting to the king such favors as he requested. At first they refused to make any compensation to the sufferers, but they finally consented, though in a manner highly displeasing to the British government, for the same act which made the appropriation for the damage, expressed a pardon to those by whom it was done.

March 31. Massachusetts consents to pay for the riot, but pardons the rioters.

In July, another change took place in the British ministry, and a cabinet was formed under the direction of Mr. Pitt, now Earl of Chatham. The proceedings of the Americans had given great offense to the British, and they were condemned by many who had heretofore espoused their cause.

July. Pitt at the head of the British cabinet.

PART III. PERIOD I. CHAP. IV.

1767. Parliament imposes new taxes.

In May, 1767, Charles Townshend, then chancellor of the exchequer, influenced by Lord Grenville, brought into parliament a second plan for taxing America, by imposing duties on all tea, glass, paper, and painter's colors, which should be imported into the colonies. This bill passed both houses of parliament without much opposition. And during the same session an act was passed, suspending the authority of the assembly of New York, until they should comply with the requisition to quarter troops, which they had refused; and another, appointing the officers of the navy, as custom-house officers, to enforce the acts of trade and navigation.

1768. Massachusetts requests the co-operation of the other colonies.

These three acts following each other in quick succession, caused, throughout America, a revival of the same feelings which the passage of the stamp act had produced. In January, 1768, the assembly of Massachusetts prepared a petition to the king, and sent letters to those persons in Great Britain, who had been most active in defending the cause of America, again asserting what they considered their rights, and claiming deliverance from those unjust and oppressive taxes, which had been imposed by the recent acts of parliament. They also addressed circulars to the other colonial assemblies, entreating their co-operation, in obtaining the redress of their grievances.

Displeasure of the British ministry.

Bernard dissolves the assembly.

The British ministry viewed this measure as an attempt to convene another congress; and as they had always dreaded the effects of voluntary colonial union, independent of the crown, they instructed Gov. Bernard, to require the assembly to rescind the vote by which the circulars were sent to the other colonies; and, in case of their refusal, to dissolve them; at the same time, addressing letters to the other colonial governors, to prevent, if possible, their compliance with the request of Massachusetts. In the assembly of that province, ninety-two, out of one hundred and nine representatives, refused to rescind the vote, or disapprove of their former proceedings, and the governor, in consequence, dissolved the assembly. But instead of intimidating, these measures did but exasperate the people.

June 10. Seizure of Hancock's sloop resented.

Non-importation agreements.

In June, the custom-house officers seized a sloop belonging to John Hancock, a merchant of eminence, and a patriot much beloved by the people of Boston. They assembled in crowds, insulted and beat the officers, and compelled them to leave the town. Non-importation agreements, with regard to all articles on which duties had been laid, were now extensively adopted.

Boston vainly petitions the governor to call an assembly.

The assembly of Massachusetts had not convened, since its dissolution by Gov. Bernard. A report was circulated, that troops were ordered to march into Boston. A town meeting was called, and the governor was earnestly entreated to convoke the assembly. His reply was "that he could not call

another assembly this year, without further commands from the king."

A convention was then proposed, and accordingly held, on the 22d of September. The members petitioned the governor, that an assembly might be called; but he refused, calling them rebels. They transmitted to the king a respectful account of their proceedings, and then dissolved, after a session of five days.

Sept. 22. A convention from the several towns does the same.

Orders were given to General Gage, the commander-in-chief of the British troops in the colonies, to station a force in Boston, to overawe the citizens, and protect the custom-house officers in the discharge of their duty. Two regiments were accordingly ordered from Halifax, and escorted by seven armed vessels, they arrived at Boston on the 28th of September. The fleet took a station which commanded the town, and the troops having landed under the cover of their guns, marched into Boston without any resistance on the part of the inhabitants. The select men of the town refusing to provide them with quarters, the governor commanded the state house to be opened for their reception. The presence of the soldiers, had great influence in restraining outward violence, yet so offensive was the measure, that it greatly increased hostile dispositions.

Sept. 28. Two regiments come from Halifax to Boston, quartered in the state house.

Early in the succeeding year, news was received that the late proceedings in Massachusetts were delared by parliament to be "illegal, unconstitutional, and derogatory to the rights of the crown and parliament." Both houses, in a joint address to the king, had recommended vigorous measures, and had even gone so far as to beseech him to direct the governor of Massachusetts Bay, to make strict inquiries, as to all treasons committed in that province since the year 1767; in order that the persons most active in committing them, might be sent to England for trial.

1769. Threatening attitude of Great Britain.

The house of burgesses in Virginia met a few days after this address was received in the colonies. They passed resolutions, in which they boldly denied the right of the king to remove an offender out of the colony for trial; and voted an address to the crown, which, though in a style of loyalty, stated their deep conviction that the complaints of the colonists were well founded.

Met with spirit in Virginia.

When the intelligence of these proceedings reached the governor, he suddenly dissolved the assembly. But the current of opposition was too strong to be stayed. The members assembled at a private house; elected their speaker, Peyton Randolph, Esq., moderator; and proceeded to pass some decided resolutions against importing British goods. These were introduced by Colonel Washington, who had been a member of the house since his resignation. This example was followed by other colonies; and non-importation agreements, which had before been entered into by Boston, Salem, the city

May. Lord Botetourt, the governor, dissolves the house of burgesses. They make themselves an independent assembly.

of New York, and the colony of Connecticut, now became general.

1770. May. Assembly of Massachusetts convenes, and is adjourned to Cambridge.

In May, the assembly of Massachusetts convened. They refused to proceed with business while the state house was surrounded by an armed force. The governor would not remove it, but adjourned them to Cambridge. Here they expressed their decided belief, that the establishment of a standing army in the colony in time of peace, was an invasion of their natural rights. They refused to make any of the appropriations of money which the governor proposed, and he again prorogued them. In August, Governor Bernard was recalled, and the government left in the hands of Lieutenant Governor Hutchinson.

March 5. Affray with the British troops.

On the 5th of March, 1770, some of the inhabitants of Boston insulted the military, while under arms; and an affray took place, in which four persons were killed. The bells were instantly rung; the people rushed from the country to the aid of the citizens; and the soldiers were obliged to retire to Castle William, in order to avoid the fury of the enraged multitude. A trial was instituted: the soldiers arraigned were all acquitted, except two, who were found guilty of manslaughter. The moderation of the jury, and the ability with which they were defended by two of the leading opposers of British aggression, John Adams and Josiah Quincy, were honorable to the individuals, and to their country. This event, however, increased the detestation in which the stationing of a soldiery among the people, was held.

They are tried for murder, and ably defended by John Adams, and Josiah Quincy.

1771. January. Lord North vainly pursues a temporizing policy.

In England Lord North was appointed to the ministry. He introduced a bill into parliament, which passed on the 12th of April, removing the duties which had been laid in 1767, excepting those on tea. But, as had been predicted by those who opposed this partial removal, the people of America were not satisfied, while the system was adhered to and parliament claimed the *right* of taxing the colonies.

1772. The minds of the people turned to the subject of their wrongs.

In 1772, meetings were held in the towns throughout Massachusetts, where committees were appointed to maintain a correspondence with each other. These meetings, which proved the nurseries of independence, were censured by Great Britain as being the hot beds of treason and rebellion.

June. The Gaspee destroyed at midnight.

In Rhode Island, a daring resistance was made to the custom-house officers; and the Gaspee, an armed schooner which had been stationed in that colony for the purpose of enforcing the acts of trade was destroyed.

CHAPTER V.

Seizure of Tea.—Boston Port Bill.—Arrival of British Troops.

THE non-importation agreements, rigidly observed in respect to the article of tea, now began to effect the commercial interest of Great Britain. Parliament passed an act allowing the East India Company to export to America its teas, free of all duties in England, thus enabling them to reduce its price in the colonies. Tea was accordingly shipped in large quantities. The colonists foresaw, that if it should be landed, the duty would probably be paid. Resolutions were therefore extensively adopted, that the tea should not be received on shore, but sent back to England.

1773. May. Law made in England to hinder abstinence in the use of tea.

At Philadelphia the pilots were enjoined not to conduct the ships into the river. At New York the governor ordered some of the tea to be landed, under the protection of an armed ship, but the people took it into custody, and allowed none of it to be sold. In Boston it was apprehended that as the loaded vessels lay in the harbor, the tea would be landed in small quantities: and several men, disguised as Indians, boarded the ships during the night, and threw their cargoes into the water. Three hundred and forty-two chests of tea were thus broken open and their contents thrown overboard.

1773. The committee of vigilance are determined that no tea shall be used.

Bostonians destroy 342 chests of tea.

When the news of these transactions reached the parliament of England, they resolved "to make such provisions as should secure the just dependence of the colonies, and a due obedience to the laws, throughout all the British dominions." In order to punish the inhabitants of Boston, in an exemplary manner, and oblige them to restore the value of the tea which had been destroyed, a bill was passed in March, 1774, "interdicting all commercial intercourse with the port of Boston, and prohibiting the landing and shipping of any goods at that place," until these ends should be accomplished.

1774. Parliament shuts the port of Boston.

Parliament also passed an act, giving to the crown the power previously residing in the General Court, of appointing counselors; and they prohibited meetings in the several towns except, for the purpose of electing officers. In order to secure the execution of these obnoxious laws, they provided that any person indicted for murder, or any capital offense, committed in aiding the magistracy, might be sent to another colony, or to Great Britain for trial.

Give the crown the appointment of counselors.

Forbid town meetings.

Abolish trial by jury,

An act was also passed, extending the province of Quebec to the river Ohio; and, in order more effectually to provide for its government, a legislative council was formed, who were to be appointed by the crown, and trials without a jury were also to be permitted. The object of this act, which thus

and make a plan to bring in oppression from the north.

1774.

in that province abolished the free system of English laws and extended its boundaries, was "at once to render it an example, and a fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into the other colonies."

Exposure of Hutchinson's letters.

Gage succeeds him.

General Gage was made governor of Massachusetts in the place of Hutchinson, who had been removed from his office in consequence of unpopularity occasioned by the exposure of letters which had been written by him, during the years 1767 and 1768, to the leading men of Great Britain, which had tended greatly to increase the prejudice of parliament against the colonies, and widen the breach already existing between them.

May 10. Boston port bill causes equal excitement.

On the arrival of the port bill in Boston, a meeting of the inhabitants was held, who declared that the "impolicy, injustice, and inhumanity of the act exceeded their powers of expression!" The assembly convened at this place, but was removed by the governor to Salem. It was here resolved, that the present state of the colonies made it necessary that a congress, composed of delegates from all the colonies, should assemble, to take their affairs into the most serious consideration. They nominated James Bowdoin, Thomas Cushing, Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, men celebrated for their talents and patriotism, as their representatives to such a congress; and directed the speaker of the house to inform the other colonies of their resolution.

The assembly proposes a general congress and chooses members.

It disobeys the royal authority.

The governor, having learned these proceedings, sent an officer to dissolve the assembly, in the king's name. Being unable to obtain admittance, he read the order aloud on the staircase; but it was not obeyed, until the members had finished their most important business.

Noble conduct of the people of Salem.

Governor Gage had believed that the advantages arising to the trade of Salem, from shutting up the port of Boston, would render its inhabitants more favorable to the royal government; but the people of that town declared, "that nature, in forming their harbor, had prevented their becoming rivals in trade; and that even if it were otherwise, they should regard themselves lost to every idea of justice, and all feelings of humanity, could they indulge one thought of seizing upon the wealth of their neighbors, or raising their fortunes upon the ruins of their countrymen."

The Bostonians aided by the whole country.

The cause of the people of Boston was espoused by all the colonies, and their wants were supplied by their contributions. The people of Marblehead, in accordance with the general feeling, instead of taking advantage of their distress, offered them the use of their harbor, their wharves, and warehouses, free of all expense.

In Virginia, Lord Dunmore, who had been made governor, on the death of Lord Botetourt, had prorogued the refractory burgesses from time to time until March, 1773. When, in May, 1774, they received the news of the Boston port bill,

they proclaimed a fast. Lord Dunmore at once prorogued them. They however formed an association, and voted to recommend to the colonies a general congress.

The Virginians keep a day of fasting.

The first of June, the day on which the port bill was to take effect, was devoutly observed, in Virginia, as a day of fasting, humiliation and prayer, to implore that God would avert the evils which threatened them, and "give them one heart, and one mind, firmly to oppose, by all just and proper means, every injury to the American rights."

CHAPTER VI.

Congress at Philadelphia.

1774. Sept. 4. A continental congress assembles at Philadelphia.

Twelve colonies represented.

The resolutions adopted by the assembly of Massachusetts, with respect to a general congress, were approved by the other colonies; and on the 4th of September, 1774, the congress convened at Philadelphia. In this body, the most august and important which had ever assembled upon the American shores, all the colonies, except Georgia, were represented; and all parties, struck with the array of splendid talents and stern patriotism, which a view of the catalogue of its members presented, looked forward to the result of their deliberations with deep interest and great expectation; the people with hope—but the officers and dependents of the crown, with alarm and apprehension.

Peyton Randolph chosen president.

Each colony has one vote.

Their first measure was to choose, by a unanimous vote, Peyton Randolph, Esq. of Virginia, as president. They next decided, that, as they could not ascertain the relative importance of each colony, each should have one vote; they determined that their deliberations should proceed with closed doors; they chose a committee of two from each province, to *state the rights* of the colonies in general, the several instances in which these rights had been infringed, and the means of obtaining redress. They expressed their approbation of the conduct of the people of Massachusetts, exhorted them to persevere in the cause of freedom, with decision, yet with temperance; and voted the continuance of contributions for their relief. Being informed that General Gage was erecting fortifications around Boston, and prohibiting the citizens from a free communication, they addressed a letter to that officer, entreating him to desist from military operations; lest a difference, altogether irreconcilable, should arise between the colonies and the parent state.

Approve the conduct of Massachusetts, and take measures for relief.

They draw a declaration of their rights.

The committee chosen, next reported an able instrument, setting forth the rights of the colonies, in the form of resolutions, which being accepted, was addressed to the people, and

is now commonly quoted by the title of the "Bill of Rights." The last of these resolutions stated the result of the best wisdom of congress, as to the means most likely to obtain the peaceable redress of grievances. First, to enter into a non-importation association, second, to prepare an address to the people of Great Britain, and a memorial to the inhabitants of British America, and third, to prepare a loyal address to the king.

Concert measures to obtain redress.

1774.
Sanction non-importation compacts.

By the non-importation compact, they agreed and associated, for themselves and their constituents, "under the sacred ties of virtue, honor, and love of liberty," not to import, or use any British goods, after the first of December, 1774, particularly the articles of tea and molasses. At the same time, they agreed to encourage agriculture, arts, and manufactures in America. Committees were to be appointed in every place, to see that this agreement was observed; and those who violated it were to be denounced as enemies to the rights of their country.

Encourage arts which tend to independence.

It is worthy of remark, that these great men, in the pressure of their own peculiar difficulties, did not forget the cause of suffering humanity, but made, with the other resolutions, one by which they bound themselves not to be, in any way, concerned in the slave-trade.

Resolve against the slave-trade.

Finally, they determined to continue the congressional union, until the repeal by parliament, of oppressive duties; of the laws restricting their rights of trial by jury; of the acts, against the people of Massachusetts; and of that for extending the limits of the province of Quebec.

Resolve to continue the colonial union.

In the several addresses which, conformably to their resolutions, were drawn up and promulgated, congress fully met the high expectations which were entertained of that assemblage, of whom Lord Chatham declared, "that, though he had studied and admired the free states of antiquity, the master spirits of the world, yet, for solidity of reasoning, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion, no body of men could stand in preference to this congress." The addresses were couched in terms, which, though strongly calculated to awaken the sympathy, were, at the same time, powerful to convince the reason. They were not the whining complaints of beaten children, who murmur and submit, but the firm remonstrances of injured and indignant men, willing to ask for their rights, but determined to have them.

High character of the first American congress.

The petition to the king entreated him, in language the most respectful and affectionate, to restore their violated rights. Their grievances, they said, were the more intolerable, as they were born heirs of freedom, and had enjoyed it under the auspices of his royal ancestors. "The apprehension," say they, "of being degraded into a state of servitude, from the pre-eminent rank of English freemen, while our minds retain the strongest love of liberty, and clearly foresee

They make an able appeal to the king.

the miseries preparing for us and our posterity, excites emotions in our breasts which we cannot describe." They express a hope, that the royal indignation will fall on those designing and dangerous men, who, by their misrepresentations of his American subjects, had, at length, compelled them, by the force of accumulated injuries, too severe to be longer borne, thus to disturb his majesty's repose; a conduct extorted from those who would much more willingly bleed in his service. "We ask," say they, "for peace, liberty, and safety. We wish not a diminution of the royal prerogative, nor do we solicit the grant of any new right in our favor." The petition concludes with an earnest prayer, that his majesty, as the father of his whole people, would not permit the ties of blood, of law, and loyalty, to be broken, "in uncertain expectation of effects, that, if obtained, never can compensate for the calamities through which they must be gained."

This petition draughted by Mr. Dickenson.

1774.

In their address to the people of England, they claim the rights of fellow subjects. "Be not surprised," they say, "that we, whose forefathers participated in the rights, the liberties, and the constitution, of which you so justly boast, and have carefully conveyed the same fair inheritance to us, should refuse to surrender them to men, who found their claims on no principles of reason, and who prosecute them with a design, that, by having our lives and property in their power, they may, with the greater facility, enslave you. Are not," they ask, "the proprietors of the soil of Great Britain, lords of their own property? Can it be taken from them without their consent? Will they yield it to the arbitrary disposal of any man, or number of men, whatever? You know they will not. Why, then, are the proprietors of America, less lords of their property than you are of yours? Can the intervention of the sea that divides us, cause disparity of rights? Or can any reason be given, why English subjects, who live three thousand miles from the royal palace, should enjoy less liberty, than those who are three hundred miles from it?"

Messrs. Lee, Livingston, and Jay prepare an address to the people of England.

Draughted by Mr. Jay.

In the memorial to their constituents, they presented an account of the oppressive measures of parliament since 1763. They applaud the spirit which they had shown in defense of their rights, and encourage them to persevere, and be prepared for all contingencies; hinting that those might occur which would put their constancy severely to the test. The congress rose on the 6th of October.

And a memorial to their constituents.

Congress rise, October 6.

Although their powers were merely advisory, yet their decisions received the approbation of the colonial assemblies, and carried with them all the force of laws.

The proceedings of congress approved.

CHAPTER VII.

War approaches.—Massachusetts.—British Parliament.

PART III. PERIOD I. CHAP. VII.

Whigs and tories.

COMPLETE unanimity, however, did not exist. Some of the late emigrants, on whom England had bestowed offices, and many who feared her power, clung to her authority, and declared themselves her adherents. Whigs and tories were the distinguishing names of the parties; the former favoring the cause of the colonists; the latter, that of Great Britain.

Military stores seized.

In the meantime, the magazines of gunpowder and other military stores, at Charlestown and Cambridge, were seized, by order of Gen. Gage.

October. The assembly of Massachusetts resolve themselves into a provincial congress, and prepare for war.

An assembly was called in Massachusetts; but its sittings were countermanded by the governor. The representatives then met at Salem, resolved themselves into a "provincial congress," adjourned to Concord, and chose John Hancock their president. The governor warned them to desist from such illegal proceedings; but, paying no regard to his injunction, they resolved, that, for the defense of the province, a number of the inhabitants should be enlisted, to stand ready to march at a minute's warning. They elected three general officers, to command these minute-men and the militia, provided they should be called to action—appointed a committee of supplies, and a committee of safety, to sit during their recess. Meeting again in November, they resolved that one fourth of the militia should act as minute-men; made the addition of two general officers; and sent persons to inform New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Connecticut, of their measures, and request their co-operation, in order to raise an army of 20,000 men, to act in any emergency.

The southern colonies adopt similar measures.

The same temper was manifest in the southern colonies, particularly in Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Maryland, where conventions were held, and spirited resolutions passed.

1774. Nov. 20. The king and parliament determined to carry their point at all hazards.

On the 20th of November, the British parliament convened. The king, in his speech, informed the members, that a most daring resistance to the laws still prevailed in Massachusetts, which was encouraged by unlawful combinations in the other colonies; and, finally, he expressed his firm determination to withstand any attempt to weaken or impair the royal authority; and in these sentiments the two houses expressed, in their answer, a decided concurrence. Perceiving, from these expressions, the temper of the British government, Mr. Quincy, who had been sent over as general agent for the colonies, wrote to Dr. Reed, in Philadelphia, warning him not to entertain the idea that commercial plans would be the engines of their freedom; and telling him, that he wrote "with the feelings

Mr. Quincy to Dr. Reed.

of one who believes that his countrymen must yet seal their faith and constancy to their liberties with blood."

When the British ministry, after considerable delay, at length brought the American papers before parliament, Lord Chatham, with all the energies of his gigantic mind, took the field of debate, in favor of America. "The way," he said, "must be immediately opened for reconciliation. It will soon be too late. His majesty may indeed wear his crown; but, the American jewel out of it, it will not be worth the wearing. They say, you have no right to tax them, without their consent. They say truly. Representation and taxation must go together—they are inseparable. 'Our American subjects,' is a common phrase in the mouths of the lowest orders of our citizens: but property, my lords, is the sole and entire dominion of the owner: it excludes all the world besides. It is an atom; untangible by any but the proprietor. Touch it, and the touch contaminates the whole mass; the whole property vanishes. This wise people speak out. They do not hold the language of slaves; they tell you what they mean. They do not ask you to repeal your laws, as a favor; they claim it as a right—they demand it. They tell you, they will not submit to them; and I tell you, the acts must be repealed. Repeal, therefore, my lords, I say. But bare repeal will not satisfy this enlightened and spirited people. You must go through the work; you must declare you have no right to tax—then they may trust you—then they will have some confidence in you."

Lord Chatham's speech in favor of America.

He declares that what can be taken without the owner's consent ceases to be property.

But such were the prejudices then existing, that, notwithstanding the force of Lord Chatham's arguments, and the weight of his name, a plan, which he brought before parliament, for conciliatory measures, was negatived by a large majority; while the petitions from the merchants of London, and other commercial places, in favor of America, were referred, not to the regular committee, but to one, called by the friends of the colonies, "the committee of oblivion," whose meeting was deferred to a distant day. Dr. Franklin, and the other colonial agents, were refused a hearing before the house, on the plea, that they were appointed by an illegal assembly; and thus was put to silence the voice of three millions of people, yet in the attitude of humble suppliants.

1775. Conciliatory measures proposed by Lord Chatham, and rejected.

Colonies refused a hearing in parliament.

Both houses of parliament concurred, by a large majority, in an address to the king, in which they declare, "that the Americans had long wished to become independent, and only waited for ability and opportunity, to accomplish their design. To prevent this," they said, "and to crush the monster in its birth, was the duty of every Englishman; and that this must be done, at any price, and at every hazard."

On the 10th of February, a bill was passed, by which the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, were restricted in their trade to Great Britain

Feb. 10. Parliament attempt to divide the

and its West India possessions, and were also prohibited from fishing on the banks of Newfoundland. The same restrictions were soon after extended to all the colonies, excepting New York and North Carolina. It was expected that these prohibitions would prove particularly distressing to the inhabitants of New England, as an idea prevailed, that they depended on the fisheries for their subsistence, and must, if deprived of them, be starved into obedience.

colonies by showing favors to some, and severity to others.

While parliament were engaged in augmenting the naval and military force, from the avowed cause, that there was a state of rebellion, Lord North brought in an artful bill, which he called a conciliatory plan, and which, after considerable debate, was adopted. Its purport was, that Great Britain should forbear to tax the colonies, on their agreeing to tax themselves; the money thus raised, to be at the disposal of the British parliament. This project, when brought before the colonial assemblies, and finally referred by them to congress, was pronounced, not only insidious, but unreasonable and unsatisfactory; for it was, in effect, to oblige themselves to give the thing over which they claimed a right, to purchase the mere name of possessing that right; in fine, to give the substance for the shadow.

Parliament makes a second failure in another attempt to blind and divide the colonies.

While these measures were in progress, Lord Howe sought an introduction to Dr. Franklin, through his sister, Mrs. Howe, the friend of the latter, and an honest endeavor was made, on both sides, to fall upon some plan, to which the parties would consent. But the result of these secret and unofficial negotiations shows clearly, that so wide was the difference of opinion in England and America, that a war was inevitable; as no scheme of adjustment could be devised, to which even good men of both parties would agree.

Secret negotiations between Lord Howe and Dr. Franklin.

CHAPTER VIII.

The War begins by the Battle of Lexington.

In the mean time, affairs in America were tending to a crisis, which would preclude all hope of reconciliation. A second provincial congress having assembled in Massachusetts, had ordered military stores to be collected, and encouraged the militia and minute-men to perfect themselves in the use of arms.

1775. Feb. 26. Gage attempts to destroy stores at Salem.

General Gage having learned that a number of field pieces were collected at Salem, dispatched a party of soldiers, to take possession of them, in the name of the king. The people of Salem assembled in great numbers, and, by pulling up

a drawbridge, prevented their entering the town, and thus defeated their object.

A large quantity of ammunition and stores were also deposited at Concord, about twenty miles from Boston; these General Gage resolved to seize, or destroy; and, with that view, he sent a detachment of 800 men, under the command of Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, ordering them to proceed with expedition and secrecy.

April 18. Gage sends 800 men to seize the stores at Concord.

The provincials had notice of the design; and when the British troops arrived at Lexington, within five miles of Concord, the militia of the place were drawn up, and ready to receive them. The advanced body of the regulars approached within musket shot, when Major Pitcairn, riding forward, exclaimed, "Disperse, you rebels!—throw down your arms and disperse." Not being instantly obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and ordered his men to fire. They fired, and killed eight men. The militia dispersed, but the firing continued. The detachment then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed or took possession of the stores.

1775. April 18. Battle of Lexington.

The commencement of the war.

They then began their retreat; but the colonists pressing upon them on all sides, they went to Lexington, where they met Lord Percy, with a reinforcement of 900 men, without which, it is doubtful whether they could have reached Boston; for the Americans, better acquainted with the grounds, continually harassed their march. From every place of concealment—a stone fence, a cluster of bushes, or a barn, the concealed provincials poured upon them a destructive fire. At sunset, the regulars, almost overcome with fatigue, passed Charlestown Neck, and found, on Bunker's Hill, a resting place for the night; and the next morning, under the protection of a man of war, they entered Boston.

Retreat of the British.

Harassed by the Americans.

British loss, 273.

American loss, 88.

Blood had now flowed, and no language can portray the feelings which the event excited. Couriers were dispatched in every direction, who gave, as they rode at full speed, their news, to be taken up and carried in like manner to other places; and thus, in an increasing circle, it spread like electric fluid throughout the land. The messenger, if he arrived on Sunday, at once entered the church, and proclaimed to the breathless assembly—war has begun! Every where the cry was repeated, "war has begun!" and the universal response was, "to arms, then! liberty or death!"

Great excitement.

Special couriers spread the news.

The people take up arms.

The legislatures of the several colonies convened, appointed officers, and gave orders to raise troops. Every where, fathers were leaving their children, and mothers sending their sons to the field; and an army of 20,000 was soon collected in the neighborhood of Boston.

Thus war was beginning in earnest. But our fathers had a righteous cause; and the contest was important, not only to themselves and their posterity, but to human rights. They had done all that was possible, and what none but great men

Our fathers contended righteously for their own, and human rights.

Obligations of the present, to the coming generations.

could have done, to secure an honorable peace. What our country now is, and what it must have been, had they shrunk from the conflict, and tamely submitted to the yoke of servitude, speaks for their virtue and wisdom, in resolving to contend. The God of justice, in whom they trusted, proved their Deliverer. They were, to the death, true to us, their posterity. Let not us be false to them; but let us transmit the liberty and the noble institutions of our country, the inheritance earned by their blood, uncontaminated, to our descendants.

CHAPTER IX.

Ticonderoga taken.—Royal Governors retire.

The colonists besiege the British in Boston.

GENERAL GAGE was now closely besieged in Boston by an army of twenty thousand. He had made his fortifications so strong, that the provincials did not attempt the place by assault; nor would they have taken any such measures to annoy the enemy, as would have exposed the inhabitants. But so closely were the British invested, that, although they had the command of the sea, their provisions became scarce. Great vigilance, to prevent their obtaining supplies, was used along the coast, the inhabitants, for this purpose, often driving their cattle into the interior.

1775. Their provisions scarce.

Plans for taking Ticonderoga and Crown Point originate in Connecticut and Massachusetts.

The possession of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on which depended the command of lakes George and Champlain, was an object of essential importance. Without waiting for the action of congress, individuals in Connecticut, at the head of whom were Dean, Wooster, and Parsons, determined to undertake it on their own responsibility; and accordingly they borrowed of the legislature of that colony, eighteen hundred dollars. They then proceeded to Bennington, confident of the co-operation of the hardy freemen who had settled in that vicinity by the authority of New Hampshire, and who had, under the name of the "Green Mountain corps," manifested their resolution in defense of their lands from the sheriffs of New York; that state claiming over them a jurisdiction, which they would not allow. At the head of these veterans were Colonels Ethan Allen, and Seth Warner. They gladly engaged in the enterprise. Troops were soon raised, and the command was intrusted to Allen.

Green Mountain Boys defend the New Hampshire grants from N. Y.

Ethan Allen and Seth Warner are joined by

Benedict Arnold.

In the meantime, Benedict Arnold, with the intrepid boldness of his character, had, in Boston, formed and matured the same design, and was on the march to execute it, when he found, with astonishment, that he had been anticipated. Becoming second in command to Allen, they marched together,

at the head of three hundred men, from Castleton, and reached lake Champlain, opposite Ticonderoga, on the 9th of May. On the morning of the 10th they embarked with eighty-three men, landed at dawn of day, and completely surprised the fortress. The approach of a hostile force was so unexpected to De La Place, the commander, that he knew not from what quarter they were; and when summoned to surrender, he demanded by what authority:—"In the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," said Allen. De La Place, incapable of making any resistance, delivered up the garrison, which consisted of only three officers and forty-four privates.

1775. May 10. They surprise and capture Ticonderoga.

The remainder of the troops having landed, Colonel Warner was dispatched with a small party against Crown Point, of which he took peaceable possession. Arnold, having manned and armed a small schooner found in South Bay, captured a sloop-of-war lying at St. Johns. The pass of Skeensborough was seized at the same time, by a detachment of volunteers from Connecticut.

Colonel Warner takes Crown Point.

Arnold seizes a sloop-of-war.

Thus were obtained, without bloodshed, these important posts; and the command of the lakes on which they stood, together with one hundred pieces of cannon, and other munitions of war. The success with which this expedition was crowned, greatly tended to raise the confidence which the Americans felt in themselves.

The Ameri cans command Lakes George and Champlain.

The continental congress again assembled at Philadelphia on the 10th of May, and Mr. Hancock was chosen President. Bills of credit to the amount of three millions of dollars were issued for defraying the expenses of the war; and the faith of the "Twelve United Colonies" pledged for their redemption.

May 10. Congress meet at Philadelphia. Issue three millions of continental paper money

Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, on plea of insurrection in a neighboring county, caused some powder to be seized, by night, from the magazine belonging to the colony at Williamsburgh, and conveyed on board an armed schooner, then lying in James river. Patrick Henry assembled an independent company, and was marching towards the capital, to obtain it by force, when he was met by a messenger from the governor, who paid him the full value in money. Henry and his party returned. Lord Dunmore, having fortified his palace, issued a proclamation, and declared them rebels. This highly incensed the people, with whom Henry was the favorite leader. About the same time, letters of Dunmore to England were intercepted, which were considered as gross slanders against the colony. Thus situated, he became apprehensive of personal danger, abandoned his government, and went on board the Fowey, a man-of-war, then lying at Yorktown. In North Carolina, Governor Martin took refuge on board a national ship in Cape Fear river; and in South Carolina, Lord William Campbell abandoned his government and retired.

April. Lord Dunmore forced by Patrick Henry, to make restitution for powder.

Proclaims him and his party rebels.

His letters intercepted.

He quits his government, as dc the governors of the Carolinas.

Tryon, the artful and intriguing governor of New York, was still in, or near the province, and no delegates to congress were chosen at the proper time; but after the battle of Lexington, a convention was held for the sole purpose, and members were elected.

CHAPTER X.

Battle of Bunker Hill.—Washington.

1775. May 25. Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne.

In May, the British army in Boston received a powerful reinforcement from England, under Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne.

June 12. General Gage's proclamation.

General Gage, thus reinforced, proceeded to bold measures. He proclaimed martial law throughout Massachusetts. He however offered pardon to all rebels who would return to their allegiance, except Samuel Adams and John Hancock.

General Gage violates his promise.

General Gage had, in the meantime, agreed to permit the people of Boston to depart; but after a portion had gone, he changed his policy and kept the remainder.

Night of June 16, Americans fortify Breed's Hill.

Learning that the British threatened to penetrate into the country, congress recommended to the council of war to take such measures as would put them on the defensive, and for this purpose, a detachment of one thousand men, under Colonel Prescott, was ordered, on the night of the 16th of June, to throw up a breastwork on Bunker's Hill, near Charlestown. By some mistake, the troops entrenched themselves on Breed's Hill, nearer to Boston. They labored with such silence and activity, that by return of light they had nearly completed a strong redoubt, without being observed.

June 17. British army crosses from Boston. Lands at Morton's Point.

At dawn, however, the British, discovering the advance of the Americans, commenced a severe cannonade from the ships in the river; but this not interrupting them, General Gage sent a body of about three thousand men, under Generals Howe and Pigot. They left Boston in boats, and landed under the protection of the shipping in Charlestown, at the extreme point of the peninsula, and advanced against the Americans. Generals Clinton and Burgoyne took their station on an eminence in Boston, commanding a distinct view of the hill. The spires of the churches, the roofs of the houses, and every height which commanded a view of the battle ground, were covered with spectators, taking deep and opposite interests in the conflict.

They burn Charlestown.

The British set fire to Charlestown; and amidst the glare of its flames glittering upon their burnished arms, they advance to the attack. The Americans wait their approach in silence, until they are within ten rods of the redoubt. Then taking a

steady aim, and having advantage of the ground, they pour upon them a deadly fire. They are thrown into confusion, and many of their officers fall. They are thus twice repulsed. Clinton now arrives, and they again rally and advance towards the fortifications, in a manner to attack the redoubt on three sides at once. The ammunition of the colonists failed. Courage was no longer of any avail, and Colonel Prescott, who commanded the redoubt, ordered a retreat. The Americans were obliged to pass Charlestown neck, where they were exposed to a galling fire from the ships in the harbor. Here fell General Joseph Warren, whose death was a severe blow to his mourning country.

1775. June 17. Americans twice repulse the British. Are at length obliged to quit the field.

In this engagement three thousand men, composing the flower of the British army, were engaged. Their killed and wounded were more than a thousand, while the loss of the Americans was less than half that number. Although the ground was lost, the Americans regarded this as a victory, and the British as a defeat. Or if they pretended otherwise, it was tauntingly asked, how many more such triumphs their army could afford? The boldness with which the undisciplined troops of the colonies so long withstood the charges of the regulars, increased their confidence, and convinced the English that they had to contend with a resolute foe.

British loss, 1054. American, 453.

On the fifteenth of June, congress, still in session, elected, by a unanimous vote, George Washington, who was then present, and had from their first meeting at Philadelphia, been a delegate from Virginia, to the high office of general and commander-in-chief of the army of the United Colonies. The members from the north had generously resolved, in order to attach the south more firmly to the confederacy, to fix upon a southern commander; but in their selection, they appear to have been guided by a wisdom which seemed, as far as human foresight can go, to penetrate into futurity. When his appointment was signified to him by the president of congress, he was deeply penetrated with a mingled sense of the high honor which he had received, and the responsibility of the station to which he was raised. In attempting to fill it, he acted not from the dictates of his own judgment, which led him to fear that his talents and military experience might not be adequate to the discharge of his duty; yet, such as they were, he felt bound, he said, to devote them to his country in whatever manner the public will directed. He declined all compensation for his services, for as money could not buy him from his endeared home, and as he served his country for justice, and the love he bore to her cause, he would not allow his motives to be misconstrued. He should keep an exact account of his expenses and those, congress, he doubted not, would discharge.

June 15. Washington elected commander-in-chief.

Washington fears that his capacity is not equal to the station.

Artemas Ward, of Massachusetts, Colonel Lee formerly a British officer, Philip Schuyler of New York, and Israel

Putnam, of Connecticut then before Boston, were at the same time appointed to the rank of major generals; and Horatio Gates to that of adjutant general.

He joins the army at Cambridge.

Soon after his election, Washington set out for the camp at Cambridge. He found the British army strongly posted on Bunker's and Breed's hill, and Boston neck. The American, consisting of 14,000 men, were entrenched on the heights around Boston, forming a line which extended from Roxbury on the right, to the river Mystic on the left, a distance of twelve miles. This disposition of the troops greatly distressed the British, who were confined to Boston, and often obliged to risk their lives to obtain the means of sustenance.

American army undisciplined; insubordinate, without engineers, and almost without ammunition.

Washington perceived, that although the people were ardent in the cause of liberty, and ready to engage in the most desperate enterprises, yet there was a want of discipline and military subordination among the troops. The officers, in many instances, were chosen by the soldiers from among their own number, and hence were not considered their superiors. The army was scantily supplied with arms and ammunition, and their operations retarded, by a want of skillful engineers. He set himself with alacrity to the labor of bringing order out of confusion, making judicious arrangements and divisions in the army, disciplining the troops, and employing some of the most active in the duties of artillerists; and such were his exertions, that in a short time the army was organized, and fit to take the field.

Washington's judicious arrangements.

He organizes the army.

July 6. Congress show just reasons for taking up arms.

Congress now published a solemn and dignified declaration, in the form of a manifesto, setting forth the imperative reasons which led the nation to take up arms. This instrument, which was to be published from the pulpit, and in "orders" to the army, declared, "we are reduced to the alternative of choosing an unconditional submission to the tyranny of irritated ministers, or resistance by force. The latter is our choice. We have counted the cost of this contest, and find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery. Honor, justice, and humanity forbid us tamely to surrender that freedom which we received from our gallant ancestors, and which our innocent posterity have a right to receive from us. Our cause is just, our union is perfect, our internal resources are great; and, if necessary, foreign assistance is undoubtedly attainable."

Their hope and courage.

"With hearts fortified with these animating reflections, we most solemnly, before God and the world, declare, that, exerting the utmost energy of those powers, which our beneficent Creator hath graciously bestowed on us, the arms we have been compelled by our enemies to assume, we will, in defiance of every hazard, with unabating firmness and perseverance, employ for the preservation of our liberties; being with one mind resolved, to die freemen, rather than to live slaves."

Their resolute and solemn determination.

Georgia now entered into the opposition made to the claims

of the British parliament to tax America, and chose delegates to congress; after which, the style of "the Thirteen United Colonies" was assumed, and by that title the English provinces were thenceforth designated.

1775.

During this session of congress, also, the first line of posts for the communication of intelligence through the United States, was established. Benjamin Franklin was appointed, by a unanimous vote, postmaster-general, with power to appoint as many deputies as he might deem proper and necessary, for the conveyance of the mail from Falmouth, in Maine, to Savannah, in Georgia.

Dr. Franklin the first postmaster-general. Posts from Falmouth to Savannah.

CHAPTER XI.

Invasion of Canada.—Death of Montgomery.

WHILE the British army was closely blockaded in Boston, congress conceived the design of sending a force into Canada; as the movements of Sir Guy Carleton, the governor of that province, seemed to threaten an invasion of the northwestern frontier. Two expeditions were accordingly organized and dispatched, one by the way of Champlain, under Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, the other by the way of the river Kennebec, under the command of Arnold.

Americans send two parties against Canada.

General Lee, with 1,200 volunteers from Connecticut, was directed to repair to New York, and with the aid of the inhabitants, fortify the city, and the highlands on the Hudson river.

General Lee to fortify New York.

In pursuance of the plan of guarding the northern frontier by taking Canada, Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, with two regiments of New York militia, and a body of New England men, amounting in the whole to about 2,000, were ordered to move in that direction, while General Montgomery was directed to proceed with the troops then in readiness, and lay siege to St. John's. General Schuyler, on arriving at the Isle aux Noix, twelve miles south, sent circular letters to the Canadians, exhorting them to arouse and assert their liberties, declaring that the Americans entered their country as friends and protectors, not as enemies. He then returned to Albany, to hasten the remaining troops and artillery. Being prevented by illness from rejoining the army, the chief command devolved on Montgomery, who, on receiving a reinforcement, invested St. John's, but being almost destitute of battering cannon and of powder, he made little progress.

Schuyler's proclamation.

Mongomery invests St. John.

Colonel Allen, the hero of Ticonderoga, had a command under Montgomery; and was sent by him with about eighty men, to secure a party of hostile Indians. Having effected his object, he was returning to head-quarters, when he was

September. Colonel Allen makes an attempt on Montreal.

met by Major Brown, who, with a party, had been detached on a tour of observation. Without orders they rashly undertook to make a descent upon Montreal. They divided into two parties, intending to assail the city at opposite points. Allen crossed the river in the night, as had been proposed; and although Brown and his party failed, he, with only eighty men, by desperate valor attempted to maintain his ground though attacked by Carleton, at the head of several hundreds. Compelled to yield, he and his brave associates were loaded with irons, and sent to England.

Is taken prisoner, put in irons, and sent to England.

Americans take Chamblé and obtain powder.

On the 13th of October, a small fort at Chamblé, which was but slightly guarded, was taken by the Americans. Several pieces of artillery, and about 120 barrels of gunpowder, were the fruits of the victory. This enabled Montgomery to proceed with vigor against St. John's.

Carleton repulsed at Longueil by Warner.

Carleton, on learning the situation of that fort, raised a force of 800 men for its relief, and embarked them in boats to cross the St. Lawrence to Longueil. Colonel Warner, who was stationed there with 300 mountaineers, and a small piece of artillery, received him with a brisk fire; prevented his landing, and compelled him to return to Montreal.

Nov. 3. St. John's surrenders.

When the news of this repulse reached Montgomery, he sent a flag to Major Preston, who commanded the besieged fortress, summoning him to surrender. The summons was obeyed on the 3d of November, and the fort entered by the Americans.

Carleton flees, and Montgomery enters Montreal.

Canadians join him.

Carleton now abandoned Montreal to its fate, and made his escape down the river in the night, in a small canoe with muffled oars. The next day, Montgomery, after engaging to allow the inhabitants their own laws, the free exercise of their religion, and the privilege of governing themselves, entered the town. His benevolent conduct induced many Canadians to join his standard: yet some of his own troops deserted, from severity of climate, and many, whose time of enlistment had nearly expired, insisted on returning home. With the remnant of his army, consisting of only 300 men, he marched towards Quebec, expecting to meet there troops under Arnold, who were to penetrate by the way of the rivers Kenebec and Chaudiére.

Nov. 13. Arnold appears before Quebec, but is compelled to retire.

Arnold commenced his march with 1,000 men, about the middle of September. After sustaining almost incredible hardships in the trackless forests of Maine, he arrived at Point Levi, opposite Quebec, on the 9th of November. On the night of the 13th, he crossed the St. Lawrence, and climbing the same precipice which Wolfe had ascended, he formed his army, now reduced to 700 men, on the heights near the memorable plains of Abraham, and advanced in the hope of surprising the city. Being convinced, by a cannon shot from the wall, that the garrison had obtained knowledge of his approach, and were ready to receive him, and feeling his force

to be insufficient, either to carry on a regular siege, or hazard a battle, he retired on the 18th, to Point aux Tremblés, there to await the arrival of Montgomery.

Carleton at Quebec.

General Carleton, on retiring from Montreal, had proceeded to Quebec, and now had a garrison of 1,500 men. Montgomery joined Arnold on the first of December. The united forces of the Americans amounted to less than 1,000 effective men. On the 5th, Montgomery sent a flag to the governor, with a summons to surrender. Carleton ordered his troops to fire upon the bearer, and forbade all communication. The American general attempted to batter the walls, and harass the city, by repeated attacks. During one night, he constructed a battery of ice, where he planted his cannon; but they were not of sufficient force to make any material impression, or to alarm the garrison.

Dec. 1. Montgomery joins Arnold at Point aux Tremblés.

He erects a battery of ice.

Montgomery now found himself under circumstances even more critical and embarassing, than those which had, sixteen years before, environed Wolfe at the same place. The severe Canadian winter had set in, and several feet of snow covered the ground, and his troops had suffered much already. Yet to abandon the enterprise, was to relinquish fame, and disappoint the expectations, however unreasonable they might be, of his too sanguine countrymen. He, therefore, with the unanimous approbation of his officers, came to the desperate determination of storming the city.

Boldly determines to storm the city.

Just at the dawn of the last day of the year, and during a violent snow storm, the troops marched from the camp, in four divisions, commanded by Montgomery, Arnold, Brown, and Livingston. The two latter were to make feigned attacks; but, impeded by the snow, they did not arrive in season to execute their orders. Arnold and Montgomery were to make an assault at opposite points. Montgomery, at the head of his valiant band, was obliged to advance through a narrow path, leading under the projecting rocks of a precipice. When they reached a blockhouse and picket, he assisted with his own hands to open a passage for his troops, encouraging, by his voice and his example, his brave companions. They advanced boldly and rapidly to force the barrier, when, a single and accidental discharge from a cannon, proved fatal to this brave and excellent officer, and thus destroyed the hopes of the enterprise. Several of Montgomery's best officers shared his fate; and Colonel Campbell, on whom the command devolved, found it impossible to pursue the advantages already gained.

Dec. 31. Four divisions of American troops.

Montgomery's valor and death.

In the meantime, Arnold, at the head of his detachment, was intrepidly advancing, when he received a musket ball in the leg, and was carried from the field. Colonel Morgan, who succeeded him, led on the troops with vigor, and soon made himself master of the second barrier. But the British, freed from their apprehension of attack at any other point, turned

Arnold's intrepidity. He is wounded. His party at first successful.

PART III. PERIOD I. CHAP. XII.

their undivided force upon his party. Three hours did this resolute band resist, although attacked both in front and in rear; but at length were compelled to surrender themselves prisoners of war. The Americans lost 400 men in this disastrous attempt.

American loss, 400.

The treatment of Carleton to his prisoners, did honor to his humanity. Arnold, wounded as he was, retired with the remainder of his army, to the distance of three miles below Quebec; where, though inferior in numbers to the garrison, they kept the place in a state of blockade, and in the course of the winter, reduced it to distress for want of provisions.

Arnold blockades Quebec.

CHAPTER XII.

American Villages burned.—Privateers.—Lord Dunmore.—The Olive Branch.

WHILE these events were transacting in the north, the royal force, both by sea and land, was turned against New England. Orders were given to lay waste and destroy all such sea-ports, as had taken part against Great Britain. In consequence, Falmouth in Massachusetts, was burned by the orders of Captain Mowatt of the British navy. Its flames ceased to the eye with the destruction of its buildings, but they burned long in the hearts of an exasperated people, who now put forth all their efforts. They collected military stores; they purchased powder in all foreign ports where it was practicable, and, in many colonies, commenced its manufacture. They also began more seriously to turn their attention to their armed vessels. Massachusetts granted letters of marque and reprisal. Congress resolved to fit out thirteen ships, and raise two battalions of marines. They framed articles of war for the government of the little navy, and established regular courts of admiralty, for the adjudication of prizes. The American privateers swarmed forth. Alert and bold, they visited every sea, and annoyed the British commerce, even in the very waters of their own island.

1775. Oct. 18. Falmouth burned.

Efforts of an exasperated people.

Dec. 13. Congress fit out thirteen ships.

Efforts were still made by the ministry, to retain the colony of New York. They restored Tryon to the government, who was greatly beloved by the people, and empowered him to bribe and corrupt, if possible, the influential citizens. Congress, alarmed for the safety of a colony, whose loss must cut asunder the north from the south, recommended that "all persons, whose going at large would endanger the liberty of America, should be arrested and secured;" and Tryon consulted his safety, by taking refuge on board a ship in the harbor.

Tryon employed to bribe New York.

Law made which reached his case.

The government of Virginia was now in the hands of the colonial assembly; but Lord Dunmore, still on board the king's ship, did not abandon all hopes of regaining it. In November, he issued a proclamation declaring martial law, and promising freedom to such slaves as would leave their masters, and join his party. Several hundred negroes and royalists obeyed the call, when, leaving his ships, he occupied a strong position near Norfolk. The assembly sent 800 militia to oppose his movements. On the 7th of December they were attacked by the royalists and negroes, but they repelled the assailants, and gained a decisive victory; after which, they occupied the town of Norfolk. Lord Dunmore, with his remaining forces, again repaired to the ships, where, in consequence of the many royalists who joined him, he became reduced to great distress, for want of provisions. In this situation, he sent a flag to Norfolk, demanding a supply. The commander of the provincials refusing to comply, he set fire to the town, and destroyed it. This availed him little. Assailed at once by tempest, famine, and disease, he with his followers, sought refuge in the West Indies.

November. Lord Dunmore attempts to regain his authority in Virginia.

Dec. 7. The militia of Virginia defeat the royalists.

1776. Jan. 1. Lord Dunmore burns Norfolk, and abandons "the Dominion."

The last hope of the colonies for reconciliation, rested in the petition of congress to the king, which had been emphatically styled "The Olive Branch," and was sent over by Mr. Penn, a descendant of the proprietor of Pennsylvania, and a former governor of that colony; but the earliest information received from him, after the meeting of parliament, dissolved every vestige of hope. The king, in his speech at the opening of the session, accused the Americans of hostility and rebellion; and declared that the object of their taking up arms, was to establish an independent empire.

1775. Mr. Penn carries over the petition called the "Olive Branch."

To prevent this, he recommended that vigorous measures should be taken to subdue them; not forgetting such as were likely to weaken them, by division. This speech developed the ministerial views, and large majorities in both houses, notwithstanding the eloquence of Mr. Burke and others, answered the king's speech, by responding the same sentiments of accusation against the colonies, and the same determination to reduce them to obedience, by measures of coercion and distress.

The king's speech and the parliament's reply are hostile.

The friends of America obtained a reluctant vote of the peers to examine Mr. Penn. This gentlemen affirmed, that the colonies would still allow the royal authority of Great Britain, but not its right of taxation; that the rejection of the present offer would certainly prove an insuperable bar to reconcilement; but that the prevailing wish in America still was, restoration of friendship with Great Britain.

Mr. Penn declares, before the peers, that America, though loyal will not be taxed.

About the last of December, an act was passed prohibiting all trade and commerce with the colonies; and authorizing the capture and condemnation of all American vessels, with their cargoes, and all others found trading in any port or place

December. Severe laws respecting trade and shipping.

in the colonies, as if the same were the vessels and effects of open enemies; and the vessels and property thus taken were vested in their captors, and the crews were to be treated, not as prisoners, but as slaves.

England hires mercenaries.

About the same time, England made treaties with the landgrave of Hesse Cassel, and other German princes, hiring of them 17,000 men, to be employed against the Americans; and it was determined to send over, in addition to these, 25,000 English troops.

Parliament refuses to hear the petition of the colonies.

The petition carried by Mr. Penn, had been laid before parliament; but both houses refused to hear it, alledging, that they could not treat upon any proposition coming from an unlawful assembly. By the passage of these acts, the hiring of foreign mercenaries, and the rejection of this last petition, Great Britain filled up the measure of her wrongs to America, and sealed the final alienation of her colonies.

CHAPTER XIII.

Washington enters Boston.—Disasters in Canada.

The army reduced in numbers and ill-appointed.

Although Britain was preparing so formidable a force, yet the American army was not only reduced in numbers, but at the close of the year 1775, was almost destitute of necessary supplies. The terms of enlistment of all the troops had expired in December; and although measures had been taken for recruiting the army, yet on the last day of December, there were but 9,650 men enlisted for the ensuing year. Gen. Washington, finding how slowly the army was recruited, proposed to congress to try the influence of a bounty; but his proposal was not acceded to until late in January, and it was not until the middle of February, that the regular army amounted to 14,000. In addition to these, the commander-in-chief, being vested by congress with the power to call out the militia, made a requisition on the authorities of Massachusetts, for 6,000, which were furnished.

A bounty given.

Militia called out.

1776. March 4. Americans fortify Dorchester Heights.

The British evacuate Boston, March 17.

Washington had continued the blockade of Boston during the winter of 1775–6, and at last resolved to bring the enemy to action, or drive them from the town. On the night of the 4th of March, a detachment, under the command of General Thomas, silently reached Dorchester Heights, and there constructed, in a single night, a redoubt which menaced the British shipping with destruction. When the light of the morning discovered to General Howe the advantage the Americans had gained, he perceived, that no alternative remained for him, but to dislodge them, or evacuate the place. He immediately

dispatched a few regiments to attempt the former, but a violent tempest of wind and rain rendered their efforts ineffectual. The Americans had, however, continued with unremitting industry, to strengthen and improve their works, until they were now too dangerous to be neglected, and too secure to be forced, and it was determined in a council of war, to evacuate the town. Accordingly, on the morning of the 17th, the whole British force, with such of the loyalists as chose to follow their fortunes, set sail for Halifax. As the rear of the British troops were embarking, Washington entered the town in triumph.

Washington's army enter the town.

The plans of the British cabinet embraced, for the campaign of 1776, the recovery of Canada, the reduction of the southern colonies, and the possession of New York. This last service was intrusted to Admiral Howe, and his brother, General Howe; the latter of whom succeeded General Gage, in the command of the British troops.

British have three objects for the campaign.

Arnold had continued the siege of Quebec, and had greatly annoyed the garrison; but he found himself oppressed with many difficulties. His army had suffered extremely from the inclemency of the season, and from the breaking out of the small-pox. Notwithstanding the garrison of Montreal had been sent to reinforce him, he had, at this time, scarcely 1,000 effective men. The reinforcements ordered by congress, were slow in arriving, and when they reached Quebec, greatly reduced in numbers by disease. Added to this, the river was now clear of ice, and the British fleet was daily expected.

Arnold still before Quebec.

Is badly situated.

General Thomas, who now arrived with troops, superseded Arnold. He made attempts to reduce Quebec, but the sudden appearance of the British fleet obliged him to flee, with such precipitation, that he left his baggage and military stores. Many of the sick also fell into the hands of Carleton, by whom they were treated with honorable humanity.

Thomas succeeds him, and makes a precipitate retreat, May 5.

One after another, the posts which had been conquered by the Americans, fell into the hands of the British, and before the close of June, they had recovered all Canada. The Americans lost, in this unfortunate retreat, about 1,000 men, who were mostly taken prisoners.

June. Americans evacuate Canada.

CHAPTER XIV.

British repulsed at Charleston.—Independence declared.

THE British fleet, destined to the reduction of the southern colonies, sailed, under Sir Peter Parker, to attack Charleston, where they arrived early in June. The marines were commanded by General Clinton.

1776. June. Sir Peter Parker sails to attack Charleston.

The Carolinians fortify Sullivan's Island, and call out the militia.

An intercepted official letter had given the Carolinians such information of the enemy's movements, that they were not unprepared for their reception. On Sullivan's island, at the entrance of Charleston harbor, they had constructed a fort of the palmetto tree, which resembles the cork. The militia had been called out, under the command of General Lee, now exceedingly popular; and they formed a force five or six thousand strong, for the defense of the menaced capital. The general was ably seconded by Colonels Gadsden, Moultrie, and Thompson.

June 28. The British attack the fort on Sullivan's Island, and are repulsed.

The palmetto fort was garrisoned by about 400 men, commanded by Colonel Moultrie. On the morning of the 28th of June, the British ships opened their several broadsides upon it. The discharge of artillery upon the little fort was incessant, but the balls were received by the palmetto wood, and buried as in earth; while Moultrie and the brave Carolinians under his command returned the fire, and defended the fortification with such spirit, that it has ever since been called by the name of Moultrie.

Jasper recovers the flag.

Once during the day, after a thundering discharge from the British cannon, the flag of the fort was no longer seen to wave; and the Americans, who watched the battle from the opposite shore, were, every moment, expecting to see the British troops mount the parapets in triumph. But none appeared; and, in a few moments, the striped banner of America was once more unfurled to their view. The staff had been carried away by a shot, and the flag had fallen upon the outside of the fort. A brave serjeant, by the name of Jasper, jumped over the wall, and, amidst a shower of bullets, recovered and fastened it in its place.

British sail for New York.

At evening, the British, completely foiled, drew off their ships, with the loss of two hundred men; and, a few days after, they set sail, with the troops on board, for the vicinity of New York, where the whole British force had been ordered to assemble.

Washington fixes his head-quarters at New York.

It had early occurred to Washington, that the central situation of New York, with the numerous advantages attending the possession of that city, would render it an object of great importance to the British. Under this impression, before the enemy left Boston, General Lee had been detached from Cambridge, to put Long Island and New York in a posture of defense. Soon after the evacuation of Boston, the commander-in-chief followed, and, with the greater part of his army, fixed his head-quarters in the city of New York.

June 7. Independence proposed in congress.

On the 7th of June, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, made a motion in congress, for declaring the colonies FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES.

The most vigorous exertions had been made by the friends of independence, to prepare the minds of the people for this bold measure. Among the numerous writers on the momen-

tous question, the most luminous and forcible was Thomas Paine. His pamphlet entitled "Common Sense," was read and understood by all. While it demonstrated the necessity, the advantage, and the practicability of independence, it treated kingly government and hereditary succession with ridicule and opprobrium. Two years before, the inhabitants of the colonies were the loyal subjects of the king of England, and wished not for independence, but for the constitutional liberty of the British subject. But the crown of England had, for their assertion of this right, declared them out of its protection, rejected their petitions, shackled their commerce, and finally employed foreign mercenaries to destroy them. Such were the exciting causes, which, being stirred up and directed by the master spirits of the times, had, in the space of two years, changed the tide of public feeling in America, and throughout her extensive regions produced the general voice—WE WILL BE FREE.

Thomas Paine, and other writers, prepare the way, by their printed appeals.

1776. The offenses by which Britain filled up the measure.

Satisfied by indubitable signs, that such was the resolution of the people, congress deliberately and solemnly decided to declare it to the world; and the DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE was agreed to in congress, on the 4th of July, 1776.*

JULY 4. Independence solemnly declared.

A long enumeration of the oppressions of the British government is therein made, and closed with the assertion, that "a prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people."

The causes of separation.

The fruitless appeals which had been made to the people of Great Britain are then recounted; but "they too," concludes this declaration, "have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation; and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends."

The oppressions of the British government.

"We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world, for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown; and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally

The nation casts off the dominion of the British, and depending on Divine aid, take their affairs wholly into their own hands.

---

* Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and R. R. Livingston, had been appointed, on the 11th of June, to prepare a declaration of independence. It was agreed by this committee, that each one should make such a draft as his judgment and feelings should dictate; and that, upon comparing them together, that one should be chosen as the report of the committee, which should prove most conformable to the wishes of the whole. Mr. Jefferson's paper was the first read; and every member of the committee determined, spontaneously, to suppress his own production; observing, that it was unworthy to bear a competition with that which they had just heard.

PART III.
PERIOD I.
CHAP. XIV.

dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things, which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor."

FRAMING DECLARATION

MAP 8

1776

NORTH OR HUDSON RIVER

from Oct. 12th. to 18th.

White Plains Oct. 28

March of the British to White Plains

British Camp Oct. 21

Philipsburg

New Rochelle

American Army

East Chester

Kings Bridge

Ft. Lee

Ft. Washington

Harlem R.

Bronx R.

West Chester

Harlem Heights

THE SOUND

Bloomingdale

NEW YORK ISLAND

American Army

East River

Horlaers Hook

British Army Sep. 3d. 1776

Paulus Hook

N. York City

Wallabout Bay

Governors I.

Brooklyn

LONG ISLAND

Heights of Gawanus

2nd. Road

3rd. Road

Jamaica R.

Bedford

Clinton

Percy

Red Hook

Gowanus Cove

Putnam

Sullivan

1st. Road

Hessians

Flatbush

Stirling

Flatlands

Cornwallis

Grant

New Utrecht

Gravesend

Amer'n Left Wing

Mystic R.

Charlestown Neck

Amer'n Centre and Reserve

Bunker Hill

Breeds Hill

Cambridge

Charlestown

Charles R.

BOSTON

Boston Neck

Roxbury

Amer'n Right Wing

Dorchester Heights

Lehigh R.

The Neck

Cooper R.

CHARLESTON

Charleston Bar

Wappoo

Ft. Johnson

Ft. Moultrie

James' Id.

Crown Pt.

Ticonderoga

Mt. Defiance

LAKE CHAMPLAIN

LAKE GEORGE

South Bay

Skenesboro

Wood C.

Ft. Ann

Ft. Edward

Saratoga

Bemis Heights

Stillwater

Mohawk R.

Hudson R.

PENNSYLVANIA

NEW JERSEY

Morristown

Encampment 1776 & 7

Newark

Bergen

N. YORK

Long Id.

Baskenbridge

Pluckemin

Springfield

Elizabeth Town

Scotch Plains

Woodbridge

Bonhamtown

Quibbletown

Middlebrook

Raritan R.

Staten I.

Easton

N. Brunswick

Amboy

Sandy Hook

Hellers Town

Somerset

Middlebush

Middletown

Pennington

Princeton

Freehold

American Army 1776

Maidenhead

Monmouth or Freehold

White Marsh

Malunkers

Allentown

Perkiomen C.

Reading

Trenton

Schuylkill R.

Bristol

Bordentown

German Town

Burlington

Valley Forge Encampment 1777

Mt. Holly

PHILADELPHIA

Red Bank

Chester

Billings Pt.

Wilmington

PERIOD II.

FROM

THE DECLARATION { 1776 } OF INDEPENDENCE,

TO

THE COMMENCEMENT OF { 1789. } THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT

CHAPTER I.

Lord Howe attempts Pacification.—American Disasters at Long Island.

1776.

Importance of the Declaration.

CONSIDERED as a step in the great march of human society, perhaps no one can be fixed upon of more importance, than the solemn promulgation of the writing, which contained a catalogue of the grievances of America, and declared her freedom. It embodied and held up to the view of the world the universal wrongs of the oppressed; sent forth a warning voice to the oppressor; and declared the common rights of all mankind.

To the American people it was the casting of the die; they must now look forward and not back.

As it more particularly concerned the condition of the Americans, the signing of this declaration by the American congress, was a momentous procedure. That firm band of patriots well knew, that, in affixing their signatures, they were, in the eyes of England, committing the very fact of treason and rebellion; and that in case of her ultimate success, it was their own death-warrant which they signed. Their countrymen felt that there was now no receding from the contest, without devoting to death these their political fathers, who had thus fearlessly made themselves the organs of declaring, what was equally the determination of all. Thus it was now the general feeling, that the die was cast, and nothing remained but—"liberty or death"!

From July 2, to July 12. British collect, under Howe, a powerful force at Staten Island.

The troops from Halifax, under the command of General Howe, after touching at Sandy Hook, took possession of Staten Island on the 2d of July; and those from England, commanded by Admiral Howe, landed at the same place on the 12th. About the same time, Clinton arrived, with the troops which he had reconducted from the expedition against Charleston; and Commodore Hotham, with the expected reinforcements from England. These, with several Hessian regiments, which were daily expected, would make up an army of 35,000 of the best troops of Europe.

June. Lord Howe proclaims pardon to all who shall return to the British.

With the hope that this powerful force might have awakened the fears of the Americans, and thus disposed them to submission, Lord Howe, before commencing active operations, made an attempt at pacification. He had, in the month of June,

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. I.

1776.

Congress publish a reply to his proclamation.

announced, by proclamation, that he was empowered to grant pardon to any person, or to the inhabitants of any city or province, who should return to their allegiance: and he promised large recompense to any who should contribute to re-establish the royal authority. Congress, instead of endeavoring to suppress this proclamation, took the wiser course of causing it to be printed in the journals of the day, with accompanying remarks, explaining to the people its insidious nature; while the declaration of independence, made soon after by congress, showed to General Howe, in what light these promises were viewed by that body.

He attempts to communicate with Washington by letter, but fails.

He next addressed himself to the commander-in-chief, in a letter directed to "George Washington, Esq." With a spirit which the whole nation applauded, Washington returned the letter unopened; alleging, that it had not expressed his public station; and that, as a private individual, he neither could, nor would, hold any communication with the agents of the king.

Message by Patterson also fruitless.

Howe, not yet discouraged, sent another communication by Adjutant-General Patterson. The reply which Washington made to the smooth and conciliatory address of this gentleman, was an expression of that common feeling of his countrymen, which was the true source of a union, that both the threats and promises of Great Britain, failed to divide. The sentiment was, that Great Britain did not offer the Americans the enjoyment of their rights; she offered nothing but forgiveness of offenses:—America had committed no offenses, and asked no forgiveness.

The British plan of the campaign.

Their grand point to cut New England from the South, through Champlain and the Hudson.

The officers in command, General and Admiral Howe, no longer hesitated to direct their efforts against New York. The possession of this important post would give to the English a firm footing in America, from which their army could turn to the right, and carry the war into New England; or to the left, to scour New Jersey, and menace Philadelphia: and Long Island, adjacent to New York, being abundant in grain and cattle, offered subsistence to their army. But the grand scheme of the British was, to divide New England from the south. Carleton, with 13,000 men, was to make a descent from Canada, by the way of Lake Champlain, and form a junction with Howe, who was to ascend the Hudson.

This they are obliged to defer till next year.

Admiral Howe, retarded by contrary winds, did not arrive until the expedition against Charleston had failed. The army of Canada encountered so many obstacles, that it was not able, this year, to make its way to the Hudson. Hence, Washington was not compelled to weaken his army upon the coast to send succors into South Carolina, or towards Canada.

Marine defenses of New York.

Washington's army.

The American congress had ordered the construction of gunboats, galleys, and floating batteries, to defend New York and the mouth of the Hudson. Thirteen thousand of the militia were ordered to join the army of Washington, which, thus increased, amounted to twenty-seven thousand; but a

1776.

fourth of these were invalids, and another fourth were poorly provided with arms. From these and other causes, the force fit for duty did not exceed ten thousand; and of this number, the greater part was without order or discipline. These inconveniences proceeded, in part, from want of money, which prevented congress from paying regular troops, and providing for their equipments; and partly from parsimonious habits, contracted during peace, which withheld them from incurring with promptitude the expenses necessary to a state of war; while their jealousy of standing armies inspired the hope, that they could each year organize for the occasion, an army sufficient to resist the enemy.

Its inferiority to the British, in numbers, discipline, and appointments.

The American army occupied the island of New York. Two detachments guarded Governor's Island and Paulus Hook. The militia, under the American Clinton, were stationed at East and West Chester, and New Rochelle, to prevent the British landing in force on the north shore, penetrating to Kingsbridge, and thus inclosing the Americans in the island. A considerable part of the army, under General Putnam, encamped at Brooklyn, on a part of Long Island which forms a sort of peninsula. The entrance was fortified with moats and entrenchments. Putnam's left wing rested upon Wallabout bay, his right was covered by a marsh adjacent to Gawanus' Cove. Behind was Governor's Island, and the arm of the sea between Long Island and New York, which gave him direct communication with the city, where Washington was with the main army.

The American army stationed on Manhattan Island, Governor's Island, &c.

Putnam's division extends from Wallabout Bay to Gawanus' Cove.

On the 22d of August, the English landed without opposition on Long Island, between the villages of New Utrecht and Gravesend. They extended themselves to Flatlands, distant four miles from the Americans, and separated from them by a range of wood-covered hills, called the heights of Gawanus, which, running to the north-east, divide the island. The hills were passable only in three places; one, the road near the Narrows, on the left of the English; one the road leading to the centre, by Flatbush; the other, and most eastern, that on the right of the British, by Flatlands. Upon the summits of these hills, is a road the length of the range from Bedford to Jamaica, intersected by the Flatlands and Flatbush roads. Washington, wishing to arrest the enemy on these heights, had guarded them with his best troops, and made such arrangements as, with proper vigilance, would have rendered the passage one of extreme difficulty and danger.

August 22. British land and encamp at the western point of Long Island.

Heights of Gawanus; passable only by three roads.

About midnight of the 26th, the English, under General Grant, attacked the Americans from the left, thus inducing the belief, that against this post the main strength of the British would be directed. At daybreak on the 27th, the Hessians, under General de Heister, attacked from the centre, and General Sullivan, who commanded the forces in front of the American camp, led them to repel the assailants; little think-

August 27. The British and Hessians attack the American left and centre.

ing that their attack was merely a stratagem to divert his attention from the real point of danger. The ships also made much noise by a show of cannonading.

Their true point of attack on their right, where they surprise the Americans.

Colonel Miles was to guard the Flatlands road, and to scour that and the Jamaica road continually, in order to reconnoitre the movements of the enemy. This service, as events proved, was the most important, and the worst performed, of any on the side of the Americans. It was here that the British generals made their grand effort, and here that the Americans suffered a fatal surprise. The left wing of the English, which was the most numerous, and entirely composed of select troops, under Generals Clinton, Percy, and Cornwallis, proceeded by Flatlands, and before Miles perceived their approach, obtained possession of the Jamaica road, upon the heights. A scout sent out by Sullivan was captured; and he was thus left in ignorance of the enemy's approach, until his flank was attacked by their infantry. He instantly ordered a retreat; but he was intercepted by the English, who, occupying the plains from Bedford, now attacked him in the rear and compelled his troops to throw themselves into the neighboring woods. There they were met by the Hessians, who drove them back upon the English. Thus were the distressed Americans alternately chased and intercepted, until, at length, several regiments cut their way, with desperate valor, through the midst of the enemy, and gained the camp of Putnam; but a great part of the detachment were killed, or taken prisoners. The loss of the Americans was variously estimated from one to four thousand. The British lost, in killed and wounded, four hundred.

The British defeat the Americans with great slaughter.

1776.
Washington crosses and witnesses the battle.

In the height of the engagement, General Washington crossed to Brooklyn from New York. He saw his best troops slaughtered or taken prisoners, and with a glance which searched the future, he viewed in its consequences the terrible magnitude of the disaster, and he uttered an exclamation of anguish. But his prudence and wisdom remained unshaken. He might, at this moment, have drawn all his troops from the encampment; and also called over all the forces in New York, to take part in the conflict: but victory having declared in favor of the English, the courage with which it inspired them, and the superiority of their discipline, destroyed all hope of recovering the battle; and, with true heroism, he "preserved himself and his army, for a happier future."

His prudence and self-possession.

August 28.
He removes the troops from Long Island, and withdraws his army to Harlaem Heights.

On the night of the 28th, Washington cautiously withdrew the remainder of his troops from Brooklyn to New York; to which place the detachment from Governor's Island, also retired. Finding, however, a disposition in the British to attack the city, and knowing that it would be impossible to defend it, he removed his forces to the heights of Harlaem.

CHAPTER II.

Disasters following the Defeat on Long Island.

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. II.

About this time, Captain Hale, a highly interesting young officer from Connecticut, learning that Washington wished to ascertain the state of the British army on Long Island, volunteered for the dangerous service of a spy. He entered the British army in disguise, and obtained the desired information; but being apprehended in his attempt to return, he was carried before Sir William Howe, and by his orders was executed the next morning. At the place of execution, he exclaimed, "I lament that I have but one life to lay down for my country."

Captain Hale volunteers as a spy. He is executed.

On the 15th of September, the British army entered, and took possession of the city of New York. A few days after, a fire broke out, which consumed nearly one-fourth part of the buildings. It is said that the fire was discovered in many different places at once; and hence some have supposed that it was fired by the citizens, as Moscow has more recently been, to deprive its enemies of its hospitable shelter.

Sept. 15. British enter New York.

Fires occur probably by design.

General Howe again made overtures for reconciliation. Benjamin Franklin, John Hancock, and Edward Rutledge, were accordingly appointed to meet the British commissioners at Staten Island. But as they utterly refused to treat on any other basis than the acknowledgment of American independence, nothing was effected.

The Americans will not treat but on the basis of independence.

The situation in which the American commander now saw the momentous contest, could not but have filled him with alarming apprehensions for the fate of his country. Until the check at Brooklyn, the Americans had flattered themselves that Heaven would constantly favor their arms. From the intoxicating confidence of prosperity, they now fell into a state of dejection. At first, they had believed that courage, without discipline, could do all; they now thought it could do nothing. At every moment, they were apprehensive of some new surprise, and at every step, fearful of falling into an ambuscade.

Americans dispirited by defeat.

1776.

Thus discouraged, the militia abandoned their colors by hundreds, and entire regiments deserted, and returned to their homes. In the regular army, also, subordination diminished, and desertions were common. Their engagements were but for a year, or a few weeks; and the hope of soon returning to their families induced them to avoid dangers. The fidelity of the officers was not suspected; but their talents were distrusted; and every thing appeared to threaten a total dissolution of the army.

Militia desert.

The regular army insubordinate.

Officers not confided in.

Washington strove earnestly, with exhortations, persuasions, and promises, to arrest this spirit of disorganization. If he

did not succeed according to his desires, he obtained more than his hopes. To congress he addressed an energetic picture of the deplorable state of the forces, and assured them that he must despair of success, unless furnished with an army that should stand by him till the conclusion of the struggle. To effect this, a bounty of twenty dollars was offered at the time of engagement, and portions of unoccupied lands were promised to the officers and soldiers.

Congress, by Washington's entreaties, offer a bounty to the soldiers.

But although Washington hoped ultimately to reap the benefit of these arrangements, yet time must intervene; and his present prospect was that of a handful of dispirited and ill-found troops, to contend against a large and victorious army. In this situation he adopted the policy by which Fabius Maximus had, two thousand years before, preserved Italy, when invaded by Hannibal; and, like him, saved his country. Hence he has been called the American Fabius. This policy was to risk no general engagement, but to harass and wear out the enemy, by keeping them in motion; while by skirmishes, where success was probable, he would, by degrees, diminish their number, and inspirit his own troops.

Washington adopts the Fabian policy.

On the 16th of September, the day after the British took possession of New York, a considerable body of their troops appeared in the plain between the two armies. Washington ordered Colonel Knowlton and Major Leech, with a detachment, to get in their rear, while he amused them with preparations to attack them in front. The plan succeeded; and although the brave Knowlton was killed, the rencontre was favorable to the Americans, as it served, in some degree, to restore that confidence in themselves, which their preceding misfortunes had destroyed.

Sept. 16. The Americans gain an advantage.

The British commander manœuvered with great address to bring Washington to a general engagement; but not succeeding, he endeavored to destroy his communication with the eastern states, and prevent his supply of provisions from that quarter. To effect this, it was necessary to occupy the two roads leading east. The one on the coast, the British secured with little difficulty; but to occupy the more inland road, they must get possession of that post of the highlands called White Plains. Washington, aware of their object, removed his own force to that place, where, on the 28th of October, he was attacked by the British and Hessians, under Generals Howe, Clinton, Knyphausen, and de Heister. A partial engagement ensued, in which the loss on both sides was considerable. Howe could not, however, draw Washington from his position; which he maintained, until a strong British reinforcement arriving under Lord Percy, he dared not any longer risk his army, but, on the night of the 30th, he withdrew his forces to North Castle. Leaving here 7,500 men, under General Lee, he crossed the Hudson, and took post near Fort Lee.

Oct. 28. Skirmish at White Plains.

1776.

General Howe next turned his attention towards the forts, Washington and Lee. They had been garrisoned, with the hope of preserving the command of the Hudson river, but the British had already, on two occasions, sent their ships past them. General Washington, foreseeing their danger, had written to General Greene, who commanded in that quarter, that if he should find fort Washington not in a situation to sustain an assault, to cause it instantly to be evacuated. General Greene, believing it might be maintained, left it under the command of the brave Colonel Magaw, with a force of 2,700 men. On the 16th of November, the British attacked the fort in four different quarters. The Americans repelled them with such spirit, that, in the course of the day, about 1,200 of the assailants were killed or wounded. At length, the Americans were forced to capitulate; but not without securing to themselves honorable terms. The prisoners taken by the British, at this time, amounted to about 2,000, a greater number than had, on any previous occasion, fallen into their hands, and a most disastrous loss to their country.

Error committed by the Americans in leaving garrisons in forts Washington and Lee.

Nov. 16. Fort Washington surrenders.

The British army immediately crossed the Hudson, to attack fort Lee; but the garrison, apprised of their approach, evacuated the fort, and, under the guidance of General Greene, joined the main army now at Newark.

Nov. 18. Fort Lee evacuated.

The acquisition of these two forts, and the diminution of the American army, by the departure of those soldiers whose term of service had expired, encouraged the British to hope, that they should be able to annihilate, with ease, the remaining force of the republicans. Washington, still undismayed, pursued the policy of avoiding an engagement, as the only hope of preserving his little army, which, at this time, amounted to only three thousand. Finding himself, in the post which he had taken at Newark, too near his triumphant foe, he removed to Brunswick. The same day, Cornwallis, with a part of the British army, entered Newark. Washington again retreated from Brunswick to Princeton, and thence to Trenton. The British still pursuing, he finally crossed the Delaware, into Pennsylvania.

Washington retreats across New Jersey.

Is closely pursued.

Nov. 28. Crosses the Delaware.

General, now Sir William Howe,(he having been knighted for his success at the battle of Long Island,)was, on this occasion, deficient in energy and promptitude. With an army of sixfold numerical force, and tenfold efficient strength, comprised of disciplined troops, in health and vigor, ably commanded, completely equipped and furnished, and elated with success, he did not commence the pursuit till four days after the capture of forts Washington and Lee. At any time after the 28th, until Washington crossed the Delaware, a single forced march might have overtaken, and destroyed his army. But such was not ordered by Howe; and when he arrived at the Delaware, where he had hoped to overtake the Americans, the last boat, with the baggage, was crossing the river.

Howe does not follow up his successes to the attainment of his object.

Stations his army along the eastern bank of the Delaware.

14*

1776.

The British general, not choosing, however, to take the trouble of constructing flat-bottomed boats, for carrying over his troops, and the Americans having been careful not to leave theirs for his accommodation, he arranged his German troops, to the number of 4,000, along the Delaware, from Mount Holly to Trenton; placed a strong detachment at Princeton; stationed his main army at New Brunswick, and retired himself to New York, to wait for the river to freeze, that thus he might be furnished with a convenient bridge; not doubting, as it would seem, that the Americans would quietly wait until he was ready to pass over and destroy them.

CHAPTER III.

American successes at Trenton and Princeton.

1776. December. Distress of Washington's army.

WASHINGTON showed how well he deserved the confidence reposed in him, by making every exertion to increase his army, which, feeble as it was when he commenced his retreat, had hourly diminished. His troops were unfed amidst fatigue; unshod, while their bleeding feet were forced rapidly over the sharp projections of frozen ground; and they endured the keen December air, almost without clothes or tents. In such a situation, the wonder is not, that many died and many deserted, but that enough remained to keep up the show of opposition. In this distressing situation, Washington manifested to his troops all the firmness of the commander, while he showed all the tenderness of the father. He visited the sick, paid every attention in his power to the wants of the army, praised their constancy, represented their sufferings to congress, and encouraged their despairing minds, by holding out the prospects of a better future; while the serene and benignant countenance with which he covered his aching heart, made them believe, that their beloved and sagacious commander, was himself animated with the prospects which he portrayed to them.

He becomes truly the "Father of his country."

The distresses of the Americans were increased by the desertion of many of the supposed friends of their cause. Howe, taking advantage of what he considered their vanquished and hopeless condition, offered free pardon to all who should now declare for the royal authority. Of the extremes of society—the very rich and the very poor, numbers now sued for the royal clemency; but few of the middle classes deserted their country in its hour of peril.

The time that "tried men's souls."

Washington orders in his detachments.

General Lee, as has been before stated, was, by the orders of Washington, separated from the main body of the army, soon after the battle of White Plains. He was sent north-

erly, to be at hand to succor the troops which were opposed to Carleton, upon the lakes. But when Washington found the main army in danger of annihilation, he ordered Lee to join him with all possible expedition. General Mercer, who commanded a corps of light infantry at Bergen, and General Gates, who commanded on the northern frontier, received similar orders, and promptly obeyed them. Washington had also sent in various directions to arouse the militia. General Mifflin, from Pennsylvania, had now joined him with a body of 1,500.

Mercer and Gates obey promptly. Mifflin brings in militia from Pennsylvania.

General Lee, ambitious, eccentric, and opinionated, thought he might make a better use of the men under his command, and therefore he did not promptly execute the order of Washington; but lingered along the northern mountains of New Jersey; where, having taken up his quarters at a house distant from the main body of his army, he was surprised, and carried prisoner to New York, by a party of British cavalry; when General Sullivan conducted his forces to Washington's camp.

Dec. 13. General Lee made prisoner.

With these reinforcements, the American army amounted to about 7,000 effective men. A few days, however, would close the year; and the period of enlistment for a considerable portion of the soldiers would expire with it. The cause of America demanded that important use should be made of the short space which intervened. At this critical moment, Washington, perceiving the inactivity of his enemy, struck a capital blow for his country. He determined to recross the Delaware in three divisions—at M'Konkey's ferry, at Trenton ferry, and at Bristol, and attack the British posts at Trenton and Burlington. The forces to cross at the two last places, commanded by Irving and Cadwallader, were unable, owing to the quantity of floating ice, to proceed. The main body, under Washington, with suffering and danger, effected the passage at M'Konkey's ferry. This force then separated into two divisions, commanded by Sullivan and Greene; under whom were Lord Stirling, generals Mercer and St. Clair. Sullivan's division took the upper road, and Greene's, where was Washington in person, the Pennington road. They arrived at Trenton at the same moment. The Hessians, under Colonel Rahl, were surprised, and their commander slain. Prisoners, to the amount of 1,000, were taken by the Americans, who immediately re-crossed the Delaware. The joy, caused by this success, was great; and it was almost unalloyed by that sorrow, which even victory brings. The Americans had lost but four men, two killed, and two, such was the severity of the weather, were frozen to death. Many were induced, by this success, to serve six weeks longer. Two days after the action, Washington crossed his whole army over the Delaware, and took quarters at Trenton.

1776. A critical moment seized and improved.

Dec. 26 and 27. Washington's bold attempt, and brilliant success at Trenton.

Howe was thunderstruck by this astonishing reverse. Lord

1777.

Jan. 1. Movement of Cornwallis.

Cornwallis was in New York, on the point of embarking for England; but the commander ordered him instantly to New Jersey, where he joined the British forces, now assembled at Princeton. Leaving a part of his troops at this place, he immediately proceeded towards Trenton, with the intention of giving battle to the Americans, and arrived, with his vanguard, on the first of January.

Jan. 3. Washington strikes another bold stroke, and, at Princeton, is again successful.

Washington, knowing the inferiority of his force, sensible, too, that flight would be almost as fatal as defeat, conceived the project of marching to Princeton, and attacking the troops left in that place. About midnight, leaving his fires burning briskly, that his army should not be missed, he silently decamped, and gained, by a circuitous route, the rear of the enemy. At sunrise, the van of the American forces met, unexpectedly, two British regiments, which were on the march to join Cornwallis. A conflict ensued: the Americans gave way:—all was at stake: Washington himself, at this decisive moment, led on the main body. The enemy were routed, and fled. Washington pressed forward towards Princeton, where one regiment of the enemy yet remained. A part of these saved themselves by flight; the remainder, about 300 in number, were made prisoners. The number killed on the side of the British, was upwards of one hundred; that of the Americans, was less; but, among them, was the excellent General Mercer, with several other valuable officers.

Thrilling were the emotions with which these successes were hailed by a disheartened nation. Even to this day, when an unexpected and thrilling event is to be related, the speaker, who perchance knows not the origin of the proverb, joyfully exclaims, "Great news from the Jerseys!"

Jan. 6. Washington retires to Morristown.

On hearing the cannonade from Princeton, Cornwallis, apprehensive for the safety of his Brunswick stores, immediately put his army in motion for that place. Washington, on his approach, retired to Morristown. When somewhat refreshed, he again took the field; and having gained possession of Newark, Woodbridge, Elizabethtown, and indeed of all the enemy's posts in New Jersey, except New Brunswick and Amboy, he retired to secure winter-quarters at Morristown.

Washington's great merits as a commander.

Washington's military glory now rose to its meridian. Indeed, nothing in the history of war, shows a leader in a more advantageous point of light, than the last events of this campaign, did the commanding general. Where can we find a passage, in the life of Hannibal, of Julius Cæsar, or Napoleon, in which the soldier's fearless daring and contempt of personal danger, more strikingly blends, with the commander's fertility of resource, promptness to decide and act, vigor to follow up success, and moderation to stop at the precise point between bravery and rashness? But Hannibal made war for revenge; Cæsar and Napoleon, for personal ambition; Washington for justice, for the rights of his country, and of mankind.

A new face was put upon the contest. In America, the palsying influence of despair gave place to the invigorating counsels of hope; while in England, exultation was exchanged for alarm, and in France, pity for respect.

1776.

The northern American force, under General Arnold, and the British army under Carleton, met on Lake Champlain, near the island of Valcour. The American armament was entirely destroyed; and General Carleton, after proceeding to Crown Point, reconnoitered the posts at Ticonderoga and Mount Independence, and returned to winter-quarters in Canada.

Oct. 11. Arnold defeated on Lake Champlain.

On the same day on which General Washington retreated over the Delaware, the British took possession of Rhode Island, and blockaded the squadron of Commodore Hopkins, together with a number of privateers, at Providence.

Dec. 8. British take possession of Rhode Island.

On the 12th of July, a committee, who had been appointed by congress to prepare and digest a form of confederation, reported certain articles, the discussion of which occupied a great share of the attention of that body, until November 15, 1777, the day of their final adoption. They were subsequently agreed to, by the several state governments. By these articles it was determined that, on the first Monday of November in each year, a general congress should be convoked, of deputies from each of the states, and invested with all the powers which belong to the sovereigns of other nations. These powers were set forth, and the limits between the authority of the state and national government as clearly defined, as was, at the time, practicable. These "Articles of Confederation," gave to the nation the style of the "United States of America," and formed the basis of the American government, until the adoption of the federal constitution.

Articles of confederation adopted by congress.

Never, was a more devoted or a wiser band of patriots, than that which composed the congress of '76. They were environed with difficulties which would have utterly discouraged men of weaker heads, or fainter hearts. They were without any power, except the power to recommend. They had an exhausted army to recruit, amidst a discouraged people, and a powerful and triumphant foe; and all this, not merely without money, but almost without credit; for the bills, which they had formerly issued, had greatly depreciated, and were daily depreciating; yet, amidst all these discouragements, they held on their course of patriotic exertions, undismayed.

High character of the old congress. Their difficulties.

In order to provide pecuniary resources, they passed a law, authorizing the loan of five millions of dollars, at four per cent. They also created a lottery; by which they hoped to raise the sum of one million five hundred thousand dollars. Desirous of inducing the French to espouse the American cause, they appointed, as commissioners to the court of France, Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee whom they

Their exertions. They send Franklin, Deane, and Lee, to seek aid from France.

instructed to procure arms and ammunition, and obtain permission to fit out American vessels in the ports of Frnnce, to annoy the commerce of England. They directed them to solicit a loan of ten millions of francs, and to endeavor, by every means in their power, to prevail upon the French government, to recognize the independence of the United States.

Congress invest Washington with extraordinary powers.

To General Washington they granted, for six months, powers which were almost unlimited. They gave him authority to levy and organize sixteen battalions of infantry, in addition to those already voted by congress, and to appoint their officers; to raise and equip three thousand light horse, three regiments of artillery, and a corps of engineers, and to establish their pay. They empowered him to call into service the militia of the several states; to displace and appoint all officers under the rank of brigadier general, and to fill up all vacancies in every department of the American army. They also authorized him to take whatever he might want for the use of the army, at his own price, even if the inhabitants should refuse to sell it; and to arrest and confine persons, who should refuse to take the continental money, returning their names, and the nature of their offenses, to the states of which they were citizens. This confidence in their defender, entitled them to find—and they did find—one who was devoted to their cause.

CHAPTER IV.

Campaign of 1777.

1777.

Excesses of the English army in New Jersey.

The inhabitants of New Jersey were so exasperated at the excesses, which the English and Hessians had committed, that those troops, now occupying Brunswick and Amboy, could not venture out even to forage, without extreme danger. General de Heister had not attempted to suppress his licentious soldiery; and the English soon vied with the Germans in all scenes of violence, outrage, cruelty, and plunder; and New Jersey presented only scenes of havoc and desolation. The complaints of America were echoed throughout Europe; and it was every where reproachfully said, that "England had revived in America, the fury of the Goths, and the barbarity of the northern hordes."

Revolt of the royalists.

At this period, the loyalists, more commonly distinguished by the appellation of tories, evinced a spirit of revolt in the counties, of Somerset and Worcester in Maryland, of Sussex in Delaware, and of Albany in New York; to which places troops were sent to overawe them.

The small-pox, which had made such ravages in the north-

ern army, during the last year, now threatened that of Washington. To prevent the loss of lives, from this source, both regulars and militia were inoculated; but so prudently did Washington conduct this affair, that no opportunity was, in consequence, offered for the British to attack his camp.

1777. March 23. British take stores at Courtland Manor.

The first attempts of the enemy, during the campaign of 1777, were against the American stores, collected at Courtland Manor, in New York, and at Danbury in Connecticut. Peekskill, the port of the Manor, was then in command of Colonel M'Dougal. The 23d of March, the British, under Colonel Bird, attacked this post; and M'Dougal, knowing his small force could not defend it, destroyed the magazines, and retired to the back country.

April 26. Tryon destroys stores at Danbury, and burns the town.

The 25th of April, 2,000 men, under Governor Tryon, major of the royalists, or tories, having passed the sound, landed between Fairfield and Norwalk. The next day, proceeding to Danbury, he compelled the garrison, under Colonel Huntington, to retire; and not only destroyed the stores, but burned the town.

Retreat of the British, and pursuit of the Americans.

Meantime, 800 militia had collected to annoy them, on their return; of whom 500, under Arnold, took post at Ridgefield, to attack their front, while 300, under General Wooster, fell upon their rear. Both parties were repulsed, Wooster slain, and Arnold retired to Saugatuck, about three miles east of Norwalk. The enemy having spent the night at Ridgefield, set fire to it, still retreating, although continually harassed by Arnold's party, now increased to 1,000; until they at length arrived at Campo, between Norwalk and Fairfield, and took refuge on board their ships. The British loss was 170, the American 100. Of the stores taken, the loss of tents was the most severely felt by the Americans. But from the promptitude with which the inhabitants rose on the marauders, who expected many to join them, the friends of liberty found their hopes invigorated, and their exertions encouraged.

May 23. Exploit of Colonel Meigs at Sag-Harbor.

The same effect was also produced by another affair which occurred soon after. The British had collected at Sag Harbor, on Long Island, large magazines of forage and grain. Colonel Meigs, one of the intrepid companions of Arnold, in the expedition to Canada, left Guilford, on the 23d of May, with 170 men, destroyed the stores, burned a dozen brigs and sloops, killed six of the enemy, took ninety prisoners, and returned without loss.

1777. Effects of the mission to France.

About this time the effects of the mission to France began to appear. Congress had, with great judgment, selected Dr. Franklin as one of the commissioners. A profound knowledge of human nature, united with a warm and cheerful benevolence, had given to this philosopher a manner possessing a peculiar charm, attractive to all, however different their taste or pursuits. His wit and gayety, even at seventy, the age at which he went to Paris, had power to charm the

young beauty from her lovers and her toilette; while his wisdom and his learning could instruct the mechanic in his own trade, or the statesman, in his profoundest calculations. Perhaps it is equally to these qualities in Franklin, as to the graver wisdom and more heroic valor of Washington, that America owes her existence as a nation; for it must ever remain problematical, whether, without the aid of France, it could have achieved its independence;—and although political reasons might have operated to make that nation wish evil to England, yet without the interest, which Franklin found means to excite for America, the government might never have effectually interfered.

Franklin, good and agreeable, witty and wise, shifts his measures, but gains his ends.

This interest was so lively, that several individuals of distinction took the generous resolution of embarking in the cause of America, and combating in her armies. The most distinguished of these, was the young Marquis de la Fayette. With every thing to attach him to his country, rank, wealth, a deserving and beloved bride, he was yet moved by compassion to suffering virtue, and by indignation against oppression, to leave all that was individually dear, to expose his life, and impair his fortune in the cause of American liberty, and the rights of man. He had early communicated his resolution to the commissioners. After hearing of the disasters which followed the battle of Long Island, they felt bound to make known to him the despairing state of their country; and to say that such was its extreme poverty, that they could not even provide him with a vessel for his conveyance. "Then," said La Fayette, "if your country is indeed reduced to this extremity, this is the moment that my departure to join its armies, will render it the most essential service." His arrival caused a deep sensation of joy among the people. Congress soon appointed him a major general in the army; and Washington received him into his family, and regarded him through life with parental affection.

La Fayette, at the age of nineteen, espouses the cause of American liberty.

Comes to the country in her adversity.

Is treated with distinction.

July 31. Made Major General.

The American commander, in forming such a probable calculation on the movements of his enemy at New York, as would enable him to make a judicious disposition of his own army, which now amounted to 8,000 effective men, was well aware that there were with the British cabinet two objects. The one was, to get possession of Philadelphia; and the other, to proceed up the Hudson, form a junction with their northern army, and thus cut off the communication between the eastern and southern states. His sagacious mind comprehended that the latter was the more important enterprise; and he knew that it best coincided with the orders which Howe had received from England; but he also knew, that it was a favorite project with him, to draw the Americans into a general engagement, not doubting that it would issue in their final discomfiture. Washington, therefore, sought to make such a disposition of his forces, as should best enable him to

Objects of the British.

May. Washington removes from Morristown to Middlebrook.

concentrate them in opposition, whichever way his enemy should turn. He removed the main army from Morristown, to a strong position on the heights of Middlebrook; and stationed the troops, raised in the northern provinces, at Peekskill and Ticonderoga, and those from the middle and southern, in New Jersey.

1777. June. Howe attempts to draw Washington into an engagement.

Howe commenced his operations by an attempt to draw the American commander into a general engagement. For this purpose, he crossed the Hudson, and marched to Middlebrook; but finding the American camp too strong to attack, he remained several days before it, vainly offering battle. On the 19th of June he ordered a precipitate retreat from Jersey. Having arrived at Amboy, a bridge was thrown hastily over to Staten Island, and all the heavy baggage, and many of the troops passed it. Washington, now deceived, ordered his army to the pursuit. Howe recrossed with his troops, but Washington eluded him, and regained his camp, though not without a skirmish, in which the British, under Lord Cornwallis, had the advantage over a corps of American riflemen.

June 19. He makes a feint of retreating. Washington drawn out, but regains his position.

CHAPTER V.

Campaign of 1777, continued.

1777. July 10. General Prescott captured by Colonel Barton.

On the night of July 10th occurred the capture of the British General Prescott, then in command on Rhode Island. Colonel Barton, with forty country militia, from Warwick, under his command, proceeded ten miles in whale boats, landed between Newport and Bristol, marched a mile, to Prescott's quarters, took the general from his bed, and conducted him with dispatch to a place of safety on the main land.

British plan to divide the states, through the Hudson and Champlain.

Meantime great preparations were making for a descent upon the United States from Canada. The plan of dividing the states, by effecting a junction of the British army through Lake Champlain and the Hudson, was, at the beginning of this year, looked to, by the whole British nation, as the certain means of effecting the reduction of America. This scheme had gained new favor in England, by the representations of General Burgoyne, an officer who had served under Carleton, and whose knowledge of American affairs was therefore undisputed. Burgoyne, by his importunities with the British ministry, obtained the object for which he had made a voyage to England. He was appointed to the command of all the troops in Canada, to the prejudice of Governor Carleton, and was furnished with an army and military stores. With these he arrived at Quebec in May.

May. Burgoyne arrives with a large army at Quebec.

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. V.

1777.

Sir Guy Carleton's dignified behavior.

General Carleton exhibited an honorable example of moderation and patriotism, by seconding Burgoyne in his preparations, with great diligence and energy. To increase the army, he exerted, not only his authority as governor, but also his influence among his numerous friends and partisans. Though himself averse to using the savages, yet such being the orders of the British government, he aided in bringing to the field even a greater number than could be employed.

Burgoyne's officers. His whole army more than 10,000 men.

Burgoyne's army was provided with a formidable train of artillery. The principal officers who were to accompany him were, General Philips, who had distinguished himself in the German wars, Brigadiers Frazer and Powel, the Brunswick Major General Baron Reidesel, and Brigadier General Specht. The army consisted of 7,173 British and German troops, besides several thousands of Canadians and Indians.

His plan of operation.

Burgoyne's plan of operation was, that Colonel St. Leger should proceed with a detachment by the St. Lawrence, Oswego, and Fort Stanwix, to Albany. Burgoyne, proceeding by Champlain and the Hudson, was to meet St. Leger at Albany, and both join General Clinton at New York.

June 20. Burgoyne encamps at the river Boquet, and issues a proclamation.

His preparations completed, Burgoyne moved forward with his army, and made his first encampment on the western shore of Lake Champlain, at the river Boquet. Here, in two instances, he betrayed that vanity which was his characteristic weakness. He made a speech to his Indian allies, in which, in terms of singular energy, and with an imposing manner, he endeavored to persuade them to change their savage mode of warfare. He also published a proclamation, in which, by arguments, promises, and threats, (threats of savage extermination!) he seemed to expect that he should bring the republicans to the royal standard: as if words which he should speak could change the natural character and established manners of a nation; or those which he could write, could have power to subvert the purposes of men, whom all the previous measures of his government had failed to intimidate.

Aug. 3. St. Leger invests Fort Stanwix.

St. Leger had united with Sir John Johnson, and having nearly 2,000 troops, including savages, they invested Fort Stanwix, then commanded by Colonel Gansevoort. General Herkimer, having collected the militia, marched to the relief of Gansevoort. He fell into an Indian ambuscade on the 6th of August, and was defeated and slain, with 400 of his troops. St. Leger, wishing to profit by his victory, pressed upon the fort. In this perilous moment, Colonel Willet and Lieutenant Stockton left the fort, fighting their way through the English camp; and, eluding the Indians, they arrived at German Flats, and proceeded to Albany, to alarm the country, and gain assistance.

Aug. 6. General Herkimer is defeated at the battle of Oriskany.

Aug. 22. St. Leger returns to Montreal.

General Schuyler, on hearing the danger of the fort, dispatched Arnold to its relief. On hearing of his approach, the Indians, having previously become dissatisfied, mutinied, and

compelled St. Leger to return to Montreal. On the way, they committed such depredations on the British troops, as to leave the impression, that they were no less dangerous as allies, than as enemies.

1777. June 30. Burgoyne at Crown Point.

To preserve a connected view of the expedition of St. Leger, we have gone nearly two months ahead of the operations of Burgoyne. On the 30th of June, that general advanced to Crown Point, from whence he proceeded to invest Ticonderoga, which was garrisoned by 3,000 men, under the command of General St. Clair. This was a place of great natural strength, and much expense and labor had been bestowed upon its fortifications; but, up to this period, a circumstance respecting it seems to have been strangely overlooked. It is commanded by an eminence in its neighborhood, called Mount Defiance.* The troops of Burgoyne got possession of this height on the 5th of July, and St. Clair, finding the post no longer tenable, evacuated it on the same night. The garrison separated into two divisions, were to proceed through Hubbardton to Skeenesborough. The first, under St. Clair, left the fort in the night, two hours earlier than the second, under Colonel Francis. The stores and baggage, placed on board 200 batteaux, and conveyed by five armed gallies, were to meet the army at Skeenesborough.

July 5. He invests Ticonderoga, which is evacuated by the Americans.

General Frazer, with 850 of the British, pursued and attacked the division at Hubbardton, under Colonel Francis, whose rear was commanded by Colonel Warner. The Americans made a brave resistance, during which 130 of the enemy were killed; but the British, in the heat of the action, receiving a reinforcement under Reidesel, the republicans were forced to give way. They fled in every direction, spreading through the country the terror of the British arms. In this unfortunate action, the Americans lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners, nearly 1,000 men. Many of the wounded perished in the woods. Colonel Francis was among the slain.

July 7. Disaster at Hubbardton.

A part of the stores and armed galleys, which had been sent up the lake, fell into the hands of the British. St. Clair, on hearing of these disasters, did not pursue his intended route, but struck into the woods on his left. At Manchester, he was joined by the remnant of the vanquished division, conducted by Colonel Warner. After a distressing march, he reached the camp of General Schuyler, then at Fort Edward. Warner remained in Manchester, with a detachment, which proved of great importance in the affair which shortly after occurred at Bennington.

July 12. St. Clair, with a remnant of the garrison, reaches Fort Edward.

Warner at Manchester.

---

* From the memoirs of Colonel John Trumbull, now (1841,) just out of the press, we learn, that Gates was informed, during the preceding summer, by Colonel Trumbull, of the fact discovered and demonstrated by him, that the fort of Ticonderoga was commanded by Mount Defiance. But it seems the discovery was not communicated to Washington, nor acted on, till too late.

Burgoyne, meanwhile, took possession of Skeenesborough; and the American army, under Schuyler, retired from Fort Edward to Saratoga, and, on the 13th of August, to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk.

1777.
Gloomy foreboding, but energetic action.

This period of the history was gloomy to America, and triumphant to England. When the news of Burgoyne's successes reached that country, the ministers were every where felicitated on the success of their plans; and rejoicings were made, as though their object was already attained. On the other hand, the Americans saw that the juncture was critical and alarming; but their spirit rose with the occasion, and their exertions increased with their danger.

General Schuyler obstructs Burgoyne's way.

General Schuyler, before leaving the northern positions, obstructed the roads, by breaking the bridges, and, in the only passable defiles, by cutting great trees on both sides of the way, to fall cross and lengthwise. These, with their branches interwoven, presented to the enemy an almost impassable barrier.

Gates more popular, supersedes Schuyler.

Lincoln, Arnold, Morgan, Kosciusko, join the northern army.

Congress was aware of the great merits and exertions of General Schuyler; yet they found that the misfortunes of the army had, though undeservedly, made him unpopular; and, therefore, it was necessary to supersede him, in order to make way for a leader, who should inspire a confidence that would draw volunteers to the service. Accordingly, General Gates was appointed to the command, but did not arrive at the camp until the 21st of August. Lincoln also was ordered to the north, as were Arnold and Morgan, whose active spirits and brilliant achievements, it was hoped, would reanimate the dispirited troops. The celebrated patriot of Poland, Kosciusko, was also in the army, as its chief engineer.

July 30.
Burgoyne reaches Fort Edward.

He sends Colonel Baum to seize provisions at Bennington.

Stark, with New Hampshire militia, defeats him,

Burgoyne, having, with great expense of labor and time, opened a way for his army, from Skeenesborough to the Hudson, arrived at Fort Edward, on the 30th July. But being in a hostile country, he could obtain no supplies except from Ticonderoga: and these he was compelled to transport by the way of lake George. Learning that there was a large depot of provisions at Bennington, he sent 500 men, under Lieut. Col. Baum, a trusty German officer, to seize them. General Stark, with a body of New Hampshire militia, was on his march to join General Schuyler, when hearing of Baum's approach, he recruited his forces from the neighboring militia, and, with 1,600 men, met him four miles from Bennington. After a sharp conflict, Baum was killed, and his party defeated. The militia had dispersed, to seek for plunder, when a British reinforcement of 500 men, under Colonel Breymann, arrived. Fortunately for the Americans, the Green Mountain Boys, under Colonel Warner, appeared at the same time, and the British were again defeated, and compelled to retreat. Their loss in both engagements was 600, the greater part of

Aug. 16.
Breyman defeated by Warner.

whom were taken prisoners.* The republican loss was inconsiderable.

The victory at Bennington was important in its consequences, as it proved the turning of that tide of fortune which had set so strongly in favor of the British arms. It embarrassed, weakened, and dispirited them; and was the first step in defeating their grand scheme of dividing the north from the south,—while it revived the drooping hearts of the Americans, and gave the impulse of hope to their exertions. This was strengthened by an impulse of another kind, but operating in the same direction. A cry of vengeance for murder was raised against the British, on account of an atrocious act, committed by their Indian allies.

The murder of Miss M'Crea.

Miss M'Crea, an interesting young lady of fort Edward, was betrothed to Captain Jones, then in the army of Burgoyne, which had now approached near to that place. Impatient for his marriage, the lover sent a party of Indians, as the safest convoy he could procure for his bride across the woods to the British camp; having secured, as he thought, their fidelity, by promise of reward. Confiding love prevailed in her mind over her strong fears of these terrible guides; and the unfortunate girl left, by stealth, the kind shelter of her paternal roof. Meantime, her anxious lover, to make her safety more sure, sent out another party, with like promises. The two met; and the last demanded that the lady should be committed to them. Rather than give her up, and thus, as they supposed, lose their reward, the barbarians tied to a tree, their innocent and helpless victim, and shot her dead. Instead of his bride, the bridegroom received the bloody tresses, which the murderers had cut from her dying head. The sight withered and blasted him; and, after lingering awhile, he died.

Its effects on the public mind.

The complicated miseries of a battle scene crowd the picture, and confuse the mind; and thus often produce less sympathy, than a single case of distress. In the present instance, every man could feel, what it would have been, or would be to him, to have his bride torn, as it were, from his arms, shrieking, and murdered in the hour of his love and expectation; and every pains was used to awaken these sympathies to their utmost extent, and turn them against the British

---

* After the Battle of Bennington, the Hessian prisoners were carried into the village, and distributed into public buildings and out-houses. The meeting-house was filled to crowding. The next day, an alarm was suddenly given to the women of the village, to take their children and flee. The Hessians, it was said, were rising on their guard. They were rushing in all directions out of the meeting-house. The guard fired, and killed five of them. But the fears of the inhabitants were suddenly changed to compassion. The galleries were giving way. In danger of being crushed to death, the unfortunate men rushed out, and met the fire of a guard, who could not at first understand from their foreign speech, their explanation of the disorder. This anecdote was related to me by a venerable matron, then a young lady, and an inhabitant of Bennington.

The speech attributed to General Stark, as he was about to lead his men to battle, is worthy of being remembered. "Now, my boys," said he, "we must beat them, or Molly Stark is a widow to-night."

who had let loose such bloodhounds upon the land. There was a general rising in the northern region, and it seemed as if every man, who could bear arms, was rushing to the camp of Gates, to avenge the death of Miss M'Crea, no less than to deliver his country.

1777.
Sept. 8.
Gates encamps at Stillwater.

The army at the islands, having been thus reinforced, and now amounting to 5,000, Gates left that encampment, the 8th of September, and proceeding to Stillwater, occupied Bemus heights.

Sept. 14.
Burgoyne encamps at Saratoga.

On the 12th, Burgoyne crossed the Hudson, and on the 14th, encamped at Saratoga, about three miles distant from the American army. An obstinate and bloody battle occurred at Stillwater, on the 19th. At first it was partial, commencing with a skirmish between advanced parties. Each side sent successive reinforcements to their own combatants, until nearly the whole were in action. The American troops took advantage of a wood which lay between the two camps, and poured from it a fire too deadly to be withstood. The British lines broke; and the Americans, rushing from their coverts, pursued them to an eminence, where their flanks being supported, they rallied. Charging in their turn, they drove the Americans into the woods, from which they again poured a deadly fire, and again the British fell back. At every charge, the British artillery fell into the hands of the Americans, who could neither carry it off, or turn it on the enemy. At length night came on, and to fight longer, would be to attack indiscriminately friend and foe. The Americans retired to their camp, having lost between three and four hundred men. The loss of the British was five hundred. Both sides claimed the victory; but the advantage was clearly on the side of the Americans.

Sept. 19.
Battle of Stillwater.

Oct. 7.
Battle of Saratoga.

Skirmishes, frequent and animated, occurred between this and the 7th of October, when a general battle was fought at Saratoga. At this time, the right wing of General Gates occupied the brow of the hill, near the river, his camp being in the form of the segment of a large circle, the convex side towards the enemy.

Position of Gates.

General Burgoyne's left was on the river, his right extending at right-angles to it, across the low grounds, about two hundred yards, to a range of steep heights, occupied by his choicest troops. The guard of his camp upon the high grounds, was given to Brigadiers Hamilton and Specht; that of the redoubts and plain, near the river, to Brigadier Gole. Burgoyne commanded in person the centre, composed of 1,500 men, and was seconded by Philips, Reidesel, and Frazer. His left flank, composed of grenadiers, was commanded by Major Ackland; his right, consisting of infantry, by the earl of Balcarras.

Position of Burgoyne.

His officers.

The Americans, under General Poor, attacked the left flank and front of the British; and, at the same time, Colonel Mor-

1777.

gan assailed their right. The action became general. The efforts of the combatants were desperate. Burgoyne, and his officers, fought like men who were defending, at the last cast, their military reputation; Gates and his army, like those who were deciding whether themselves and their children should be freemen or slaves. The invading army gave way, in the short space of fifty-two minutes. The defenders of the soil pursued them to their entrenchments, forced the guard, and killed Colonel Breyman, its commander. Arnold, the tiger of the American army, whose track was marked by carnage, headed a small band, stormed their works, and followed them into their camp. But his horse was killed under him; he was himself wounded; and darkness was coming on. He retired; and thus was reserved to another day, the utter ruin of the British army.

The battle is fiercely fought.
The British defeated.

The loss in killed and wounded, was great on both sides, but especially on the part of the British, of whom a considerable number were made prisoners. General Frazer, whose character was as elevated as his rank, received a mortal wound.

Frazer is killed.

The Americans had now an opening into the British camp. They rested on their arms the night after the battle, upon the field which they had so bravely won; determined to pursue their victory with returning light. But Burgoyne, aware of the advantage which they had gained, effected, with admirable order, a change of his ground. The artillery, the camp, and its appurtenances, were all removed before morning, to the heights. The British army, in this position, had the river in its rear, and its two wings displayed along the hills upon its right bank. Gates was too wise to attack his enemy in this position, and expose to another risk, what now wanted nothing but vigilance to make certain. He made arrangements to inclose his enemy, which Burgoyne perceiving, put his army in motion at nine o'clock at night, and removed to Saratoga, six miles up the river. He was obliged to abandon his hospital, with three hundred sick and wounded, to the humanity of the Americans.

Burgoyne changes his position.

Burgoyne now made efforts in various directions, to effect a retreat; but in every way he had been anticipated. He found himself in a foreign and hostile country, hemmed in by a foe, whose army constantly increasing, already amounted to four times his own wasting numbers. His boats, laden with his supplies, were taken, and his provisions were failing. He had early communicated with Sir Henry Clinton at New York, and had urged his co-operation. More recently, when his fortune began to darken, he had entreated him for speedy aid; stating, that, at the farthest, his army could not hold out beyond the 12th of October. The 12th arrived, without the expected succor. His army was in the utmost distress, and Burgoyne capitulated on the 17th.

He endeavors to retreat, but finds it impossible.
Receives no succors.
Oct. 17. He capitulates.

1777.

Number of the whole army surrendered, and amount of artillery.

The whole number surrendered amounted to 5,752 men, which, together with the troops lost before, by various disasters, made up the whole British loss to nine thousand two hundred and thirteen. There also fell into the hands of the Americans, thirty-five brass field pieces, and 5,000 muskets.

Conditions of the surrender.

It was stipulated that the British should pile their arms at the word of command, given by their own officers, march out of their camp with the honors of war, and have free passage across the Atlantic; they, on their part, agreeing not to serve again in North America, during the war. They were treated with delicacy by the Americans. Their officers, especially their commander, received many kind attentions.

Kind treatment of prisoners.

The worthy General Schuyler hospitably entertained Burgoyne, at his own house; although much of his private property, especially an elegant villa, had been destroyed by his command.

Garrison of Ticonderoga retreat to Canada.

On hearing of the defeat of Burgoyne, the British garrison at Ticonderoga returned to Canada, and not a foe remained in the northern section of the Union. Thus ended an expedition from which the British had hoped, and the Americans had feared so much.

The effects of their success were highly propitious to the cause of the republicans. It not only weakened and discouraged the enemy, but gave them a supply of artillery and stores, and, what was still more important, raised them in their own estimation, and in that of foreign nations.

Oct. 6. Forts Clinton and Montgomery taken by the British.

Connected with Burgoyne's invasion, was the predatory excursion up the North River, in which the British took forts Clinton and Montgomery, and burned the village of Esopus, now Kingston. This excursion, commanded by Sir Henry Clinton, who was accompanied by Tryon and Vaughan, had the double object of opening a free navigation for the British vessels up the river to Albany, and of making a division of the American forces, which were now concentrating in opposition to Burgoyne, and thus giving him an opportunity to escape. Had Clinton taken this step earlier, he might possibly have effected the latter object. As it was, Burgoyne had notice of the taking of the forts, and the advance of Clinton, just after he had made a verbal agreement to sign the articles of capitulation; when neither his honor, nor his humanity, would permit him longer to await the expected succor.

Oct. 15. Kingston burned.

Clinton, on hearing that Burgoyne had surrendered, and that Gates was advancing to attack him, evacuated and dismantled the forts which he had taken, and retreated to New York; experiencing no other permanent result of his expedition, than the execrations of a plundered people, and the character of having revived, in a civilized age, barbarian atrocities.

CHAPTER VI.

Campaign of 1777—Continued.

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. VI.

1777.

HAVING now given a connected view of the momentous operations at the north, we go back nearly three months, in the order of time, to take a brief sketch of the less decisive transactions in the middle states.

Howe sails up the Chesapeake, and lands at Elkton.

Admiral and General Howe, intent on the capture of Philadelphia, left Sandy Hook on the 23d of July. They were so long at sea, that Washington was ready to conclude that they had gone to Charleston. At length they were heard of, as sailing up Chesapeake bay. They disembarked their troops, amounting to 18,000, on the 25th of August, at the head of the Elk river, fifty miles southwest of Philadelphia. Washington crossed the Delaware and marched to oppose them; notwithstanding his army, never equal to that of the British, was now greatly diminished by the powerful detachments he had sent to check the alarming progress of Burgoyne.

Aug. 25. Washington marches to meet him.

The main armies prepare for battle.

Accompanied by Generals Greene, Sullivan, Wayne, and Stirling, he approached the enemy, until he reached Gray's Hill, in front of the British commander, with whom were Generals Knyphausen and Cornwallis. He then retreated across the Brandywine, and encamped on the rising grounds which extend from Chad's Ford, in a direction from northwest to southeast; and here, (the shallow stream of the Brandywine being between the armies,) he awaited an attack from the British; well knowing that nothing but a victory could now save Philadelphia.

Sept. 11. Battle of Brandywine.

Early in the morning, on the 11th of September, the whole British army, drawn up in two divisions, commenced the expected assault. Agreeably to the plan of Howe, the right wing, commanded by Knyphausen, made a feint of crossing the Brandywine, at Chad's Ford; while the left, commanded by Cornwallis, took a circuitous route up the Brandywine, and crossed, though not without opposition, at the forks. Knyphausen, with some fighting and much noise, had occupied the attention of the Americans. Washington, hearing that Cornwallis was approaching, determined to press forward in the centre and on the left; and if possible, divide the army, and cut off Knyphausen. A false counter intelligence prevented his executing this bold design, which might have changed the fate of the day. He had already dispatched some of his troops, whom, by this false intelligence, he was induced to recall. Thus time was consumed, and Cornwallis fell upon the Americans while they were in some measure unprepared to receive him. They, however, defended themselves with

British army in two divisions, commanded by Cornwallis and Knyphausen.

great valor. The carnage was terrible. The Americans, at length, were forced to give way.

Washington ordered to their aid, the reserve commanded by Greene; but it was too late, and the most it could perform, was to cover the retreat of the fugitives. Knyphausen now began in earnest to effect his passage at Chad's Ford. The Americans withstood bravely; but finding the remainder of the army vanquished, they fled in confusion, and abandoned to the enemy their artillery and ammunition. These found also a shelter within the lines of Greene, who was the last to quit the field.

1777.
Americans defeated, with the loss of 1,300.
British loss, near 500.
La Fayette wounded.

The Americans lost 300 killed, 600 wounded, and 400 taken prisoners. The British loss, in killed and wounded, was less than 500. This battle was distinguished by the exertions of foreign officers. The heroic La Fayette, while endeavoring to rally the fugitives, was wounded in the leg. Another French officer of distinction, the Baron St. Ovary, was made prisoner; and Count Pulaski, a celebrated Polander, displayed a courage which congress afterwards rewarded with the rank of brigadier general.

Americans retreat to Philadelphia.
British proceed to Wilmington.

On the night succeeding the battle, the Americans retreated to Chester, and the next day to Philadelphia. The following day, a detachment of British troops proceeded to Wilmington, and took prisoner the governor of Delaware. They seized considerable property, public and private; among which, was a quantity of coined money.

Washington again seeks his foe.

Washington had engaged his foe with inferior numbers, counting on the possibility of defeat, and believing that, even at that hazard, it was necessary, on account of public opinion, to fight. He was not, therefore, disheartened, by his defeat, but determined to risk another battle for the defense of the capital. He accordingly repassed the Schuylkill, to meet the enemy at Goshen; but a violent shower of rain wet the powder in the ill-constructed cartridge boxes of the Americans, and compelled the commander to defer the engagement. The republicans were unfortunate in another attempt to annoy the enemy. Washington had ordered Wayne, with a detachment of 1,500 men, into the rear of the British. This detachment was surprised; and a night scene of shocking slaughter ensued, in which 300 of the Americans were cut off.

Sept. 20. General Wayne is surprised by the British.

Howe now made a movement, which placed Washington in a situation where he could not interpose his army between the enemy and the capital, without exposing to destruction the extensive magazine of provisions and military stores, which had been established at Reading. Notwithstanding the clamors of the populace, he prudently abandoned the city; rather than sacrifice the stores, or risk another battle, while the odds were so much against him.

Washington abandons the capital to protect his stores.

Congress adjourn to Lancaster.

Congress, finding themselves insecure in Philadelphia, adjourned to Lancaster, to which place the public archives and

magazines were removed. They again invested Washington with the same dictatorial powers which were intrusted to him after the reverses in New Jersey.

1777. Sept. 26. The British enter Philadelphia.

On the 23d of September, Sir William Howe crossed the Schuylkill, and proceeded to Germantown. On the 26th, a detachment of the British army, under Cornwallis, entered the American capital, while the main body rested at Germantown. The American army, consisting of eleven thousand men, were conducted by Washington along the left bank of the Schuylkill, and lay encamped eleven miles from Germantown, at Schippack creek.

The Americans endeavor to cut off British supplies by sea.

Lord Howe had now consummated an event to which he had looked as decisive of the contest. But far from being subdued, the Americans, encouraged by the capture of Burgoyne, were not even disheartened. They knew that the army of Washington, when it should have received its reinforcements, could cut off the enemy's supplies on the side of Pennsylvania. If, therefore, they could prevent their receiving them by water, they would soon be compelled to evacuate the city. For this object, they had created batteries on Mud Island, and also at Red Bank and Billingsport, on the Jersey shore; along which places they had sunk ranges of frames, to impede the navigation of the river. The British, sensible of the importance of a free communication with the sea, by means of the Delaware, sent Colonel Stirling, with a detachment, to attack Billingsport, and clear away the obstructions which the Americans had placed in the river; in which enterprise, he was ultimately successful.

Oct. 4. Washington surprises Howe at Germantown.

The American commander, knowing that the army of Howe was weakened by the detachments under Cornwallis and Stirling, determined, if possible, to surprise him. He accordingly left his camp at Schippack creek, at seven in the evening, and at dawn succeeded in giving the British a complete surprise. They at first retreated in disorder. Several companies having thrown themselves into a stone house, annoyed the Americans. A part of the Pennsylvania militia did not perform the duty assigned them. A thick fog came on, and unable to distinguish friend from foe, confusion arose in the American ranks. The British, thus enabled to recover from the first attack, aroused to fresh exertions; and the Americans were defeated. Their loss was two hundred killed; (among whom was General Nash, of North Carolina;) six hundred wounded, and four hundred taken prisoners. The British loss was five hundred.

Has a prospect of success, but meets a defeat, and a loss of 1,200.

Washington returns to Schippack Creek.

The American army, with all its artillery, now retreated twenty miles, to Perkiomen creek; and from thence, having received a reinforcement of five hundred militia, Washington advanced to his old camp, at Schippack creek. Although the army had not effected what its commander had hoped,

yet so much skill and bravery had been displayed, that its reputation was enhanced.

Congress voted their thanks to the commander, and to his officers and soldiers, except General Stevens, who was cashiered for misconduct on the retreat.

1777.

Howe in Philadelphia, straightened for supplies.

A few days after the battle, the royal army removed from Germantown to Philadelphia. Scarcity of provisions prevented Howe from following the Americans, and he wished to co-operate in the design of opening the navigation of the Delaware. Indeed, this measure became necessary to the preservation of his army, which could not draw subsistence from the adjacent country; so effectually did the menacing attitude of Washington's army operate, and also the edict of congress, which pronounced the penalty of death upon any citizen who should dare to afford him supplies. Thus situated, the British general found, as Dr. Franklin wittily remarked, that, "instead of taking Philadelphia, Philadelphia had taken him."

Oct. 22. Attack on Red Bank.

To succeed in opening a communication with their fleet, which had sailed from the Chesapeake to the Delaware, it was necessary that the British should possess themselves of Mud Island, which was defended by Fort Mifflin, and Fort Mercer, on Red Bank. Accordingly, a body of Hessians, under Colonel Donop, marched down the Jersey shore, and attacked Fort Mercer with great impetuosity. It was defended by 400 men, under Colonel Greene. The Americans withdrew within the fort, and made there a vigorous defense. The Hessian commander was mortally wounded, and his troops were repulsed with the loss of 500 men.

Nov. 16. Attack on Mud Island.

Their next attack was made upon Mud Island, by their shipping. This proved, at first, no more successful; and the British lost two warlike vessels in the attempt. The Americans were, however, at length dislodged by an attack from a battery which the British had found means to erect on Province Island, a little above Mud Island, which commanded Fort Mifflin. Their post thus becoming untenable, they withdrew in the night to Fort Mercer.

The British at length open the navigation, and their fleet come up the Delaware.

To attack this fort, the British commander dispatched Cornwallis with a strong detachment. In obedience to his orders, that general crossed the Schuylkill, followed down the Delaware to Chester, below the fort, then crossing to Billing's Point, and receiving a reinforcement from New York, he thence ascended the river to attack it in the rear. The Americans, apprised of his approach, evacuated the fort. The American shipping, deprived of protection, was now in great danger. Some vessels, under cover of night, passed the battery of Philadelphia, and sought safety further up the river; but seventeen were abandoned, and burned by their crews. Lord Howe had now opened the navigation of the Delaware so that he could communicate with his brother, the admiral

1777.

In the meanwhile, the victorious troops of the north had reinforced the main army of the republicans, and Washington advanced within fourteen miles of Philadelphia, to White Marsh, his army consisting of 12,000 regulars and 3,000 militia. Howe marched his army within three miles of his lines, and manœuvred, to draw him from his entrenchments; but Washington, though he did not shun the battle, chose to receive it within his entrenchments. Howe, finding him too cautious to be drawn out of his camp, and too strong to be attacked in it, withdrew his army, and retired to winter-quarters at Philadelphia.

Washington reinforced. British army go into winter-quarters at Philadelphia.

Washington, on the 11th of December, left White Marsh, and retired to Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill, twenty miles above Philadelphia. Here, in a wood on a high ground, he laid out his camp, and employed his army in building huts for winter-quarters. This work was not completed, when the magazines were found to contain scarcely a single day's provision. As to their clothing, some few of the soldiers had one shirt, some the remnant of one, the greater part none at all. Barefooted, on the frozen ground, their feet cut by ice, they left their tracks in blood. A few only had the luxury of a blanket at night. More than 3,000 were excused from duty, on account of cold and nakedness. Straw could not be obtained; and the soldiers, who, during the day, were benumbed with cold, and enfeebled by hunger, had at night no other bed than the humid ground. Diseases attacked them; and the hospitals were replenished as rapidly as the dead were carried out. The unsuitableness of the buildings, and the multitude of sick that crowded them, caused an insupportable fetor. Hospital fever ensued. It could not be remedied by change of linen, for none could be had; nor by salubrious diet, as even the coarsest was not attainable; nor by medicines, as even the worst were wholly wanting. The hospitals resembled more, receptacles for the dying, than places of refuge for the diseased.

Dec. 11. Washington retires to winter-quarters at Valley Forge.

Distress of the American army.

The patience with which these patriotic votaries of freedom endured such complicated evils, is, we believe, without a parallel in history. To go to battle, cheered by the trumpet and the drum, with victory or the speedy bed of honor before the soldier, requires a heroic effort; much more to starve, to freeze, and to lie down and die, in silent obscurity. Sparta knew the names of the individuals who fell in her cause at the pass of Thermopylæ; but America scarcely knows how many hundreds, perished for her in the camp at Valley Forge.

Patient suffering sometimes more heroic than active courage.

CHAPTER VII.

Campaign of 1778.

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. VII.

1778.

Causes of the distress of the army.

The melancholy state to which the army was reduced, was owing to several causes. The bills of credit had diminished to one-fourth their nominal value. A scarcity of linen cloth and leather prevailing throughout the country, the commissaries had contracted for supplies at ten per cent. above the current price. This proceeding, congress refused to sanction; but required that supplies should be furnished, and the bills received as specie. The consequence was, that these articles could not be procured.

This depreciation of paper money, and advanced price of all articles of consumption, produced yet another evil. The officers, far from being able to live as became their rank, had not even the means of providing for their subsistence; and many had already expended their private fortunes, to maintain a respectable appearance. Those, who now handed in their resignations, were not the most worthless, but the bravest, most distinguished, and most spirited; who, disdaining the degraded situation in which they were placed, left the army to escape it.

Many officers disheartened, resign.

This example of defection, set by his beloved officers, more than any of the other disasters of the army, wounded the parental heart of Washington. In the midst of these anxieties, that great man was called to suffer from those common foes of distinguished merit—envy and calumny. Intrigues were set in motion against him, the object of which was to give him so many occasions of disgust, that he should of himself retire from the head of the army; and thus make room for the promotion of Gates, whose success in the affair of Burgoyne had raised his reputation to the highest pitch.

Intrigues against Washington.

Among the leaders of this cabal was General Conway, a wily and restless intriguer. He besieged all the members of congress with insinuations that there was no order in the American camp; and that body, at length, appointed him inspector-general. Pennsylvania addressed a remonstrance to congress, censuring the measures of the commander-in-chief. The same was done by the members from Massachusetts, among whom was Samuel Adams. They were not pleased that the whole command devolved on a Virginian, to the exclusion of their generals, who were, in their opinion, equal, if not superior, to Washington. A board of war was created, under Gates and Mifflin, who were prime movers of the combination. With the advice of this board, congress planned an expedition against Canada. Washington was not consulted, but he was ordered to detach La Fayette, with certain regi-

Generals Gates, Mifflin, and Conway, the chief intriguers.

Expedition planned against Canada.

ments, to perform the service. That officer was indignant at the neglect and injustice on this occasion manifested towards his revered commander, and would have declined the service, which he was aware was given him as a lure to draw him into the cabal. But Washington advised him to accept the command, and did all in his power to forward the expedition. What he did, was all that was done. La Fayette was recalled from Albany, and the expedition was abandoned.

1778. Public indignation against the enemies of Washington.

It is impossible to express, with what indignation the whole army and the best citizens were filled, on hearing the machinations, that were agitated against their honored chief. A universal cry arose against the intriguers. Conway, superseded by Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer, dared not show himself among the exasperated soldiers; and Samuel Adams deemed it prudent to keep aloof from the army. Congress, thus made to see how deeply rooted the commander was in the affections of the army and people, and knowing also that he ranked high at foreign courts, became at length sensible of their error, and restored to Washington a confidence which he had so hardly earned, and to which he was so justly entitled.

Conway was wounded in a duel, and believing himself at the point of death, he became penitent, and wrote to Washington, confessing his wrong and declaring his contrition.

Washington never once turned aside from his high career of suffering virtue, to notice his personal enemies. He had been indefatigable in urging congress to stop the defection of the officers, by securing to them some reward for their services. In accordance with his advice, a law was passed, allowing them half pay for seven years after the close of the war. He also urged congress, and the different state governments, to make early preparations for the ensuing campaign, that it might be commenced at the opening of the spring, before the British reinforcements could arrive. But decisions are of necessity tardily made in popular governments; hence, what ought to have been ready in the beginning of the spring, was but scantily provided during the summer.

Congress make a law allowing the officers half pay for seven years.

These delays might have been fatal to the army, had the British been in a condition to take the field early in the season.. As it was, they contented themselves with sending out their light troops to scour the country in the neighborhood of Philadelphia. In March, a party of these troops massacred, in cool blood, while crying for quarter, the soldiers who were stationed at the bridges of Quinton and Hancock. Near the same time, another party undertook an expedition up the Delaware. They destroyed the magazines at Bordentown, and the vessels which the Americans had drawn up the river, between Philadelphia and Trenton.

Predatory excursions of the British.

May

In May, 2,000 men, under La Fayette, were posted at Baron Hill, about eight or ten miles in front of the army, at

Valley Forge, to form an advanced guard, and be in readiness to annoy the British rear, in case they attempted to retreat to New York. The whole British army came out of Philadelphia, and a detachment of 5,000 men, under General Grant, was sent to surprise and destroy the force under La Fayette. In the beginning of the engagement, Grant obtained some advantage; but at length La Fayette, by skill and activity, baffled his enemy, and withdrew his detachment to the main army.

1778.

Success of American privateers.

The Americans were no where more successful than in the depredations which their swift-sailing privateers made upon the British commerce. With these they infested every sea, even those about the British islands; and often performed deeds of almost incredible boldness. Since 1776, they had already captured 500 of the British vessels.

Early in the season, Sir Henry Clinton arrived in Philadelphia, to supersede Sir William Howe in the command of the British forces; that general having resigned his commission and returned to England.

The news of the capture of Burgoyne caused a deep sensation throughout Europe, and effected the politics of several of its cabinets.

England is perplexed by the capture of Burgoyne.

The English people were astonished and afflicted; their sanguine calculations were defeated; their boastful predictions had failed; and mortified and perplexed, they knew not what course to pursue. The generals and soldiers who had fought in America, were not inferior to any that England or Europe could produce. These the Americans had vanquished. Of what, then, might they not be capable in future, when they should have derived new confidence from successes, and consolidated their state by practice and experience. The garrisons of Canada were weak, and the Americans might turn their victorious army against them. The Canadians, following the example of the Americans, might also revolt from Britain. Enlistments, both in America and England, became daily more difficult, and the Germans would only furnish troops to fulfil the engagement already made; and for the few recruits which they could raise, several of the German princes refused a passage through their dominions. France, they believed, would soon openly avow herself the friend of America; and thus her ancient and inveterate foe be joined in the contest with her alienated colonies.

Policy of France in reference to America.

France, jealous of her rival, viewed the discontents in America with pleasure. She did not at first espouse the quarrel, knowing that at the moment she should declare herself, the British ministry, by acquiescing in the concessions demanded by the Americans, might instantly disarm them; and France would then find herself alone, burdened with a war without motive or object. The declaration of independence removed this objection; yet, though France would rather see America

independent, than reconciled with her parent state, she relished better than either, a long war between them, which should waste both England and her colonies. This being her policy, she amused the British ministers with protestations of friendship; encouraged the Americans with secret, but scanty and uncertain succors; and excited their hopes by promises of future co-operation. These promises, however, as they were vague and unofficial, might at any time have been disowned by the government.

1778. Course of Dr. Franklin and the American negotiators.

Wearied out and disgusted, the agents of congress at the court of Versailles, urged the cabinet to come to a final decision; but they avoided it, alleging a variety of excuses. Unable to accomplish their views with France, and discovering no other prospect of success, the negotiators proposed to England the recognition of their independence. This point conceded, they would have yielded in all others, to such conditions as should tend to save the honor of the mother country; but this proposition was rejected.

The capture of Burgoyne changed the face of affairs, and gave new ardor to these patriots, who aroused the jealousy of the French cabinet, by their disposition to form an alliance with England. The French ministers now declared themselves openly, and they were warmly seconded by every class of French citizens. On the 6th of February, a treaty was formed, and France acknowledged the independence of America. In this treaty it was declared, that "if war should break out between France and England during the existence of that with the United States, it should be made a common cause; and that neither of the contracting parties should conclude either truce or peace with Great Britain, without the formal consent of the other; and they mutually engaged not to lay down their arms until the independence of the United States should have been formally or tacitly assured, by the treaty or treaties, which should terminate the war." The treaty was signed, on behalf of France, by M. Gerard; and on the part of the United States, by Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee.

Feb. 6. Treaty with France.

Its stipulations.

March 20. American agents received at court.

On the 20th of March, the American commissioners were received at the court of France, as the representatives of a sister nation; an event, which was considered in Europe as the most important which had occurred in the annals of America, since its discovery by Columbus.

January. Project of reconciliation in England.

The British parliament foresaw the probable alliance of France with America, and a proposal was brought forward by the ministers, to send over commissioners, empowered to grant all that its colonies had asked before the war, on condition of their returning to their former allegiance. This measure was warmly opposed, and its ill success foretold. It is, said its opposers, either too little or too much; too little, if we wish to make peace in earnest; too much, if we expect to continue

the war. If the Americans refused any other conditions, than independence, when they were single-handed and depressed by misfortunes, surely all others will now be rejected. Why not at once concede that independence which America has already acquired, and is able to maintain. She will then doubtless prefer our alliance to that of France; and in our coming contest with that wily nation, we shall have her assistance instead of her hostility. Such in substance was the language of the opposition; but the counsels of the ministry prevailed. The earl of Carlisle, Governor Johnstone, and William Eden were appointed commissioners. The ministry, as the result sufficiently proves, had other than the ostensible objects in view, in sending these men to America. They were to make an attempt to bribe, corrupt, and divide the people.

1778. Parliament sends three commissioners to America.

When the news of the French treaty reached the island, the British, highly exasperated against the French, immediately prepared to attack them at sea. To their astonishment it was found that France, by great exertions to increase her navy, and improve her seamen, was now fully able to cope with her rival on that element.

England and France prepare for naval warfare.

On the second of May, arrived the long expected treaty with France. It was brought over by the French frigate Le Sensible, which also brought over Silas Deane, who had been recalled, and M. Gerard, who had been appointed minister to the United States.

May 2. French treaty arrives.

Carlisle, Eden, and Johnstone arrived at Philadelphia on the 9th of June, a few days before the British troops evacuated the city. The concessions offered, were, as was predicted, too late; and congress refused to negotiate on any other terms, than the recognition of their independence, and the removal of all the British forces. The commissioners next resorted to the expedient of disseminating in the country a multitude of writings, in which they censured congress as requiring what was unjust, and injurious to America. They represented the alliance with France, as associated with meanness; while they extolled the generosity and magnanimity of England.

June 9. Arrival of the British commissioners.

Their intrigues.

Johnstone had formerly resided in the colonies; and afterwards, as a member of parliament, he had espoused the American cause. Availing himself of the influence which these circumstances had given him, he approached many influential republicans; and while he flattered them for their abilities and conduct, he adroitly insinuated that, if the royal authority could again be established, their merits would be rewarded by wealth, titles, and honors. In some cases attempts at direct bribery were discovered:—a lady was employed by Johnstone, to offer to General Reed, if he would aid the royal cause, ten thousand pounds sterling, and any office in the colonies within the king's gift. "I am not," said Reed,

Johnstone attempts bribery.

Dignified reply of Reed.

"worth purchasing; but, such as I am, the king of England is not rich enough to buy me."

1778.

In some instances, Johnstone had the indiscretion to write. The indignant patriots brought forward his letters, which contained the evidence of his base intrigues, and laid them before congress. That body indignantly forbade all farther communication with the commissioners. The popular writers of the times, among whom were Drayton, of South Carolina, and Thomas Paine, met, and confuted their insinuations. Public opinion overwhelmed them with opprobrium; and this abortive attempt, like former similar ones, served only to show to the British ministry, the stability of that union which they thus vainly endeavored to shake.

Congress forbid further communications.

CHAPTER VIII.

Campaign of 1778,—continued.

June 18. British army evacuate Philadelphia.

About the 5th of June, the British took measures to evacuate Philadelphia. This they accomplished on the morning of the 18th, their army proceeding through New Jersey towards New York.

Washington immediately put his camp, at Valley Forge, in motion, and sent out a detachment to collect the New Jersey militia, in order to harass their rear. He thought it would be wise to bring the British to a general engagement; but this opinion was contrary to that of the majority of his officers. He, however, persisted, and, following with his whole army, an engagement was brought about at Monmouth, or Freehold, on the 28th, in which the Americans had the advantage. The loss of the English was 700, that of the Americans, much less. Though both sides claimed the victory, yet historians agree in awarding it to the republicans, as they remained masters of the field of battle.

June 28. Battle of Monmouth.

General Lee, by own request, had in the commencement of the action, been associated with General La Fayette, in the command of the van. After he had attacked the British, he thought the ground in his rear more favorable to the formation of his lines; and he made, in some haste, a retrograde motion. Washington met the retreating troops; and finding that Lee was abandoning a ground which he had commanded him to take, and endangering the army by an appearance of flight, he inquired with sternness, what he meant; and gave orders himself for forming the battalion. Lee, during the remainder of this hard fought battle, displayed such courage and military conduct, that, had he not thought proper after-

General Lee's conduct.

His trial and suspension.

wards to write to the commander disrespectful letters, on the events of the battle, no further notice would have been taken of his irregular behavior. But on this occasion, Washington brought him to trial by a court martial, which censured and suspended him one year from his command. He never rejoined the army.

1778. Clinton shuns further conflict.

Night separated the combatants; and Washington and his soldiers rested upon their arms, intending to renew the conflict the succeeding day; but Clinton silently decamped in the night. In the morning, he was several miles distant; and moving through Middletown to Sandy Hook, he finally crossed over to New York.

Crosses to New York.

Washington proceeds to the Hudson.

On the 1st of July, the American commander, leaving Morgan's dragoons in lower Jersey, proceeded with his army towards the Hudson.

French fleet arrives under d'Estaing.

A French fleet, consisting of twelve ships of the line, and six frigates, was now sent to the aid of America, commanded by the Count d'Estaing. The admiral left Toulon on the 18th of April, with the intention of blockading the British in the Delaware. He entered the mouth of the river, on the 8th of June; but finding that Admiral Howe had left Philadelphia for New York, he proceeded to that place, designing to engage him there; but the large size of his ships prevented.

Franklin appointed minister to France.

On the 14th of September, Benjamin Franklin, still in France, was invested with the dignity and powers of minister plenipotentiary to that court.

Expedition against Rhode Island.

Washington, in order to derive the utmost advantage from the presence of the French fleet, directed an expedition against Rhode Island, for which he detached a force of 10,000 troops, under the command of General Sullivan, with whom he afterwards associated generals Greene and La Fayette. The force to which this army was opposed, consisted of 6,000 troops, which were stationed at Newport, and commanded by General Pigot.

Sullivan's arrangement.

Sullivan had, with the advice of Washington, concerted a plan of operations with the French admiral d'Estaing, who arrived off Newport, on the 25th of July. His army had taken post near Providence, and he had a reasonable expectation, that, with the aid of the French, he should be able to make himself master of the whole force under Pigot. The fleet was to enter the harbor of Newport, and land the French troops on the north part of the island, while the Americans were to land at the same time, on the opposite coast.

Aug. 8.

On the 8th of August, General Sullivan joined General Greene at Tiverton, and the descent was to be made the next day. The fleet presented itself. Some militia, who were to join the army, failed to come at the expected hour, and Sullivan represented to the French admiral, the necessity of a short delay. On the morning of the ninth, he crossed the east passage, and landed on the north end of Rhode Island. On

Aug. 9 and 10.

the tenth, the fleet of Lord Howe appeared in sight, and d'Estaing left Sullivan to give chase to the British admiral, promising to return to his assistance. The crafty Howe led him on, and both fleets were soon out of sight.

1778.

Aug. 15. Sullivan besieges Newport.

On the 15th, Sullivan commenced the siege of Newport, still believing that he should have the promised aid of the French fleet. Great was his chagrin and disappointment, when d'Estaing, having returned in a shattered condition, no entreaties could prevail on him to remain, but on the 22d he sailed to Boston to refit. Thus deserted by his allies, one half of his army, which consisted of militia, refused to remain, and encounter the danger, to which he was now exposed, of an attack from the British at New York.

Aug. 22. d'Estaing sails for Boston.

Aug. 28. Sullivan raises the siege, and, has Aug. 29, an action with the British.

Thus weakened, he raised the siege of Newport, on the 28th, and retired to a commanding situation on the north part of the island. The enemy followed, and, on the 29th attacked his army. After a sharp conflict of half an hour, in which Sullivan lost 211 of his troops, and Pigot 260, the British gave way, and retired to Quaker Hill. The next day, a letter from Washington informed him, that Sir Henry Clinton, with a large body of troops, had put out to sea from New York. His prospects were now completely reversed, and instead of hoping to conquer the British forces, his own were in imminent danger. By a skill that has been much commended, he succeeded in drawing off his army to the main land. The very next day, Clinton, who had been detained by adverse winds, arrived at the island, with 4,000 men.

This affair was unhappy in its effects. D'Estaing had left Sullivan to his fate, not only against his entreaties, but against the warm remonstrances of generals Greene and La Fayette. The resentment excited in the breast of Sullivan, and the disapprobation of many others, gave to Washington the greatest uneasiness; and called forth all his address to soothe their ruffled spirits, and prevent an open rupture with the French admiral.

Sept. 5. General Gray's excursion.

Sir Henry Clinton, disappointed of his expected prize, bent his course towards New York. He left the command of the troops on board the transports, to General Gray, with orders to destroy, if possible, the American privateers, which resorted to Buzzard's bay, and the adjacent rivers. This order was executed upon sixty larger vessels, and some small craft. Proceeding to New Bedford and Fair Haven, he destroyed many mills, warehouses, and much private property.

The valley of Wyoming.

In the campaign of this year, the depredations committed by the savages, were frequent and inhuman. The ruthless chiefs who guided them in their sanguinary expeditions, were Colonel John Butler, a tory refugee, and Brandt, a half-blooded Indian. The settlement of Wyoming, which consisted of eight towns on the banks of the Susquehannah, was one of the most flourishing and delightful in America. The majority

of its inhabitants were eminently devoted to the cause of their country, and although from their frontier position, they were themselves exposed, yet they had sent their young and able-bodied men, to fill the ranks of the army. But tories were numerous among them. Several had been arrested, and sent to the proper authorities for trial. This excited the indignation of the party, who now united with the Indians. Resorting to artifice, they pretended a desire to cultivate peace, while they were preparing for a bloody revenge.

1778. June. Butler and Brandt, with Indians and tories, massacre the defenders and defenseless.

The patriots had constructed several forts for the security of the inhabitants. In June, a formidable force of Indians and tories, under the command of Butler and Brandt appeared on the banks of the Susquehannah. They soon took all the forts, except that of Wilkesbarre—butchering men, women, and children, laying waste the country, and burning the houses. The tories were more sanguinary than the savages themselves. Fathers and sons were arrayed against each other, and in one case a brother slew a brother, while he was beseeching him for mercy.

At Wilkesbarre was collected all the remaining military force of the valley, under the patriot Colonel Zebulon Butler. It consisted of about fifty regular troops, and volunteers to the number of three hundred. Their foe, one thousand strong, and flushed with success, was but a few miles distant. They had no alternative but to attack or be attacked; and early on the 3d of July, this little devoted band left their women and children in the fort, and at a few miles distance, met and gave battle to a force nearly treble their own. They fought with desperation; but their foe out-flanked and surrounded, and then barbarously massacred them. Only sixteen escaped. The enemy next marched to the fort, which there was none to defend. It was surrendered, under promise of the protection of life. But the engagement was violated, and many of the helpless and unresisting, fell by the hands of those, who had but just murdered their husbands and fathers.

Sept. Quarrels with the French.

Disputes occurred about this time, between the French and Americans at Boston, and also at Charleston, South Carolina. In both these places some of the French were killed. At Boston, the Chevalier de St. Sauveur lost his life. Congress attributed these unfortunate affairs to British machinations; and the French admiral forebore to inquire further. The Marquis La Fayette, hoping to serve the United States by his representations in France, requested and obtained permission to repass the Atlantic.

French and English fleets sail for the West Indies.

Admiral d'Estaing left Boston for the West Indies, on the 3d of November. The same day the British Commodore Hotham left Sandy Hook, having on board 5,000 land troops, under Major General Grant, to sustain the English garrisons in those islands. He was followed, on the 14th of December, by Admiral Byron (who had superseded Admiral Howe) with

the whole English fleet. The French took Dominica from the English; and the English, St. Lucia from the French.

In planning the campaign for this year, the enemy had placed their principal hope of success in conquering the southern states. It was not, however, until a late period of the campaign, that Sir Henry Clinton was prepared to attempt the execution of this design. He then sent to Georgia, under convoy of Admiral Hyde Parker, 2,500 men, English, Hessians, and refugees. This army was commanded by Colonel Campbell, who, on the 27th of December, arrived before Savannah. The place being unprepared for defense, he defeated the Americans under Major General Robert Howe, and killed upwards of one hundred of his troops, and then took possession of the city. Four hundred and fifty American troops, and a large quantity of artillery and ammunition fell into his hands. That part of the American army which escaped, retreated into South Carolina.

1778. Nov. 27. British forces sail for Georgia.

Dec. 29. Savannah is taken.

Late in the autumn of 1778, Washington took winter-quarters at Middlebrook.

Washington in winter-quarters.

CHAPTER IX.

Campaign of 1779.

The plan of Sir Henry Clinton was to subjugate, at the outset of this campaign, the whole state of Georgia to the royal authority. The capital being already in possession of the British, they soon overran the adjacent country. Sunbury still held out for congress. General Prevost, commander of the troops at St. Augustine, pursuant to the orders of Clinton, left Florida, and, after a march of excessive fatigue and hardship, attacked the garrison at Sunbury. They made a show of resistance; but the country being now in the hands of the enemy, they were compelled to surrender at discretion.

1779. Georgia overrun.

Prevost then proceeded to Savannah, where he took command of all the British forces. The whole of Georgia was now under the authority of the royalists; and Clinton had accomplished all that he had expected to effect, before he should be joined by recruits from England. He did not consider himself in sufficient force to attack Charleston; but, aware that if he did not proceed with offensive operations, his army would languish, and his enemy soon put him on the defensive, he planned an expedition against Port Royal, giving the command to General Gardner. The English were, however, so valiantly received by the Carolinians, that they were obliged to return, after having experienced a severe loss.

Unsuccessful attempt upon Port Royal.

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. IX.

1779.

British believe the people favorable to them.

One of the motives of the British ministry, in transferring the war into the southern states, was the opinion, that a great proportion of the inhabitants were, at heart, in favor of the mother country; and that, if an opportunity presented, they would flock to her standard. They were not mistaken in the belief, that there were royalists; but they were deceived as to their number and efficient strength.

Barbarity of the tories.

Of these royalists, there were several kinds. Some of the least violent, concealing their sentiments, resided in the midst of the republicans; some lived solitary, and watched a favorable opportunity to declare themselves; while others were so rancorous as even to unite with the Indians; and, assisting in their nocturnal massacres, their conduct was more barbarous than that of the savages themselves.

Representations of British agents.

To support and encourage these friends to the royal cause, the British generals moved up the river to Augusta. They sent out numerous emissaries, who represented to them that now was the time to join the royal standard. They were told that they wanted nothing but union, to become incomparably the stronger party; to be enabled to take vengeance on those who had so long loaded them with indignities, and to entitle them to the high rewards, which await those who are found faithful among the faithless.

Colonel Pickens defeats a party of royalists near Augusta.

The royalists rose in arms, put themselves under the command of Colonel Boyd, one of their chiefs; and, moving towards the British army, pillaged, burnt, and murdered on their way. Meantime, the Carolinians collected a force, which, under the command of Colonel Pickens, met them, just as they had nearly reached their destination. A furious conflict ensued, and the republicans totally defeated the party. Seventy-six of the prisoners were condemned to death as criminals; but mercy was extended to the whole number, except five.

Lincoln takes command of the American forces at the south.

Towards the close of the preceding year, General Lincoln was appointed, at the request of the Carolinians, to take the command of the southern forces. He arrived, on the 4th of December, at Charleston; and, on the 17th of January, took post at Purysburg. As the enemy extended their posts up the Savannah, on the southern side, Lincoln extended his on the northern bank. He fixed one encampment at Black Swamp, and another nearly opposite Augusta; intending, as soon as he should be able to collect a sufficient force, to cross the Savannah, and oblige the enemy to evacuate the upper parts of Georgia. Meantime, Prevost fell down the river to Hudson's ferry.

He stations Ashe at Briar Creek.

Lincoln, whose army amounted to 4,000, intended to retake the upper part of Georgia, and restrict him to the coast. He detached General Ashe, with 2,000 men, of the North Carolina militia, to take post at a strong position, on Briar creek. Provost took measures, by judicious feints, to keep the atten-

tion of Lincoln diverted, while he marched to surprise the unguarded Ashe. He was so completely successful, that he had entered the camp of the Americans before they were aware of his approach. Panic-struck, the militia fled, without firing a shot; but many of them being drowned in the river, and swallowed up in the marshes, met with a death, which they might possibly have escaped by a gallant resistance.

March 3. He is surprised, and his army destroyed by the British.

The regular troops of Carolina and Georgia, animated by the example of their commander, the brave General Elbert, made a vigorous resistance; but, deserted by their friends, and outnumbered by their enemies, they were compelled to yield. By this disastrous affair, General Lincoln must have been deprived of 1,600 of his troops; as only four hundred returned to his camp.

1779. American loss, 1,600

Again the British were masters of all Georgia. They had free communication with the encouraged loyalists, not only in the back parts of this state, but also in those of the Carolinas; and General Prevost now proceeded to organize a colonial government.

Prevost organizes a colonial government.

Alarmed, but not dismayed, the Carolinians made the most vigorous exertions to draw out their militia. John Rutledge, in whom all classes confided, was chosen governor. By the middle of April, Lincoln found himself at the head of 5,000 fighting men. On the 23d, he resumed his intention of occupying Georgia; and, leaving 1,000 of his troops under General Moultrie, to garrison Purysburg and Black Swamp, he marched with the remainder up the Savannah. Meantime, the army of Prevost, which was increased by the royalists, recrossed the river, near its mouth, and defeated General Moultrie, who, finding Purysburg and Black Swamp untenable, had retired towards Charleston.

Moultrie defeated, retreats before Prevost.

On the 11th of May, the enemy appeared before that city. The garrison was small, although it had been the day before reinforced by 500 militia, under Governor Rutledge, and by the "American Legion," under the Count Pulaski. Their only hope of relief was from the hourly expected presence of Lincoln. When, therefore, they were, on the morning of the 12th, summoned to surrender, they sent out commissioners to negotiate, who contrived, by requiring certain conditions, to bring on a long dispute. In the meantime, they were making vigorous preparations for real defense, and a great show, as if well prepared for resistance. The fears of Prevost began to operate, and he drew off his troops some miles from the town. While he hesitated, and delayed to attack the city, the army of Lincoln appeared.

May 11. Charleston invested. Governor Rutledge. Count Pulaski.

General Lincoln arrives, and the British retire.

Provost now retired to St. James and St. John's, southward of Charleston; his design being to pass along these fertile islands, and the others which line the coast. Lincoln followed him upon the main land, and an indecisive engagement of some regiments occurred at Stono Ferry. General Prevost

June 20. Indecisive engagement at Stono Ferry.

16*

left a garrison in Beaufort, on Port Royal island, under command of Colonel Maitland, and then retired with the British main army to Savannah; while General Lincoln, with the American forces, took post at Sheldon.

1779. May. British make a descent upon Virginia, and burn several towns.

In May, General Clinton sent out from New York a fleet, under the command of Commodore Collier, with a corps of 2,000 men, under General Matthews, to make a descent upon Virginia, and, by devastating the country, to keep the inhabitants in a continual state of alarm. He had hopes, that, by the aid of the loyalists, this force would be able to overawe and effect a revolt of the state. The fleet proceeded to the Chesapeake, and blocked up the entrances of James river and Hampton Roads. A part of the troops landed on the banks of Elizabeth river: then proceeded to Portsmouth, Norfolk, Suffolk, and Gosport, burned those places, and spread devastation through the country. They demolished magazines, and took great quantities of provisions, which had been prepared for the American army, and burned or removed all the stores and shipping. Failing, however, in the grand object of producing a revolt, Clinton recalled them to New York.

Stony Point. Verplank's Point.

He next resolved to attack the American works at Stony and Verplank's Points, two opposite projections of land on the Hudson river. The Americans had constructed these works at great labor and expense. They were important, as they commanded King's Ferry, and if they fell into the hands of the British, the Americans would be obliged to take a circuit of ninety miles up the river, to communicate, by land, between the eastern and southern provinces.

June 1. Taken by the British under Sir H. Clinton.

General Clinton, commanding this expedition in person, left New York on the last of May. He first proceeded against Stony Point; and the Americans, being unprepared for defense, evacuated the place. At Verplank's Point, the fort named La Fayette had just been completed. Unfortunately, however, this fort was commanded by the heights of Stony Point, upon which the British had, during the night, planted a battery of heavy cannon, and another of mortars. Early in the morning, this artillery was turned against Fort La Fayette; and the enemy having invested it, all probability of relief was cut off, and the garrison surrendered. General Clinton gave orders for completing the works of Stony Point; and, on the 2d of June, he encamped his army at Philipsburg, half way between Verplank's Point and New York.

At this period, the commerce of the British on Long Island sound was nearly destroyed by the Connecticut privateers. They intercepted whatever made its appearance on their waters, and by this means distressed the British army in New York, which had been accustomed to receive its supplies from this quarter. Governor Tryon, by the orders of Clinton, embarked with a strong detachment, proceeded to New Haven and destroyed all the shipping which he found

July. Governor Tryon makes a descent upon Connecticut.

in that port. He then advanced to Fairfield, Norwalk, and Greenwich, all of which places he barbarously consigned to the flames. Besides the loss of a great quantity of shipping and whale-boats, the destruction of private property was great.

While the British were thus desolating the coast of Connecticut, Washington undertook the recovery of Verplank's and Stony Points. He charged General Wayne with the attack of Stony Point, and General Howe with that of Verplank's. The troops commanded by Wayne arrived under the walls of the fort about midnight. Divided into two columns, they attacked the fort from opposite positions. The English opened a tremendous fire upon them; but they rushed impetuously onward, opening their way with the bayonet. They scaled the fort, and the two victorious columns met in the centre of the works. The loss of the British, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, amounted to six hundred: the Americans lost but one hundred. This was one of the most brilliant exploits of the whole war. The attack upon Verplank's Point proved unsuccessful.

1779. July 15. Americans, under Wayne, take Stony Point.

When Clinton received intelligence of the capture of Stony Point, he determined not to suffer the Americans to remain in possession, and dispatched a corps of troops to dislodge them. Washington, unwilling to hazard a battle, ordered General Wayne to retire, having dismantled the fort, and removed the artillery and stores; which were valuable and important. On the 19th, Major Lee, with three hundred men, completely surprised the British garrison at Paulus Hook, killed thirty of the enemy, and took 159 prisoners.

Garrison at Paulus Hook surprised.

At the east, the British obtained some advantages over the Americans. Colonel M'Lean had embarked from Halifax, with a detachment, and at the mouth of the Penobscot river he was strongly posted. His object was to annoy the eastern frontier, and to prevent the inhabitants of Massachusetts from sending reinforcements to the army of Washington. The Bostonians, in great alarm, fitted out, under the command of Commodore Saltonstall, an armament with which they dispatched a portion of land troops, under the command of General Lovell. On their arrival at Penobscot, instead of attacking the enemy immediately, which would have insured them success, they delayed fifteen days, in order to entrench themselves. On the day of the intended attack, Commodore Collier, whom Clinton, on hearing of the situation of M'Lean, had sent from Sandy Hook to his relief, appeared with his fleet, at the mouth of the Penobscot. The Americans re-embarked, but Collier attacked their flotilla, and entirely destroyed it. The soldiers and sailors, in order to effect their escape, were obliged to land, and hide themselves in the forests; through which they found their way to their homes. The failure of this enterprise was a severe mortification, as well as a serious loss, to the Americans.

July. Unsuccessful expedition of the Bostonians against the British at Penobscot.

In the meantime, the massacre of Wyoming, another at Cherry Valley, and other Indian enormities, had called so loudly for punishment, that in July, congress sent General Sullivan, with 3,000 troops, to repress the incursions of the savages. He proceeded up the Susquehannah; and at Wyoming was joined by a reinforcement of 1,600 men, under the command of James Clinton, of New York.

1779. Aug. 29. Sullivan defeats the tories and savages.

The Indians and royalists had assembled in great numbers, under the direction of their ferocious leaders, Johnson, Butler, and Brandt. Confident in their strength, they had advanced to Newtown; and, while awaiting Sullivan's approach, had thrown up an extensive entrenchment, strengthened by a palisade and redoubts, after the European manner. General Sullivan, on his arrival, immediately attacked the place; and the Indians, after defending it two hours, fled in disorder. Few however were killed, and none made prisoners. Sullivan took possession of Newtown, from whence he made incursions into the other parts of their country. The terrified savages made no further resistance, but escaped to the forests. A great quantity of grain was burned, forty Indian villages were utterly destroyed, and no trace of vegetation left. General Sullivan, after having accomplished this severe retribution, went with his army to Easton, in Pennsylvania.

CHAPTER X.

Campaign of 1779.—Continued.

1779. War of the French and English in the West Indies.

To understand the history of the war, it is necessary to keep in view, not only the movements of the forces of America, but also those of its ally and its enemy. The commencement of the present year found the Count d'Estaing and Lord Byron, with their respective fleets, in the West Indies. The former was reinforced by a squadron, under the Count de Grasse, and the latter by an armament under Commodore Rowley.

Their fleets were now nearly equal, and the English were desirous of a naval battle; but the French had in view the conquest of the neighboring English islands; and for that purpose, had on board a considerable land force, which must, in the event of a battle, be exposed, and could afford no assistance. D'Estaing was therefore averse to an engagement, and lay quietly at anchor, at Martinico.

French conquer St. Vincent.

Meantime, Lord Byron sailed towards England, to convoy a fleet of merchantmen. No sooner had he left the West Indies, than the French admiral sent a detached squadron to

St. Vincent, which succeeded in capturing that valuable island.

1779. July 2. French capture Grenada.

On the 30th of June, d'Estaing, who had received a reinforcement from France, left Martinico, his fleet consisting of twenty-five sail of the line, and on the 2d of July, came to anchor in a harbor of Grenada. On this island he landed 2,500 men, and attacked and carried, by a bloody and destructive assault, St. George, its principal fortress, when the whole island submitted to France.

French admiral reproached by the Americans.

Shortly after these events, d'Estaing received letters from General Lincoln, President Lowndes, of South Carolina, and Mr. Plombard, consul of France, from which he learned the dissatisfaction which existed in America. The republicans complained, that the alliance with France had produced nothing which corresponded either to the greatness of their ally, or the general expectations of the Americans. It was said, that the sums expended upon Rhode Island were worse than fruitless; and that the zeal with which the Bostonians had victualled and equipped the French fleet, produced no better effect than its immediate desertion of their coasts, on distant expeditions. The loss of Savannah and Georgia, which opened to the British an easy entrance to the Carolinas, was attributed to this cause; and finally it was said, that while the French were enriching themselves in distant seas, with the conquests of the British possessions, they left the Americans, contrary to the stipulations of the treaty, to sustain the burden of the war. These complaints were followed by earnest entreaties, that d'Estaing would immediately restore the confidence of the Americans, by hastening to their succor.

Sept. 1. d'Estaing arrives off the coast of Georgia.

Count d'Estaing had received instructions to return immediately to Europe, but moved by these representations he ventured to disobey the summons; and directing his course to Georgia, he appeared off the coast on the 1st of September.

Concerts measures with General Lincoln.

He believed that there were two plans, which, if America could successfully execute, the war must, of necessity, come to a conclusion. One of these, was the destruction of the army under General Prevost, at Savannah; and the other, and more difficult, was to attack by sea and land, conjointly with Washington, the British forces in the city of New York. It was determined to attempt the former; and the Count d'Estaing and General Lincoln lost no time in commencing their joint operations.

British general at Savannah calls in his outposts.

The French admiral had sent ships to Charleston with the joyful news of his arrival in those waters. They surprised and captured some British vessels loaded with provisions. General Prevost, alarmed at his danger, sent expresses, directing the forces under Maitland, and those at Sunbury, to repair with speed to Savannah. He removed the shipping

1779.

farther up the river, destroyed the batteries on the island of Tybee, and pressed the completion of the works at Savannah.

Sept. 24. Savannah invested by the French, who are joined by the Americans.

Meantime, Gen. Lincoln marched towards Savannah, leaving orders for the militia to collect from all quarters, and join his army. Before he had arrived, d'Estaing had invested the place, and demanded of Prevost to surrender to the arms of France; a measure which was displeasing to the republicans. The expected reinforcements of Prevost had not yet arrived; and he amused the French admiral by a protracted negotiation. D'Estaing even went so far as to give him a truce of twenty-four hours. In the meantime, Maitland arrived, with eight hundred men; and there was then no further talk of surrendering. Pulaski, with his legion, and Lincoln, with 3,000 troops, had also arrived before Savannah Works were erected, and a regular siege was commenced on the 24th of September.

Oct. 3. Unfortunate bombardment of Savannah.

On the 3d of October the trenches were completed, the batteries armed, and a bombardment commenced. Fifty-three pieces of cannon, and nine mortars, sent an incessant shower of balls and shells. The city was on fire in many places. The burning roofs fell upon the women, the children and the unarmed multitude; and every where were seen the crippled, the dying, and the dead. Five days this firing continued, and although so dreadful to the town, it was nearly harmless to the fort. Touched with the sufferings which he witnessed, Prevost requested permission that the women and children should be sent down the river, on board of vessels intrusted to the care of the French, to await there the issue of the siege. d'Estaing, fearing to be again entrapped, refused this humane request.

Oct. 9. The combined armies make a bloody assault, and are repulsed.

In the meantime, the French fleet would be exposed to dangers, and himself to disgrace, should the admiral longer detain it. And although the allies knew that they were putting to great hazard that which delay would make certain, yet the exigency of the case seemed to demand it; and it was resolved to assault the town. The flower of the combined armies were led to the attack by the two commanders, d'Estaing and Lincoln. They met with many disasters, and a final repulse. The number of the slain and the wounded shows that the battle must have been bloody. The French loss was 700; the American, four hundred. The Count d'Estaing was wounded, but recovered; the Count Pulaski, while bravely charging at the head of 200 horse, received a wound which caused his death, and deprived America of one of her most valiant and disinterested defenders. On the 18th, the allies raised the siege of Savannah. Lincoln crossed the river with his regular troops; the militia disbanded, and returned to their homes; and d'Estaing set sail for Europe.

Pulaski slain.

Oct. 18. The siege raised.

Sir Henry Clinton, fearing an attack from the French, withdrew his troops from Rhode Island precipitately, with the loss

of his munitions; leaving that state to revert peaceably to the union.

1779.
Paul Jones.

Near the close of this year occurred, on the coast of England, that unexampled sea-fight, which gave to the name of Paul Jones such terrific eclat. This man was a native of Scotland, but engaged in the service of the United States. His flotilla was composed of the Bonhomme Richard, of forty guns; the Alliance, of thirty-six, (both American ships,) the Pallas, a French frigate of thirty-two, in the pay of congress, and two other smaller vessels. He fell in with a British merchant fleet, on its return from the Baltic, convoyed by Captain Pearson, with the frigate Serapis, of forty-four guns, and the Countess of Scarborough, of twenty.

Sept. 23. Fierce engagement with Captain Pearson off the coast of Scotland.

Pearson had no sooner perceived Jones, than he bore down to engage him, while the merchantmen endeavored to gain the coast. The American flotilla formed to receive him. The two enemies joined battle about seven in the evening. The British having the advantage of cannon of a longer reach, Jones resolved to fight them closer. He brought up his ships, until the muzzles of his guns came in contact with those of his enemy. Here the phrensied combatants fought from seven till ten. Paul Jones now found that his vessel was so shattered, that only three effective guns remained. Trusting no longer to these, he assailed his enemy with grenades; which, falling into the Serapis, set her on fire in several places. At length her magazine blew up, and killed all near it. Pearson, enraged at his officers, who wished him to surrender, commanded them to board. Jones, at the head of his crew, received them at the point of the pike; and they retreated. But the flames of the Serapis had communicated to her enemy, and the vessel of Jones was on fire.

Jones conquers at an unwarrantable waste of human life.

Amidst this tremendous night scene, the Alliance came up, and, mistaking her partner for her enemy, she fired a broadside into the vessel of Jones; but by the glare of the burning ships she discovered her mistake, and turned her guns against her exhausted foe. Pearson's crew were killed or wounded, his artillery dismounted, and his vessel on fire; and he could no longer resist. The flames of the Serapis were, however, arrested; but the leaks of the Good-man Richard could not be stopped, and the hulk went down soon after the mangled remains of the crew had been removed. Of the 375 who were on board that renowned vessel, 300 were killed or wounded. The Pallas had captured the Countess of Scarborough; and Jones, after this horrible victory, wandered, with his shattered, unmanageable vessels for some time; and at length, on the 6th of October, had the good fortune to find his way to the waters of the Texel.

Having now brought to a close the military affairs of the campaign, we pause to take some note of the political transactions.

1779.

Advantage and disadvantage of the French alliance.

Notwithstanding the apparent inutility to the republicans, of the French fleet, it was in reality of great importance to their cause, as it kept the British constantly in check. But the alliance with France had also its disadvantages. The public feeling, so long strained to an unnatural elevation, was now predisposed to sink to apathy; and the Americans were led to believe that England must, from the power of France, soon be compelled to yield, although they should remit their efforts.

Washington and others are alarmed at the public insensibility.

The leading patriots saw the evil with alarm. Endeavoring to counteract it, they called on the people, by the memory of their past exploits, by the necessity of preserving the respect of their allies, by the perils which still impended, and by the power and treacherous policy of their yet unconquered adversary, to arouse from their lethargy, and trust not in chance or in strangers, but in their own exertions, for the establishment of their rights; but vain was the appeal; and even the army was affected by the lethargic torpor of the public mind.

The demagogues and office lovers of the time decry true patriots.

Another evil had arisen. The disorders of the times had produced a race of men, who, seeking solely to enrich themselves, made a trade of the public distress. What did they care if their country should fall, if they could share her spoils? Army supplies enriched them, as they afforded them pretences for peculation; and the state often paid dearly for what it never received. Such wretches are ever the loudest to chime in with the tune of the times. Hypocrites in patriotism, vociferous for their country's rights, they deceived the undiscerning, and acquired an influence, by which they sought to remove from office all who obstructed their designs; and by their intrigues, the appalling cry of tory was raised, and sometimes not in vain, against the upright officer who refused to connive at their selfish rapacity.

Public immorality the consequence of a fluctuating currency.

One cause of this alarming degeneracy in morals, lay in the depreciation of paper currency. At the close of this year, a dollar in specie could scarcely be obtained for forty in bills. But, the paper was fluctuating in its value. Hence a set of men arose, who preferred speculating on this currency, to honest industry; and often in the changes which occurred, the worthless amassed sudden wealth, while many deserving persons of moderate fortunes, sunk at once to poverty. That the bills should have depreciated, will not be mysterious, when we consider that the immense sum of one hundred and sixty millions had now been issued by congress.

England counterfeits the continental money.

The honest individual of private life, will be surprised to learn another reason of the depreciation of American paper, although the wily politician knows that it is no new "trick of state." England, on this occasion, turned counterfeiter. Her ministers sent over, and her generals distributed whole chests of spurious bills, so perfectly imitated, as scarcely to be distinguished from the true.

1779.

In the meantime, America was scarcely less in danger from friends, than enemies. Congress was beset by the intrigues of France and Spain. The former had not intended to declare in her favor, until far greater concessions had been obtained; but had been surprised into the step, by the unexpected fortune which, in the capture of Burgoyne, the Americans had single-handed won for themselves, and which made the French cabinet fear, that, unless they hasted to declare themselves, the contest would be decided, and America become independent, without being in any degree indebted to them, or inclined to favor them. They also feared that they should lose the opportunity of obtaining a powerful and efficient ally in a war which they wished, on their own account, to wage against their too powerful neighbor, and hereditary enemy. Now that by the alliance, these objects were secured, they wished, in the particulars which yet remained to be settled, to drive a hard bargain for their services; and to make the Americans think meanly of themselves, would be to enhance the value of those services.

Selfish policy of the French cabinet.

M. Gerard, in his communications to congress, endeavored, by such means, to make them consent to abandon to France the extensive fisheries of Newfoundland; and to Spain, the exclusive navigation of the Mississippi. The alliance of Spain was also to be thrown into the scale; and the advantages of this were magnified. But congress were not deceived. they refused the specious bait; and Spain, having precisely the same policy as France, and the same desire to humble England, declared war against that power, to suit her own purposes; without succeeding in making America believe, that she did it for her sake.

No undue advantages over congress obtained either by France or Spain.

The British ministry had, in the spring, sent out Admiral Arbuthnot with a reinforcement for the American service. He was, however, delayed by the way, and did not arrive until August. Under convoy of his fleet, Sir Henry Clinton, with 7,000 men, sailed in December from New York, for the south, and after a tempestuous and protracted voyage, landed at Tybee Island, in the neighborhood of Savannah, the last of January.

December: Admiral Arbuthnot conveys Sir H. Clinton, with 7,000 men, to the south.

General Lincoln, with his army, was, at the close of this year, in winter-quarters, at Shelden; and Washington, dividing his army into two parts, sent one division to take post at West Point, and himself, with the other, occupied the heights at Morristown.

American army in winter-quarters.

CHAPTER XI.

European Affairs.—Campaign of 1780.

PART III.
PERIOD II.
CHAP. XI.

1780.

England becomes mistress of the ocean.

FRESH indications of hostility towards England were manifested by the European powers. That nation had become mistress of the sea, and had borne her honors haughtily; claiming the right of searching the vessels of neutral nations, for articles contraband of war, and not allowing their national flag to protect them from her troublesome and insulting scrutiny. A common feeling of indignation, at this conduct, pervaded the nations; which, by the policy of Catharine II. of Russia, England was made to feel, without the power of resenting. On the occasion of the displeasure produced by the search and seizure of a number of Dutch vessels, sailing under the convoy of the Count de Byland, that princess proposed to the nations to unite in an "*armed neutrality*;" and immediately the kings of Denmark and Sweden acceded to the proposal.

"Armed neutrality," proposed by Catharine of Russia.

The treaty to which they were mutually bound, and which constituted the basis of this confederacy, stipulated, that neutral vessels might freely navigate from one port to another, even upon the coast of belligerent powers;—that all effects become free so soon as they are on board a neutral vessel, except such articles, as by a former specified treaty, had been declared contraband;—that no port should be deemed blockaded, until such an actual naval force had invested it, as to make its entrance dangerous;—that when any vessel had shown by its papers, that it was not the carrier of contraband goods, it might place itself under the escort of ships of war, which should prevent its being stopped;—and finally, that the legality of prizes should be determined by these rules. In order to command respect for this confederation, the three allied powers agreed that each should keep a part of its navy equipped, and make common cause in protecting their common trade.

Reception of the armed neutrality by the different powers of Europe.

These articles were communicated to the courts of France, Spain, Holland, England, and Portugal, with an invitation to join the confederacy. The two former expressed great admiration of their wisdom, and joy in their adoption; and not only acceded to them, but wished the northern powers to understand, that by their directions to their admirals, they had already anticipated them. The British ministry, unwilling to come to an open rupture with Russia, but determined not to admit the principles of the confederacy, dissembled, for the present, their displeasure, and replied to the invitation in a vague and indecisive manner. Portugal, fearful of offending England, declined the alliance; but Holland, irritated at the

seizure of her vessels, and partaking in the common feeling of resentment towards England, disregarded her threats, and joined the armed neutrality.

1780.

The British intend to operate against the south.

Surrounded by so many perils, it is not strange that England prosecuted the American war with less energy, than in preceding years. Yet no signs of fear or discouragement were manifested. The policy now to be pursued was to draw all the troops to the south, except so many as were requisite to keep possession of the posts already acquired at the north.

Sir H. Clinton menaces Charleston.

Sir Henry Clinton, after remaining a short time in the vicinity of Savannah, set sail on the 10th of February for Charleston, and landing within thirty miles of the city, he took possession of John's Island and Stono Ferry, and afterwards of Wappoo Cut and James Island. A part of his army proceeded and took post on the banks of Ashley river, opposite to Charleston. His forces were soon increased by 1,200 troops from Savannah, under General Patterson.

General Lincoln and Governor Rutledge prepare for defense.

Not doubting that Charleston would be attacked, General Lincoln removed thither with his army; and in conjunction with Governor Rutledge, to whom the state had confided dictatorial powers, he tried every measure to put the city in a posture of defense. But they had great difficulties to encounter.

Their discouragements.

The militia had been disbanded; they were dispirited, and afraid to enter Charleston on account of the small-pox, which was there prevailing. Paper currency was out of credit, and many becoming discouraged, as to the final success of the republican cause, took advantage of the amnesty which had been offered by Provost. A considerable force was however collected, and great diligence was displayed in constructing fortifications.

April 1. Clinton besieges Charleston, and cuts off retreat to the American army.

The siege commenced on the 1st of April, and the enemy was employed at succeeding periods, in erecting batteries across Charleston Neck, while the garrison were equally assiduous in preparing for defense. General Lincoln had posted General Huger, with a detachment at Monk's Corner. Huger was driven from this position, on the 14th of April, by the British troops, under Colonels Webster, Ferguson, and Tarleton; and thus the only road by which a retreat could be effected, was at the command of the besiegers. Their force also was, about this time, increased by the arrival of 3,000 troops from New York.

The British fleet had, on the 9th of April, passed fort Moultrie, without making an attack, losing by its guns, only twenty-seven men. It then anchored near fort Johnson. Clinton, the same day, completed the first parallel across Charleston Neck, about 1,100 yards from the American works; and after summoning the garrison to surrender, he opened his batteries upon the town. Colonel Pinckney, who commanded fort Moultrie, having withdrawn his troops to Charleston, that fort was surrendered on the 7th of May.

May 7. Fort Moultrie surrenders.

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. XI. 1780.

General Lincoln being thus completely surrounded, capitulated on the 12th, surrendering his whole army, which consisted of seven general officers, ten continental regiments, and three battalions. Four hundred pieces of artillery, and four frigates fell into the hands of the enemy.

Moncreiff.

The successful operations of the British in the siege of Charleston, and in the defense made at the close of the last year, at Savannah, are by historians attributed, in a great degree, to the superior skill of their chief engineer, Moncrieff.

The British take the fort at Ninety-Six.

After taking possession of the capital, Clinton planned three expeditions, all of which proved successful; one against Ninety-Six, one towards the Savannah river, and the third to scour the country between the Cooper and Santee rivers. The object of the last was to disperse a corps under Colonel Buford, who were retiring, by forced marches, in hopes to meet another body of Americans, who were on the march from Salisbury to Charlotte. Buford retreated with great celerity. But Colonel Tarleton, the most active of Clinton's officers, commanded the pursuit, and after marching one hundred and five miles in fifty-four hours, on the 28th of May, he came up with Buford, at Wacsaw. The English victory was complete, but it was stained with cruelty. They massacred many of those who offered to surrender, and from this time the proverbial mode of expressing the barbarous act of killing those who surrender, was, "Tarleton's quarter." Thus the cavalry, which Clinton had brought with him, had proved of essential service to his arms; and the alert, yet sanguinary Tarleton, at that period, seemed, to the terrified inhabitants, to be every where present.*

May 28. Colonel Tarleton surprises and defeats Colonel Buford at Wacsaw.

Clinton master of South Carolina.

There no longer remained, in South Carolina, a force capable of withstanding the British. The inhabitants flocked from all parts to meet the royal troops, and declare their desire of resuming their ancient allegiance. Clinton wrote to England, that "South Carolina was English again." But he was aware that his conquests could not be preserved, but by re-establishing the civil administration. He published a full pardon to all who should immediately return to their duty. But they must consider themselves established in the duties, as well as the rights of British subjects; that is, they must take up arms in support of the royal government. Those who had families, were required to form a militia for home defense; those who had not, to serve with the royal forces, for any six months of the ensuing twelve. Thus citizens became armed against citizens; and brothers against brothers.

Proceeds to establish the royal government.

General Clinton, seeing the affairs of the south in apparent tranquillity, distributed his army, amounting to about 4,000 troops, into the most important garrisons; and leaving Lord Cornwallis in the command of the southern department, he returned to New York. That city had been exposed to danger. The garrison was weak; and such had been the un-

June 10. Returns to New York.

paralleled severity of the winter, that Washington might have marched his army, with all his artillery and baggage, across any of its surrounding, and now solid waters. But the miserable condition of the American army, would not allow the commander to take advantage of this unexpected circumstance.

Previous to the return of Clinton, General Knyphausen, who had been left in command, had, with 5,000 men, made an excursion into New Jersey, and for a time occupied Elizabethtown. He had manœuvred to draw Washington from the heights of Morristown, intending to occupy that strong post himself, and thus force the American army into the open country; but his plan was penetrated, and his expedition proved fruitless. Before his return, an affair occurred near Springfield, in which General Greene, who was sent by Washington, to watch the motions of Knyphausen, lost about eighty men, and the British, as was supposed, somewhat more. Springfield, which consisted of fifty houses, was set on fire. At sight of the flames, the inhabitants aroused. The spirit of the early days of the revolution rekindled. They collected in such numbers, and pursued the British with such violence, that their general was glad to take advantage of the night, to withdraw his army from the open country of Jersey to the defenses of New York.

1780. June 23. Skirmish at Springfield.

New Jersey patriotism rekindles.

CHAPTER XII.

Campaign of 1780—continued.

Up to this period, congress had maintained their bills at their nominal value, and had often declared, that a dollar in paper should always be given and received for a dollar in silver. But compelled to yield to the pressure of circumstances, they now decided, that, in future, the bills should pass, not at their nominal, but at their conventional value. The government, which Sir Henry Clinton established in South Carolina, had first made such a decree; and had caused a table to be constructed, showing what had been the rate of depreciation, and the actual value of the bills, in years, and even in months past. The object of this calculation was to obtain a rule, by which the payment of debts might be regulated. This example congress found it expedient to follow.

1780. Congress obliged to sanction the depreciation of their paper currency.

In Carolina and Georgia, the British saw, with chagrin, that there were still those who were devoted to the cause of independence; and their resentment dictated measures of extraordinary rigor. Their possessions were sequestrated, their families jealously watched, and subjected as rebels, to con-

Ill-treatment of the southern patriots by the British.

tinual vexations. Within the city, they were refused access to the tribunals, if they had suits to bring against a debtor; while, on the other hand, they were abandoned to all the prosecutions which those who had, or pretended to have, claims against them, chose to institute.

But there was still another more grievous injury, and one which stung the Carolinians to madness. This was the proclamation by which the British commanders had absolved the prisoners of war from their parole, and restored them to the condition of British subjects, in order to compel them to fight under the royal banner. Had they been suffered to remain at home, they would, by degrees, have become reconciled to what they could not but feel to be the degradation of their country. But with the requirement to take up arms, their wrath rekindled. "If we must fight," said they, "it shall be for America and our friends, not for England and strangers."

1780. They are obliged to take up arms.

Heroism of the women of South Carolina.

The heroism of the women of Carolina gives them a rank with the noblest patriots of the revolution. They gloried in being called "rebel ladies." They refused their presence at every scene of gayety. Like the daughters of captive Zion, they would not amuse their conquerors. But, at every hazard, they honored, with their attention, the brave defenders of their country. They sought out and relieved the suffering soldiers, visited prison ships, and descended into loathsome dungeons. Sisters encouraged their brothers to fight the oppressor; the mother her son, and the wife her husband; and their parting advice was, "prefer prisons to infamy, and death to servitude."

General view of the progress of public sentiment.

Where important national affairs are concerned, there is a certain degree of warmth and animation, which, pervading the public mind, marks the healthy state of a nation. When this has risen to an unnatural heat, a period of lassitude and inertness succeeds, before the national pulse again recovers its healthful beat. Such a preternatural state of public feeling was excited in America, by the wrongs of Britain, and produced the noble efforts of '76. But it is not in human nature to keep long strained to a high pitch. A period of lassitude succeeded, and in '79, the nation was asleep. But its sleep recruited its vital energies. The enemy, contemning its apparent weakness, had applied the scourge of a barbarian warfare. Its effects, though cruel to individuals, were wholesome to the body politic: and America aroused from her slumbers, and awoke to better deeds.

Exertions to raise money for the support of the army.

The leading patriots saw with delight, the rising enthusiasm of the people, and neglected no means which could cherish and propagate it. Congress sent circular letters to all the states, earnestly exhorting them to complete their regiments, and raise and send recruits to the army. The militia obeyed the call with alacrity. The capitalists subscribed large sums to replenish the exhausted treasury. A bank was instituted at Philadelphia, on which congress could draw for the neces-

sities of the army. With generous patriotism, commercial houses and wealthy individuals stepped forward to support the public credit, by their personal responsibility; although the situation of affairs still offered too many motives of doubt and distrust.

Nor was this patriotic zeal to provide for the wants of the soldiers, confined to the men. The women in all parts of the country, displayed great activity, in collecting materials and preparing clothes for the soldiers. In Philadelphia, they formed a society, at the head of which was Martha Washington, wife of the commander-in-chief. This lady was as prudent in private, as her husband was in public affairs. Partaking of his complacent dignity and even temperament, she had no caprices to disturb his affections, and withdraw his attention from public affairs; and thus it was owing, in no inconsiderable degree, to the talents and virtues of his wife, that Washington could give himself wholly to the dictates of that patriotism, which this virtuous pair mutually shared, and reciprocally invigorated. Mrs. Washington, with the ladies who had formed the society, themselves subscribed considerable sums for the public; and having exhausted their own means, they exerted their influence, and went from house to house, to stimulate the liberality of others.

1780. Society of ladies; and character of Mrs. Washington.

CHAPTER XIII.

Campaign of 1780—continued.

AT this period, La Fayette returned with the cheering intelligence, that a body of French troops had, at the time of his departure, already embarked in a fleet destined for America. His exertions had accelerated their departure, and he had again come, self-devoted to the generous cause of freedom. He was received by all classes, with the ardent affection, which his bland manners and social as well as public virtues excited, and which his services and talents commanded.

1780. La Fayette returns to America.

The expected succors soon arrived at Rhode Island. They consisted of a squadron of seven sail of the line, five frigates, and two corvettes, commanded by M. de Ternay, bearing 6,000 soldiers, under the command of the Count de Rochambeau. To prevent the operation of that jealousy of the French troops, which was felt in America, the prudent arrangement had been made between congress and the court of Versailles, that General Washington should be the commander-in-chief of all the forces, both French and American; and that American officers should take rank of French officers of the same grade. The Americans welcomed their allies with every de-

July 10. A French squadron arrives with troops.

A spirit of true politeness serviceable to nations.

monstration of gratitude, and put them in immediate possession of the forts on Rhode Island. Washington, in order to cement more firmly the union between the two nations, ordered the distinctive colors of the national flags, to be blended in the banners of his army.

At New York, Admiral Arbuthnot, whose squadron had consisted of four ships of the line, was now reinforced by the arrival of six ships, under Admiral Graves. General Clinton determined on attacking the French immediately. He accordingly embarked on board the squadron of Admiral Graves, with 6,000 choice troops, and sailed for Rhode Island. Washington, in the meanwhile, having watched the movements of Clinton, immediately marched his army to Kingsbridge, with the intention of attacking New York, which was now left almost defenseless. But Clinton learning this movement, and finding also that the French were reinforced at Rhode Island, by the New England militia, relinquished the expedition, and returned to defend New York. The indecision and timidity manifested by the British, on this occasion, infused new courage into the Americans.

1780. Clinton sails to attack the French.

Washington compels him to return.

While these events were transpiring at the north, the inhabitants of the south were not inactive. The insolence of the British troops had become insupportable; and the people of North and South Carolina had assembled in numbers, and seized every opportunity of harassing them. Among the officers, who headed these desultory parties, none rendered such distinguished services as Colonels Sumpter and Marion. Sumpter was a native of South Carolina, and possessed an extensive influence with his fellow-citizens. He collected great numbers of the inhabitants, and although they were compelled to trust to chance for their means of subsistence, and even sometimes to use their implements of husbandry as weapons of war, yet they menaced the enemy in all directions. So daring were they, that in some instances, they encountered the enemy with but three charges of ammunition to a man.

Partisan warfare.

Sumpter and Marion.

Frequent skirmishes with the British, at length furnished them with muskets and cartridges, and Colonel Sumpter, whose numbers now amounted to 600 men, determined upon attacking some of their strong posts. His first attempt was upon Rocky Mount, where he was repulsed; he then made an attack at Hanging Rock, and destroyed a British regiment, stationed at that place. Perfectly acquainted with every part of the country, he was enabled to elude all pursuit. This partisan warfare, while it weakened the number of the English, emboldened the Americans, and strengthened their confidence in themselves.

Aug. 6. Sumpter defeats the British at Hanging Rock.

In the meantime a few regular troops, under the command of the Baron de Kalb, had been sent from Maryland to the defense of Carolina. Owing to the excessive heat of the

Baron de Kalb enters N. C. with a force, and is joined by Gen. Gates.

season, and the difficulty of procuring provisions, they proceeded by slow marches. On their way they were reinforced by the Virginia militia, and the troops of North Carolina, commanded by General Caswell. At Deep River they were joined, on the 25th of July, by General Gates, who had been appointed to the command of the southern army. He immediately advanced towards South Carolina with a force now amounting to about 4,000 men.

1780. Gates' proclamation.

When he arrived on the frontiers of the state, he issued a proclamation, inviting the inhabitants to join him, and promising pardon to all, from whom oaths had been extorted by the English, excepting those who had committed depredations against the persons and property of their fellow-citizens. Multitudes flocked to him, and even whole companies, which had been levied in the provinces for the service of the king, deserted.

He is joined by many.

Lord Rawdon, who had now the command of the British forces on the frontiers of Carolina, had concentrated them at Camden. On learning the approach of Gates, he gave immediate notice to Cornwallis, who soon after joined him. At ten, on the night of the 15th of August, the whole British force, amounting to 2,000 men, marched from Camden to attack the Americans in their camp at Clermont. Gates had also commenced his march from Clermont, with the view of surprising the British camp. About two in the morning, the advanced guards of the armies met and fired upon each other. From prisoners made on both sides, the commanders learned each other's movements. The two generals suspended their fire, waiting for the light of day, and the armies having halted, were formed in the order of battle. The ground on which they had met was exceedingly unfavorable to Gates; he could not advance to the attack but through a narrow way, bordered by a deep swamp, and the situation rendered the superiority of the American numbers of no avail.

Aug. 15. British and American armies, each plan a surprise, and unexpectedly meet.

In the morning a severe and general action was fought. The Virginia and North Carolina militia fled in the commencement of the battle, and General Gates in vain attempted to rally them. The continentals were thus left to maintain the contest, and though they defended themselves with great bravery, and several times gained ground, yet they were unable to restore the fortune of the day. The rout became general, the Americans fled in the greatest disorder. They were pursued by the British twenty-three miles. The whole loss of the Americans in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was about two thousand. General Gregory was killed; the Baron de Kalb, who was wounded, and General Rutherford were taken prisoners. All the artillery, baggage, and stores, fell into the hands of the enemy. The loss of the British amounted to

Aug. 16. Bloody battle of Camden and defeat of the Americans.

Death of de Kalb.

only three hundred and twenty-four. The Baron de Kalb died of his wounds three days after the battle.*

General Gates retreated to North Carolina, leaving the British triumphant in the south.

1780. Aug. 18. Tarleton surprises and defeats Sumpter.

Colonel Sumpter continued to show himself on the banks of the Wateree; but on learning the defeat of Gates, he retired with 300 men, and two field pieces, to North Carolina. Tarleton, with his legion, was sent in pursuit of him, and surprised him on the banks of Fishing Creek. Sumpter with a few of his men, escaped; but most of them were taken by Tarleton, and put to the sword.

General Marion.

Marion, who about this time was promoted to the rank of brigadier-general, still kept the field. Sheltering himself in the fastnesses of the mountains, he occasionally sallied out upon the British and tories, and seldom failed of surprising and capturing such parties, as with his small force it was prudent for him to attack.

CHAPTER XIV.

Campaign of 1780.—Arnold's Treason.

1780. Arnold a traitor.

While these affairs were transacting at the south, an unexpected event occurred at the north, which arrested the general attention. A design which had for fifteen months been maturing in darkness was now brought to light. Arnold, the loudest to proclaim, and the fiercest to fight for his patriotism, had bargained to sell himself and his country for gold.

Arnold's career of degeneracy.

Arnold was dear to the American people; he had been valiant in their service, and his maimed person bore the marks of the field of Saratoga. On account of his wounds he was obliged to retire from active service. He solicited and obtained from congress, the post of commandant of Philadelphia. Here he lived in princely magnificence. Inhabiting the house of Gov. Penn, he gave it a splendid furnishing, and it became a scene of high play, sumptuous banquets, and expensive balls. To support this pageantry, he resorted to commerce and privateering. Unfortunate in these, his next resource was the public treasure, to which, as an officer of the

He is censured by congress.

government, he had access. He presented accounts unworthy of a general. Congress indignant, caused them to be in-

* Of the monument, which has been erected in Camden, to the memory of de Kalb, La Fayette, in his latest visit to America, helped to lay the corner-stone. But where has America placed a memento of him?

vestigated. The commissioners whom they appointed, reduced them to one half. Arnold stormed; but on a reinvestigation, his accounts appeared even worse than the first report had stated them. Arnold now wreaked his vengeance, by the most shameless invectives against congress. The state of Pennsylvania took up the quarrel, and brought him before a court-martial. By the sentence of this court he was reprimanded by Washington.

He is reprimanded by Washington.

From what other quarter could he obtain the money to support his extravagance, since the last resource had failed? The coffers of England he knew, might be opened to supply him. He should also obtain revenge on the objects of his wrath: and for these motives he resolved to barter his conscience. He developed his intention in a letter which he addressed to Col. Robinson, by whom it was communicated to Sir Henry Clinton. Determined to make the most of his new ally, Clinton revolved in his mind what was the most important service which could be rendered, while Arnold's treachery remained concealed. The foe within the fortress, is employed by its enemy to open the gates. This was the nature of the service which Arnold was to perform; and, instigated by Clinton, he sought and obtained of Washington, the command of the fortress at West Point. As Arnold passed up the river to assume his command, how must those guardian mountains, whose rugged passes had so often sheltered the little army of his country, have seemed to frown upon the traitor, who was about to deliver it up to the enemy!

He negotiates with Sir Henry Clinton, and seeks, by his orders, the command at West Point.

His first measure was to scatter the army at different points, so that it might be easily cut off by the British. All was ready, and a few days would have consummated the treason, but for a providential disclosure. Major André, the aid-de-camp of General Clinton, had been by him intrusted with the negotiation. This young officer was, both in person and mind, one of the most perfect specimens of human nature; concentrating all the qualities which the writer of romance is fond of attributing to his hero. Sir Henry Clinton's partiality had however invested its object with a false light; or he would not have fixed on one so ingenuous, to conduct a plot requiring such art and subtlety.

Major André.

He corresponds with Arnold.

Arnold and André had corresponded under the feigned names of Gustavus and Anderson. As the crisis approached, they conceived that a personal interview was necessary, in order to concert their last measures. On the night of the 21st of September, André landed from the British sloop of war Vulture, a little below Stony Point, where he met Arnold. They spent the whole night in conference; and when the day dawned, their dispositions were not all concluded. André was kept in close concealment through the day, and at night he prepared to return. By the entreaties of Arnold, he was prevailed upon to change his uniform for a common

Sept. 21. They have a personal interview.

dress, instead of concealing it as he had formerly done by a cloak. As the Vulture had in consequence of an attack from the shore, dropped farther down the river, it became necessary for him to proceed towards New York by land. He took a horse from Arnold, and a passport, under the name of John Anderson. Having safely passed the American guard, and reached Tarrytown, near the British posts, three soldiers of the militia crossed his way, and he passed on. One of them thought the traveller had something peculiar in his appearance, and called him back. André inquired, "where are you from?" "From below," (intending to be understood from New-York,) replied the soldier. "So am I," said the self-betrayed André.

1780. André is taken by three soldiers.

He did not attempt to conceal his connection with the British, but he offered every bribe which he thought could tempt men like them. He pleaded with all the energy inspired by the love of life, and by the momentous concerns that his preservation then involved. But the humble patriots spurned the bribe, and were deaf to the entreaty. Their names were John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wert. They searched his person, and found papers in his boots, in the hand-writing of Arnold, which disclosed the treason. They immediately conducted André to Colonel Jameson, the officer who commanded the advanced guard near Peekskill. This officer hesitated. He could not be persuaded that his general would betray that country for which he had shed his blood; and he indiscreetly permitted André to write to him. Arnold thus learned that he was arrested; and, seizing a boat, he escaped on board the Vulture.

They take him to the nearest American fort.

Washington, during these transactions, had been to meet and confer with the French officers at Hartford, in Connecticut, but he had nearly reached his camp when the news met him. His first care was to learn whether Arnold had accomplices. Convinced by a strict scrutiny that none of his other officers were guilty, his next was the painful duty of bringing to trial and execution, the interesting young André.

Although from the usages of war, Washington might have given his prisoner, found as he was in disguise, the same hasty execution as that to which Howe had some years before sent the equally interesting Hale; yet he was aware, that in this transaction the eyes of Europe and America would be upon him, and his heart inclined him to mercy. He therefore summoned a court martial; and was careful to appoint a tribunal of whom none could complain, and who would be as merciful as public safety would allow. La Fayette and Greene were among its members; and who could doubt, if such men, with all the kindness of their nature, gave sentence of death, that such must have been the stern dictate of their military duty.

A court-martial appointed to try André.

Sir H. Clinton urges his acquittal.

From this fate, Sir Henry Clinton strove, with all the

earnestness of a tender father, to shield his favourite. He wrote to Washington, urging, that whatever André had done, especially the change of his dress, was by the direction of Arnold, an American general;—and that his detention was a violation of the sanctity of flags, and the usages of nations. Arnold also wrote in his favor, endeavouring to charge himself with the blame of the transaction; and alledging, that in his character, as an American general, he had a right to grant to André the usual privilege of a flag, for the purpose of conferring with him, and to provide for his safe return in any manner he should choose.

1780. Arnold writes.

André appeared before his judges with a noble frankness. He was calm and composed, as to his own fate, but anxious to screen his friends, especially Sir Henry Clinton. He disguised no fact, and resorted to no subterfuge. He ingenuously disavowed what Clinton and Arnold had mainly urged in his defense, that he had come under the protection of a flag; and the fact was unquestioned that he was in disguise. Grieving at the sentence they were compelled to pronounce, his judges condemned him to death as a spy.

André condemned to death.

Clinton, smitten with anguish, again sought to negotiate his release; and Washington, at his request, sent General Greene down the river to meet and confer with General Robinson. This friend of André exerted all the powers of reasoning to convince Greene that the sentence was unjust. Failing in that, he urged his release on the score of interest; he promised, that any American, charged with whatever crime, should be exchanged for André; and he hinted that the sparing of his favourite, would do much in the mind of the British commander in favor of the Americans. Finding all these efforts unavailing, he resorted to threats. He delivered a letter from Arnold, which contained the declaration, that if André was executed, the rebels of Carolina, hitherto spared by Clinton, should all be put to instant death. This interference of Arnold would have injured the cause it designed to serve, had not that cause been already hopeless.

British again attempt his release by promises and threats.

André prepared to meet his approaching fate. Life, and its fair prospects, he could relinquish: but there were circumstances relating to his domestic affections, and his honor, which touched his heart. His widowed mother and his sisters, on the far shore of an intervening ocean, were watching for every vessel that might bring them news of him. One would reach them in a few weeks; and who would console them for its tidings! and must they learn not only that he was dead, but that he died upon the gallows! There was the bitterness of death; and he besought Washington, that he might be allowed to die by the musket, and not by the halter. The cruel rules of that sanguinary science, which philanthropy hopes may, in some future age, cease to exist, compelled Washington to deny even this poor request. André then asked per-

He prepares for death.

Oct. 2. Is executed.

mission to write to Sir Henry Clinton, which was granted; and to the care of this general, he commended his widowed mother, and afflicted sisters. Brought to the gallows, he said, "And must I die thus?" The burst of grief was calmed by devotion, when he said, with composure, "bear me witness that I die as a brave man should die;" and the scene closed.

1780.

Arnold rewarded, but despised.

Arnold received from the British £10.000, and the rank of brigadier-general. For this he bartered his honor, his peace, and his fame;—changing the high esteem of the public into general detestation. The English, although they stooped to purchase the treason, could not but despise the traitor. Even his innocent children could not defend their little rights among their playmates; but the finger of scorn was pointed at them, and they were hissed with "traitor," "traitor."*

The captors of Andre rewarded and honored.

The three captors of André were honored as benefactors to their country. They received the thanks of congress, a silver medal, and a pension for life.

Sept. Cornwallis arrives at Charlottetown.

Cornwallis, after the battle of Camden, directed his efforts to the subjugation of North Carolina; and with that view, he commenced his march from Camden towards Charlottetown. But, in order to maintain the royal cause in South Carolina, he distributed detachments of troops upon different parts of the frontier. He arrived at Charlottetown about the last of September.

In the meantime, Colonel Ferguson, who had been previously sent into the province by Lord Cornwallis, had committed acts of so barbarous a nature, as to awaken the highest indignation. Wherever he went, devastation marked his progress, and the people determined no longer to submit to his atrocities. The mountaineers collected in great numbers, under several commanders, the principal of whom were Col. Campbell and Col. Shelby; and arming themselves with such weapons as they could obtain, they attacked Ferguson on a woody eminence, called King's Mountain. He fell, after a vigorous contest, and three hundred of his party were killed and wounded. His successor in command surrendered.

Oct. 7. Defeat of Ferguson at King's Mountain.

This defeat was a severe blow to Cornwallis, and rendered his situation in North Carolina precarious. The loyalists, intimidated, no longer evinced an eagerness to espouse his cause. The republicans assembling under Colonels Sumpter and Marion, made every effort to annoy him; and the royal troops were in continual danger of being surprised by these active leaders. Under these circumstances, he found it prudent to retire to South Carolina, and await the reinforcements which he there expected. He accordingly repassed the Catawba, and stationed his army at Winnsborough, where he could con-

Cornwallis retreats to South Carolina.

* I had this little fact from a lady, who was herself a schoolmate of Arnold's children. It was hard upon these innocent beings; but it may be usefully related. Perhaps, could Arnold have known the insults to which his conduct would have exposed his children, he would have paused, before it was too late; and the same reflection may save some future father, when tempted to a deed of dishonor.

veniently hold communication with the forces at Camden and Ninety-Six.

In order to co-operate with Lord Cornwallis, Sir Henry Clinton had detached General Leslie, with a corps of 3,000 men, to Virginia. They landed at Portsmouth, and ravaged the adjacent country. In consequence of the defeat of Ferguson, Cornwallis ordered Leslie to embark for Charleston.

1780.
Rencounter between Sumpter and Tarleton.

Colonel Sumpter continued to harass the British on all sides. He had surprised some small detachments, and made many prisoners. Tarleton was now sent by Cornwallis, to surprise this formidable officer. He found him posted at Blackstocks, near Tiger river. Tarleton attacked with great impetuosity, but was soon compelled to retreat. But Sumpter being dangerously wounded, and unable to retain the command of his forces, they were disbanded.

Dec. 2.
Gates is superseded by Greene.

General Gates had, during the period of these transactions, exerted himself to collect new troops, and had greatly improved the condition of his army. He had not, however, been successful in the southern war; and Washington, in consequence of a request from the south, nominated Greene to supersede him. This officer found the army at Charlottetown; and, notwithstanding the exertions of Gates, it was still feeble, and unable to cope with Cornwallis. He therefore determined, by the advice of the commander-in-chief, not to hazard a general action, but to harass, if possible, the British army, and reduce it by degrees.

Arnold makes a descent upon Virginia.

General Leslie, with a reinforcement of 1,500 men, now joined Cornwallis, at Winnsborough. This accession of troops renewed his hopes of reducing North Carolina and Virginia. To render the success of the enterprise more certain, by preventing the Virginians from sending succors to Greene, Arnold had been sent to the Chesapeake, with fifty transports and 1,600 men. He landed his troops in Virginia, and commenced, what now seemed his favorite employment, the devastation of his country.

CHAPTER XV.

Campaign of 1781.—European Politics.—American Affairs.

1780–1.
Operations of the belligerent powers.

England, during the past year, though alone in arms, against both hemispheres, had remained unshaken. Spain had, at immense expense, laid and continued the siege of Gibraltar, which, under its commander, Elliot, had made the most obstinate defense found in the annals of modern history. That nation had also sent out immense fleets, which, uniting with those of France and Holland, had twice threatened Eng-

land itself with invasion; but untoward circumstances prevented the attempt.

The naval operations of the belligerent powers were, during these years, of astonishing magnitude. Great battles were fought in the West Indian and European seas; in which the allies and the English were each, alternately, the conquerors and the conquered. Each also took from the other, on various occasions, large fleets of merchant vessels. But, in these captures, the advantage had been more frequently with the English. Several of the West India islands changed masters during these contests. Pensacola was, in May, taken by the Spaniards, who thence extended their conquests over the whole province of Florida.

1780-1. De Grasse to be sent from France with a fleet.

Amidst these contests, neither England nor France forgot America. France, in addition to the force under Rochambeau, determined to send out a large fleet, under the Count de Grasse, which, after performing certain services in the West Indies, was to repair to the coast of America, and co-operate with de Rochambeau and Washington. This measure proved of the highest importance to America.

English send reinforcements.

The English equipped a fleet, by which Lord Cornwallis was to receive a reinforcement of several regiments of English troops, and 3,000 Hessians.

America in an exhausted condition.

The situation of America at this period was such as to give hope to her enemy, and alarm to her friends. The efforts made, during the preceding year, and the successes experienced at the south, had produced the happy effect of reviving public spirit. But although temporary relief had been afforded, no permanent means of supplying the returning and increasing wants of the army, had been provided; and from this cause, the country seemed standing on the verge of ruin.

Perplexities of congress.

It is scarcely possible to conceive a situation more trying than that of the American congress. They were striving, not for conquest, but for existence; their powerful foe was in full strength, in the heart of their country; they had great military operations to carry on, but were almost without an army, and wholly without money. Their bills of credit had ceased to be of any worth; and they were reduced to the mortifying necessity of declaring, by their own acts, that this was the fact; as they no longer made them a legal tender, or received them in payment of taxes. Without money of some kind, an army could neither be raised, nor maintained. But the greater the exigency, the greater were the exertions of this determined band of patriots.

They lay a direct tax to raise money.

They directed their agents abroad to borrow, if possible, from France, Spain, and Holland. They resorted to taxation; although they knew that the measure would be unpopular; and that they had not the power to enforce their decree. The tax laid was apportioned among the several state governments, by whose authority it was to be collected. Perceiving that

there was disorder, waste, and peculation in the management of the fiscal concerns, they determined on introducing thorough reform and strict economy. They accordingly appointed as treasurer, Robert Morris, of Philadelphia; a man whose pure morals, ardent patriotism, and great knowledge of financial concerns, eminently fitted him for this important station.

Appoint Robert Morris treasurer.

The zeal and genius of Morris soon produced the most favorable results. By a national bank, to which he obtained the approbation of congress, he contrived to draw out the funds of wealthy individuals, and by borrowing, in the name of the government, from this bank, and pledging for payment the taxes not yet collected, he was enabled to anticipate them, and command a ready supply. He also used his own private credit, which was good, though that of his government had failed; and, at one time, bills, signed by him individually, were in circulation, to the amount of five hundred and eighty-one thousand dollars.

1780–1.

The genius of Morris.

Founds the first national bank.

While America received this great service from the zeal and ability of one of her patriots at home, she owed not less to the exertions of another abroad. Franklin, at the court of France, obtained from Louis XVI. a gift of six millions of livres; and as Holland refused to lend to the United States, on their own credit, the French monarch granted at the solicitations of the minister, his guarantee to the States General; who, on this security, lent to congress the sum of ten millions of livres. Spain refused to furnish money to the United States, unless they would renounce the navigation of the Mississippi, which was steadily refused.

Franklin obtains money from France and Holland.

The funds raised from abroad and at home, were expended with the utmost prudence. All who furnished supplies, were paid by the treasurer, with the strictest punctuality; and public confidence, by degrees, sprang up in the place of distrust; order and economy in the room of confusion and waste.

The new measures restore confidence.

Before these measures had imparted vigor to the fainting republic, an event occurred which threatened its subversion: in fact, it was one of the causes which led to the reformation in the finance, and the establishment of the new system. The whole Pennsylvania line, amounting to near 1,500 men, revolted. They were suffering the extremity of want. They had enlisted for three years, or during the war; and as the three years expired at the close of 1780, they contended that they had now a right to be discharged, and to return to their homes. The government, however, maintained that they had a claim to their services until the close of the war. From these causes a violent tumult broke out on the night of the 1st of January. The soldiers declared that they would march, with arms in their hands, to the hall of congress, and demand justice. It was in vain that their officers attempted to appease them. Their most popular leaders, La Fayette, and others, were constrained to quit the camp. Gen-

Jan. 1. Revolt of the Pennsylvania line.

eral Wayne presented himself boldly among them, with a pistol in his hand; but they menaced his life, and pointed their bayonets, as if to execute their threats. Marching towards Philadelphia, they had already advanced from Middlebrook to Princeton, when they were met by Generals Reed and Sullivan, who were commissioners appointed by congress to investigate facts, and take measures for the restoration of public tranquillity.

1781. A pacific course advised by Washington, and adopted by congress.

In the meantime, Sir Henry Clinton, informed of these affairs, made every disposition to draw the mutineers into the service of the British. He passed with his forces into Staten Island, and sent three American loyalists, to make them the most tempting offers. These the insurgents declined. Meanwhile, the commissioners of congress, having been advised by Washington to pursue a pacific course, offered to grant discharges to those who had enlisted for three years, or during the war. They promised remuneration for what they had lost by the depreciation of paper securities, the earliest possible payment of arrears, an immediate supply of necessary clothing, and an oblivion of their past conduct. The mutineers accepted the proposals; and congress, in due time, fulfilled the conditions. The Pennsylvanians then delivered to congress, the emissaries of Clinton, who were immediately hanged.

Clinton's emissaries hanged.

New Jersey troops revolt, and are punished.

A few days after this affair, the troops of New Jersey also erected the standard of revolt. Washington, prepared to expect some movement of the kind, instantly marched against them with so powerful a force, that he compelled them to submit; and chastising their leaders with severity, the army was no longer disturbed by sedition.

Greene separates the southern army into two divisions.

In the meantime, the war was vigorously carried on at the south, by both the contending parties. General Greene separated his army, which consisted of 2,000 men, into two parts, and at the head of one division he encamped at the confluence of Hicks' creek with the Pedee; while Colonel Morgan, at the head of the other, moved by his direction into the western part of the state, to guard the passages of the Pacolet.

Jan. 17. Battle of Cowpens.

Morgan defeats Tarleton.

Cornwallis, unwilling to advance into North Carolina, while Morgan was in his rear, detached Tarleton to oppose him with a corps of eleven hundred men, and two field pieces. Tarleton finding Morgan at a place called the Cowpens, attacked with his usual impetuosity. After one of the severest and best fought engagements of the whole war, the British were defeated. The disparity of loss in this engagement was surprising; that of the British being three hundred killed and wounded, while that of the Americans was only twelve killed, and sixty wounded. Colonel Morgan took five hundred prisoners, and all the artillery and baggage of the enemy. Colonels Washington, Howard, and Pickens, distinguished themselves in this action.

Colonel Morgan now directed his march towards Virginia.

1781.

Cornwallis, mortified at the defeat of his favorite officer, prepared to pursue him with vigour. He intended to intercept him on his route, retake the prisoners, and prevent his junction with Greene. Both Morgan and Cornwallis now proceeded by forced marches towards the Catawba, each army exerting themselves to reach the fords before the other. Morgan had the advantage. He had crossed the river two hours only when the British appeared on the opposite bank. Night came on, and Cornwallis was obliged to delay crossing until daylight. A heavy rain fell, and in the morning the ford was impassable, and the impatient Cornwallis was obliged to wait three days before the subsiding waters allowed him to pass.

Morgan is pursued by Cornwallis, but is saved by the rise of waters.

In the meantime, Greene, anxious for the fate of the pursued troops, had left his army under the command of General Huger, to make their way toward the sources of the rivers, where they were fordable, and had himself proceeded with only a few attendants, to join Morgan. It was at this juncture, that he arrived at the camp, and took upon himself the command. Another race now commenced. The British came up with the Americans at the ford of the Yadkin. The republican army had crossed over, and only a quantity of baggage remained on the right bank of the river when the foe appeared in sight. Again the waters suddenly rose, and Cornwallis was once more obliged to stop, and look inactively on, while the expected fruit of toilsome marches was snatched from him. And it was done by no human hand. At this signal deliverance every pious feeling of the American bosom rose in gratitude to Him, who had made to them, as to his people of old, a way through the waters, while he had closed it to their enemies.

Another race from the Catawba to the Yadkin.

Americans again saved.

General Greene directed his course towards Guilford, where he was to be joined by General Huger. On the 9th of February, the two detachments of the American army reached that place, and effected their junction in safety. Cornwallis now proceeded to the Dan; intending, by reaching these fords before the Americans, to prevent their communication with Virginia. In this also, he was disappointed: the Americans, on the 14th, crossed the Dan, with all their artillery, baggage, and stores, leaving the British yet in their rear.

Feb. 9. Two divisions of the American army unite.

They reach the Dan. Still in advance of Cornwallis.

Cornwallis now repaired to Hillsborough. where he endeavored to prevail upon the inhabitants of North Carolina, to espouse the royal cause. But the people generally considered it to be declining, and few listened to the call. He however sent Tarleton, with his legion, to the district between the Haw and Deep Rivers, to encourage the rising of the loyalists, whom he had understood to be numerous in that quarter. General Greene had sent Col. Lee, with a body of cavalry to attack a company of loyalists, marching to Cornwallis, under the command of Colonel Pyle. The Americans charged them with vigor, and the tories, supposing them to be

Singular defeat of two parties of royalists.

Tarleton's legion, and themselves mistaken for republicans, declared their attachment to the royal cause, and vociferated the cry, "long live the king." Between two and three hundred were killed by their enraged assailants, and the survivors compelled to surrender. Tarleton, by a singular coincidence, soon after met another small body of royalists, collected for a similar purpose, and slaughtered them, believing them to be republicans. While advancing to encounter Lee, Tarleton was called back, by Cornwallis, to Hillsborough.

1781. March 15. Battle of Guilford court-house. The Americans retreat.

Greene had now received a reinforcement of continental troops, and several bodies of militia, which augmented his army to, 4,400; and he no longer wished to avoid an engagement with the British. Having made every preparation in his power, he marched, and took post at Guilford court-house, about eight miles from the grounds occupied by the British general. The armies met on the 15th of March. Early in the battle, some companies of the militia fled, and the American regulars were thus left to maintain the conflict alone. They fought for an hour and a half, with great bravery, and in some instances forced the British to give way. They were, however, at length compelled to retreat, but it was only step by step, and without breaking their ranks. The loss of the Americans in this engagement, was estimated at 1,300; that of the British in proportion to their number, was more considerable.

The vanquished general pursues the victorious.

Greene now retreated to Speedwell's iron works, ten miles from the field of battle. Cornwallis, although he had the reputation of a victor, found himself, in consequence of his losses, obliged to retreat, while Greene was in a condition to pursue; thus affording the singular spectacle of a vanquished, pursuing a victorious army. Cornwallis retired to Bell's mills, and after a few days' repose, marched towards Wilmington. Greene, having collected the fugitives of his army, followed the British, and, with his light infantry, continually infested their rear. He, however, soon altered his course, and proceeded, by forced marches, towards Camden in South Carolina.

Cornwallis proceeds to Virginia.

On Cornwallis' arrival at Wilmington, he was undetermined whether to return to the relief of South Carolina, or to march into Virginia, and join the forces under Arnold. A council of war was called, which decided upon the last measure, and the British general, after having remained in Wilmington a few days, to refresh his troops, proceeded towards Petersburg; leaving the command of the forces in the Carolinas, to Lord Rawdon, whose talent and military ardor would, he hoped, be able to hold the army of Greene in check, keep possession of the province, and establish the British authority.

CHAPTER XVI.

Campaign of 1781, continued.

LORD RAWDON having fixed his head-quarters at Camden, fortified the place with great care. The other principal posts of the British in this region, were Charleston, Ninety-six, and Augusta. They had, however, garrisoned several others of minor importance. The disaffection of the inhabitants to the British cause, compelled them thus to divide their troops, in order to maintain points, whose communication with each other was necessary to their subsistence. The retreat of Cornwallis gave the republicans new hopes. Sumpter and Marion, by their bold but prudent movements, were continually gaining advantages over the royalists. Regarded as leaders who would conduct their followers to success and glory, hundreds flocked to their standards, whom they organized into regular companies. Thus they became so powerful, that they were able to hold in check the whole of lower Carolina, while Greene, with his army, faced Lord Rawdon in the highlands. This officer, finding that his position was becoming dangerous, strengthened his army by calling in several of his outposts.

1781
Sumpter and Marion annoy the British.

General Greene, at this time, appeared in view of Camden, at the head of his army. He intrenched himself within a mile's distance, at Hobkirk's Hill. Rawdon would have retreated towards Charleston; but the way was occupied by the light troops of Sumpter and Marion. He perceived that the Americans trusted to the strength of their post, and guarded it with negligence. Leaving Camden in the care of the convalescents, he marched, on the night of the 25th of April, with every man in his army capable of carrying a firelock, and taking a circuitous route, he fell, by surprise, on the left flank of the Americans. Greene, perceiving that the British moved in a solid, but not extended column, immediately caused them to be attacked, at the same time, on both flanks, and in front. The battle became general and fierce. The royalists gave way. Rawdon pushed forward his reserve. The Americans, in their turn, retreated, and the efforts of Greene and his officers, to rally them, were ineffectual. The loss of the Americans, in killed, wounded, and missing, was 268; that of the British, nearly equal.

April 25.
Americans surprised and defeated at Hobkirk's Hill.

The American general, after this affair, retired from Hobkirk's Hill, and encamped about five miles from his former position, to re-organize his army. Rawdon, like Cornwallis at Guilford, found the effects of the battle to be rather those of a defeat than a victory. He was inferior to his enemy in

1781.
May 10.
Rawdon evacuates Camden.

British forts taken by the Americans.

cavalry, and could not pursue him. With his army weakened, the inhabitants in every direction, were rising against him; and he had reason to tremble for several of his posts, which, as he was informed, were besieged by the Americans. On the 10th of May he evacuated Camden, razed its fortifications, and retreated towards Charleston. On the 13th, he arrived at Nelson's ferry; where he learned, that Forts Watson and Georgetown had capitulated to Marion and Lee; and Motte, to Sumpter. The prisoners, taken in these forts, amounted to nearly 800, besides a considerable quantity of military stores. From Nelson's ferry, Rawdon moved to Eutaw Springs.

May 22.
Greene invests Ninety-Six.

Ninety-Six and Augusta were now the only posts which remained to the British in the upper country, and these were already invested by militia, under colonels Clarke and Pickens. General Greene now directed his army against Ninety-Six, which was the strong hold of the royalists; and, on the 22d of May, began a regular siege.

June 5.
Augusta capitulates to the Americans.

Meantime, Rawdon, whose army had been reinforced by three regiments from Ireland, put himself in motion to oppose the Americans and preserve his fortresses, particularly that of Ninety-Six. On his march, he learned that Augusta had capitulated to the militia, commanded by the gallant colonel Pickens.

June 18.
Greene makes an unsuccessful attack upon Ninety-Six, and retires.

Greene believed that his troops were in no condition to contend against the augmented army of Rawdon, combined with the garrison of Ninety-Six. Unwilling, however, to leave the place without an effort, which should, at least, vindicate the honor of the American arms, he made a vigorous assault upon the fort, and gained a considerable advantage, though he did not succeed in capturing it. He then removed his army beyond the Tiger and Broad rivers. Rawdon approached, and made some unavailing attempts to draw Greene into an engagement. After this, he entered and examined Ninety-Six; and finding the place not capable of withstanding a regular attack, he abandoned it, and directed his march towards Orangeburg; where, on the 12th of July, he established his head-quarters. Greene followed him; but, finding his position covered by the windings of the Edisto, he beat his march, on the 16th, to the heights which border the Santee. The season proving uncommonly hot and sickly, the contending armies, by tacit consent suspended their operations.

Hostilities suspended.

Colonel Isaac Hayne.

During this period, occurred the last scene of a memorable tragedy. At the commencement of the war, none could have been found more the subject of envy, than Isaac Hayne. Blessed with the goods of fortune, he was eminently endowed with those qualities which gain the love of men, and he possessed all the finer sensibilities which ennoble our nature, and glow in the breast of the husband, the father, the friend and the patriot. At the commencement of the war, he enter-

1781.

ed with ardor into the views of the republicans, and assisted in person at the defense of Charleston. On the surrender of that city, Colonel Hayne, whose consequence, as a leader, was appreciated by the British, was offered the alternative of becoming a British subject, or going into rigorous confinement. For himself, he would not have hesitated a moment to choose captivity. But his wife and children were at his plantation languishing with the small-pox. And not only did he feel it agony, at such a time, to be separated from them, but he knew, that should he refuse the offer of the British, a lawless soldiery would violate and lay waste the retreat of his suffering family. Torn by conflicting duties, who could blame him, if, in such a situation, the husband and the father triumphed over the patriot. He consented to invest himself with the condition of a British subject, on the solemn assurances of General Patterson, that he should not be called on to bear arms against his countrymen.

Virtues and sufferings of Colonel Hayne.

Meanwhile, the republicans had found means to change the fortune of the war. The British obliged to act on the defensive, no longer regarded their engagements as sacred, but called on Hayne, with others, to repair to the royal army. Feeling now released from an obligation which the British themselves had violated, he left a home which had been desolated by the loss of his wife and two of his children, and once more took arms in the cause, which he had ever held dear. Engaged as a colonel commanding a corps in the partisan warfare, he was taken prisoner, and confined in a deep dungeon in Charleston. Without even the form of a trial, Lord Rawdon, with Colonel Balfour, the commandant of Charleston, contrary to the usages of war, sentenced him to death. The royalists, with the governor at their head, petitioned for the prisoner, and declared the impolicy of the act. The most distinguished women of Charleston, touched with his virtues, plead for him with feeling and eloquence. But more than all, his children, clad in mourning for their mother, appeared before the judges, and stretching out their little hands, entreated with tears, for the life of their surviving parent. But it was all in vain, and Hayne was led to execution.

General sympathy excited.

Aug. 4. Execution of Colonel Hayne.

Amidst the execrations, which Rawdon's unrelenting cruelty had, in this instance, drawn, not only upon himself, but upon the cause which he had thought proper to use such means in vindicating, that general left the capital of Carolina, and returning to England, the command of the army devolved on Colonel Stuart.

Rawdon superseded by Colonel Stuart.

CHAPTER XVII.

Campaign of 1781—continued.

PART III. PERIOD II. CHAP. XVII.

General Greene, still in his camp, at the High Hills of the Santee, had made the best use in his power, of the time allowed him by the suspension of arms. It was now the beginning of September; the sultriness of the season had abated, and he determined, if possible, to dispossess the British of the remaining posts in the upper country. He crossed the Wateree, and marched, circuitously, to the Congaree; passed it with all his army, and descended along its right bank, intending to attack Colonel Stuart, who, at this time, occupied a post at M'Cord's Ferry. He fell back upon Eutaw Springs, and thither General Greene pursued him.

1781. Sept. 8. Battle of Eutaw Springs.

The armies engaged on the 8th. The battle of Eutaw Springs, is memorable as being one of the most bloody, and valiantly contested fields of the war; and also for being the last of any note that occurred at the south. General Greene drew up his forces with great skill, and made the attack. His soldiers resorted promptly to the use of the bayonet, which they had formerly appeared to dread. The British were routed and fled; but finding, in their flight, a large house and some other objects, affording shelter, they rallied, and repulsed their assailants with heavy loss. Greene, finding it impossible to dislodge them, retreated to his camp, bearing 500 prisoners. The whole loss of the British, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was about 1,000, that of the Americans, 600. Congress voted their thanks to General Greene, and presented him with a conquered standard and a medal. Greene was ably seconded by his officers, among whom were colonels Lee and Washington, the latter of whom was wounded and taken prisoner.

Greene's army having been reinforced, the British no longer dared to keep the open country, but retired to Charleston. Thus had the Americans, in a few months, recovered the whole of South Carolina and Georgia, except their capitals. The skill and valor manifested by Greene, in their defense, have given him a rank among the heroes of the revolution, second to none but the commander-in-chief.

Jan. 4. Arnold ravages Virginia.

It will be recollected, that we left both Cornwallis and the traitor Arnold in Virginia. The latter had landed on the 4th of January, with a force of 1,600 men, in the vicinity of Richmond, where he destroyed the public stores. He then sent detachments to different places, and not only public stores were wasted, but Arnold and his officers committed the most wanton depredations on private property.

1781.

Washington, although perplexed with the recent mutiny of the troops, and the deranged state of the finances, concerted measures with the French, by means of which, he hoped to relieve Virginia, and obtain possession of the traitor and his force. La Fayette, at the head of 1,200 light infantry, was sent towards Virginia, while the commander of the French fleet, at Rhode Island, dispatched a squadron of eight sail of the line to cut off the retreat of Arnold from the Chesapeake. But Clinton, gaining intelligence of the plan, sent Admiral Arbuthnot to the relief of Arnold, with a squadron of equal force. These two fleets met, and fought off Cape Henry, on the 16th of March, and suffered equal, though not very considerable loss. But the French were constrained to relinquish their design, and return to Rhode Island. Upon hearing this, La Fayette, who had arrived at Annapolis, retreated to the head of Elk.

La Fayette sent to Virginia.

March 16. Battle between the French and English fleets off Cape Henry.

Clinton, finding how narrowly Arnold had escaped, sent to his assistance General Philips, with 2,000 men. Thus reinforced, he resumed the work of pillage and destruction. La Fayette arrived in time to save Richmond; but he witnessed from that place, the conflagration of Manchester, on the opposite bank of the James. About this time, both parties learned the approach of Cornwallis, and it became the object of Philips and Arnold, to form a junction with him. They marched to Petersburg to await his arrival. They arrived before Cornwallis. General Philips sickened and died on the 13th of May, and, on the 20th, Cornwallis reached the place.

May 20. Junction of British armies at Petersburg.

After remaining a few days at Petersburg, Cornwallis, now in command of the combined forces, directed their march into the interior of Virginia, supposing as was the fact, that the Americans were too weak, and too much dispersed, to offer any effectual opposition. There were, however, three separate corps of republican troops in Virginia; one, under General La Fayette; another, and a smaller one, under the Baron Steuben; and the Pennsylvania line under General Wayne. Had they been united, they were by no means a match for the army of Cornwallis. But La Fayette, who had the chief command, showed how well he had profited by the lessons of Washington. Prudent and brave, understanding better than the British, the ground over which the armies moved, he harassed them, and restrained their motions; without once suffering himself to be led into a snare, or his army to be endangered. When Cornwallis pursued, he retreated; when, intent upon some other object, his foe held another direction, immediately La Fayette pursued in his turn, hanging upon his rear, and embarrassing his movements.

La Fayette harasses Cornwallis.

While at Westover, Cornwallis detached Colonel Tarleton to Charlotteville, where the legislature of Virginia were in session, and, at the same time, sent a detachment to the Point of Fork, at the junction of the two rivers, which form the

Tarleton surprises Charlotteville.

James, to seize some stores at that place. Both these expeditions were, in a measure, successful; but Tarleton was disappointed of the prize on which he most calculated. This was the capture of Gov. Jefferson, who, after having provided for the safety of a considerable quantity of arms and ammunition, found means to elude the vigilance of his pursuers.

1781. Sir H. Clinton orders Cornwallis to the coast.

Cornwallis, while thus ranging the interior of Virginia, constantly checked, however, by La Fayette, was suddenly recalled to the sea-coast, by an order from Sir Henry Clinton, who being apprehensive that the Americans and French meditated an attack on New York, and fearing that he was not in sufficient force to resist them, had directed Cornwallis to embark 3,000 of his troops, to join his garrison. That general, intent on obeying the mandate, marched with his army to Portsmouth; where he received orders to retain the troops. Clinton, having received a reinforcement of 3,000 Germans, now believed he could dispense with further aid; and ordered Cornwallis to proceed to Point Comfort, and there fortify, in order that the British might have, in any event, a secure retreat. Cornwallis found reasons for disliking this post, and obtained, of Clinton, permission to select another. He fixed on Yorktown, a village, which is situated on the right bank of York river. Upon the opposite side of the stream, on a projecting point, which narrows and deepens its channel, is the smaller village of Gloucester. Cornwallis entered Yorktown, August 23d, and proceeded to erect fortifications.

Aug. 23. Cornwallis enters Yorktown.

May. Washington meditates an attack on New York.

Washington, anxious to avail himself of the naval superiority, which the expected French fleet under de Grasse would afford, had a meeting with Count Rochambeau, at Wethersfield, in Connecticut. Here it was proposed to attack New York. Clinton, apprised of this, determined, as we have seen, to recall a part of the forces of Cornwallis, but was prevented by the arrival of 3,000 German troops, which increased his garrison to upwards of 10,000.

August. Changes his plan.

In the meantime, Washington was disappointed in his expected recruits. Instead of 12,000 regular troops, which he hoped to have, he could hardly muster 5,000, a number, by no means adequate to the projected siege. He learned that the Count de Grasse, could not remain on the American coast longer than October, and finally, that his destination was the Chesapeake. From these considerations, Washington suddenly changed his plan, and bent all his energies to take Cornwallis in the snare which he seemed laying for himself.

Success depended upon secrecy; for had Sir Henry Clinton been apprised of his object, he might, at first have defeated it. But it may reasonably be supposed, that few, at this time, were in the counsels of the commander-in-chief; for never was a secret better kept, or an enemy more completely deceived. Washington made every show of preparation to attack New York. He broke up his camp at New Windsor,

1781.

and advanced down the river to Kingsbridge. The French army, consisting of 5,000 men, under Rochambeau, had marched from Rhode Island, and joined him early in July. They appeared daily to expect the arrival of de Grasse at New York. Suddenly Washington crossed the Hudson, and directed the rapid march of the allied armies across New Jersey. But he had caused a report to be spread, that this was merely a feint, to draw Clinton from his fortifications, that he might fight him in the open field. Clinton deceived, remained within his fortress. Washington, now learning that de Grasse was near the Chesapeake, no longer delayed crossing the Delaware; but steered direct for his object, well satisfied, that the time for his foe to prevent its accomplishment was past. He arrived, after a rapid march, at the head of Elk, on the 25th of August; and having made the necessary arrangements for the transportation of his army, he went, attended by Count Rochambeau, to Philadelphia, and Baltimore. Leaving there the French commander, Washington made a short visit to Mount Vernon. This was the first time he had crossed the threshhold of his beloved home for six years and five months: so entirely had he been devoted to his public duties. On the 14th of September, the two commanders joined La Fayette at Williamsburg.

He moves to the south.

Aug. 25. Arrives at the head of Elk.

The Count de Grasse, with twenty-five sail of the line, entered the mouth of the Chesapeake, only one hour before Washington arrived at the head of Elk, and immediately performed the part assigned to him, by blocking up the mouths of the York and James rivers; thus cutting off all communication between the British at Yorktown and New York. He also opened a communication with La Fayette, who, when Cornwallis first took post at Yorktown, had occupied a position higher up the river, but had now descended as far as Williamsburg. The allies feared that Cornwallis, seeing the toils into which he was falling, would turn upon La Fayette, who was his inferior in force. To prevent this, 3,000 light troops, under the Marquis de St. Simon, were sent up the river in boats to join him at Williamsburg.

De Grasse enters and blocks up the Chesapeake.

Cornwallis had strengthened his works, and could only be overcome by a regular siege. The allies needed artillery, and other preparations for besieging Yorktown. These they expected from Rhode Island, to be brought by a French squadron, commanded by the Count de Barras, who had made sail three days before the arrival of de Grasse in the Chesapeake. To prevent falling in with the British fleet, Barras had stood far out to sea. While expecting him, de Grasse, on the 5th of September, saw, off the capes, a British fleet of nineteen sail, under Admiral Graves. The French admiral, advised by Washington, behaved with great skill and prudence. He engaged the British partially, to draw them from their anchorage ground; by which means, the

Sept. 5. Partial action between the English and French fleets.

Count de Barras, as he expected, was enabled to pass by them into the bay, but refused a general engagement, which would have been putting at hazard a game, which, with prudence, was already in the hands of the allies.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Campaign of 1781.—Continued.

CORNWALLIS had now little hope of escape, but from Clinton. To him he had found means to represent his situation, and closely invested as he was, he received an answer to his communication. By this he was informed, that troops would, if possible, embark from New York for his relief, by the 5th of October.

Clinton, hoping to make a diversion in his favor, projected an expedition against New London, in Connecticut, the command of which he gave to Arnold, lately returned from Virginia. The access to the port of New London, was guarded by forts Trumbull and Griswold, erected on the opposite banks of the Thames. Fort Trumbull was easily captured. The garrison of fort Griswold was composed of militia, hastily collected in the vicinity; and, under the command of the estimable Colonel Ledyard. They made a resolute defense, and killed numbers of the assailants. At length they were overpowered, and ceased to resist. As the British entered, an officer inquired, "who commands this fort?" "I did," said Colonel Ledyard, "but you do now;" and presented his sword. The monster took it, and plunged it in his bosom. This was the signal for slaughter. Forty, out of one hundred and sixty, were all that escaped. Scarcely was there a father of a family, in this little town of Groton, but was that night butchered, and almost its entire population were made widows and orphans.

1781. Sept. 6. Fort Trumbull taken by the British.

Fort Griswold taken, and the garrison butchered.

New London was next laid in ashes, and a great number of vessels richly laden, fell into the hands of Arnold. Washington was not, however, moved to quit his post at the south. The people of Connecticut showed ominous signs of resistance, and Arnold judged it prudent to return to New York.

Arnold burns New London.

Cornwallis, in the belief that he should receive succor from Clinton, abandoned his outposts, and withdrew his army entirely within the fortifications of Yorktown. Many of his own officers considered this as a great error. They had urged him to attempt crossing the river, and regaining the open country, through which they might, as they believed, proceed by rapid marches, to New York. While he delayed

Cornwallis calls in his outposts, and withdraws within his defenses.

and deliberated, the small chance that was left him of escaping in this way, was destroyed.

1781.
Oct. 6.
Yorktown besieged.

The combined armies moved from Williamsburg, on the 25th of September, and in five days were collected in the vicinity of Yorktown. Their whole force amounted to 16,000; 7,000 of whom were French. They commenced their works on the night of the 6th of October, in which they made rapid advances, notwithstanding a heavy fire from the fort. On the 9th, several batteries were completed, and a destructive cannonade commenced. On the 11th, they began their second parallel, which was only three hundred yards from the fort.

Oct. 14.
Two redoubts attacked and carried.

In order to complete their trenches, it was necessary to dislodge the English from two redoubts which were in advance of their main works. Washington determined on attempting them by assault, and aware of the emulation between the two armies, assigned to the French, under Baron de Viomesnil, the taking of one; while, to the Americans, under the Marquis La Fayette and Colonel Hamilton, he assigned the capture of the other. The ardour and eloquence of the officers were equalled by the valor of their troops. Their onset was so furious, that the British, though they bravely resisted, could not long withstand. Both the redoubts were taken, not, however, without loss to the allies, of which the French suffered the greatest share.

Oct. 16.
The British, under Abercrombie, make a sortie.

On the night of the 16th, the British, under General Abercrombie, made a vigorous sortie, took two batteries, and spiked eleven cannon. They were charged furiously by the French, under De Noailles, and driven back to their entrenchments.

Cornwallis attempts to escape.

The British general made one more effort, which had he, as advised, sooner attempted, might perhaps have saved his army. This was to cross the river in the night, to Gloucester Point, where a small garrison of the British, commanded by Tarleton, were watched by the French, under De Choiseul. He intended to leave the sick and wounded; whom, in a letter to Washington, he recommended to his generosity. His army were to embark in three divisions. A part had already crossed, and landed at Gloucester Point; a part were upon the river; the third division alone had not embarked. The air and the water were calm, and his hopes of escape were high. In a moment, the sky was overcast, and a tempest arose. The very elements seemed armed against him, as if he was checked by an invisible power which watched over the destiny of the American people, and which before, by the swelling of the waters, had saved their army from his grasp. The wind and rain were violent, and his boats were driven down the river. The day appeared, and the besiegers discovering their situation, opened a destructive fire upon the scattered and weakened army; and they were glad, when the

abating tempest allowed, to return to their almost dismantled fortifications.

1781. Oct. 17. Cornwallis negotiates.

Seeing no hope of escape, his army incessantly wasting by the destructive fire of the American works, Cornwallis no longer delayed to treat for a surrender. Before noon, on the 17th, he sent a flag to Washington, requesting a cessation of arms for twenty-four hours, and the appointment of commissioners to settle the terms of surrender. Washington, fearing the arrival of British troops, refused to grant a truce longer than two hours; and signified, that within that time, he should expect propositions. Cornwallis wished to obtain liberty for the European troops to return to their homes, upon their parole of not again serving in the American war: and also to make terms for the Americans who had followed his fortunes. Both these conditions Washington refused, as the European soldiers would be at liberty to serve in garrisons at home; and the case of the citizens belonged to the civil authority. All that the most earnest persuasion could obtain from Washington on this point, was permission for a sloop, laden with such persons as Cornwallis selected, to be allowed to pass, without search or visit, to New York; he being accountable for the number of persons it carried, as prisoners of war. The whole remaining British force was to be surrendered to the allies; the land army, with its munitions, to the Americans; the marine, to the French.

Terms of capitulation.

Oct. 19. British land-forces surrender to the Americans, and the fleet to the French.

Agreeably to the articles of capitulation, the posts of York-town and Gloucester were surrendered, on the 19th of October. The prisoners, exclusive of seamen, amounted to more than 7,000, of whom 2,000 were sick or wounded. Five hundred and fifty-two of the British had fallen during the siege. Sixty pieces of cannon, also, principally of brass, fell into the hands of the Americans, two frigates and twenty transports, with their crews, into those of the French. General Lincoln, who had suffered the mortification of surrendering an American army, at Charleston, was, with peculiar delicacy, selected by the commander-in-chief, to receive the submission of the British.

The French and Americans added, on this occasion, the praise of generosity and humanity, to that of wisdom and valor. Their leaders vied with each other, in acts of kindness to the conquered officers, and every possible attention was paid to the accommodation of the soldiers.

Oct. 24. Clinton at the Capes too late.

On the day in which the capitulation was signed, Clinton passed Sandy Hook, with a powerful force, to go to the succor of Cornwallis; he appeared off the capes of Virginia on the 24th; where, hearing of the surrender of the army, he immediately returned to New York.

Rejoicings, public and devout.

This event caused a burst of joy and exultation throughout America. Nor did the people, or the civil rulers, amidst the honors which were showered upon the American and French

commanders, forget to acknowledge their supreme obligation to the GREAT COMMANDER and RULER of armies and of nations.

1781. De Grasse departs for the West Indies.

Washington would gladly have detained the French fleet to co-operate in a descent upon Charleston; but de Grasse being under orders from the French court, to be in the West Indies on a certain day, dared not hazard the detention of his fleet; and made sail for those islands without delay.

La Fayette returns to France.

General La Fayette, who had sought America in her adversity, left her as soon as prosperity dawned upon her fortunes. He embarked about this time for France, leaving deep, in the hearts of a grateful people, the remembrance of his virtues and his services.

CHAPTER XIX.

Vermont.—Measures of Peace.—Fears and discontents of the Army happily quieted.

1781. Situation of Vermont.

VERMONT was, at this period, an independent nation. That its territory was first settled by grants from New Hampshire, and afterwards decided, by the English government, to belong to New York, are facts which have already been stated. Had New York, at the time of this decision, given quiet possession of the soil to those individuals who had purchased, and cultivated farms under New Hampshire, Vermont would now have been a portion of that state. But it being attempted to eject those settlers by force, they forcibly resisted.

1777. Declares itself independent.

In this situation, the inhabitants applied to congress for its interference, and were, by this body, recommended to submit, for a time, to the authority of New York; but, being resolutely opposed to this step, they met in convention, in 1777, and declared the New Hampshire grants to be an independent state, under the title of "New Connecticut, alias Vermont;" the first appellation, and the ungrateful "alias," being afterwards dropped.

Their affairs were, at first, managed by several of the leading men, called "a Council of Safety." Their first legislature met at Windsor, in March, 1778. In the same month, a portion of the towns east of Connecticut river, petitioned to unite with Vermont. To this request the Vermontese acceded; but, in consequence of the complaints of New Hampshire, the union was, the following year, dissolved.

Application was next made to congress for admission into the confederacy, but New York presented a counter-memorial; and, in consequence, the separate existence of Vermont as a state, was not acknowledged.

In the summer of 1781, the situation of Vermont was singular in the extreme. The politicians of that settlement, at the head of whom were Governor Chittenden, and the brothers, Ethan and Ira Allen, while they had boldly, but warily, maintained its rights against the claims of New York, New Hampshire, and the decisions of congress, had, at the same time, defended the territory, frontier as it was, against the British, by secret negotiations, which had, for their apparent object, that Vermont should place itself under British protection. But the people, warm with enthusiasm for the American cause, would have risen in vengeance against the rulers who thus preserved them, had they known the means by which their protection was effected. Affairs were, however, coming to a crisis, and but for the fortunate capture of Cornwallis, it is impossible to foresee what would have been the situation of those patriotic men, who ran such personal hazards to save the people, against their own will; and play a political game for their advantage.

1781. Vermont negotiates with the British.

Poverty of the American government.

The great effort made by congress in the winter of 1780—81, had enabled them to provide for the campaign of the ensuing season. It was most fortunate for America that the result was favorable; for such was the extreme poverty of the government, that it seems impossible that another active and expensive campaign could have been sustained. There was no fault in the arrangments of congress; no remission of activity, prudence, and patriotism, on the part of the treasurer. On the contrary, congress had made the most judicious arrangements early in the winter of 1781. They were aided in their deliberations by Washington, who, at their request, had stopped at Philadelphia, on his way from Yorktown to his accustomed winter-quarters. They laid taxes, and apportioned them among the several states; and made such other regulations, that the commander-in-chief had sanguine hopes that every thing would be in readiness for an early campaign, as he had strenuously urged that the way to obtain an honorable peace, was to be in readiness for war. But the several state governments wholly failed of paying their quotas; alledging the utter inability of their constituents to support further taxation.

Congress, counselled by Washington, do all in their power.

Although, by the judicious arrangements of Morris, the public expenses were much diminished, yet they were still necessarily great, and must so continue, although the means of meeting them thus unexpectedly failed. At the commencement of 1782 not a dollar remained in the treasury. "Yet to the financier," says Marshall, "every eye was turned; to him was stretched forth the empty hand of every public creditor, and against him, instead of the state authorities, were the complaints and imprecations of every unsatisfied claimant directed."

Trials and magnanimity of the treasurer.

The people of England had also felt severely the expenses of the war, and on hearing the disasters which had attended

their armies, particularly that of Cornwallis, they no longer suppressed their discontent. When they saw that, notwithstanding all their sacrifice of life and property, nothing remained to them on the American shores but New York, Charleston, and Savannah; and that these posts could only be maintained by strong fleets and garrisons, all hope of reducing the Americans to subjection vanished, and to close a useless and ruinous war, was the decided wish of the people. Still the king, in his speech at the opening of parliament, showed his unwillingness to relinquish his sway over what he had, during his life, considered his patrimony. The people, however, persisted in their desire for peace, and loudly demanded the removal of ministers, who advised the king to measures so much against the public interest.

1782. The people of England wish for peace with America.

The house of commons, moved by this expression of feeling, as well as by the eloquent speeches of General Conway, and others, voted, "that they should consider as enemies to his majesty and their country, all who should advise, or attempt, a further prosecution of offensive war on the continent of America." This vote was followed by the resignation of the office of prime minister, by Lord North, and the appointment of an administration favorable to peace.

February. Parliament takes measures for peace.

. Sir Henry Clinton was now superseded in command by Sir Guy Carleton; whose conciliating conduct as governor of Canada, had gained him the esteem of the Americans. The general sentiment of all parties was favorable to peace; and after this, there were no hostile operations, except a few of inconsiderable importance in South Carolina. In one of these, fell the young and gallant Colonel Laurens, lamented by Washington and the whole army.

Sir Guy Carleton supersedes Clinton.

Admiral Digby, who the summer before had arrived in New York, with reinforcements, was appointed, with Carleton, by the British ministry, to treat with the Americans for peace, on the ground of acknowledging their independence; but congress, finding that parliament had not sanctioned this step of the ministry, refused to negotiate with their agents. Neither could the ministry succeed in an effort to destroy their alliance with France, by procuring the American government to treat separately from its ally.

Fruitless plan of the ministry to get an advantage over congress.

Congress were, however, careful to be ready for the first honorable overtures which they should receive. They appointed four distinguished men, already in Europe, as their agents. These were Dr. Franklin, John Adams their minister at the Hague, John Jay their envoy at the court of Spain, and Henry Laurens first appointed to the post now filled by Mr. Adams, but taken on his passage by an English frigate, and confined in the Tower of London.

Franklin, Adams, Jay, and Laurens, commissioners to treat for peace.

Mr. Adams procured, from the states of Holland, on the 19th of April, the recognition of American independence. On the 8th of October, he obtained a treaty of amity and commerce;

April 19. Holland recognizes the independence.

and, not long after, a loan of money, to the great relief of his exhausted country.

To meet the American commissioners at Paris, the court of St. James sent Mr. Fitzherbert and Mr. Oswald. On the 20th of January, 1783, preliminary articles of peace were signed at Versailles.

1783.
Sept. 3.
Definitive treaty is signed.

The definitive treaty was deferred until the adjustment of affairs between England and France, the ally of America, and was not signed until the 3d of September, 1783.

The conditions of the treaty advantageous to America.

The terms granted to America by this treaty, in respect to extent of territory, and right to the fisheries, were equal to the most sanguine expectations. The English ministers then in power, seemed to be aware of the policy of making America independent in fact, as well as in name: probably the more so, as a contrary disposition was manifested by France. Both powers believed that if she remained in a state of dependence, it must, from the posture of affairs, be upon France, rather than upon England. The American negotiators were men of great ability and ardent patriotism, and well knew how to turn this state of things to the advantage of their country.

Subject of neutral rights omitted.

But in the general pacification, and amidst the protracted negotiations of the several parties, nothing was stipulated on the subject of neutral rights, which had been the moving cause of the coalition against England; and thus a door was left open for future contention and bloodshed.

Discontents and fears of the officers.

The situation of the rising Republic of America, was, during these long negotiations, extremely critical. Had the government possessed the means of paying their officers and soldiers, there would have been nothing to apprehend from disbanding so patriotic an army. But the officers, aware of the poverty of the treasury, doubted whether it would be in the power of congress to fulfill the stipulation made in October, 1780, granting to them half-pay for life. While the independence of their country was uncertain, they had pressed forward to the attainment of that object; and regardless of themselves, had sacrificed their fortunes, and their health. Now, that great object was attained, they began to brood over their own situation; and fears arose, that should they disband before their country had done them justice, and lose their consequence as a body, they and their services might be forgotten.

Ambitious project.

Nor were there wanting officers, whose personal ambition carried them beyond the mark of right and justice; and brought up the reflection, that if the army could remain entire under its head, it might now subdue the country which it had defended: and although, if a monarchical government were established, the commander-in-chief must be the sovereign; yet the officers coming in for the next share of power and consequence, would become the aristocracy.

1782.

Washington tempted to become a king.

To tempt Washington to countenance these views, one of the older colonels of the army,* was fixed upon, who wrote him a letter in a smooth and artful strain. He commented on the weakness of republics, and the benefits of mixed governments. He insinuated that the same abilities which had guided the country so gloriously through the storm, must now be the most suitable to conduct it through the gentler paths of peace. There was a prejudice existing which confounded monarchy with tyranny, and it might be necessary to choose, with a monarchical government, some title, apparently more moderate, but the writer believed, "that strong arguments might be produced for admitting the title of KING," which, he conceived, "would be attended with some material advantages."

His stern rebuke to the tempter.

Washington was astonished, displeased, and grieved. He replied, that no occurrence during the war, had given him more painful sensations, than to learn that such ideas existed in the army—ideas which he "must view with abhorrence, and reprehend with severity." "I am at a loss," said he, "to conceive what part of my conduct could have given encouragement to an address, which to me, seems big with the greatest mischiefs which could befall my country. If I am not deceived in the knowledge of myself, you could not have found a person, to whom your schemes are more disagreeable. At the same time, in justice to my own feelings, I must add, that no man possesses a more sincere wish to see ample justice done to the army, than I do; and, as far as my powers and influence, in a constitutional way, extend, they shall be employed to the utmost of my abilities to effect it, should there be any occasion. Let me conjure you, then, if you have any regard for your country, concern for yourself or posterity, or respect for me, to banish these thoughts from your mind, and never communicate, as from yourself or any one else, a sentiment of the like nature."

March 10. The famous "Newburg Address."

Thus nipped in the bud, nothing more was heard of the project of making Washington a king. But the causes of the army's discontent remained, although congress had taken some steps towards their removal. Washington repeatedly urged the subject upon their attention; yet the designing among the officers insinuated, that he had not advocated their cause with sufficient zeal. The answer to a memorial, which they had presented to congress, had not fully met their wishes. It was on this occasion that an anonymous paper was circulated, now known to have been written by Major John Armstrong, then an aid-de-camp to General Gates.

Its strength of language and seditious character.

It was composed with great ability. Never was a writing more calculated to become a firebrand of discord. There was truth in its representations of the toils, and yet unrequi-

* This is related on the authority of Mr. Sparkes, by whom the name of this officer is not given. See "Sparkes' life of Washington."

ted dangers and sufferings of the officers: but the country had not deserved the insinuation, of being so far from doing justice to her defenders, that "she trampled on their rights, disdained their cries, and insulted their distresses." Yet such was the language of the address. It advised the officers "to change the milk-and-water style" of their memorial to congress, and no longer appeal to their justice, but keep arms in their hands, and appeal to their fears.

1783. Washington's difficult position.

This paper proposed a meeting of the officers on the ensuing day. Washington, aware of the feelings of the army, had not availed himself of the suspension of hostilities, to seek the pleasures of home, but had remained in the camp. He now saw that the dreaded crisis had arrived. Intent on guiding deliberations which he could not suppress, he called his officers to a meeting somewhat later than the one appointed in the anonymous appeal, to which, in his orders, he alluded with disapprobation.

His noble and prudent conduct.

In the interim, he prepared a written address. The officers met. The Father of his Country rose, to read the manuscript which he held in his hand. Not being able to distinguish its characters, he took off his spectacles to wipe them with his handkerchief. "My eyes," said he, "have grown dim in the service of my country, but I never doubted her justice." This was a preface, worthy of the paper which he read. He alluded in the most touching manner, to the sufferings and services of the army, in which he too had borne his share. He treated with becoming severity, the proposition, made in the anonymous paper, to seek by unlawful means, the redress of their grievances. He assured them that congress, though slow in their deliberations, were favorable to the interests of the army; and he conjured them not to tarnish the renown of their brilliant deeds, by an irreparable act of rashness and folly; and finally, he pledged them his utmost exertions to assist in procuring from congress the just reward of their meritorious services.

He meets and addresses the officers.

The officers listened to the voice which they had so long been accustomed to respect and obey; and the storm of passion was hushed. His pledge of using his influence with congress, in behalf of the army, was performed in a manner which showed how deeply he had their cause at heart. "If," said he, in a letter to that body, "the whole army have not merited whatever a grateful people can bestow, then have I been beguiled by prejudice, and built opinion on the basis of error. If this country should not, in the event, perform every thing which has been requested in the late memorial to congress, then will my belief become vain, and the hope that has been excited, void of foundation. And if, (as has been suggested, for the purpose of inflaming their passions,) the officers of the army are to be the only sufferers by this revolution; if retiring from the field, they are to grow old in

He writes to congress in their behalf.

poverty, wretchedness, and contempt; if they are to wade through the vile mire of dependency, and owe the miserable remnant of that life to charity, which has hitherto been spent in honor; then shall I have learned what ingratitude is; then shall I have realized a tale which will embitter every moment of my future life."

Congress used their utmost exertions to meet the exigency. They commuted the half-pay which had been pledged to the officers for a sum equal to five years' full pay.

1783. April 19. War closes after just eight years from its commencement.

The news that the preliminaries of peace were signed, was first received in a letter from La Fayette. Sir Guy Carleton soon communicated it officially; and on the 19th of April, just eight years from the battle of Lexington—the beginning of the war, the joyful certainty of its close was proclaimed from head-quarters to the American army.

Nov. 3. American army disbanded.

The officers now satisfied, the army was disbanded without tumult, November, 1783. They mingled with their fellow-citizens, ever through future years to be honored for belonging to that patriotic band. It is now nearly sixty years since its existence, and still there remains here and there a silver-headed veteran of whom it is said, "he was a revolutionary soldier." It is the pass-word to honour. At all patriotic meetings, the first place is assigned him; and a grateful country has liberally provided for his wants.

American independence acknowledged by Sweden, Denmark, Spain, and Russia.

The Americans soon had the gratification of seeing their independence, acknowledged by most of the European powers. Holland was the only nation, except France, by which it had been acknowledged, previous to its recognition by Great Britain, in 1782. The acknowledgment was made by Sweden, on the 5th of February, 1783; by Denmark, on the 25th of February; by Spain, on the 24th of March; and by Russia, in July. Treaties of amity and commerce were, about the same periods, concluded with each of these powers. Prussia did not come into these measures until 1785.

Nov. 25. Evacuation of New York.

On the 25th of November, the British troops evacuated New York, and a detachment from the American army entered it.

Parting of the officers with the commander.

On the 4th of December, the separation of Washington from his officers took place at New York. The long and eventful period which they had passed together; the dangers they had mutually shared; the reflection that they parted to meet no more; and, above all, the thought that they might never again behold the face of their beloved commander, filled their hearts with sorrow.

Resignation of Washington.

From New York, Washington hastened to Annapolis, where congress was then in session. He immediately waited on them for the purpose of resigning his commission. A public audience was appointed for that purpose, on the 23d of December, when, in the presence of a large and deeply affected audience, he resigned his offices, and commending his coun-

try to the protection of God, retired to Mount Vernon, followed by the benedictions of America, and the admiration of the world.

CHAPTER XX.

Depression subsequent to the War.

1784. Exhausted state of the nation.

At the close of the war, the United States, although they had burst the bonds of European thraldom, were in a deplorable condition. A heavy debt encumbered the government; and a similar burden rested upon almost every corporation within it. Agriculture, trade and manufactures had decayed during the war; and many of the inhabitants were nearly destitute of clothing, and the necessaries of life. Immediately after the peace was announced, the British sent over a great quantity of cloths, of an inferior quality, which were sold at an exorbitant price; and thus almost all the money of the country was collected and carried abroad. The nation being in debt and destitute of the means of payment, heavy taxes were necessarily imposed. This increased the discontent, which already prevailed among the people, to an alarming degree. The state governments resorted to various measures for the relief of their citizens. In Rhode Island, the government issued a quantity of paper-money, redeemable at a future day; this measure, however, only involved them in all the difficulties which the general government had experienced from the same cause;—depreciation of their bills, and loss of public credit.

Distresses and discontents.

The distress which prevailed in the country at length produced insurrections. In August, nearly fifteen hundred insurgents assembled under arms at Northampton, and took possession of the court-house. Their object was to prevent the sittings of the court of common pleas, and, of course, the issuing of executions, under certain obnoxious laws. The governor issued a proclamation, calling on the citizens to suppress such treasonable proceedings; but his proclamation was disregarded. In the next month, a scene similar to that at Northampton, was acted at Worcester. A body of men, exceeding three hundred, assembled, and compelled the court there sitting, to adjourn.

Followed by insurrections at Northampton and Worcester.

The leader of the malcontents in Massachusetts, was Daniel Shays. At the head of three hundred men, he marched into Springfield, where the supreme judicial court was sitting, and took possession of the court-house. He then appointed a committee, who waited on the court with an order, couched

1787. Known as "Shay's" rebellion.

in the humble form of a petition, requesting them not to proceed to business.

1787.

General Lincoln with an army at Worcester.

The number of insurgents increased; the posture of affairs became alarming; and an army of 4,000 men was at length ordered out for their dispersion. This force was placed under the command of Gen. Lincoln. His first measure was to march to Worcester, where he afforded such protection to the court, that it resumed and executed the judicial functions. He next gave orders to General Shepard to collect a sufficient force to secure the arsenal at Springfield. Accordingly, he raised about 900 men, which were reinforced by 300 militia, from the county of Hampshire. At the head of this force, he marched as directed, to Springfield; where not being able to persuade the multitude to lay down their arms, he fired upon them, and killed three men. The rioters fell into confusion, and soon dispersed.

Sends Gen. Shepard to Springfield, where he disperses the rebels.

Commissioners were appointed by the government of Massachusetts, empowered to promise pardon, on certain conditions to all concerned in the rebellion. Several hundreds received the benefit of the commission. Fourteen only were sentenced to death, and these were afterwards pardoned.

They are tried, fourteen sentenced, none executed.

A proposal was this year, made to amend the articles of confederation. The present frame of government, although it had served, during the pressure of danger, to keep the several parts of the nation together, was now found inadequate to the national exigencies. In forming the original articles, great care had been taken to withhold any delegation of power, which might hereafter endanger the liberties of the individual states. Congress had no authority to enforce its ordinances; and now that the pressure of public danger was removed, they were contemned and disregarded. Some of the states had violated treaties which had been formed with foreign nations, and some had refused to adopt a system of impost which had been devised. It became evident that nothing could put a stop to evils of this description, but a more energetic form of government.

Defects in the American form of government.

In 1783, John Adams, then in Europe, suggested to congress the expediency of strengthening the general government. On a motion of Mr. Madison, in the legislature of Virginia, in 1785, a convention of delegates, from five of the middle states, met at Annapolis, in 1786, who came to the conclusion, that nothing short of a thorough reform of the existing government, would be effectual for the welfare of the country. Congress approved their proceedings, and passed a resolution, recommending a general convention of delegates, to be holden at Philadelphia.

1786.

Delegates meet from five states.

In May, 1787, the convention met, and instead of amending the articles of confederation, they proceeded to form a new constitution. Their debates were long and arduous. A momentous political experiment was to be tried, and the desti-

1787.

Constitution framed at Philadelphia.

nies of unborn millions hung upon their deliberations. Respecting many articles of the constitution, much honest difference of opinion existed; and in particular, where the strength of the new government came in question. On the one hand, it was considered, that, if the government was made too weak, a state of anarchy, and consequent revolution, would ensue; on the other, that if it were made too strong, America would lose the blessings of liberty, which she had bled at every pore to obtain; and only make an exchange of foreign, for domestic oppression.

1787. Political views of the framers of the constitution.

Some of these politicians thought the only safe mode of reasoning was from the experience of the past, and that all speculations not drawn from this source, should be condemned as impracticable, and visionary. These looked for an example to the constitution of England, as containing the best form of government actually existing. Others believed that as the circumstances of the times changed, governments should accommodate themselves to the change;—that the present state of the world, and the situation of America, had no parallels in history;—and that therefore the track of no former nation could serve as the guide to their voyage: but like the discoverer of their continent, they must lay their course through an untravelled way, with nothing to guide them but the light of heaven, and their own observation. The happy medium probably lies between the extremes of these two opinions; and the constitution framed, being a compromise between them, the form of government, which it prescribes, is probably, on that account, more perfect than if either side had wholly prevailed.

Two great parties in a forming state.

Connected with these ideas concerning the greater or less degree of strength proper to give to the new government, was the subject of the consolidation, or strict independence of the states. Those who desired the general government to possess great strength, were charged by their opponents, with wishing to so arrange it, that in the play of its parts, it would break down, and subject to itself, the state governments. Those, on the other hand, who feared oppression more than anarchy, watched, with a jealous eye, every infringement of state rights. Those in favor of holding the states strongly united, were called, at this time federalists, and their opponents, anti-federalists.

Points in the slave question agitated and compromised.

Other points of dispute arose which were still more dangerous, because they divided parties by geographical lines. The most difficult of these, regarded the representation, in congress, of the slave-holding states. The non-slave holders contended that the number of representatives sent, should only be in proportion to the number of free white inhabitants. This would bring some states, whose whole population was great, upon a level with others, where the number of inhabitants was comparatively small; and members from these states

would not give their consent to such an apportionment. The slaves were at length allowed to be reckoned, in settling the quota of representatives, as equal to three-fifths of an equal number of free white inhabitants. That these great difficulties were compromised, holds up this convention, as an example to future times, of the triumph of strong patriotism and honest zeal for the public welfare, over party feeling and sectional prejudice.

1789. Federal constitution adopted.

It was not without a struggle, that the new constitution was adopted. Eleven of the states were, however, early in the year 1789, brought to decide in favor of its ratification. Rhode Island, which sent no members to the convention, and North Carolina, refused to accept it.

Its mandates from "the people." Its objects.

The supreme authority in whose name the constitution is promulgated, is that of "the people of the United States;" the objects for which they ordain and establish, and bind themselves to obey its precepts, are "to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to themselves and their posterity."

The popular branch of the national legislature.

The legislative power of the Federal Union, is vested in a senate and house of representatives, the latter to be chosen for two years by electors qualified to choose representatives to the state legislatures;—each to have been for seven years an inhabitant of the United States, and at least twenty-five years of age. Representatives are to be appointed in each state, according to the number of the inhabitants, and lest the congress should become too numerous, the apportionment is varied, once in ten years after the taking of the census.

The states represented in their corporate capacity by the senate.

The senate is composed of two members from each state, to be chosen by the state legislatures. The term of service is six years; but the first senate was to be so chosen, that one third of the members had two years to remain in office, another four, and another six; so that thereafter no more than one third of the senate should be composed of new members. A senator must have been an inhabitant of the country nine years, and not less than thirty years of age.

Presiding officers.

The house of representatives choose their presiding officer, who is called the speaker. The senate are presided over by the vice-president of the United States.

Time of session.

These two houses are called the Congress. They must sit at least as often as once a year, and their ordinary sessions commence on the first Monday in December.

The representatives intrusted with the purse. The executive power.

All bills for raising a revenue must originate in the house of representatives; the whole spirit of the constitution requiring that the branch of the legislature nearest the people should have the care of the people's money; that is the national treasury. The executive bears the public sword, and the popular branch carries the purse. The executive power is vested in a president and vice-president; each chosen for a

term of four years; each to be a native born citizen, and to have attained the age of thirty-five. The president is the commander-in-chief of the army and navy when in actual service. With the consent of two-thirds of the senate, he is vested with the power to make treaties, to appoint ambassadors, judges of the supreme court, and many other officers.

The judicial power.

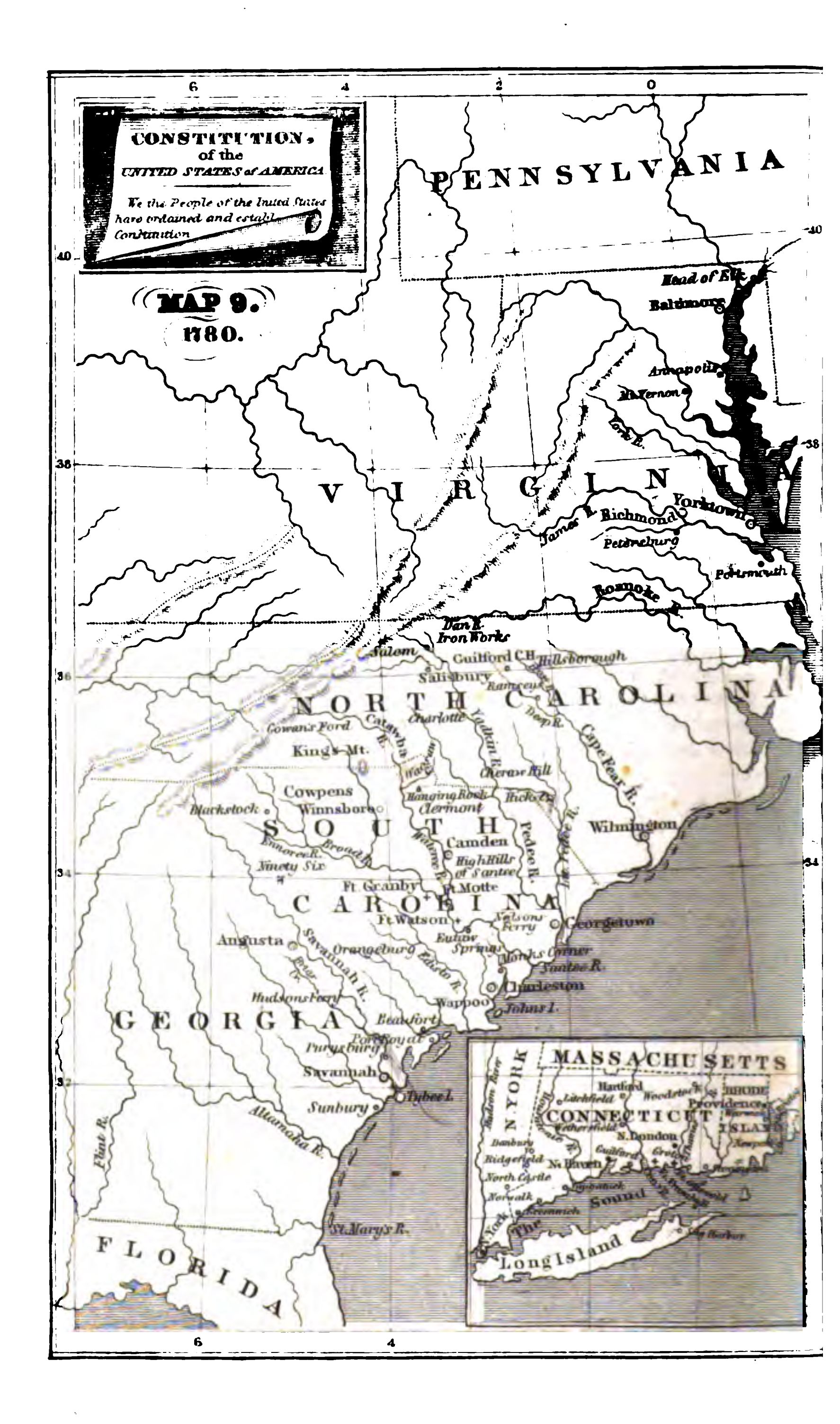
The judicial power of the United States is vested in one supreme court, and such other courts as congress may from time to time establish. The judges retain their offices during good behavior. They as well as the president and vice-president may be impeached. This form of accusation can only be brought forward by the house of representatives. The senate is vested with the sole power to try impeachments, and two-thirds must concur to convict the accused; nor can the penalty in such case be greater than the loss of office, and disqualification for holding it in future.

Impeachment.

The federal constitution, at the time of its adoption, was far from receiving the entire confidence which it now commands. It made the government too strong to please one party, and too weak to satisfy the other; and while, on the one hand, it was believed, that it would, in its operation, eventually overturn the liberties of America, on the other, it was pronounced to be a "rope of sand," and the date of its dissolution was augured to be near. Now, the constitution of the United States of America, after fifty years of trial, is regarded, by the friends of the rights of man, in both hemispheres, as the palladium of civil liberty.

Fears respecting the constitution.





CONSTITUTION, of the UNITED STATES of AMERICA
MAP 9.
1780.
PENNSYLVANIA
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
MASSACHUSETTS
CONNECTICUT
Head of Elk
Baltimore
Annapolis
Yorktown
Richmond
Petersburg
Portsmouth
Salem
Guilford C.H.
Hillsborough
Salisbury
Charlotte
Kings Mt.
Cowpens
Winnsboro
Camden
Wilmington
Georgetown
Charleston
Augusta
Savannah
Sunbury
Long Island

PART IV.

FROM 1789 TO 1842.

PERIOD I.

FROM

THE FINAL ADOPTION OF { 1789, } THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

TO

THE PURCHASE { 1803, } OF LOUISIANA.

CHAPTER I.

Organization of the new Government.—The Funding System.—Party lines strongly drawn.

THE fourth of March, 1789, was the day on which the new government was to commence its operations. But from necessary delays, the inauguration of the president did not take place until the 30th of April.

1784. Washington in retirement.

When Washington retired at the close of the war, he had fully intended to pass the residue of his days in domestic privacy; and this intention he had publicly announced. Yet the habit of ruminating on the condition of his country did not leave him; nor did his great fame allow him repose from the visits of friends, the intrusions of the curious, and the solicitations of the interested. He employed his pen continually, in urging upon the influential, the necessity of remodeling the government. He made a journey of 600 miles, to visit his lands, on the waters of the Ohio; and, by actual inspection, became convinced of the practicability, as he had long been of the importance, of uniting the west to the east, by intercommunication between the head waters of the Atlantic streams, and the western rivers. He wrote a memorial on the subject to the government of Virginia, which gave rise to two companies; the "Potomac Company," and the "Kanhawa and James River Company;" and thus he became the author of the first efficient movement, in the great series of internal improvements.

September.

Pennsylvania and Virginia use fruitless efforts to induce him to accept rewards.

Efforts were made, particularly by the states of Pennsylvania and Virginia, to devise some delicate method of placing pecuniary rewards at his disposal; but he steadily refused them; although his affairs had fallen into some disorder, in an absence of eight years and a half; while his hospitality was

1783. Visit from La Fayette.

expensively taxed, on account of his former public character. Among others, his faithful and beloved friend La Fayette came, during this period, to visit him at Mount Vernon. Washington accompanied him on his return, as far as Annapolis. When they parted, he had a sorrowful and just foreboding, that they should never meet again.

Washington an agriculturalist.

Not only to retrieve his affairs, but to indulge his taste and to advance the interest of the country, he devoted himself to agriculture in the personal direction of his estates. He corresponded with scientific agriculturalists in Europe and America; and the theories which he formed or learned from them, he put in practice; ordering in advance, a rotation of crops to suit the several soils. His skill in landscape gardening is even now manifest, in the beautiful arrangement of his grounds at Mount Vernon; where every shrub and tree was planted beneath his eye, and pruned by his own hand.

1786. He is summoned to become a member of the convention.

The first summons which he received to quit this delightful retreat, was when the legislature of Virginia chose him first delegate to the convention, which framed the constitution. With reluctance he consented to the pleas of friendship, and the calls of public duty. He prepared himself to lay political foundations, by the study, not only of present circumstances, but of confederated governments, ancient and modern. Made president of the convention, by a unanimous vote, his wisdom, no less than his influence, was felt throughout that august body; and at no time did he serve his country with more efficiency.

1787. Is made president of the convention.

Is unanimously elected president of the United States of America.

The constitution being adopted, the universal voice of the nation called him forth, to organize the government he had thus helped to devise. He was pained that he must again, at the age of fifty-seven, leave his long-coveted retirement, and embark, with all his honors, upon an untried and tempestuous sea. But he knew there was no other man on whom the people would unite; and that his refusal, at such a crisis, would be fraught with danger to his country. A special messenger from the president of congress, brought him the official intelligence of his election, and two days from the time of notice, he set out for New York, where congress first convened.

1789. April 14. Messenger arrives at Mount Vernon, announcing his election.

His journey to New York.

In his progress, he was met by numerous bodies of the people, of both sexes, who hailed him as the Father of his Country; and triumphal arches were erected, to commemorate his achievements. He was attended by a deputation from congress, and was received by the governor, as he landed, amidst the firing of artillery, and the acclamations of the people.

1789. April 30. Is inaugurated at New York.

The ceremony of his inauguration was witnessed, with inexpressible joy, by a great multitude of spectators. The novelty and importance of the transaction, the benign dignity of Washington's character and manners, the remembrance of the sufferings, by which America had won the right to govern itself, and which, with a father's anxious solicitude, he

had shared; all conspired to render the pageant solemn and affecting.

1789.

Washington's inaugural address.

In an address to both houses of congress, he modestly declared his incapacity for "the weighty and untried cares before him," and offered his "fervent supplications to that Almighty Being, whose providential aid can supply every human defect, that his benediction would consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States, a government instituted by themselves for essential purposes; and would enable every instrument, employed in its administration, to execute with success the functions allotted to his charge." He remarked, that "the foundation of our national policy should be laid in the pure principles of private morality; and that no truth was more thoroughly established, than that there exists an indissoluble union between virtue and happiness; between duty and advantage; between the genuine maxims of an honest and magnanimous policy, and the solid rewards of public prosperity and felicity." These considerations he enforced by the weighty reasons, "that the success of the republican form of government is justly considered, as deeply, perhaps finally, staked on the experiment intrusted to the American people; and that the propitious smiles of heaven could never be expected on a nation, that disregarded the eternal rules of order and right, which heaven itself had ordained."

The maxims of wisdom enforced by patriotism, and philanthropy.

Congress made it their first object to establish a revenue sufficient for the support of government, and for the discharge of the debt, contracted during the revolutionary war. For this purpose, they laid duties on the importation of merchandise, and on the tonnage of vessels; thus drawing into the public treasury, funds which had before been collected and appropriated by individual states. To counteract the commercial regulations of foreign nations, and encourage American shipping, higher tonnage duties were imposed on foreign, than on American vessels, and ten per cent. less duty on goods imported in vessels owned by Americans, than in those belonging to foreigners.

Congress lay duties on merchandise and tonnage.

Those first appointed under the constitution as heads of departments, were, Thomas Jefferson, secretary of state, Alexander Hamilton of the treasury, and General Knox of the department of war. The small navy was assigned to the care of the latter. These officers were subject to the inspection and control of the president, to whom they were required to make elaborate reports in writing. They were constitutionally removable by him.

The first secretaries, Jefferson, Hamilton, and Knox.

During this session, it was proposed to amend the constitution. Congress, after a long and animated debate, agreed upon twelve new articles, which were submitted to the respective state legislatures; ten of which being approved by three-fourths of these bodies, they became a part of that instrument.

Constitution amended

It was during this session also, that the important work

1789.

National judiciary composed of three grades, district, circuit, and supreme courts.

was completed of establishing a national judiciary, to take cognizance of all cases, occurring under the constitution and laws of the United States; of all disputes, arising with foreigners, and between the inhabitants of different states. It was to consist of a supreme court, circuit and district courts. Of these, the district court, which was to consist of one judge for each separate district, was considered the lowest; and causes were appealable from this to the circuit court, which was to be composed of one of the five associate judges of the supreme court, and the district judge of the state in which the court was held. Causes were appealable from this tribunal to the supreme court, which was to consist of a chief-justice, and five associate judges; and was to hold two sessions, annually, at the seat of government. John Jay was appointed chief-justice, and Edmund Randolph, attorney-general.

Salaries fixed.

The salary of the president was fixed at twenty-five thousand dollars a year, that of the vice president at five thousand, and those of the heads of department at three thousand and five hundred. The representatives received six dollars per day, and six dollars for every twenty miles' travel; the senate seven dollars per day, and the same for travel. The chief-justice of the supreme court was allowed four thousand dollars, and the associate judges three thousand five hundred per annum.

Public thanksgiving.

Before their adjournment, congress, with becoming piety, requested the president to recommend to the people a day of public prayer and thanksgiving; in which they should unitedly acknowledge, "with grateful hearts, the many and signal favors of Almighty God, especially by affording them an opportunity peaceably to establish a constitution of government for their safety and happiness."

Sept. 29. Close of the session of the first congress.

On the 29th of September, the first session of congress closed; the secretary of the treasury being previously directed, by a resolution of the house of representatives, to prepare a plan to provide for the adequate support of the public credit, and to report the same at the next meeting of congress.

Washington's paternal visit to New England.

After the adjournment of congress, the president made a tour through New England, where he was received by the inhabitants with demonstrations of the most devoted affection. They crowded around him. They vied with each other in the display of hospitable attentions. Parents brought their children, that they might view in him the living model of excellence, and that they might have, in after life, the satisfaction of reflecting that they had, with their own eyes, beheld the man whom the history of their country ranked as the first of her citizens.

November.

In November, North Carolina acceded to the new constitution.

1790.

January 6. Second session.

The second session of the first congress began on the 6th of January, 1790. Mr. Hamilton early complied with the di-

rections given him at the close of the former session, and brought forward his celebrated report, which was drawn up with a masterly hand. He showed the importance of public credit, and proposed, as the means of supporting that of the United States, a system of assuming or funding, not only the public debt, amounting to fifty-four millions of dollars, but also the state debts, estimated at twenty-five millions; and of making permanent provision for the payment of the interest, by imposing taxes on certain articles of luxury, and on spirits distilled within the United States.

1790.
Mr. Hamilton's report on funding the national debt.

The debates on this report produced an irritation of feeling, which, in the event, shook the foundation of the government, as they may fairly be said, to be the origin of that violent party-spirit, which, under the names of federalists and republicans, for thirty years arrayed one part of the American community against the other. There were in the funding system two grand points of difference between the opposing parties. That concerning the assumption of the state debts, which was last debated, caused the most serious collision. The northern members, who were mostly federalists, advocated the measure; while the majority of those from the south, belonged to the other party, and opposed it.

Heated debates engender dangerous party animosity.

The other point of difference was, whether in the case of funding the domestic debt, there should be any discrimination between the present holders of public securities, and those to whom the debt was originally due. The federalists, who looked with great confidence to the talents and integrity of Mr. Hamilton, were, with him, in favor of making no difference between the present and the original holder of the continental bills, maintaining that government ought not to interfere in transfers. The republican party advocated the discrimination; contending, that it was unjust to the veterans of the revolution, who had been obliged to receive this paper in lieu of gold and silver, and were afterwards compelled to part with it at a small part of its nominal value, now to be condemned to poverty; while the speculator was receiving the reward of their blood and services.

The federalists support the treasurer. The republicans oppose him.

After much debate, Mr. Madison proposed, that the present holder of assignable paper should receive the highest price such paper had borne in market, and the original holder the residue. These propositions were finally rejected; the friends of the secretary contending that they could not be carried into effect, so as to prevent the results apprehended; as many of the original certificates were issued to persons, who, in fact, had no interest in them, as they were for the benefit of others, to whom it was understood they were to be transferred. They had depreciated gradually, thus probably dividing among many individuals the loss sustained by each.

Mr. Madison's project. It meets a grand difficulty.

The subject of assuming the state debts, recalled former points of animosity, and brought forward new matter of dissen-

1790.

Assumption of the state debts a source of contention. Argument against it.

sion. Mr. Hamilton was suspected of monarchical views Having been in a situation to observe the evils arising from a want of power in the continental congress, he had in the convention, been an advocate for strength in the new constitution, and was at the time, accused of wishing so to arrange it, that in its operations, it would break down, and subject to itself, the state governments. Those whose suspicions were thus excited, now believed that the funding system, in its essential features, and especially the assumption of the state debts, was but a part of the same plan. They contended that its design was to strengthen the general government, by making the state creditors, and other capitalists, dependent upon it; and thus engaging the great moneyed interests of the country to defend its measures, whether right or wrong.

Strong arguments in favor of the assumption.

Those in favor of the assumption, contended, that the debts incurred by the states were not for their own benefit, but for the promotion of the common cause; and that, therefore, it was right the whole nation should be responsible. The debts of the states most active in the war were greatest; those of Massachusetts and Carolina amounting to ten millions and a half, while those of all the other states were not more than fifteen millions. Should each be left to provide for the payment of its own debts, these states must, in some way, lay unusual burdens upon their inhabitants; thus obliging them a second time to be the greatest sufferers in the common cause. On taking the vote in the house of representatives, the plans of the secretary were rejected by a majority of two.

It is rejected.

The location of the seat of government a make-weight to carry the treasurer's plans.

In the meantime, disputes had taken place with respect to the temporary, as well as the permanent seat of government. It was understood that should it be fixed for ten years at Philadelphia, and afterwards at a place to be selected on the Potomac, that some of the members of the house of representatives, from that quarter, would withdraw their opposition to Mr. Hamilton. This was accordingly done, and his plans were adopted. The debt funded amounted to a little more than seventy-five millions of dollars, upon a part of which an interest of three per cent. was paid, and on the remainder, six per cent.

Rhode Island adopts the constitution.

In May, 1790, Rhode Island acceded to the new constitution; thus completing the union of the Thirteen United States, under one government.

Duties are laid on American distilled spirits.

Soon after the commencement of the third session of congress, a bill was introduced for laying the taxes which the secretary had proposed for the payment of the interest on the assumed debt of the states. That for laying duties on distilled spirits, was urged on the ground, that the inhabitants beyond the Alleghany mountains, where no other were consumed, would not otherwise bear an equal burden with those on the sea-coast, who consumed most of the articles on which an

impost duty was laid. The bill, after much debate, was carried.

Tennessee.

An act was passed, accepting the cession of the claims of North Carolina to a district, west of that state, and a territorial government was established by congress, under the title of "The Territory of the United States, south of the Ohio." In 1780, James Robertson, with forty families travelled through a wilderness of 300 miles and founded Nashville. Many of the officers and soldiers of the revolutionary war settled on Cumberland river; a tract having been there laid off, for the discharge of military bounties.

1790. Aug. 7. Treaty with the Creeks.

A treaty was concluded between the United States and the Creek Indians; thus putting a period to the fears of a Creek war.

1791. A national bank established.

A national bank was, during this session, recommended by Mr. Hamilton. It met with a violent opposition from the republican party. They considered all banking institutions as useless, the present bill defective, and the power of establishing a bank not granted to congress. The supporters of the bill maintained that a national bank was not only constitutional and useful, but necessary for the operations of government. The president required the opinions of the cabinet in writing. Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Randolph opposed, while Mr. Hamilton and General Knox advocated the bill. After deliberate investigation, the president was convinced of its constitutionality and utility, and gave it his signature. The bank was established at Philadelphia, with a capital of ten millions of dollars.

Party dissensions throughout the country and in the cabinet.

The dissensions on the subject of the funding and banking systems, thus originating in the heart of the republic, spread themselves to its extremities, and were every where the signal for the people to range themselves, each under one of the two parties. The secretary of state was active and determined in his opposition to the measures of Mr. Hamilton. He doubtless believed them prejudicial to the interests of his country; but it appears problematical, whether, as a member of the cabinet, it was right for him to spread through the country, a spirit of disaffection* to measures taken by another member of the same cabinet, acting in the legitimate exercise of his proper functions. As an individual patriot, Mr. Jefferson would certainly have been correct in persuading his countrymen to oppose what he believed would tend to subvert their liberties; but it would seem that, by the resignation of his office, he should have become merely an actor in an individ-

* Mr. Jefferson, it is said, patronized a paper which vilified the conduct and measures of the secretary of the treasury. Of this, Marshall gives the following account;—"Other papers enlisted themselves under the banners of the opposition. Conspicuous among these, was the National Gazette, a paper edited by a clerk in the department of state. The avowed purpose for which the secretary patronized this paper, was to present to the eye of the American people, European intelligence derived from the Leyden Gazette, instead of the English papers; but it soon became the vehicle of calumny against the funding and banking systems; against the duty on home spirits, which was denominated an excise, and against the men who had proposed and supported those measures."

PART IV. PERIOD I. CHAP. II.

ual capacity, before he took any measures of hostility against Mr. Hamilton. As it was, the venerable Washington had the unhappiness to witness his two principal secretaries, both men of vast abilities, in determined hostility to each other; and the mortification to find his affectionate remonstrances and exhortations, ineffectual to their reconcilement.

1791. Feb. 18. Vermont admitted to the Union.

New York having relinquished its claims to jurisdiction in Vermont, and this state agreeing to the federal constitution, it was, on the application of its principal citizens, this year admitted into the Union.

In 1791, the first census of the United States was completed. The number of inhabitants was 3,929,000, of whom, 695,000 were slaves. The revenue amounted to 4,771,000 dollars, the exports to 19,000,000, and the imports to about 20,000,000.

October. The second congress. Number of representatives, 1 to 33,000.

In October, the second congress commenced its first session. One of its earliest acts was that of apportioning the number of representatives according to the census. After much disagreement a bill passed fixing the ratio at one for every thirty-three thousand inhabitants.

While congress was thus agitated by party strife, an Indian war was opening on the northwestern frontier.

CHAPTER II.

The Moravians.—The Indians of the North West.

History of the Moravians throws light on that of the aborigines.

The aborigines of America, are regarded with great and increasing interest. Of all the sources of information concerning their character and internal arrangements, perhaps the most valuable, are those derived from the Moravians. Elliot, although long engaged in their conversion, yet had his home and family among the people of Roxbury. David Brainerd from 1742 to 1746, was wholly devoted to the same object, among the Mohicanni west of the Hudson, and the Delawares, in New Jersey and eastern Pennsylvania. But his career, though successful, was short. The Moravian brethren lived for forty years among the Indians. Their society had many intelligent men, (and women also,) scattered widely among them. They adopted their converts as brothers and sisters, sometimes intermarrying among them. Their observations were written down; and they remain in the pages of Heckewelder, and in the letters of Zeisberger, arranged into narrative by Loskiel. For the sake of this information, no less than on their own account, the history of the Moravian missions should be studied. To give a connected view of the

revolution, we have suspended it from its proper chronological place.

After Pontiac's treacheries, the Moravian converts, in danger of perishing from the indiscriminate fury of the whites, went in a body to Philadelphia, and were sheltered by the governor in a prison; yet, even here, some of them were murdered.

1767. A mission on the Alleghany river.

Soon after this, Zeisberger was the leader of a party of the missionaries, who emigrated with a portion of their Indian brethren, and fixed, for a time, on the Alleghany river, near the mouth of French creek. Here the Indians came in throngs to attend their preaching; and the chapel which they had erected, was filled with warriors, whose faces were painted with black and vermilion, and their heads decorated with clusters of feathers and fox-tails. Some of them became penitent believers, and joined the brethren.

1770. War between the Senecas and Cherokees.

At this time a war occurred between the Senecas and Cherokees. Some provocation had been given by the former, when a small party of their braves were taken by the latter, who, having cut off their fingers, told them to go home and show the Senecas how the Cherokees treated those "who would not hold on to the chain of friendship."

May 3. The Moravians found Friedenstadt at the mouth of Beaver Creek.

The war which ensued, made the location of the Moravians uncomfortable. Chiefs in the neighborhood proved treacherous; and, Zeisberger again leading the way, the brethren removed to the banks of the Ohio, near the mouth of Beaver creek. Here they founded Friedenstadt, "The Town of Peace." The settlements on the great bend of the Susquehannah, were about this time broken up, and a part of the inhabitants, led by Heckewelder, joined this settlement.

1771. March 5.

Zeisberger soon removed, having been invited by the Delaware chiefs, and presented by them with a beautiful tract of land on the Muskingum, near the confluence of the Tuscarawas with Whitewoman's creek. Here, with a party of five families—twenty-eight persons, from Friedenstadt, he fixed and built Schoonbrun, "the Beautiful Spring." They were soon joined by 241 persons from the Susquehannah. Several new towns were founded, the most considerable of which were called Lichtenau, Friedenheuten, and Salem.

1772. April 14. Settlement begun on the Muskingum.

Feuds arose among the Indians, by which the missionaries were in continual danger. The jealousy of the chiefs also operated now, as in the time of Elliot, against the preaching of the gospel. But the most powerful man of the Delawares, Captain White-Eyes, a person of great and good qualities, was convinced of the importance of civilization. He saw how much better off were the Europeans, and even the christian Indians, than were his own people. Christianity, he regarded as the principal cause of the great difference. And when the aged chief Netawatwees, with Captain Pipe, a noted war-chief, and others, joined in determining to expel the religious teachers

1774. Nov. 6. The excellent chief, White Eyes, takes a noble stand.

1775. The Delawares, as a nation, determine to receive the gospel.

whom they had invited, White-Eyes addressed the council, even with tears, in their behalf. But unable to move them, he withdrew in silent offended dignity. The nation could not dispense with his talents and services, and were forced to come into his measures. At length Netawatwees was converted. Glikkikan, one of their most eloquent and warlike captains, had before become a sincere and consistent christian. He received baptism under the name of Isaac, and assisted the brethren as a teacher, and finally sealed his faith with his blood. The chiefs now solemnly determined in council, and promulgated the decree, that the Delawares, as a nation, would receive the word of God. "Let us," said Netawatwees to Pakanke, another aged chief, "do a good work before we depart, and leave a testimony to our children."

1776. April. Zeisberger's Delaware spelling-book completed.

Revolutionary war changes their prospects.

Great prosperity followed. Zeisberger had made a spelling-book of the Delaware tongue, and was gathering the children into schools. The war of the revolution came on, and the afflicted bretheren were now placed between three fires. The English and Americans each sent to them to be quiet, but each sought to draw them into such correspondencies as would have made them suspected by the other; while the Indian tribes around, wished to take part in the fray. Still, the Delawares, under White-Eyes, acted in their character of peacemakers, and called on the tribes to maintain a neutrality.

1777. August. The Half-king visits.

About this time, the Half-king came with 200 of his Hurons, or Wyandots, bent on the destruction of the Moravians; but they prepared a feast, and received him in such a manner, that he relented and promised them his friendship.

The Indian tribes determine to root out the Moravians.

At length the two belligerents called on the Indians to take up arms, and they could no longer be restrained. But the young men among their converts refused. Their refusal was attributed to their teachers, and the fierce Iroquois employed the Chippewas and Ottawas, to take the lives of the missionaries, or cause their removal. Their friend White-Eyes was now dead. They were plundered, and their cattle shot in such numbers, that the air became insupportable; and while their corn was yet unharvested, they were obliged to break up their beautiful settlements on the Muskingum.

August. 1781. Oblige them to break at the Muskingum.

October. Cruel hardships on the Sandusky.

Some of their converts forsook them, while hundreds followed them to a barren spot on the Sandusky river. Winter came on, and they suffered from hunger and cold. Notwithstanding the missionaries had thus sacrificed every thing, rather than to abandon their converts, who loved them as fathers, they were now seized, by British authority, and carried to Detroit. The very day they were torn from their families and converts, they learned the dreadful fate of a party of their Indian brethren and sisters, who had gone back to the Muskingum, to gather the corn from their deserted fields.

1782. March 14. Hear sad news.

This party consisted of ninety-eight persons. They were at Lichtenau and Salem, expecting soon to carry the gathered

corn to their famishing friends, when an armed party of American marauders, possessed with the superstitious belief, that the Indians, like the Canaanites of old, were all to be destroyed by the chosen race, which, in their opinion, were themselves, hearing of this party, came upon them unawares; and, by fraud and false pretenses, disarmed and made them prisoners. They then informed them that they must die. Religion had taught them how Christians should die, and all they asked was a little time to prepare. The wretches gave them till the next day, and then confined the men in one house, the women and children in another. All night did these devoted innocents send up to heaven the voice of prayer, with hymns of praise. In the morning, they were led forth by two and two, and in separate houses set apart for the men and women, they were scalped and murdered; meeting their death with christian composure. Thus ninety-six converted Indians were foully slaughtered in cool-blood, by white men pretending to be christians. Two lads alone escaped to give these particulars. Colonel Gibson, the American commandant at Pittsburg, had sent to apprise the Moravian Indians of the danger they were in, from these human fiends; but too late.

1782. A party go back to the Muskingum to gather their standing corn.

March 6. Americans make them prisoners.

March 7 Inhumanly murder them.

The missionaries, who were carried to Detroit, had already been there before on the accusation of Captain Pipe, that they had been in correspondence with the Americans. They denied the fact, and demanded of the governor a trial. When confronted with their accuser, the governor asked him if his charge was true. Captain Pipe shuffled and evaded, and whispered with his counsellors, who hung their heads. At length he raised himself, like a man who suddenly makes a great and good resolve. "I will," said he, "tell the plain truth. The missionaries are good men." Then striking his breast, he exclaimed, "it is I who am to blame: they did nothing but what the Delaware chiefs obliged them to do." On this declaration they were acquitted.

1781. November. The missionaries at Detroit are tried by de Peyster, the British governor.

Captain Pipe's avowal.

On their second visit, the governor, who was a worthy man, told them that he had them brought to Detroit to save their lives, which the savages were determined to take. Encouraged by him, the missionaries again gathered their scattered flock, for a time, on the Huron river. At length the news of peace between England and America arrived, and they returned to the United States. The savage tribes remaining hostile, they went towards their settlements in Pennsylvania, where their society was incorporated, and was flourishing. From the beginning of the Moravian mission to the year 1782, the brethren had baptized 720 of the Indians.

March 14. 1782. Mission on the Huron river.

They return to the United States. 1786.

After the treaty with Great Britain, that nation refused to deliver up Detroit and other posts in the western country, within the ceded limits of the United States; alledging that the Americans had not fulfilled certain stipulations of the treaty. These posts became the rallying points of the now hostile savages.

The Miamis.

The Little Turtle.

The Miamies were at this time the most prominent of the western tribes. Their chief, Michikiniqua, (the Little Turtle,) possessed more talents than any savage warrior of his time. Like Pontiac, he appears to have thought that a juncture, when the country was to change its white masters, might be made favorable to their utter expulsion, and the re-establisment of the Indian power. By the force of native abilities and great exertions, he raised himself to be the military leader of the confederated Wyandots, Delawares, Pottawatamies, Shawanese, Chippewas, Ottawas, and other tribes. With purposes of extermination, they now ravaged the frontiers of the United States, committing their usual midnight atrocities.

General Harmar.

His defeat.

Pacific arrangements were attempted by the president, but without effect. On their failure, General Harmar was sent from Fort Washington on the site of Cincinnati, with a force amounting to 1,400 men, to reduce them to terms. He was successful in destroying Indian villages, and the produce of their fields; but in an engagement near Chillicothe, he was defeated with considerable loss.

Upon the failure of General Harmar, Major General St. Clair, governor of the Northwest Territory, was appointed to succeed him. He hastened, with an army of 2,000, to protect the suffering inhabitants.

1792. October. St. Clair suffers the Little Turtle to surprise his force, which is wholly defeated.

In October of the following year, he marched into the wilderness to seek his foe, and encamped with 1,400 men, near the Miami villages. Regardless of the rules of savage warfare, and of the well known talent and subtilty of the Little Turtle, he and his officers were asleep, while at dead of night the savage chieftians assembled in council. At dawn, the terrified Americans were roused with the war-whoop sounding in their ears, from every quarter. The carnage was indescribable. Not more than one-fourth of the Americans escaped, and their whole camp and artillery, fell into the hands of the savages.

Congress resolve to carry on the war, but soldiers are wanting.

On receiving information of this horrible disaster, congress resolved to prosecute the war with increased vigor; to augment the army, and to place the frontiers in a state of defense. In pursuance of these resolutions, Washington endeavored to organize a force, sufficient for a vigorous prosecution of the war; but the defeats of Harmar and St. Clair produced such a dread of the Indians, that a sufficient number of recruits could not be enlisted, to authorize another expedition. A clamor was raised against the war, and the president once more attempting to negotiate, sent Colonel Harden and Major Trueman, with a flag of truce. They were both murdered by the savages, though against the will of the chief.

A flag of truce violated.

1793. Partial cessation of hostilities.

The Six Nations, at the instigation of Washington, now interfered, and persuaded the tribes on the Wabash, to withdraw from the alliance, and make peace with the United States.

The Miamies consented to something like a truce, agreeing to hold a conference the ensuing spring.

In 1792, a mint was established, by order of congress, and located at Philadelphia; and the division and value of the money, to be used throughout the country, was regulated by statute and it was called "Federal money."

1793. Washington's second inauguration.

General Washington was again elected president, and in March, 1793, was inaugurated. John Adams was also re-elected vice-president.

1789. The French revolution begins.

About this time, the French revolution, which had commenced in 1789, began seriously to affect the politics of the United States. A new government was at first established in France, which had for its fundamental principle, the universal equality of man. Hopes were entertained, that France would now enjoy the blessings of a free government; but the leaders of the revolution were selfish and unprincipled, and their sanguinary measures soon blasted these hopes. Louis XVI. was executed, his family murdered or imprisoned, and all who were suspected of hostility to the revolutionists, suffered decapitation by the guillotine.

1792. January. Louis XVI. guillotined.

Effect of the French revolution on the United States.

The party-spirit which had already agitated the whole Union, raged with increased violence. The democratic or republican party, viewing France as in the same situation with America, when contending for her rights against the tyranny of Great Britain, beheld with pleasure the downfall of kings, and the dissemination of their own principles; and though they disapproved the ferocity and cruelty exhibited, yet they trusted that good order would eventually be restored, and a republic of the most perfect kind established.

Views of the democratic party.

The federalists, regarding their country as connected with Britain by identity of origin, by the various ties of commercial interest, by resemblance of institutions, and by similarity of language, literature, and religion; shocked with the crimes of the French rulers, and alarmed at the system of disorganization which they had introduced, were led to doubt whether, amidst such a state of things, a republican form of government could permanently be maintained. They charged the democratic party with espousing the cause of France, and thus fostering a spirit of disorganization. Their public prints teemed with the most terrific visions of the future condition of the country, should the republican party gain the ascendency. Law, religion, and good order, they foretold, would all be subverted; the churches sacrilegiously demolished, and the written word of God committed to the flames. The republican prints retorted with equal asperity, charging their political opponents with hostility to republican institutions, and mean subserviency to Great Britain.

Alarm of the federalists.

April 22. Washington issues a proclamation of neutrality.

In April, 1793, information was received of the declaration of war by France, against Great Britain and Holland. Washington was an American, and he did not choose to involve his

country in the contests of Europe. He accordingly, with the unanimous advice of his cabinet, issued a proclamation of neutrality. This measure contributed, in a great degree, to the prosperity of America. Its adoption was the more honorable to the president, as the general sympathy was in favor of the sister republic, against whom, it was said, Great Britain had commenced a war for the sole purpose of imposing upon her a monarchical form of government; but he preferred the welfare of his country to the breath of popular applause.

1793. April. Arrival of Genet.

The French minister, who had been sent over by the king, was about this time recalled; and in April, Mr. Genet, who was appointed by the republic, arrived in Charleston, S. C. The flattering reception he met with, induced him to believe, that he could easily persuade the American people to embark in the cause of France, whatever might be the determination of their government. This opinion was followed by the presumptuous procedure of fitting out privateers from the port of Charleston, to cruise against the vessels of the enemies of France, nations at peace with the United States. Nor was this the only act of sovereignty which he attempted. He projected hostile expeditions against Florida, from South Carolina and Georgia; and against New Orleans and Louisiana, from the state of Kentucky, put them in a train of execution, and did not finally relinquish them until disavowed by the minister who succeeded him.

His presumptuous behavior.

Notwithstanding these illegal assumptions, he was welcomed at Philadelphia by the most extravagant marks of joy. Mr. Hammond, the British minister justly complained. The cabinet disapproved his course, and determined to enforce the laws. Genet went so far as to accuse the executive, and threaten an appeal from the government to the people. This measure turned many against him; and rendered the cause of France less popular in America. Congress approved the conduct of the administration towards Mr. Genet, and France annulled his powers. He was succeeded by Mr. Fauchet.

His threats.

Congress sustain the executive.

Feb 1. 1794. Mr. Fauchet supersedes him.

Kentucky was separated from Virginia, in 1790, and was admitted to the union, as a separate state, in 1792. The first English settlement was made by Col. Daniel Boone. He, with his family and forty men, settled, in 1775, on the banks of the Kentucky. Boone had himself, visited the region, four years earlier. Admiring the beauty and grandeur of the scenery, and the wild fertility of the soil, he remained upon it; a solitary dweller in the woods. The Indians were fierce and dangerous; and the wild beasts threatened his lonely habitation. But Boone delighted in such scenes. He trapped the bears, and eluded, or made friends of the Indians.

1792. Kentucky admitted as a state

1775. Col. Boone begins a settlement.

1780. The settlers in distress. They are relieved.

Subsequently, the legislature of Virginia, granted 400 acres of land, to any man who would make a clearing, build a cabin, and raise a crop of corn. This attracted settlers The Indians were hostile, and severe winters brought famine. But fresh bodies of emigrants furnished supplies; and Kentucky became prosperous.

CHAPTER III.

Consequences of war.

ON the 1st of January, 1794, Mr. Jefferson resigned his office of secretary of state, and was succeeded by Mr. Randolph. The office of attorney-general was filled by Mr. William Bradford.

Mr. Jefferson resigns his office.

The duties which had been laid by congress on distilled spirits, created great dissatisfaction. In the western counties of Pennsylvania, it soon assumed the appearance of a regularly progressive system of resistance. Combinations were formed to prevent the operation of the laws, by exciting the resentment of the people against those concerned in their execution; and for this purpose, in 1791, a general meeting of the malcontents was held at Pittsburg, and correspondencies established among them. This state of things called for vigorous measures on the part of government. Officers of inspection were appointed, and a proclamation issued by the president, exhorting and admonishing all persons to desist from any combinations to resist the execution of the laws.

1791. The duties on distilled spirits occasion disturbance in Pennsylvania.

The insurgents, not checked, proceeded to violent outrages. The marshal of the district, while serving processes against offenders, was seized by a body of armed men, and compelled to enter into an engagement to refrain from executing the duties of his office. The inspector, apprehensive of danger, after applying in vain for protection from the civil authority, procured a small number of soldiers, to guard his house. It was attacked by five hundred of the rioters, who, by setting fire to the surrounding buildings, compelled those within to surrender themselves, and deliver up the papers of the inspector, and both this officer and the marshal were obliged to withdraw.

1794. The "whiskey insurrection."

The avowed motives of these outrages, were to compel the resignation of the officers, and to procure a repeal of the offensive laws. The number of the insurgents was calculated at seven thousand.

Washington, having vainly attempted persuasive measures now found himself compelled to resort to force. A requisition was made on the governors of New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, for fifteen thousand militia. These were placed under the command of Governor Lee, of Virginia, who marched at their head into the revolted district. This had the intended effect. Such salutary terror was inspired, that no farther opposition was attempted. Several of the most active leaders were detained for legal prosecution, but afterwards pardoned; as were also two, who were tried and convicted of treason. In the management of this difficult affair, the energy and wisdom of Washington were again conspicuous, at once awing the disaffected by force, and soothing them by lenity.

October. Governor Lee sent against the insurgents

At this session of congress, an act was passed to raise a naval force, consisting of six frigates, for the purpose of protecting the American commerce against the Algerines; eleven merchant vessels, and upwards of one hundred citizens, having been captured by these barbarians.

1794. The mutual complaints of the British and Americans.

A war with England was, at this time apprehended. Since the peace of 1783, mutual complaints were made by the United States and Great Britain for violating the stipulations of the treaty. The former were accused of preventing the loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and British subjects from recovering debts, contracted before the commencement of hostilities. The Americans complained, that the military posts, of the western wilderness, were still retained; that the Indians were incited to make incursions upon the frontier settlements; and that injurious commercial restrictions had been imposed, by which American vessels, trading to the ports of France, might be seized by English cruisers, carried into England and there condemned.

Congress apprehend war.

April. Mr. Jay appointed envoy to England.

In this situation of affairs, congress assembled. A bill passed, laying an embargo for thirty days, one for erecting fortifications, one for raising a provisional army, and another for organizing the militia. To avert, however, if possible, the calamity of another war, Mr. Jay was sent to England, to negotiate with the British government.

The Little Turtle's opinion of Wayne.

The Indians of Ohio had continued hostile and refused to negotiate, although several of the associated tribes had withdrawn. General St. Clair, after his defeat, resigned his command, and was succeeded by General Wayne, to whom the Indians gave the name of the Black-Snake. So many had forsaken the alliance, that the Little Turtle now believing that the Indians would be defeated, sought to persuade them to peace. "We shall not surprise them," said he, "for they have now a chief who never sleeps." But the council overruled his opinion, and the Indians prepared for war.

Wayne marches into the Miami country.

Wayne marched into their country, and encamped for the winter, at Greenville. He occupied the ground where the battle had been fought in 1791; and there erected fort Recovery. Early in August, he reached the confluence of the Au Glaize and Miami rivers, about thirty miles from a British post, where the whole strength of the enemy, estimated at 2,000, was collected. His own force amounted to three thousand. After sending a messenger, with the vain endeavor of negotiating a peace, on the 15th of August, he proceeded against the Indians, and found them advantageously posted, behind the British fort. On the morning of the 20th, the Americans advanced in columns, and at the first charge, broke the enemy's lines. The Indians retreated, and for two hours were pursued at the point of the bayonet.

Aug. 20. He defeats the Indians.

Two companies of British soldiers were in the fight; but when the Indians fleeing in their distress, applied for shelter

to the commandant of the fort, they were refused admission. This treatment, after they had been incited to the war, was never forgotten or forgiven. The principal chief of the Delawares, Buckongahelas, immediately made peace with the Americans. The British power over the savages was broken, and the confederacy dissolved. Their whole country had been laid waste, and American forts erected in the conquered territory. These decisive measures disposed to peace, all the tribes northwest of Ohio, and also the Six Nations.

1795. Change of secretaries.

January 1st, Mr. Hamilton resigned his office of secretary of the treasury, and was succeeded by Oliver Wolcott of Connecticut. At the close of this session, General Knox also resigned his office of secretary of war, and was succeeded by Timothy Pickering of Massachusetts.

Nov. 19. **1794.** Jay's treaty with Great Britain.

Mr. Jay, having negotiated a treaty with Great Britian, returned in the spring of 1795. His treaty, having been laid before the senate, was, after much debate, ratified by that body. It provided that the posts, which the British had retained, should be given up to the Americans, and compensation made for illegal captures; and that the American government should hold £600,000, in trust for the subjects of Great Britain to whom American citizens were indebted. But it did not prohibit the right of searching merchant vessels, claimed by the British; and was thus an abandonment of the favorite principle of the Americans, that "free ships make free goods." While the senate were debating it with closed doors, a member had given an incorrect copy to a printer, This was circulated with rapidity, and produced much irritation. The president received addresses from every part of the Union, praying him to withhold his signature; but Washington, believing the conditions to be the best which, under existing circumstances, could be obtained, signed it in defiance of popular clamor.

1795. Popular clamor against it.

Passes the senate, and is signed by Washington.

Debates on the provisions for carrying into effect Jay's treaty.

At the next session of congress, an attempt was made by the republican party, to hinder the treaty from going into effect, by refusing to vote for the necessary funds. After a long debate, in which several members, particularly Fisher Ames, of Massachusetts, displayed much eloquence, and the parties generally much heat and irritation, the appopriation was carried by a majority of three, and the treaty went into effect. The republican party, although, in general, confiding in their beloved president, considered that, his sanction to this instrument was a proof that his judgment partook in some small degree of human fallibility. They believed the peace which it purchased, while the odious right of search was granted to England, would be short-lived and inglorious. Washington knew that it was better than war; and that should war ultimately arise from the insulting and injurious exercise of that power, it were better deferred, until the state had

gained the strength and vigor of a few more years' consolidation.

1795.
Treaty with Algiers.

A treaty was also made this season with Algiers; the commerce of the Mediterranean was opened, and the American captives were restored. A treaty was also concluded with the Indians in the west; thus securing the frontiers from savage invasion.

Oct. 27.
Treaty with Spain.

A treaty with Spain soon after followed. That power had endeavored to cause the western boundary of the new republic to be fixed three hundred miles east of the Mississippi. She denied the inhabitants beyond the Alleghany mountains, access to the ocean through that river, the mouth of which was in her province of Louisiana. To adjust these differences, Thomas Pinkney was appointed envoy extraordinary to the court of Madrid. In October, a treaty was signed, allowing the claims of the republic, as to the western boundary; securing to the United States free navigation from the Mississippi to the ocean, and the privilege of landing and depositing cargoes at New Orleans.

In 1796, Tennessee was admitted to the Union.

1796.
Mr. Fauchet's insolent proceedings.

The treaties of the last year met with no opposition in congress. The conduct of France had continued to be a source of disquiet. Mr. Fauchet, believing himself supported by a numerous party in America, gradually assumed an authoritative manner. He insulted the administration by accusing them of partiality to their former foes, enmity to their friends, and indifference to the cause of liberty.

American ministers to France, Mr. Morris, and Mr. Monroe.

Mr. Morris, who had been sent minister to France, failing to secure the confidence of those in power, was, at their request, recalled, in 1794. He was succeeded by Mr. Monroe, a gentleman who possessed the ardor for liberty and the rights of man, common to the republican party; and who, with them, hoped that the French revolution would eventually lead to the establishment of a free government, on the ruins of the ancient despotism. He was received in the most flattering manner; and the flags of the two republics were entwined and suspended in the legislative hall, as a symbol of friendship and union.

Mr. Fauchet superseded by Mr. Adet.

Mr. Adet soon after succeeded Mr. Fauchet, and brought with him the colors of France, which, with much ceremony, were deposited with the archives of the United States, as an honorable testimony of the existing sympathies and affections of the sister republics. These flatteries on the part of France, proved to be nothing but tricks to cajole America to take part in her European wars; but finding a steady system of neutrality maintained, she adopted measures injurious to American commerce. Her cruisers were allowed, in certain cases, to capture vessels of the United States; and while prosecuting a lawful trade, many hundreds of American vessels were taken and confiscated.

Unjust proceedings of France.

Mr. Monroe at this time, was suspected, by the president, of not asserting and vindicating the rights of the nation with proper energy. These suspicions were attributed, by the republican party, to the false insinuations of his political opponents. Washington, however, recalled him, and appointed Charles C. Pinkney, of South Carolina, in his stead.

From **1789.** to **1796.** Growing prosperity of the country.

As the period for a new election of the president of the United States approached, General Washington publicly signified his unalterable determination to retire to the shades of private life. On this occasion he received addresses from various quarters of the Union, which, while they deplored the loss of his great public services, contained many subjects of congratulation. He was reminded that during the short period of his administration, the prosperity of the country had increased beyond example. In regard to foreign affairs, he had witnessed the peaceful termination of all disputes with other nations, excepting France; while with respect to domestic, he had beheld the restoration of public credit, and provision of ample security for the ultimate payment of the public debt. The prosperity of American commerce had exceeded the most sanguine expectations, tonnage having nearly doubled. The productions of the soil had found a ready market; the exports had increased from nineteen millions to more than fifty-six millions of dollars; the imports in about the same proportion; and the amount of revenue, from import duties, had exceeded all calculation.

1796. Washington's farewell address

He warns his countrymen against disunion;

Great military establishments,

A lawless spirit of disregard to authorities; against unnecessary changes.

In 1796, the Father of his Country published his farewell address to the people of America. In the most earnest and affectionate manner he called upon them to cherish an immovable attachment to the national union, to watch for its preservation with jealous anxiety, to discountenance even the suggestion that it could, in any event, be abandoned; and "indignantly frown upon the first dawnings of an attempt to alienate any portion of our country from the rest." Overgrown military establishments he represented as particularly hostile to republican liberty. While he recommended the most implicit obedience to the acts of the established government, and reprobated all obstructions to the execution of the laws, all combinations and associations, under whatsoever plausible character, with the real design to direct, control, counteract, or overawe the general deliberations and actions of the constituted authorities;—he wished also to guard against the spirit of innovation upon the principles of the constitution. Aware that the energy of the system might be enfeebled by alterations, he thought no change should be made without an evident necessity; and that in so extensive a country, as much vigor as is consistent with liberty, is indispensable. On the other hand, he pointed out the dangers of real despotism, by breaking down the partitions between the several departments

of government, by destroying the reciprocal checks, and consolidating the different powers.

1796. He remonstrates against party spirit, foreign influence, dishonesty, and extravagance.

Against the spirit of party, so particularly baneful in an elective government, he uttered his solemn remonstrance, as well as against inveterate antipathies, or passionate attachments, in respect to foreign nations. While he thought that the jealousy of a free people ought to be constantly awake, against the insidious wiles of foreign influence, he wished that good faith and equal justice should be observed towards all nations, and peace and harmony cultivated. In his opinion, honesty, no less in public than in private affairs, is the best policy. Other subjects to which he alluded, were the importance of credit, of economy, of a reduction of the public debt, and of literary institutions; above all, he recommended religion and morality as indispensably necessary to political prosperity. "In vain," says he, "would that man claim the tribute of patriotism, who would labor to subvert these great pillars of human happiness, these firmest props of the duties of men and citizens."

CHAPTER IV.

America resents the indignities of France.

Adams and Jefferson opposing candidates.

To fill the station which Washington had so eminently dignified, the two great political parties presented their leaders. The federalists, claiming to be the sole adherents of the policy of Washington, and charging the opposite party with acting under French influence, and having imbibed French principles, zealously endeavored to elect John Adams. The republicans, setting themselves up as the exclusive friends of liberty, and accusing their opponents with undue attachment to Britain and its institutions, exerted their influence for Thomas Jefferson. On opening the votes it was found that Mr. Adams was elected president, and Mr. Jefferson vice-president.

1797. March 4. Mr. Adams, president; Mr. Jefferson, vice-president.

A war with France.

Immediately on succeeding to the presidency, Mr. Adams received intelligence of an open indignity on the part of the French government now in the hands of the directory. They had refused to accept Mr. Pinkney in exchange for Mr. Monroe, and directing him to quit France, determined not to receive another minister, until the United States had complied with their demands. Congress was immediately convened, and the dispatches containing this intelligence, submitted to their consideration. They passed laws increasing the navy, augmenting the revenue, and authorizing the president to detach, at his discretion, eighty thousand men from the militia.

Congress convened.

Put 80,000 militia at the call of the president.

To manifest, at the same time, his sincere desire of peace,

Mr. Adams appointed three envoys extraordinary to the French republic, Mr. Pinkney, then at Amsterdam, whither he had retired on leaving France, Mr. Marshall, and Mr. Gerry. These, also, the directory refused to receive; but an indirect intercourse was held with them, through the medium of unofficial persons, who were instructed by M. Talleyrand, the minister of foreign relations, to make them proposals. These persons demanded, before any negotiation could be opened with the directory, that a considerable amount of money should be given to Talleyrand. This insulting proposal was indignantly rejected. It was, however, repeated, and letters were received upon the subject, signed X Y & Z. Hence this has been called the X Y & Z mission. The envoys at length succeeded in putting an end to so degrading an intercourse. After spending several months at Paris, Mr. Marshall and Mr. Pinkney were ordered to leave France, while Mr. Gerry was permitted to remain, and repeatedly importuned singly to enter into a negotiation. This he declined, and was soon after recalled by his government. This treatment of the envoys induced Mr. Adams to declare, "that he would make no further overtures, until assured that American ministers would be received in a manner suited to the dignity of a great and independent nation."

1797. X Y & Z mission.

These events were followed by such French depredations, on the American commerce, as excited universal indignation; and the general motto was, "Millions for defense, not a cent for tribute." A regular provisional army was established by congress, taxes were raised, and additional internal duties laid. General Washington, at the call of congress, left his peaceful abode once more, to command the armies of his country. General Hamilton was made second in command. The navy was increased, and reprisals were made at sea. The French frigate L'Insurgente, of forty guns, was captured, after a desperate action, by the frigate Constellation, of thirty-eight guns, commanded by Commodore Truxton; a victory which gave great satisfaction to both political parties in America.

Washington once more commands the army.

1798. Feb. 10. The French frigate L'Insurgente captured.

The French government now became convinced that, although the Americans might choose to quarrel among themselves, yet they would not suffer foreign interference; and they made indirect overtures for a renewal of negotiations. Mr. Adams promptly met them by appointing Oliver Ellsworth chief-justice of the United States, Patrick Henry late governor of Virginia, and William Van Murray minister at the Hague, envoys to Paris, for concluding an honorable peace. They found the directory overthrown, and the government in the hands of Napoleon Buonaparte, who had not partaken of the transactions which had embroiled the two countries. With him they amicably adjusted all disputes, by a treaty, concluded at Paris, on the 30th of September. The provisional army was soon after disbanded by order of congress.

1800. Buonaparte at the head of the French government.

American commissioners.

Sept. 30. Conclude a treaty.

PART IV. PERIOD I. CHAP. V.

1799. Dec. 14. Death of Washington.

The people mourn.

America was now called to mourn the death of Washington. He calmly and peacefully expired at Mount Vernon, after an illness of twenty-four hours. The newspaper, in its blackened columns announced to the people, "the Father of his Country is no more!" The bells of the nation tolled forth his requiem, and one general burst of grief broke from the filial hearts of the American people. Clad in black, they assembled in their churches, to hear his funeral praises from the orator, and from the minister of God. The poet wrote his elegy, and the choir sung the solemn and pathetic dirge. The government mourned, with more of the parade of grief, but with an equal share of its sincerity.

The government devise honors to his memory.

In the house of representatives, the speaker's chair was shrouded in black; and the members were clad in the vestments of sorrow. A joint committee of both houses were appointed, who devised in what manner they should pay honor to the memory of "the man first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

His great example an invaluable legacy.

Washington died in the sixty-eighth year of his age. His history is that of his country, during the period of his public services. Commanding her armies, and presiding in her councils, during the most interesting period of her existence, her story can never be delineated, but he must stand the most prominent figure on the foreground. What may be said of many of the worthies of the revolution, may be eminently said of him. In no instance has he rendered his country a more important service, than in leaving to her future sons, his great and good example. Other heroes have been praised for their love of glory. Washington soared in the pure atmosphere of virtue, above its reach. Never did he rashly adventure the cause of his country, lest he should suffer in his personal reputation. He was above all other approbation and fear, but that of God.

CHAPTER V.

Operations of the two political parties.

1800. Seat of government is transferred to Washington.

During the year 1800, the seat of government, agreeably to the law passed by congress in 1790, was transferred from Philadelphia to the city of Washington. A territory, ten miles square, in which it was to be permanently located, had been ceded to the general government, by the states of Virginia and Maryland; and received the name of "the District of Columbia." Public buildings had been erected; and, in November of this year, congress, for the first time, held their session in that place.

Mississippi, and a part of the northwest territory, called Indiana, were this year made territories with separate governments.

1800.

Progress of popular opinion in regard to Mr. Adams.

The time had now arrived for electing a president. It was about this period, that the feuds and animosities of the federal and republican parties were at their greatest height. When Mr. Adams was first made the opposing candidate to Mr. Jefferson, he was, by no means, obnoxious to the great body of the republican party, who voted against him. They recognized in him a patriot of the revolution, and they liked him well, although they liked Mr. Jefferson better. It was Mr. Hamilton, not Mr. Adams, who was the chief object of party aversion; and although a clamor was raised, to serve party purposes, accusing him of being too much in favor of the British form of government, yet the real cause of dissatisfaction was, that he was supported by those, who, they were persuaded, had monarchical views. After the lapse of four years, when Mr. Adams was again a candidate for the presidency, he was opposed with far more bitterness.

Mr. Adams' administration.

In some of his measures he had been unfortunate, and the vigilant spirit of party was awake, to make the most of the real, or supposed errors of the nominal head of their opponents. In the early part of his administration, the acts, by which the army and navy were strengthened, and eighty thousand of the militia subjected to his order, were represented, by the democratic party, as proofs that, however he might have been a friend to the constitution of his country, he now either wished to subvert it, or was led blindfold into the views of those who did. The republicans scrupled the policy of a war with France, and denied the necessity, even in case of such a war, of a great land force against an enemy, totally unassailable, except by water. They believed that spirits were at work to produce this war, or to make the most of the prospect of a disturbance, in order to lull the people; while they raised an army, which they intended as the instrument of subverting the republican, and establishing a monarchical government.

Views of his opponents.

Mr. Adams was stung by such unreasonable clamors. Attributing the evil to French emissaries, and moreover ascribing to too much liberty, the horrible excesses of the French revolution, he gave his signature to two acts, which were considered by the body of the people as dangerous to the constitutional liberty of America. One of these, called the Alien Law, authorized the president to order any alien, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and liberty of the country, to depart from the United States, on pain of imprisonment. The other, called the Sedition Law, imposed a heavy fine, and imprisonment for years, upon such as should "combine, or conspire together to oppose any measure of the government;" and "write, print, utter, publish, &c. any false, scan-

Sedition and alien laws.

1800.

Their great unpopularity.

dalous, and malicious writing against the government of the United States, or either house of the congress of the United States, or the president, &c." Under the sedition law, several persons were actually imprisoned. The sympathies of the people were awakened in their behalf, and their indignation roused against those, by whose means they were confined. These were the principal causes why Mr. Adams was, at this period, unpopular, and that the federal party, as appeared by the election, had become the minority.

The midnight judiciary.

Immediately preceding his retirement from office, Mr. Adams appointed, in pursuance of a law made by congress, twelve new judges. These were called his midnight judiciary, from the alleged fact that they were appointed at twelve o'clock on the last night of his presidential authority.

1801.

Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr receive, from the electors, an equal number of votes.

By the constitution, as it then existed, each elector voted for two men, without designating which was to be president; and he who was found to have the greatest number of votes, was to be president; and the second on the list, vice-president. An unlooked for case now occurred. The republican electors, who had a very considerable majority over the federal, gave their votes, to a man, for Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr; intending, that Jefferson, the leader of the party, should be president, and Burr, vice president. These two men had thus an equal number of votes; and the election must, according to the constitution, be decided by the house of representatives.

They receive an equal vote in house of representatives.

The federal party were defeated, but they considered that they might yet defeat their opponents; and probably believing that they might find a grateful friend in Colonel Burr, while they knew that they had nothing to expect from Mr. Jefferson, they determined, if possible, to raise him to the presidential chair. On counting the votes in the house, another singular event occurred; Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had an equal number of votes. Again and again the voting went round, and the votes remained the same; until the time had nearly arrived when, by the constitution, the president must be elected, or otherwise, the machine of government would be run down; and the constitution contained no machinery by which it could be wound up. At length, after the members had voted thirty-five times, it was found on the thirty-sixth balloting, that Mr. Jefferson had a majority of one state.

Evil consequences ever to be apprehended from violent party spirit.

This transaction must go down to posterity as a dark passage in American history. Whether or not the republicans would have continued to vote until the constitution was destroyed, rather than yield to their opponents a short lived triumph, and take for four years as president, the man themselves had selected as vice president, can never be known; but if such had been the fact, posterity would have had cause to execrate their memories. Had such a catastrophe ensued, still less would America have had occasion of gratitude to the

other party. The republicans might alledge, that they voted in obedience to the will of the people; but no one pretended, that any freeman, in voting for an elector, or any elector in voting for Mr. Burr, expected or wished that he should be president. To guard the future, the constitution was amended.*

1801. March 4. Inauguration of Mr. Jefferson.

On the 4th of March, 1801, Mr. Jefferson was inauguated. On his accession to office, he departed from the example of his predecessors, and, instead of a speech delivered to the two houses of congress in person, he sent to them a written message, which was first read in the senate, and then transmitted to the house of representatives. The practice has been followed, and sanctioned by his successors.

Mr. Madison secretary of state.

The principal offices of the government were now transferred to the republican party. Mr. Madison was appointed to the department of state.

A bill was passed by congress, in accordance with the recommendation of the president, reorganizing the judiciary department, by means of which the twelve judges, appointed during the last days of Mr. Adams' administration, were deprived of their offices. Another bill was passed, enlarging the rights of naturalization.

Second census. Exports and revenue.

A second census of the United States was also completed; giving a population of 5,319,762, an increase of one million four hundred thousand in ten years. In the same time, the exports increased from nineteen to ninety-four millions, and the revenue, from 4,771,000 to 12,945,000 dollars. This rapid advance in the career of prosperity, is unparalleled in the history of nations; and it is to be attributed to the industrious and enterprising habits of the people, and their excellent laws and political institutions.

During this year, congress declared war against Tripoli.

1803. Ohio admitted to the Union.

In 1802, Ohio was admitted as an independent state into the Union. The territory of this state was originally claimed by Virginia and Connecticut, and was ceded by them to the United States, at different times, after the year 1781. From this extensive and fertile tract of country, slavery was entirely excluded.

Louisiana ceded by Spain to France. Difficulty with Spain.

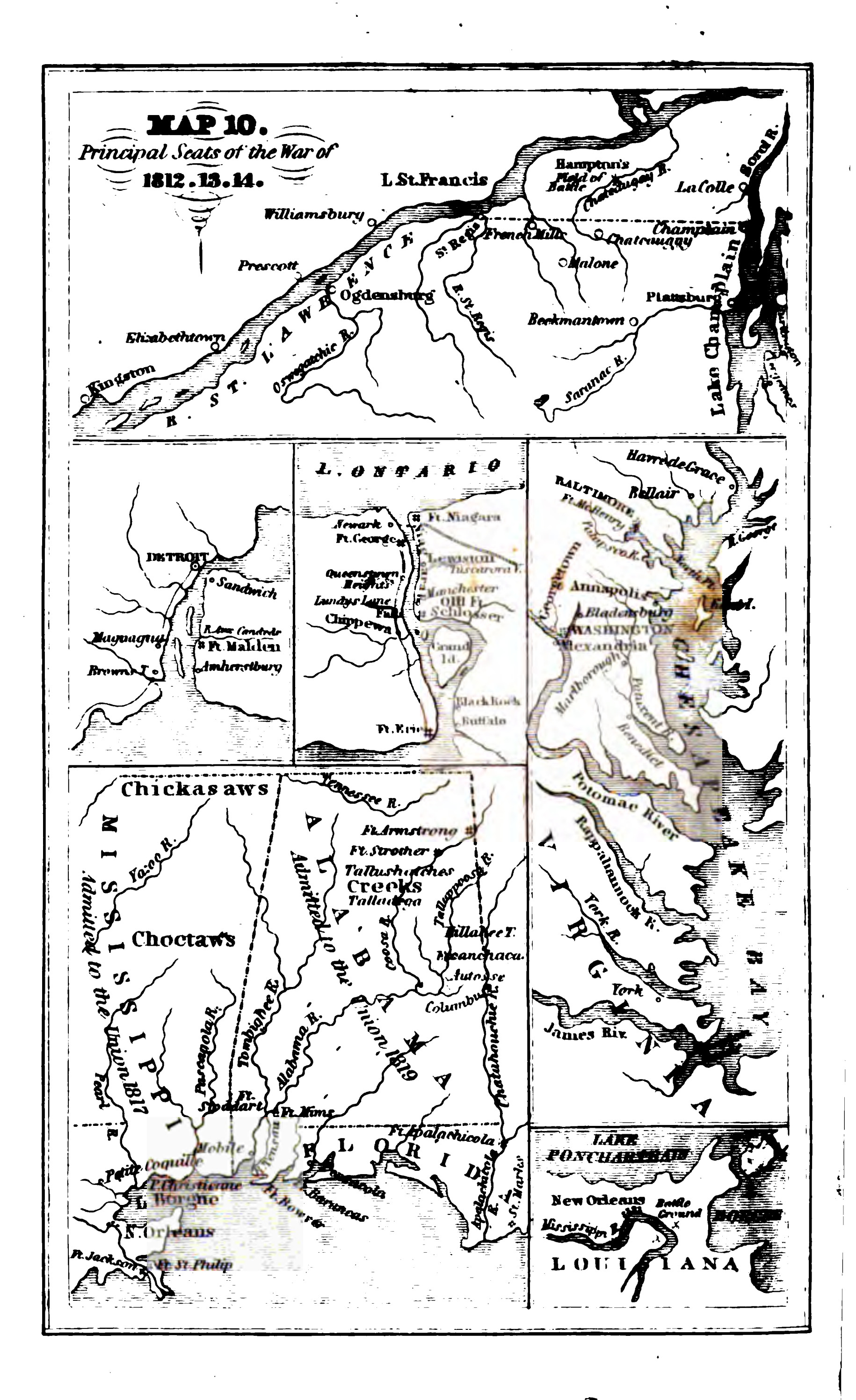
In 1802, the port of New Orleans was closed against the United States. The king of Spain having ceded Louisiana to the French, the Spanish intendant was commanded to make arrangements to deliver the country to the French commissioners. In consequence of this order, the intendant announced that the citizens of the United States could no longer be permitted to deposit their merchandise and effects in the port of New Orleans. By this prohibition, the western states were in danger of suffering the ruin of their commerce; and great agitation was excited in the public mind. Congress caused friendly and reasonable representations of the grievances sustained, to be made to the court of Spain, and the right of deposit was restored.

* See Article XII. of the Amendments, p. 407.

1803.
Louisiana purchased.

Aware of the difficulties and danger to which the United States would be exposed, while Louisiana remained in the possession of a foreign power, propositions had been made for procuring it by purchase. This was a subject of much discussion and feeling. But, by a treaty concluded at Paris, in 1803, Louisiana, comprising all that immense region of country, extending from the Mississippi to the Pacific ocean, was acquired by the United States, as well as the free and exclusive navigation of the river. The sum of fifteen millions of dollars was the sole price given for these newly acquired rights, which thus in a peaceful manner, nearly doubled the geographical importance of the nation, and therefore forms an important era in our history.




MAP 10.
Principal Seats of the War of
1812.13.14.
L. St. Francis
Williamsburg
Prescott
Ogdensburg
Elizabethtown
Kingston
R. St. Lawrence
Oswegatchie R.
St. Regis
French Mills
Hampton's Field of Battle
Chateaugay R.
La Colle
Champlain
Chateaugay
Malone
Plattsburg
Beekmantown
Saranac R.
Lake Champlain
L. Ontario
Newark
Ft. George
Ft. Niagara
Lewiston
Queenstown Heights
Lundys Lane
Chippewa
Manchester
Schlosser
Grand Id.
Black Rock
Buffalo
Ft. Erie
DETROIT
Sandwich
Maguaga
Ft. Malden
Amherstburg
Brownst.
Havre de Grace
BALTIMORE
Bellair
Ft. McHenry
Annapolis
Bladensburg
WASHINGTON
Alexandria
Georgetown
Marlborough
Benedict
Patuxent R.
Potomac River
Rappahannock R.
York R.
York
James Riv.
CHESAPEAKE BAY
VIRGINIA
Chickasaws
MISSISSIPPI
Admitted to the Union 1817
Yazoo R.
Choctaws
Pascagoula R.
Tombigbee R.
Pearl R.
ALABAMA
Admitted to the Union 1819
Tennessee R.
Ft. Armstrong
Ft. Strother
Tallushatches
Creeks
Talladega
Coosa R.
Tallapoosa R.
Autosse
Columbus
Alabama R.
Chatahouchie R.
Ft. Stoddart
Ft. Mims
Mobile
Ft. Apalachicola
FLORIDA
Apalachicola R.
St. Marks
Barrancas
Ft. Bowyer
Petite Coquille
L. Borgne
N. Orleans
Ft. Jackson
Ft. St. Philip
LAKE PONCHARTRAIN
New Orleans
Battle Ground
Mississippi R.
LOUISIANA

PERIOD II.

FROM

THE PURCHASE { 1803 } OF LOUISIANA,

TO

THE CESSION { 1820. } OF FLORIDA.

CHAPTER I.

European affairs.—War with Tripoli.—Troubles with England and France.

THE semi-barbarous nations, which inhabit the southern shores of the Mediterranean, had made depredations on the American commerce, and had taken and held in bondage, American citizens. On remonstrance, Tripoli intimated to the government, that their only method of securing themselves, was the payment of tribute.

1801. War with Tripoli.

In prosecution of the war which ensued, Commodore Dale, with a squadron of two frigates and a sloop of war, was sent to the Mediterranean, where, blockading the harbor of Tripoli, he prevented the piratical cruisers from leaving it, and thus afforded protection to the American commerce.

1803. Frigate Philadelphia captured.

Early in the year 1803, congress sent out Commodore Preble, with a squadron of seven sail. In October, one of his ships, the Philadelphia, Captain Bainbridge, was sent into the harbor of Tripoli, to reconnoitre; and while in pursuit of a small vessel, he unfortunately proceeded so far, that the frigate grounded, and fell into the hands of the enemy. The officers were imprisoned, and the crew treated as slaves.

1804. February. Decatur re-captures and burns the Philadelphia.

Stephen Decatur, a lieutenant under Preble, conceived the bold design of re-capturing, or destroying the Philadelphia. Arming a small ketch, the Intrepid, he sailed from Syracuse, with seventy-six men, entered the harbor of Tripoli, and advancing secretly, took a station alongside of the frigate, which was moored within gunshot of the bashaw's castle, and of the principal battery. Some of the enemy's cruisers lay within two cable's length, and all the guns of the frigate were mounted and loaded. Decatur sprang on board. His crew followed, and rushing, sword in hand, upon the astonished and terrified Tripolitans, killed and drove them into the sea, and were soon masters of the frigate. The guns of the battery opened upon them, and the corsairs in the harbor were approaching. They set fire to the Philadelphia, left her, and were soon out of the reach of their pursuers; having accomplished this daring enterprise without the loss of a single man.

1804.
Commodore Preble attempts to destroy the fortifications at Tripoli.

In the month of August, Commodore Preble went three times into the harbor of Tripoli, and opened the broadsides of his fleet. Although some of the Tripolitan shipping was thus destroyed, yet no material impression was made upon the fortifications. Meantime, the barbarians treated the American prisoners, among whom were Captain Bainbridge and his crew, with such cruel indignities, that their country deeply commisserating their distresses, was ready to adopt any measure, which afforded a reasonable prospect of relief.

Eaton obtains permission to undertake a bold enterprise.

In 1803, Captain William Eaton, on his return from Tunis, where he had been as consul, requested the government to permit his union with Hamet an elder and expelled brother of the reigning bashaw of Tripoli. Permission was given, such supplies granted him as could be afforded, and the co-operation of the fleet recommended. After reaching Malta, he left the American fleet, and proceeded to Cairo and Alexandria, where he formed a convention with Hamet, who hoped, by attacking the usurper in his dominions, to regain his throne. For this purpose, an army was to be raised in Egypt, where Hamet had been kindly received, and presented with a military command by the Mameluke Bey.

1805.
April 27.
He captures Derne.

Early in 1805, Eaton was appointed general of Hamet's forces. From Egypt, he marched with a few hundred troops, principally Arabs, across a desert, one thousand miles in extent, to Derne, a Tripolitan city, on the Mediterranean. In this harbor he found the part of the American fleet destined to assist him. The next morning, he summoned the governor of Derne to surrender, who returned the bold answer, "My head or yours." He then assaulted the city, which, after a contest of two hours and a half, surrendered. Eaton was wounded, and his army had suffered severely, yet immediate exertions were made to fortify the city.

Victorious over the Tripolitans.

On the 8th of May, it was attacked by a Tripolitan army, much more numerous than Eaton's, yet, after a severe contest of four hours, they were compelled to retire. On the 10th of June, another battle was fought, in which Eaton was again victorious. The next day, the American frigate Constitution arrived in the harbor, and the Tripolitans fled to the desert.

June 3.
Peace with Tripoli.

The bashaw now offered terms of peace, which were acceded to by Colonel Lear, the American consul at Tripoli. It was stipulated that an exchange of prisoners should take place; and, as the bashaw had a balance of more than 200 in his favor, he was to receive sixty thousand dollars. All support from Hamet was to be withdrawn; but on his retiring from the territory, his wife and children, then in the power of the reigning bashaw, were to be given up to him. Thus ended the war in the Mediterranean.

1804.
Hamilton killed in a duel with Burr.

In July, 1804, occurred the death of General Alexander Hamilton. He died in a duel fought with Aaron Burr, vice president of the United States. Colonel Burr had addressed

a letter to General Hamilton, requiring his denial or acknowledgment of certain offensive expressions contained in a public journal. Hamilton declining to give either, Colonel Burr sent him a challenge. They met, and Hamilton fell at the first fire. His death caused a deep sensation throughout the country.

1805.
Jefferson again elected president.

In the meantime, Mr. Jefferson received his second presidential election; and such was his popularity, that out of 176 votes, he received 162. George Clinton, of New York, was chosen vice-president.

Neutrality of America during the wars of the French revolution.

The wise policy of America had been eminently conspicuous in maintaining a steady system of neutrality, during the whole of those wars which broke out in consequence of the French revolution. This neutrality enabled her to profit by the colonial commerce of France and Spain, as also by the whole of that branch of European trade, which, in consequence of the general war, could not be transported in native ships. France, in the meantime, had become a nation of soldiers. She had repelled her invaders, and placed at the head of her republic a man whose vast mental powers and resources had acquired control over most of the European kingdoms. Napoleon had made a stand against the maritime tyranny of Britain, while that nation, with equal vigor, resisted his usurpations on land. Each party was intent on repaying blow for blow; and each was regardless how great a part of the shock might fall on unoffending neutrals, so that any part of it should reach his antagonist. Nor was this all; each belligerent, resolutely bent that other nations should make common cause, made it understsood, that whatever nation should fail of resenting the injuries of his enemy, should be injured by him.

Neutrals unjustly treated by the belligerents.

Disputes between Great Britain and America.

The "right of search."

On two subjects Britain and America were at issue. One was respecting what the former power denominated "the right of search;" by which on various pretences, she had so long haughtily assumed, and exercised an authority to search the vessels of other nations. Another subject in dispute was, that of expatriation. England maintained, that a man, once a subject, was always a subject; and that no act of his could change his allegiance to the government under which he was born. America, with a more liberal policy, held that man was born free; and if, when he arrived at years of reflection, he preferred some other government to that of his native land, he had a right to withdraw himself, and break the bonds imposed by his birth. In pursuance of these different principles, America received and adopted as her sons, all who, in compliance with the forms of her laws, sought her hospitable protection. Hence, there were those, who being born in Great Britain, were claimed by that government as her subjects; while at the same time, having resided in America, and become naturalized, they were as much regarded as

Of expatriation.

her citizens, as if they had drawn their first breath upon her soil.

These opinions were convenient to the British statesmen in defending the impressment of American seamen. Officers of British ships, in the exercise of the pretended right of search, entered American vessels, and impressed from thence certain seamen, whom they claimed as subjects, because they were born in Great Britain; while the same men, having become naturalized in America, were there regarded as citizens. The practice of impressment, thus begun, did not however end here, but proceeded to extremes that were unjustifiable on any principles. The native citizens of America were wantonly confounded with her adopted ones, by the domineering officers of the British navy; and a cry was heard throughout the land, of American families who mourned for their relatives, thus forcibly seized and detained in the worst of bondage.

1806. Impressment of American seamen.

French and English decrees.

America, thus harassed, was meditating measures for the defense of her commerce, when she received, from both the belligerents, fresh cause of provocation. Great Britain, under the administration of Charles Fox, issued a proclamation, May, 1806, blockading the coast of the continent, from Elbe to Brest. The French government, exasperated at this measure, retaliated by the decree issued at Berlin, November, 21st, declaring the British Isles, in a state of blockade. Thus each nation declared, in effect, that no neutral should trade with the other.

Suspicious enterprise of Colonel Burr.

In 1807, the public attention was again directed to Colonel Burr. He had lost the confidence of the republican party, by his supposed intrigues against Mr. Jefferson, for the office of president; and he had excited the indignation of the whole federal party, by his encounter with Hamilton. Thus situated, he had retired as a private citizen into the western states. It was at length, understood, that he was at the head of a great number of individuals, who were arming and organizing themselves; purchasing and building boats on the Ohio.

1807. Burr is apprehended, tried and acquitted.

Their ostensible object, peaceful and agricultural, was to form a settlement on the banks of the Washita, in Louisiana. But their movements indicated other designs. At length, Burr was apprehended on the Tombigbee river, in February, 1807, brought to Richmond, under military escort, and committed, in order to take his trial upon two charges exhibited against him, on the part of the United States. First, for a high misdemeanor, in setting on foot, within the United States, a military expedition against the king of Spain, with whom the republic was at peace; second, for treason in assembling an armed force, with a design to seize the city of New Orleans, to revolutionize the territory attached to it, and to separate the Atlantic states from the western. In August, after a trial be-

fore Judge Marshall, the chief-justice of the United States, sufficient evidence of his guilt not being presented, he was acquitted by the jury.

CHAPTER II.

War with England.

1807.
Outrage upon the Chesapeake.

The frigate Chesapeake, commanded by Com. Barron, having been ordered on a cruise, sailed from Hampton Roads on the 22d of June. She had proceeded but a few leagues from the coast, when she was overtaken by the British ship-of-war, Leopard. A British officer came on board, with an order from Vice-Admiral Berkely, to take from the Chesapeake three men, alledged to be deserters from the Melampus frigate. These men, were American citizens, who had been impressed by the British, but had deserted, and enlisted in the service of their country. Commodore Barron replied in terms of politeness, but refused to have his crew mustered for examination.

June 22.
Commodore Barron strikes to the Leopard.

The American commodore was not prepared for an attack so near the Capes; but, during this interview, he noticed hostile movements on board the Leopard, and gave immediate orders to prepare for action. But before efficient preparation could be made, the Leopard opened her broadside. After receiving her fire about thirty minutes, during which, the Americans had three men killed, and eighteen wounded, Commodore Barron ordered his colors to be struck. An officer from the Leopard came on board, and took four men, the three who had been previously demanded, and another, who they affirmed, had deserted from a merchant vessel. Commodore Barron observed, that he considered the Chesapeake a prize to the Leopard. The officer replied "No," he had obeyed his orders in taking out the men, and had nothing further to do with her. This event produced great excitement. That rancor of party which had so long embittered all the intercourse of social life, was lost in the general desire to avenge a common wrong. The president, by proclamation, commanded all British armed vessels within the harbors or waters of the United States, to depart from the same without delay; and prohibited others from entering. Mr. Monroe, the American minister in London, was instructed to demand reparation; and a special congress was called.

Nov. 11.
Orders in council issued.

In November, Great Britain issued her orders in council, a measure declared to be in retaliation of the French decree of November, 1806. These prohibited all neutral nations from trading with France, or her allies, except upon the condition

21*

of paying tribute to England. This was immediately followed by a decree of Napoleon, at Milan, which declared that every vessel which should submit to be searched, or pay tribute to the English, should be confiscated if found within his ports.

1807. Dec. 22. Embargo laid.

Thus was the commerce of America subjected to utter ruin, as almost all her vessels were, on some of these pretences, liable to capture. Congress after warm debates, resorted to an embargo on their own vessels, as a measure best fitted to the crisis. It would effectually secure the mercantile property, and the mariners now at home, and also those who were daily arriving; and at the same time it would not be a measure of war, or a just cause of hostility.

Mr. Canning. Mr. Rose.

Mr. Monroe was instructed not only to demand satisfaction for the Chesapeake, but to obtain security against future impressments from American ships. Mr. Canning, the British minister, objected to uniting these subjects, and Mr. Monroe was not authorized to treat them separately. Mr. Rose was sent out envoy-extraordinary to the United States, to adjust the difficulty which had arisen on account of the Chesapeake. In 1808, Commodore Barron was tried for prematurely surrendering that frigate, and suspended for five years.

1809. Mr. Madison is elected president.

In 1809, Mr. Jefferson's second term of office having expired, he declared his wish to retire from public life. Mr. Madison, was elected president, and Mr. George Clinton of New York was re-elected vice-president.

March. Embargo repealed. Non-intercourse substituted.

In the meantime the embargo met the most violent opposition, throughout the country. The commercial states inveighed against it as ruinous; bringing in its train poverty and distress. Opportunities of infringing it were seized; and its restrictions could not be enforced, in the eastern states, without the aid of a military force. Thus circumstanced, the government repealed the embargo law, and sustituted another, prohibiting for one year all intercourse with France or Great Britain, with a proviso, that should either of the hostile nations revoke her edicts, so that the neutral commerce of the United States should be no longer violated, the president should immediately make it known by proclamation, and from that time the non-intercourse law should cease to be enforced, as it regarded that nation.

March 23. Decree of Rambouillet.

On pretence of retaliating upon America for submitting to the outrages of England, Napoleon issued his decree of Rambouillet, which authorized the seizure and confiscation of American vessels which were then in the ports of France, or might afterwards enter, excepting those charged with despatches to the government.

Arrangement with Mr. Erskine.

In April, a treaty was concluded with Mr. Erskine, the British minister at Washington, which engaged on the part of Great Britain, that the orders in council, so far as they affected the United States, should be withdrawn. The British min-

istry refused their sanction, alledging that their minister,(whom they recalled,)had exceeded his powers. His successor, Mr. Jackson, insinuated in a correspondence with the secretary of state, that the American government knew that Mr. Erskine was not authorized to make the arrangement. This was distinctly denied by the secretary, but being repeated by Mr. Jackson, the president declined further intercourse.

1810. French decrees repealed.

In May, 1810, the non-intercourse law expired, and government made proposals to both the belligerents, that, if either would revoke its hostile edicts, this law should only be revived and enforced against the other nation. France repealed her decrees, and the president issued a proclamation on the 2d of November, in which he declared that all the restrictions imposed by the non-intercourse law should cease in relation to France and her dependencies.

The population of the United States, by the census of 1810, was 7,239,903.

1811. May 16. Attack on the United States frigate President.

Among the occurrences produced at that period of excitement by British ships hovering on our coasts, was an encounter off Cape Charles, between the American frigate President, commanded by Commodore Rogers, and the British sloop of war, Little Belt, commanded by Captain Bingham. The attack was commenced by the Little Belt, but she was soon disabled, and thirty-two of her men either killed or wounded.

Indians commence hostilities.

The appearance of a hostile confederacy and menacing preparations had been discovered among the Indians on the western frontier. At its head was the great chief Tecumseh and his twin brother Elskwatawa. It seems probable that in boyhood these two remarkable savages laid a scheme for dividing between them, not only the sovereignty of their own warlike nation the Shawanese, but that of all the border confederacies. Tecumseh, who appears to have been the master-spirit, took upon himself the departments of war and eloquence, success in these being the road to eminence and chieftainship; but in order to hold enslaved the minds of his countrymen by their strong bent to superstition, Elskwatawa was to invest himself with the sacred and mysterious character, and to bear the name of "the Prophet." Pretending to be favored with direct and frequent communications from the Great Spirit, he by tricks and austerities, gained belief, and drew around him the awe-struck Indians from great distances. He then began a species of drill, whose object seems to have been to discipline them to obedience and union. He ordered them to kill their dogs, and these faithful animals were instantly sacrificed. They must not, he said, permit their fires to go out; and at once the fire of every wigwam was watched as by vestals. Then, to make them independent of the whites, the Prophet commanded, that even the blanket should be laid aside, and the Indians dress only in skins. While the Prophet thus manifested, that priestcraft in its

Tecumseh and Elskwatawa.

Specimen of priestcraft.

worst form, may inhabit the desert as well as the city, Tecumseh was going from one Indian confederacy to another, and by his eloquence inflaming their minds against the whites.

Tecumseh's arguments and exertions to stir up the Indians.

They were intruders, he said, upon a soil, which as it had formerly belonged to their fathers, (not to any one tribe or individual, but to all, therefore none had a right to alienate it,) so it still belonged to the descendants by right of inheritance. He did not, like Philip, believe it possible to exterminate the entire white population, but he thought the combined Indian power might suffice to set them their bounds. He wished the principle to be acknowledged by all the Indians, that their collective right to the soil was unalienable, and that as such it was to be defended to the last extremity. So bold a plan could not but meet opposition, and especially from some of the more independent and virtuous of the chiefs, who rebelled against the double tyranny to which these two brothers were gradually subjugating their tribes. To be rid of these troublesome men, Elskwatawa pretended a gift from the Great Spirit of discerning wizards; and immediately some of the oldest and best of the surrounding chiefs were denounced and murdered by order of the brothers.

The cruelties exercised by the Prophet on the chiefs.

Thus was taken off Tetaboxti, a Delaware chief of eighty, and Tahre "The Crane," the oldest Indian in the western country. But none of these executions is more striking than that of the exemplary Wyandot chief, called the Leather-Lips, aged sixty-three. The Prophet had declared him a wizard, and forthwith sent a neighboring chief with four warriors to dispatch him. They found him at his home, and announced their bloody errand. He expostulated and entreated, but in vain. His grave is dug by the side of his wigwam, and before his eyes. He is allowed time to attire himself as became a chieftain about to depart on his last journey. Then the two chiefs kneeling beside the open grave, the messenger offers up a prayer to the Great Spirit. The victim then bent over his grave, and was tomahawked by the young warriors behind him.

Indian warriors on the Wabash.

The brothers watching the attitude of Great Britain and the United States, and believing that an opportunity for them to attack would soon occur, were collecting their followers on the Wabash.

1811. Governor Harrison sent against them.

Governor Harrison, of the Indiana territory, was directed to march against them with a military force, consisting of regulars, under the command of Colonel Boyd, united with the militia of the territory. On the 7th of November, he met a number of the Prophet's messengers at Tippecanoe, and a suspension of hostilities was agreed upon until the next day, when an interview was to be had with him and his chiefs.

Nov. 7. Battle of Tippecanoe. Indians defeated.

Warned by the sad fate of so many American armies, General Harrison formed his men in order of battle; and they thus reposed upon their arms. Just before day, the faithless

savages rushed upon them. But the war-whoop was not unexpected. The Americans stood, repelled the shock, and repulsed the assailants.

Their loss was, however, severe, being about 180 in killed and wounded. That of the Indians was 170 killed, and 100 wounded. Tecumseh was not in this battle, but was still among distant tribes inciting them to war. He had not expected that the whites would strike the first blow.

1811. Reparation made for the attack on the Chesapeake.

Mr. Foster, succeeded Mr. Jackson, and during the summer, the controversy respecting the Chesapeake was adjusted; the British government agreeing to make provision for those seamen who were disabled in the engagement, and for the families of those who were killed. The two surviving sailors, who were taken from the Chesapeake, were to be restored. But the British right to search American vessels and to impress American seamen, if native-born Britons, was still maintained; and the orders in council were enforced with the greatest rigor British vessels were, for this purpose, stationed before many of the principal harbors in the United States.

Extent of American losses.

The French decrees being annulled, commerce had begun with France, and American vessels, richly laden, were captured by the British. Not less than nine hundred had thus fallen into their hands, since the year 1803.

Preparations for war.

Further forbearance, under such great and repeated injuries, seemed but to invite further insult and aggression, and when congress assembled in November, the president, in laying before them the state of foreign relations, recommended that the United States should be placed in an attitude of defense. The representatives acted in accordance with these views. Provision was made for the increase of the regular army to 35,000 men, and for the enlargement of the navy. A law was enacted, empowering the president to borrow eleven millions of dollars; the duties on imported goods were doubled, and taxes were subsequently laid on domestic manufactures, and nearly all descriptions of property.

1812. Feb. 25. John Henry's disclosure.

On the 25th of February, Mr. Madison laid before congress, copies of certain documents, which proved, that on the 6th of February, 1809, the British government, by its agent, Sir James Craig, governor of Canada, had sent John Henry as an emissary to the United States, for the express purpose of insidiously destroying its government, by effecting, if possible, the disunion of its parts. The service for which Henry was employed, was to intrigue with the leading members of the federal party, draw them into direct communication with the governor of Canada, and lead them, if possible, to form the eastern part of the union into a nation, or province, dependent on Great Britain.

Henry's secret mission.

Henry proceeded through Vermont and New Hampshire to Boston, which was his ultimate destination; but he returned without effecting, in any degree, his purpose. This failure he

attributed solely to the readiness which Mr. Madison had manifested to meet the conciliatory propositions of Mr. Erskine, which took from its opponents the power of making him and his administration odious to the people, by representing to them that he was in the interest of France. Henry having vainly sought from Great Britain, remuneration for this dishonorable service, disclosed the whole transaction to the American government; for which he was paid fifty thousand dollars, out of the contingent fund for foreign intercourse. This treacherous attempt, made by England in time of peace, was regarded with abhorrence, by the virtuous of both parties, and was among the causes which led to the war, which soon ensued.

1811. It is wholly unsuccessful.

CHAPTER III.

War of 1812.—Condition of the Country.

1812. April. Embargo laid.

In April, congress laid an embargo for ninety days upon all vessels within the jurisdiction of the United States. Although preparations were making for war, a hope was yet cherished, that some change of policy in the British cabinet would render them unnecessary; but no such occurring, on the 18th of June, 1812, war with Great Britain was formally declared.

June 18. War declared against Great Britain.

The president's manifesto declares and shows just reasons for war.

The reasons of the war were stated by the president, in an able manifesto. They were, British excesses, in violating the American flag on the great highway of nations,—the impressment of American seamen;—harassing American vessels as they were entering their own harbors, or departing from them, and wantonly spilling the blood of the citizens of America, within the limits of her territorial jurisdiction;—issuing orders, by which the ports of the enemies of Great Britain were blockaded, and not supporting these blockades by the adequate application of fleets to render them legal, and enforcing them from the date of their proclamation; in consequence of which American commerce had been plundered on every sea, and her products cut off from their legitimate markets;—employing secret agents to subvert the government, and dismember the union;—and finally encouraging the Indian tribes to hostility. Against this declaration, the representatives of the federal party, constituting a small minority in congress, entered their solemn protest.

Altered condition of America since the revolution.

The circumstances of the country at the beginning of this war, were, however, far different from those which attended that of the revolution. A government had been established, which, unlike the congress of that period, could not only recommend, but enforce. The number of inhabitants had in

creased from about three millions to nearly eight, and the pecuniary resources of the republic had advanced in a ratio yet greater.

1812.

Providential circumstances favorable to the American revolutionists.

But there were points, in which our fathers of the revolution were in a more advantageous situation for war, than that of their descendants, thirty-seven years afterwards. In 1775, the Americans were comparatively a warlike people. They had been obliged to be constantly on the alert, to defend themselves from savage foes; and they had just emerged from a contest, which had given practical experience of the difficulties and hardships of war, and the consequent ability to face its dangers, and endure its fatigues. That war had moreover been eminently calculated, both by its misfortunes and successes, to impart sound maxims in the military art; both by the shameful inertness and disasters of its first campaigns, and the energy and brilliant successes of the last. The disgrace of Braddock, and the glory of Wolfe, were still fresh and inspiring; and it was amidst the scenes of that war that the military character of the leader of the revolutionary army, and that of many of his officers, were formed.

A mistake in the appointment of old men to take the chief command in the army.

On the contrary, in 1812, a season of thirty years of peace and prosperity had enervated the nation. Most of the officers of the revolution slept in honored graves; and that a few remained, (not of those most distinguished) proved a source of misfortune; for they had their pretensions, and were preferred to younger and abler men.

Penny-wisdom and pound-foolishness.

During Mr. Jefferson's administration, economy was the order of the day. Every possible retrenchment of national expenditure was adopted; and among other measures of this nature, was the curtailing of the army and navy. Although a spirit of prudence in money affairs is highly commendable, and though it was at that period popular, and in many respects useful to the country, yet it may now be doubted, whether, in this instance, it did not degenerate into that penny-wisdom and pound-foolishness, which is as little consistent with the best interests of a nation, as with those of an individual. The national debt, it is true, was by these measures reduced from $75,000,000 to $36,000,000; but by the increased expenditures of the war of 1812, '13, and '14, it amounted, in 1816, to $123,000,000; a sum exceeding by $47,000,000, its original amount. It is probable, that many of the misfortunes of the country might have been spared, by maintaining, during peace, a better state of preparation for war, and a sum of money eventually saved, far greater than the amount of the retrenchment.

Military force of the United States.

In 1808, the regular army consisted of only 3,000 men; but during that year, the government, alarmed by the increasing aggressions of the European powers, increased it to nine thousand. The act to raise an additional force of 25,000, was passed so short a time previous to the declaration of war,

1812.

Condition of the army.

that not more than one-fourth of the number were enlisted at that time; and those were, of course, raw and undisciplined. In addition to the regular army, the president was authorized to call on the governors of the states for detachments of militia, to an amount not exceeding 100,000, and to accept the services of any number of volunteers, not exceeding 50,000. But the actual force, at the commencement of the war in 1812, was small, and the troops were wholly inexperienced.

The administration had lost the best moment for declaring war.

This army had not that high tone of public feeling, which made the soldiers of the revolution a band of heroes. The occasion, though important, was not so awfully momentous. Indeed, the administration, reluctant to change its pacific and economical policy, had unwisely suffered the highest state of public excitement for the injuries of Britain to pass away, before the declaration of war. The nation felt so keenly wounded by the outrage upon the Chesapeake, that it would on that occasion have moved in its united majesty, to the vindication of its rights. But while they temporized, England had shrewdly allayed that feeling; and the money-loving spirit, which the administration had formerly too much courted, was now offended by the operation of its restrictive system. Its political enemies took advantage of every subject of discontent; and such opposition to its measures was excited, as, in a degree, paralized its exertions.

State of the revenue.

The state of the revenue in 1812, was extremely unfavorable to the prosecution of an expensive war. Derived almost solely from duties on merchandise imported, it was abundant in a state of commercial prosperity; but in time of war and trouble, the aggressions of foreign powers, while they produced an increase of public expenditure, almost destroyed the means of defraying it.

The navy in a better condition than the army.

The condition of the navy was better than that of the army. The situation of the United States, as a maritime and commercial nation, had kept it provided with seamen, who, in time of war, being transferred from merchant to warlike vessels, were already disciplined to naval operations. The recent contest with the Barbary states, had given to the officers and men, some experience in war; and their successes had inspired them with confidence in themselves. The navy was, however, very small. Many enterprising individuals of the republic, did, in the course of the war, convert their merchant ships into privateers; but, at its beginning, ten frigates, ten sloops, and one hundred and sixty-five gunboats, was all the public naval force which America could oppose to the thousand ships of the mistress of the ocean.

General Dearborn, commander-in-chief.

Among the few surviving officers of the revolutionary war, was Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, who was appointed major-general and commander-in-chief of the American army. His head-quarters were at Greenbush, on the Hudson river, opposite Albany.

CHAPTER IV.

Hull's unfortunate invasion and surrender.

PART IV.
PERIOD II.
CHAP. IV.

THE plan of the campaign, which was formed at Washington, had, for its ultimate object, the invasion of Montreal. It was intended to invade, simultaneously, at Detroit and Niagara, and that the armies from these places should be joined, on the way, by a force stationed at Plattsburg.

1812.
Army of the north-west, their number, &c. commanded by Hull.

The army destined for Detroit, was collected at Dayton, in Ohio, some time before the declaration of war. The president of the United States had made a requisition for 1,200 men on the governor of that state. The number was immediately filled by volunteers, who were divided into three regiments, commanded by colonels M'Arthur, Cass, and Findlay. These troops were joined by 300 regulars under Colonel Miller.

General Hull reaches Maumee, June 30.

Extraordinary fact not yet accounted for.

The command of this army was given to General Hull, a captain during the revolution, now governor of Michigan. He, proceeding to Detroit to await further orders, moved his forces from Dayton about the middle of June. Traversing an uncultivated region, they were obliged to remove obstructions, and it was not till the 30th, that they reached the rapids of the Maumee. Four days previous, Hull had received, by express, a letter from Mr. Eustis, secretary of war, written on the morning of the 18th, the day on which war was declared. Strange as it may seem, this letter merely reiterated former orders, and contained expressions which indicated that the declaration would soon be made.

Carelessness brings trouble.

Expecting to be informed, by express, whenever this should actually occur, and not dreaming that the British could be in possession of such important intelligence, from the American government, earlier than himself; Hull, for the purpose of disencumbering his army, and facilitating their march, hired a vessel to convey to Detroit his sick, his hospital stores, and a considerable part of his baggage. This vessel, which sailed on the 1st of July, fell into the hands of the British, who had been two or three days in possession of the information that war was declared. With Hull's private baggage, had been placed on board the vessel, what he should have better guarded, his trunk of papers; by means of which the enemy became possessed of his confidential correspondence with the government, and the returns of his officers, showing the number and condition of his troops.

July 2. Learns that war is declared.

The intelligence of the declaration of war, General Hull received on the 2d of July, in a second letter from Mr. Eustis, of June 18th, which was not sent by express, but by mail.

PART IV. PERIOD II. CHAP. IV.

1812. Hull advances, and leaves the enemy's fortress of Malden in his rear.

The fortress of Malden, or Amherstburg, on the British side of Detroit river near its entrance into lake Erie, was garrisoned by six hundred men, and commanded by Colonel St. George. It was the strong hold of the British, and their Indian allies, for the province of Upper Canada. On the opposite American shore, the road through which Hull must receive his supplies, passed through the Indian village of Brownstown. But they would be liable to be cut off, as the British, having command of the waters, could, at any time, land detachments from Malden, on the opposite side. Thus, for Hull to proceed from the Rapids to Detroit, was to advance and leave an enemy's fortress in his rear. The orders of the secretary of war, that he should proceed, were, however, explicit; and, pursuant thereto, he continued his march, and reached Detroit on the 5th of July.

July 9. Hull receives discretionary orders to invade.

On the 9th, General Hull received a letter from Mr. Eustis, saying that "should the force under your command be equal to the enterprise, and consistent with the safety of your own posts, you will take possession of Malden, and extend your conquests as circumstances will allow." The general replied that he did not think his force equal to the reduction of Malden; that the British commanded the water and the savages; yet he said he should pass the river in a few days.

July 12. Hull invades Canada, and issues a proclamation.

General Hull crossed into Canada on the 12th of July, and directing his march southerly, took post at Sandwich, from whence he issued a bold and imposing proclamation, which backed by the presence of an army, had the desired effect. The Indians were awed into neutrality, and the Canadians generally favorable to the American cause, either remained quietly at home, or joined their ranks.

July 15. Colonel Cass at the river aux Canards.

The troops continued inactive at Sandwich, awaiting some heavy artillery, which was in preparation at Detroit. On the 15th, Colonel Cass, with colonels Miller and M'Arthur, and a detachment of 280 men, attacked and defeated a British guard at the river aux Canards, four miles from Malden, and obtained possession of a bridge, highly important to the Americans, as securing their access to the enemy's fortress. But no persuasion would induce the general to sanction their guarding and retaining it.

Van Horne's party defeated.

Governor Meigs apprised General Hull that he had sent Captain Brush, by the way of the river Raisin, with provisions for the army. The general detached Major Van Horne, with 200 men, to hold in check a party of British and Indians, which had been sent from Malden, to intercept the supplies. Tecumseh, at the head of his Indians, ambushed his path, and fell upon the Americans with such violence, that thirty were either killed or wounded, and the remainder fled to Detroit.

July 17. Mackinaw taken by British and Indians.

The important fortress of Mackinaw had been left unheeded by the government, with a garrison of only fifty-seven men.

Lieutenant Hanks, its commander, yet uninformed of the declaration of war, was, on the 17th, summoned, by a party of one thousand British and Indians, to surrender: and he considered himself fortunate, while he gave up the fort, to obtain for his little corps the honors of war.

Hull is alarmed not without cause.

Hull received intelligence of this disaster, and believed that hordes of savages, stirred up by Tecumseh, and by other British agents, were coming down upon him. Unexpected news of the American cabinet, yet not from it, filled him with entire dismay. A partial armistice had been made, which affected the north-eastern frontier, but in which his army was not included; and now, instead of the promised diversion in his favor by an attack on the Niagara frontier, the whole British force in Lower Canada would doubtless be concentrated against him, with those in the upper province.

1812. Aug. 8. Hull returns to Detroit.

The artillery was ready for the attack of Malden, but the heart of the general had failed. The eyes of the patriot and soldier, were closed, while those of the father, and the paternal governor, saw in fancied vision, his beloved daughter and grandchildren at Detroit, already bleeding, the victims of savage barbarity. With deep chagrin, and even mutinous dissatisfaction, his officers and soldiers received his peremptory order to retreat from Malden, and return to Detroit; where on the 8th of August, the army arrived.

Aug. 9. Miller defeats Tecumseh at Maguaga.

General Hull, on the same day, sent 600 of his best troops, under Colonel Miller, to meet and escort Captain Brush, with his provisions. In the woods of Maguaga, a British, united with an Indian force, both under Tecumseh, were drawn up to meet him. The fight was severe. The British fled, while Tecumseh, with his Indians, still kept the ground, but at length the whole force was routed. The enemy returned in their vessels to Malden; and Miller, having lost eighty men, was recalled by Hull to Detroit, he having learned that Captain Brush had taken a different route.

Hull proposes to retreat.

Hull now proposed to retreat with his army, to some place near the rapids of the Maumee, but to this his officers, already so much dissatisfied with his ill-timed retreat, as to be on the eve of a mutiny, utterly dissented.

Aug. 13. Cass and M'Arthur sent out.

To insure the safe arrival of the provisions, another party of 350, under colonels Cass and M'Arthur, were sent out.

Aug. 15. Chicago surrendered, and the garrison defeated by the Indians.

Fearing for the safety of his fort, General Hull had, on the 9th, sent orders to Captain Heald, the commander at Chicago, to evacuate that place, and conduct the garrison to Detroit. Accordingly, on the morning of the 15th, he set out with about seventy Americans, and fifty friendly Indians, escorting several women and children. At a small distance from the fort, they were attacked by a party of between four and five hundred savages. The little band made a desperate resistance, but they were overpowered by numbers, and thirty-six of the men, two women, and twelve children were slain during the

engagement. The remainder surrendered, under promise of protection from "Blackbird," an Indian chief of the Pottawattamie nation. Captain Heald, with his wife and child, afterwards escaped from the savages, and were protected by the English.

1812. Aug. 13. Brock arrives at the British camp.

On the 13th, five days after the armistice on the Niagara frontier was to take effect, General Brock, the most active and able of the British commanders in Canada, arrived at Malden to take command of the British forces. Previous to his arrival, a party under Colonel Proctor, who had succeeded Colonel St. George, in the command at Malden, had taken a position on the river opposite Detroit, and proceeded to fortify the bank, without interruption from the Americans. On the 14th, General Brock arrived at Sandwich, and on the 15th, he sent a flag, bearing a summons to the American general to surrender; in which he says, "it is far from my intention to join in a war of extermination, but you must be aware that the numerous body of Indians, who have attached themselves to my troops, will be beyond my control, the moment the contest commences." To this General Hull answered, "I have no other reply to make, than that I am prepared to meet any force which may be at your disposal." General Brock immediately opened his batteries upon the town and fort, and several persons within were killed. The fire was returned with some effect by the Americans. Their general greatly alarmed, now sent out an express, commanding the immediate return of the detachment under M'Arthur and Cass.

He summons Hull to surrender.

Early in the morning of the 16th, the British crossed the river, landed at Spring Wells, three miles below Detroit, and immediately marched towards the fort. Hull was perplexed and agitated. He believed that resistance would be vain, and ultimately lead to the barbarities of an Indian massacre. Yet he was not insensible to the disgrace of surrendering without an effort, and even at this critical moment, he was wavering and indecisive in his operations. At first his troops were drawn up in order of battle without the fort, his artillery was advantageously planted, and his army waited the approach of the enemy, full of the confidence of victory. The British were within five hundred yards of their lines, when suddenly Hull gave the order to retire immediately to the fort. The indignation of the army broke forth, and all subordination ceased. They crowded in, and without any order from the general, stacked their arms, some dashing them with violence upon the ground. Many of the soldiers wept. Even the spirit of the women rose indignant, and they declared, in impotent wrath, that the fort should not be surrendered. Hull, perceiving that he had no longer any authority, and believing that the Indians were ready to fall upon the inhabitants, was anxious to put the place under the protection of the British. A white flag was hung out upon the walls of the fort. Two British offi-

Perplexity, vaccillation, and timidity.

Aug. 16. Hull surrenders Detroit.

cers rode up, and a capitulation was concluded by Hull with the must unbecoming haste. His officers were not consulted; he made no stipulations for the honors of war for his army, nor any provision for the safety of his Canadian allies. All the public property was given up; the regular troops were surrendered as prisoners of war; the militia were to return to their homes, and not to serve again during the war, unless exchanged.

Cass and M'Arthur arrived immediately after the capitulation, and surrendered agreeably to its conditions. Captain Brush took the resolution not to regard the stipulation which had included him, and marched his party back to Ohio.

The number of effective men at Detroit, at the time of its surrender, is stated by General Hull in his official report, not to have exceeded 800; while the force of the enemy is said to have been at least double the number. General Brock, in his report to Sir George Prevost, states his force to have been 1,300, of whom 700 were Indians.

1812. Hull receives sentence of death, but is pardoned.

General Hull being exchanged, was prosecuted by the government of the United States, and arraigned before a tribunal, of which General Dearborn was president. He was acquitted of treason, but sentenced to death for cowardice and unofficer-like conduct. The criminal under sentence of death was not, however, imprisoned, but sent without a guard from Albany, where the court-martial assembled, to his residence in the vicinity of Boston, to await there the decision of the president of the United States; to whose mercy the court, in consequence of his revolutionary services, recommended him. The president remitted the punishment of death, but deprived him of all military command.

CHAPTER V.

Naval successes.

Aug. 19. Constitution captures the Guerriere.

On the 19th of August, three days after the disgraceful surrender of Detroit, an event occurred, which, in a measure, healed the wounded pride of the Americans. This was the capture of the British frigate Guerriere, under the command of Captain Dacres, by the American frigate Constitution, commanded by Captain Hull, which took place off the Grand Bank of Newfoundland. The captain of the British frigate, previous to the rencounter, had challenged any American vessel of her class, and the officers, in various ways, manifested their contempt of "the Yankees." On the approach of the Guerriere, Captain Hull gave orders to receive her occasional broadsides without returning the fire, and his crew calmly

obeyed his orders, although some of their companions were falling at their guns. Having his enemy near, and his position favorable, Hull commanded his men to fire broadside after broadside, in quick succession. This was done, and with such precision and effect, that in thirty minutes, the Guerriere had her masts and rigging shot away, and her hulk so injured that she was in danger of sinking. Sixty-five of her men were killed, and sixty-three wounded, when Captain Dacres struck his colors. The Constitution had but seven killed, and seven wounded. The captured vessel was so much injured, that she could not be got into port, and was burned. Several of the officers were promoted by congress, and fifty thousand dollars were distributed among the crew, as a recompense for the loss of their prize.

1812. Sept. 7.

Captain Porter, of the United States frigate Essex, captured off the Grand Bank of Newfoundland, the British sloop of war Alert, after an action of only eight minutes.

Army of the centre at Lewiston.

The militia of the state of New York now in the service of the United States, amounted to about 5,000, and were mostly stationed on the Niagara frontier, under the command of General Van Rensselaer whose head-quarters were at Lewiston. Here operations, which had they been earlier set on foot might have saved the army of Hull, were at this time, without any good reason, attempted. The militia being flattered into self-consequence by demagogues, and valiant in words, beset their general for permission to perform the bold deed of crossing over the Niagara and invading Canada.

A part of the army cross from Lewiston to Queenstown.

Accordingly, on the 11th of October, General Van Rensselaer gave orders for a detachment to cross, but the weather being tempestuous, the attempt was defeated. In the evening of the 12th, the army was reinforced by 300 regulars, under the command of Colonel Christie. On the 13th, a party crossed over, headed by Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer. The troops were formed upon the shore. The enemy attacked them from a position which enfiladed their ranks, cut down many, especially officers, and threatened entire destruction. Colonel Van Rensselaer was wounded severely.

Oct. 13. Are exposed to a galling fire.

The battery at Queenstown taken by a party under Captain Wool.

Captain Wool, on whom, as then senior officer of the regular troops, the command devolved, was also bleeding with his wounds. Seeking Van Rensselaer, he represented the critical situation of the troops; and volunteered for any service which might relieve them. Col. Van Rensselaer directed the measure of storming the British battery upon the heights. Wool conducted his force silently and circuitously, leaving the battery to his right, until he had passed it, and attained an eminence which commanded it. The British abandoned their position and retreated down the heights to Queenstown.

British attack under Brock.

Elated with their success, the Americans had fallen into disorder, when they again beheld 300 of their foe, advancing under the intrepid Brock. An officer raised a white flag in

token of surrender; Wool indignantly pulled it down. The British now drove the Americans to the brink of the precipice. One soldier was about to descend. Wool ordered him to be shot; but as the musket was leveled, he returned. Thus prohibiting either surrender or retreat, and being ably seconded by his officers, he rallied and led on his troops to the attack. The British in their turn, gave way, and retreated down the hill. Brock, attempting to rally them amidst a galling fire, was mortally wounded. His party no longer attempted resistance, but fled in disorder. Soon a scattering fire was heard from the southern side of the heights. Some militia, attacked by Indians, were fleeing before them, and communicating their own panic. Colonel Scott, now in the field, with a few troops, met and repulsed the savages. But another and more formidable foe was approaching. General Sheaffe, at the head of 1,000 British and Indians had followed Brock at a slow pace from fort George. The number of the Americans on the British shore was not such as to warrant their engaging these fresh troops without aid, and urgent entreaties were sent over for the militia yet on the American side, to come to their assistance; but they now declared that constitutional scruples had arisen in their minds about crossing the national boundary. With this excuse for cowardice, they absolutely refused to go to the aid of their brethren, although it was at their request that the invasion was made.

They are repulsed and Brock killed.

Colonel Scott repulses the savages.

General Sheaffe appears with a large force.

The militia, refusing to cross, the invading detachment are in great danger.

General Van Rensselaer sent discretionary orders to the officer in command to retreat and recross the river. This order it was impossible to obey, so deadly was the fire which was opened upon them. In this emergency, Colonel Scott and Captain Totten at eminent risk, bore a flag to General Sheaffe, and saved the remainder of the invading troops, by surrendering as prisoners of war, themselves and all the Americans remaining on the Canada side. Sixty of the Americans were killed, 100 wounded, and 700 made prisoners.

They surrender as prisoners.

Ohio and Kentucky, had aroused at the call of Hull for assistance, and an army on its march for Detroit was in the southern part of Ohio, when the news met them of the surrender of that post. This rather stimulated than repressed the ardor of the brave and patriotic inhabitants of the west. Kentucky put on foot 7,000 volunteers, Ohio nearly half that number.

Exertions made to raise troops.

On the 24th of September, William Henry Harrison, governor of the Indiana territory, and brigadier-general in the army, who possessed more than any other man, the confidence of the western citizens, was appointed by congress, to the command of the whole of these forces. They advanced to the northwestern part of Ohio, to protect the country against the incursions of the hostile savages, and to regain the ground lost by Hull's surrender.

Sept. 24. Harrison takes command of the northwestern army.

In the meantime, Fort Harrison, on the Wabash, was attacked by several hundred Indians. Captain Taylor, with

Sept. 4. Massacre at White River.

only fifteen effective men, bravely repelled the assailants. The savages, irritated at their defeat, surprised and murdered twenty-one persons at the mouth of White River.

1812. October 2. Hopkins' expedition against the Kickapoos.

Governor Shelby, of Kentucky, issued an address, calling for an additional number of mounted volunteers, for the defense of the territories of Indiana and Illinois. On the second of October, more than 2,000 had assembled at Vincennes, where they were placed under the command of General Hopkins. On the 10th, they arrived at fort Harrison. Here the destruction of the Kickapoo and Peoria towns was proposed. The troops approving the plan, set forward for its execution.

On the fourth day, the army perceived alarming vollies of smoke and flame advancing with the wind. The Indians had set fire to the long thick grass of the prairie over which they were travelling. They, however, saved themselves in the ordinary manner of setting a back fire.

It ends without use or honor; owing to insubordination.

But the militia became mutinous, and a major, named Singleton, rode up to the general, as the troops were resting, and ordered him in a peremptory manner, to take up his line of march, and return; or his battalion would instantly leave him. Hopkins called a council of his officers, who agreed to take the sense of the army as to the propriety of returning. The majority were in favor of that measure; but Hopkins, who entirely disapproved the vote, commanded the troops to follow him, promising to lead them in one day more, to the accomplishment of their object. But they turned their horses' heads in the opposite direction, and rode towards home, the general following in the rear.

Nov. 19. Hopkins' second expedition more successful.

Another expedition, conducted by the same officer, was attended with better success. With a force of one thousand men, regulars and militia, he marched from fort Harrison, and, on the 19th of November, destroyed the Prophet's town, and a Kickapoo village, four miles distant. A skirmish took place between a party of the militia and an ambuscade of Indians, in which eighteen of the militia were killed.

Colonel Russel.

Colonel Campbell. Nov. 17.

Colonel Russel, in a similar incursion, with three hundred regulars, surprised and destroyed a town called the Pimertams. He drove the savages into a swamp, and killed twenty of them. About the same time, Colonel Campbell, of the regular army, with 600 men, marched against the towns of the Mississineway, destroyed them, and overawed the Indians.

The northern army.

Oct. 2. British attack Ogdensburg.

No operations of importance were undertaken by the northern army, during this campaign. In September, a detachment of militia from Ogdensburg, attacked a party of the British, who were moving down the St. Lawrence, and defeated them. They were reinforced, and, in their turn, compelled the militia to retire. In retaliation, the British attempted the destruction of Ogdensburg, but were repulsed by General Brown, the energetic commander at that station.

Major Young, who commanded a detachment of the New

York Militia, at French Mills, made an attack upon the British at the Indian village of St. Regis, and without loss, killed five of the British, and took forty prisoners.

1812.

The army at Plattsburgh moved towards the Canada frontier, and encamped at Champlain. On the 18th, General Dearborn took the command. Soon after, Colonel Pike, with his regiment, made an incursion into the territory of the enemy, surprised a party of British and Indians, and destroyed a considerable quantity of public stores.

Nov. 16. Northern army at Champlain.

The army went into winter-quarters at Plattsburg on the 23d of December.

Dec. 23.

General Smyth succeeded General Van Rensselaer in the command of the central army. His operations added nothing to the advantage or glory of the American arms. They consisted of another abortive attempt to invade Canada after an inflated address to the Canadians, with a scene of dangerous riot and confusion in his own camp. Captain King, in the course of this affair, performed a gallant and successful action, in storming a battery opposite Black Rock, by which the way was opened for the enterprise in hand, but there was not valor enough in the remaining force even to sustain him, and having sent back part of his corps, he, with the remainder, surrendered as prisoners of war.

General Smyth and his abortive attempt.

Gallant conduct of Captain King.

The American sloop-of-war Wasp, commanded by Captain Jones, had an encounter with the British sloop-of-war Frolic, the British ship being superior in weight of metal. The American at first received the fire of her enemy, at the distance of fifty or sixty yards, but gradually lessening this distance, she fired her last broadside so near, that her rammers, while loading, were shoved against the side of the Frolic. Captain Jones then boarded her, but he trod her deck amidst the dead and dying, without finding a private in arms to oppose him. Three officers and the seamen at the wheel were all that were found alive on deck. Of the brave crew, consisting originally of one hundred and twenty, one hundred were either killed or wounded. The Americans had five killed and five wounded. Captain Jones did not long enjoy his bloody triumph. Two hours after the battle, a British seventy-four, the Poictiers, took both the victor and his prize, and carried them into Bermuda. On the return of Captain Jones and his officers, they were hailed by their countrymen with distinguished marks of honor. His crew received twenty-five thousand dollars, and himself the command of the Macedonian frigate.

Oct. 18. The Wasp, Captain Jones, takes the Frolic.

Is retaken with his prize.

Again the Americans triumphed on the ocean, and under circumstances which forced the English to the humiliating concession, which, for many years they had not made, that there existed a nation which was their equal in naval tactics; the Americans, not satisfied with this, claimed to be their superiors. The frigate United States, commanded by Commodore

Oct. 25. Decatur, in the United States, captures the Macedonian.

Decatur, encountered the British frigate Macedonian, commanded by Captain Carden. When the two ships came to close action, the rapid and well-directed fire of the United States swept the masts and spars of the British frigate, and left her an "unmanageable log;" and her captain reluctantly ordered the flag of his nation to be furled. When he offered his sword, Decatur, with a magnanimity equal to his valor, refused to take it, "from one who knew so well how to use it," but asked to receive the friendly grasp of his hand. The loss in killed and wounded, on the side of the Americans, was only twelve, while that of the British was one hundred and four.

1812. Dec. 29. The Constitution, Captain Bainbridge, captures the Java.

The naval campaign closed with another brilliant victory. The fortunate Constitution, now commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, descried, off the coast of Brazil, the British frigate Java, of forty-nine guns, and four hundred men, commanded by Captain Lambert. An action commenced, and continued nearly two hours. The Constitution had nineteen men killed, and twenty-five wounded; but she had shot away the masts of the Java, killed sixty of her men and wounded one hundred and one. The British colors, which, after every spar was gone, had been nailed to the stump of a mast, were at length torn down, and the British lion once more quailed before the American eagle.

Success of American privateers.

Nor were these successes on the ocean confined to armed vessels. The swift-sailing privateers, which issued from every American port, captured vessels of superior force, and harassed and destroyed the enemy's commerce. Nearly 250 British vessels, and 3,000 prisoners were taken by American privateers, while few of these fell into the hands of their enemies.

Americans mortified by their defeats on land.

In viewing the results of the campaign of 1812, we find on land a series of disgraceful failures, altogether unparalleled in the history of America. The darkness of the picture is, however, relieved by occasional flashes of valor. These failures were the more mortifying, because the superiority of the Americans in numbers, over the small British force in Canada, was known to be great; and it was confidently expected by many, that Canada would have fallen during the first campaign.

The British by their failures at sea.

But the ill-success of the Americans on land, was counterbalanced by a series of naval triumphs, equally unexpected, and more mortifying to their enemy, than even their land defeats were to the United States. Great Britain regarded her superiority at sea as the vital part of her power; and the most melancholy apprehensions were, on this occasion, indulged by some of her politicians, who predicted "the total annihilation in the breasts of her seamen, of that proud confidence, which had been so eminently serviceable in leading them to victory."

CHAPTER VI.

Political affairs.

PART IV. PERIOD II. CHAP. VI.

On the 23d of June, five days after the declaration of war, the British government repealed the orders in council.

1812. June 26. American government make overtures for peace.

No sooner had the United States declared war against Great Britain, than Mr. Monroe, the secretary of state, directed Mr. Russell, chargè-des-affaires at the court of St. James, to state to the British government, that America had entered upon this contest with reluctance, and was ready to make peace, as soon as the wrongs, of which she justly complained, were redressed. Mr. Russell was authorized to negotiate an armistice by sea and land, on the condition, that the orders in council should be repealed; the impressment of American seamen discontinued, and those already impressed restored; and as an inducement to discontinue their practice of impressment, the American government pledged themselves, to pass a law, prohibiting the employment of British seamen, either in the public or commercial service of the United States.

Views of Lord Castlereagh, the British ministry.

These propositions being made by Mr. Russell, Lord Castlereagh, the British minister, on the 29th of August, communicated to him their rejection by his government; at the same time, informing him that measures had been taken to authorize Sir John Borlase Warren, the British admiral on the American station, to propose to the United States an immediate and reciprocal cessation of hostilities; and in that event, to assure them, that full effect should be given to the provisions for repealing the orders in council. On the subject of impressment, Lord Castlereagh said the British government were ready, as heretofore, to receive from the government of the United States, any proposition which might check the abuse of the practice, but they could not consent to suspend the exercise of a right, upon which the naval strength of the empire materially depended, until they were fully convinced that other means could be devised and adopted, by which the object to be obtained by impressment could be secured.

Advantage gained over General Dearborn.

While this correspondence was going on in England, negotiations were also carried on in America. The advantage which was taken by Sir George Provost, of the intelligence, that the British had repealed their orders in council, in procuring of General Dearborn, the partial and temporary armistice of the 8th of August, has already been noticed in treating of the causes of the misfortune and disgrace of General Hull.

Sept. 30. Sir J. B. Warren apprises the government of the repeal of the orders.

Sir John Borlase Warren, then on the Halifax station, addressed a letter to Mr. Monroe, apprising him of the revocation of the orders in council, proposing a cessation of hostili-

ties, and threatening, in case of a refusal, that the obnoxious orders should be revived.

The American government had, in the meantime, been made acquainted with the failure of Mr. Russell's negotiation; and Mr. Monroe replied to Sir J. B. Warren, that America could not hope for a durable peace, until the question of impressment was settled. "The claim of the British government," says Mr. Monroe, "is to take from the merchant vessels of other countries, British subjects. In the practice, the commanders of the British ships of war often take from the merchant vessels of the United States, American citizens. If the United States forbid the employment of British subjects in their service, and enforce the prohibition by suitable regulations and penalties, the motive for the practice is taken away. It is in this mode that the president is willing to accommodate this important controversey with the British government, and it cannot be conceived on what ground the arrangement can be refused. He is willing that Great Britain should be secured against the evils of which she complains; but he seeks, on the other hand, that the citizens of the United States should be protected against a practice, which, while it degrades the nation, deprives them of their rights as freemen, takes them by force from their families and country into a foreign service, to fight the battles of a foreign power, perhaps, against their own kindred and country." The British admiral having no powers to enter on the question of impressment, nothing further remained to America, but to exchange the pen of the negotiator, for the sword of the warrior.

1812. The American government refuses to waive the question of impressment.

The warmth of party feeling had increased throughout the Union. Notwithstanding bravery had been exhibited by individual officers and soldiers, still the army had failed in the accomplishment of any important object. The enemies of the administration declared, that the ill-success of the war was owing to the inefficient measures of the government in providing means for its prosecution; while its friends attributed the failure to the interference of the opposite party. Both were right in degree; as the government, inexperienced in providing for the exigencies of war, had doubtless failed of making judicious and seasonable provisions. But all its difficulties were increased by an ungenerous and almost treasonable opposition. Had the expectations which, previous to the war, were generally entertained with regard to the efficiency of the militia system, been realized, and had the affairs of the army been managed well by the agents of government, its provisions, notwithstanding the inveteracy of its opponents, would have been sufficient to produce very different results from those actually experienced.

State of party feeling.

The most alarming opposition to the national government, was not, however, that arising from mere individual clamor. The states of Massachusetts and Connecticut had been offi-

1812.

cially requested, by the president, to furnish detachments of their militia, and place them under General Dearborn, for the defense of the maritime frontier. The constitution gives to congress, power to demand the services of the militia "for the execution of the laws, the suppression of insurrections, and the repelling of invasions;" and also declares, "that the president shall be commander-in-chief of the militia of the several states, when called into the service of the United States." The refusal to furnish the required detachments, was on the ground that the state governments ought to determine when the exigencies of the nation require the services of their militia. They also decided that it was unconstitutional for the president to delegate his power to any officer, not of the militia, and who was not chosen by the respective states. This construction of the constitution, was favored by the decision of the supreme court of Massachusetts, and as, in their opinion, exigencies did not exist which required the service of the militia, they refused to obey the call of the president. The sea-coast of these states, and, also, of Rhode Island, which state subsequently adopted the same views, was thus deprived of an important means of defense; and public feeling was agitated with apprehensions of a civil, as well as a foreign war.

Connecticut and Massachusetts refuse to furnish the militia of their states at the call of the general government.

It was probably owing to the disapprobation which these measures of the opposition excited, that, notwithstanding the ill-success of the army, the result of the election of president, was not only favorable to Mr. Madison, but showed a diminution of the federal, and an increase of the republican party. Congress assembled on the fourth of November, after an unusually short recess. The increase of the army and navy early occupied their attention. As a greater inducement to enlist, an act was passed, by which an addition of two dollars per month was made to the pay of the non-commissioned officers and privates, and by which they were exempted from arrest for debts contracted either before or after enlistment. By another act twenty-five dollars were given, in addition to the existing bounty, to each recruit who would enlist for five years.

Nov. 4. Congress assemble.

Nov. 21. An act to encourage enlistment.

Bills passed congress in the early part of the session, authorizing the construction of four ships, carrying each seventy-four guns, and six frigates each of forty-four guns, and another providing for the increase of the navy on the lakes. The military force was to be increased by such a number of regiments of infantry, not exceeding twenty, as the service might require. As but little benefit had resulted from the employment of volunteers, the law was repealed which authorized their acceptance.

Nov. 30. The navy increased.

1813. Jan. 14. The army increased.

On the 26th, a bill passed, authorizing a loan of sixteen millions of dollars, for the year 1813, and the following day, another was passed, giving to the president power to issue

Jan. 26. Provision for raising money.

treasury notes, to an amount not exceeding five millions of dollars.

1813. Jan. 29.

On the 29th, congress passed a law, declaring that no seamen should be employed in American vessels, but native citizens of the United States, or those who had become naturalized. This law was to be carried into effect at the close of the war.

Feb. 13. Twelve generals appointed.

The regular force of the United States now amounted to nearly fifty-five thousand men. An act was passed, by which, in addition to the officers of an inferior grade, six major-generals and six brigadiers were appointed.

Madison re-elected president.

On counting the votes, it was found that James Madison had been re-elected president, and Elbridge Gerry chosen vice president, for the ensuing term of four years.

CHAPTER VII.

Campaign of 1813.

Arrangement of the three American armies.

The scene of military operations, during the year 1813, comprehended the extensive northern frontier of the United States. At the opening of the campaign, the army of the west, under General Harrison, was near the head of lake Erie; the army of the centre, under General Dearborn, between the lakes Erie and Ontario; while that of the north, under General Hampton, occupied the shores of lake Champlain. The invasion of Canada was still the object of the American armies.

Plan of the campaign.

British commanders and arrangements.

The force which Sir George Prevost governor of Canada, could bring into the field, was comparatively small. The defense of Upper Canada was committed to colonels Proctor and Vincent, while that of Lower Canada was given to General Sheaffe, who was, however, to act under the more immediate direction of the governor.

General Harrison divides his army.

The head-quarters of General Harrison were, at this time, at Franklinton, in Ohio. General Winchester had proceeded in advance of the main army, and hearing that a party of the British were stationed at Frenchtown, he attacked and dispersed them. He remained at Frenchtown with a part of his troops encamped in the open field, the remainder being defended by a breastwork.

Winchester at Frenchtown.

Jan. 22. Battle of Frenchtown.

On the morning of the 22d, he was surprised by the combined force of British and Indians, under the command of Proctor, aided by the Indian chiefs, Roundhead and Split-log. That part of the American army which encamped in the open field were soon thrown into disorder. Generals Winchester and Lewis, in a vain attempt to rally them were taken pris-

1813.

oners. The remaining American troops, however, continued fighting with intrepidity, until they received an order from Winchester to surrender. He was a prisoner, and not in command, but he had presumed to send this mandate, his fears having been artfully excited by Proctor, who threatened that if the men did not surrender he could not defend them from the savages. They unhappily laid down their arms, but Proctor did not afford them the protection which he promised. He marched for Malden, leaving behind him and without a guard, the helpless prisoners, many of whom were wounded. The merciless savages soon returned, set fire to the town, dragged the wounded from the houses, scalped them in the streets, and left their mangled bodies in the highway. In this melancholy affair the Americans lost in killed and wounded about five hundred; and an equal number were made prisoners of war. They were principally volunteers from the most respectable families of Kentucky, and thus, this bloody day clothed that state in mourning. The loss of the British, as stated by Colonel Proctor, was twenty-four killed, and one hundred and fifty-eight wounded.

Treachery of Proctor.

Jan. 22. Massacre at Frenchtown.

General Harrison now removed his head-quarters from Franklinton, to a fort which he had built at the rapids of the Maumee, named, in honor of the governor of Ohio, Fort Meigs. He was here besieged on the first of May, by Colonel, now General Proctor, with a force of 1,000 regulars and militia, and 1,200 Indians. The American army, occupying a commanding position, and strongly entrenched, resisted the efforts of the besiegers. Their fate, however, hung in suspense, when, on the morning of the 5th, an officer arriving at the fort, announced the welcome intelligence that General Clay, with 1,200 Kentuckians, was descending the Miami, and at that moment but a few miles distant.

May 1. Fort Meigs besieged.

May 5. General Clay advances to its relief.

Conceiving that the British army was now in his power, Harrison sent orders to land one half of the advancing troops on the side of the river opposite to the fort, to co-operate with him in forcing the British batteries. Colonel Dudley, with a party of 800, was charged with this service; and he performed it with so much spirit, that, in a few minutes, he was in possession of the batteries of Proctor, and had taken several prisoners; but his troops, unduly elated, pursued the British until they were drawn into an ambuscade, prepared for them by the subtle Tecumseh. Dudley strove in vain to rescue his troops. Being mortally wounded, he still kept the field, and killed an Indian warrior before he fell; but the whole party, except 150, were cut off.

Colonel Dudley's gallantry, irregular ardor, and melancholy death.

In the meantime, the sortie from the fort was well conducted by Colonel John Miller. It brought on a general engagement, in which the British were defeated. The Indian warriors, either displeased at a want of success, or desirous to display trophies already gained, and to gratify their thirst for

Proctor defeated.

1813.
May 9.
Siege raised.

blood by the immolation of some of their captives, now withdrew from the army of Proctor, notwithstanding the entreaties of Tecumseh, himself ever faithful to the cause he espoused. Thus situated, Proctor, on the 9th of May, raised the siege of Fort Meigs, and retreated to Malden. General Harrison returned to Ohio, leaving General Clay in command.

July.
Six Nations declare war against Canada.

In July, the Six Nations declared war against the Canadas. About the same time, the United States accepted the services of some of the other tribes. The government, at the commencement of the war, deprecating the policy of employing savage allies, and, justly considering the power which employed them as responsible for their known barbarities, had refused the services of such as had offered, and had uniformly advised them to remain neutral. This advice had in many cases given offense, being construed as implying a disrespect of their valor. It had been found that such was their fondness for war, that the only alternative for the administration was to receive their hostile efforts upon the heads of their own inhabitants, or turn them upon the enemy's; who, having first employed them, the law of retaliation now fully authorized the American government to do the same. The Indians, allied with the British, had committed depredations on those friendly to the Americans, and on this account they now considered themselves a party in the warfare. From these reasons, the Americans at length consented that they should "take hold of the same tomahawk," and make common cause with them.

Aug. 1.
Fort Stephenson besieged; and Proctor repulsed by young Croghan.

On the 20th of July, Proctor, having again collected about 500 of his Indian allies, with about as many regulars, marched against Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky river. On the 1st of August, he invested it, and demanded a surrender. Major Croghan, a gallant youth of twenty-one, with a garrison of 160 men, took the resolution of defending the fort to the last extremity, notwithstanding the threat, which in former instances had been found so potent, that after the contest had commenced, the Indians could not be restrained. By his judicious measures, and the courage and promptness of his officers and men, Proctor was repulsed with a loss of 150; the Americans losing only one killed and seven wounded.

Proctor, completely foiled, returned to Malden; and no military operation of consequence was undertaken, until the Americans, having command of the lakes, were able to act offensively.

CHAPTER VIII.

Campaign of 1813, continued.

We now go back several months, to give a view of the warlike operations on the New York frontier.

On the 8th of October, 1812, Captain Elliot, with 100 men, embarked in two boats, crossed the Niagara from Black Rock, and took two British brigs from under the guns of Fort Erie. One was burned, the other added to the American naval force.

1813. February. Major Forsyth at Elizabeth town

Early in February, Major Forsyth, an enterprising partisan officer, who commanded some American troops stationed at Ogdensburg, crossed the St. Lawrence with a party of his riflemen and some volunteers, surprised the guard at Elizabethtown, and took fifty-two prisoners, together with a quantity of arms and ammunition.

Feb. 22. British destroy stores and shipping at Ogdensburg.

On the 22d of February, Sir George Prevost, who had recently arrived at Prescott, directed an attack upon Ogdensburg, which was made on the same night, by a corps of 500 regulars and militia, under Major Macdonnal. The Americans, much inferior in numbers, were compelled to retire, and abandon their artillery and stores to the British. Two schooners, two gunboats, together with the barracks, were committed to the flames.

April. Commodore Chauncey has a flotilla on Lake Ontario.

Pursuant to the law passed by congress, early efforts were made to build and equip fleets upon the lakes. The preceding year, the Americans did not possess a single armed vessel on Lake Ontario, save the brig Oneida, of sixteen guns. Commodore Chauncey, the naval commander on that station, by great exertions, had made ready a flotilla for that lake, to aid in the operations of the coming campaign.

April 25. Dearborn sails from Sackett's Harbor.

The first important service of the flotilla, was that of transporting the army from Sackett's Harbor to York, the capital of Upper Canada; the advice of General Pike, a much valued officer, having determined General Dearborn to make a descent upon that place. He embarked with 1,700 men, and arrived on the 27th of April. The British force was under the command of General Sheaffe, and consisted of 400 regulars and 500 militia and Indians. These were drawn up to oppose the landing at the place of debarkation, a mile and a half from the fort. Major Forsyth was first on shore, and General Pike, who commanded, soon followed with the troops. After a severe contest of half an hour, the enemy retreated. The Americans formed, advancing in columns. They had destroyed one of the batteries, and were within sixty yards of the enemy's works, when a magazine exploding at two hundred yards' distance, filled the air, in every direction, with

April 27. American army lands at York, Upper Canada.

huge stones and fragments of wood, which falling, caused dreadful havoc. One hundred of the Americans, and forty of the British were killed. General Pike himself fell, mortally wounded: but the battle had been won, and but for the death of Pike, the garrison would have been taken. General Sheaffe took advantage of the confusion, and with the British regulars retreated towards Kingston, leaving the commanding officer of the militia to make the best terms in his power.

1813. Death of Pike.

The Americans proceeded, under Colonel Pearce, to take possession of the enemy's barracks, and of the town. The brave Pike survived his wounds but a few hours; but like Wolfe at Quebec, he drew his last breath amidst the cheering shouts of victory, his head reposing upon the banner of the conquered fortress.

British loss.

The loss of the British was 90 killed, 200 wounded, and 300 prisoners, besides 500 militia released upon parole. A quantity of stores, with General Sheaffe's baggage and papers, also fell into the hands of the Americans. In the legislative chamber, was found the disgraceful trophy of a human scalp, occupying the same place with the emblems of royal authority.

May 8.

On the 8th of May, General Dearborn evacuated York, and, having re-crossed the lake for the purpose of leaving the wounded at Sackett's Harbor, again set sail, and disembarked his troops at Niagara.

General Dearborn at Niagara.

The army at Niagara having been reinforced, General Dearborn re-embarked, and, on the morning of the 27th of May, proceeded to attack Fort George. The landing was warmly disputed by the troops under Colonel Vincent, but the coolness and intrepidity of the Americans, led on by General Boyd, with the judicious arrangements for silencing the enemy's batteries, executed by Commodore Chauncey, soon compelled the British to retreat. Colonel Vincent, perceiving that the fort would soon become untenable, set fire to his magazine, spiked his guns, and abandoned the place, not, however, until he had sustained a loss of 300 men. The loss of the Americans was seventeen killed, and forty-five wounded.

May 27. Fort George surrenders to the Americans.

Lieutenant Colonel Preston took possession of Fort Erie on the 28th, it having been previously abandoned by the British, and the fort blown up.

May 28. Fort Erie.

Sir George Prevost, having learned that General Dearborn had left the naval stores at Sackett's Harbor with a weak garrison, dispatched Commodore Yeo, the commander of the British fleet on Lake Ontario, to sieze them. He embarked at Kingston on the 27th of May, reached the place of his destination on the 28th, and landed 1,200 men. He was repulsed by the militia, under General Brown, whose conduct on that occasion, brought full before the public, his uncommon military talents.

Sackett's Harbor attacked. Defended by General Brown.

After the fall of forts George and Erie, Colonel St. Vin-

cent had retired, with his army, to Burlington Heights, near the head of Lake Ontario. He was pursued by a force which General Dearborn had detached for the purpose, under generals Chandler and Winder. Colonel St. Vincent having reconnoitered their position, at dead of night stole upon them, and attacked the camp. A scene of confusion and carnage ensued, in which the Americans could not distinguish friend from foe. General Chandler approached to rally a party, but they proved to be British troops, who immediately secured him as their prisoner. General Winder shared, by a like mistake, a similar fate. The Americans, however, maintained their post, and forced the enemy to retire. The loss of the British exceeded that of the Americans, and was more than one hundred.

1813. Affair of Stony Creek.

Chandler and Winder prisoners.

Colonel Burns, on whom the command of the American force now devolved, finding himself in an embarrassing situation, from the capture of the two generals and the failure of ammunition, retreated to Forty-mile Run. About this time, General Dearborn received orders to retire from the direction of the northern army, until his health should be restored; and the command at Fort George devolved on General Boyd.

Colonel Burns.

On the 24th of June, Colonel Bœrstler received orders from General Boyd, to disperse a body of the enemy, which that general had been informed, had collected near the Beaver Dams. The Americans were attacked by a force much exceeding their own. Bœrstler surrendered his detachment, amounting to 570 men.

Affair of the Beaver Dams.

The autumn of this year witnessed the novel scene of a battle, on one of those inland seas which separate the possessions of the contending parties. The American fleet on Lake Erie, which had been formed during the last summer was under the command of Commodore Oliver Hazard Perry. It now consisted of the Niagara and Lawrence, each mounting twenty-five guns, and several smaller vessels, carrying, on an average, two guns each. The enemy's fleet was considered of equal force. Commodore Barclay, its commander, was a veteran officer, while Perry was young, and without experience as a commander. The battle began, on the part of the Americans, about 12 o'clock. Perry's flag-ship, the Lawrence, being disabled, he embarked in an open boat, and amidst a shower of bullets, carried the ensign of command on board the Niagara, and once more bore down upon the enemy with the remainder of his fleet. The action became general and severe; and at four o'clock, the whole British squadron, consisting of six vessels, carrying in all sixty-three guns, surrendered to the Americans. In giving information of his victory to General Harrison, Perry wrote, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

Sept. 10. Perry's victory on Lake Erie.

This success on lake Erie opened a passage to the territory which had been surrendered by General Hull; and General

Sept. 23. Harrison takes possession of Malden and Detroit.

Harrison lost no time in transferring the war thither. On the 23d of September, he landed his troops near fort Malden, but to his surprise, instead of an armed force, he met, at the entrance of the town, the maids and matrons of Amherstburg, who in their best attire, had come forth to solicit the protection of the Americans.

Proctor evacuates Malden.

General Proctor, despite the spirited remonstrance of Tecumseh, an abler man than himself, and now a general in the British army, had evacuated Malden, burnt the fort and storehouses, and retreated before his enemy. The Americans, on the 29th, went in pursuit, entered, and repossessed Detroit.

Is attacked by Harrison on the Thames.

Proctor had retired to the Moravian village on the Thames, about eighty miles from that place. His army of 2,000, was more than half Indians. Harrison overtook him on the 5th of October. The British army, although inferior in numbers, had the advantage of choosing their ground. They were strongly posted; their left rested on the Thames, and was defended by artillery; their right extended to a swamp, which ran parallel to the river, and was supported by the brave Tecumseh and his warriors, who were stationed in a thick wood which skirted the morass. Proctor had, however, left his centre weak, and it was therefore full upon the centre, that General Harrison, placing great reliance on Colonel Johnson's mounted Kentuckians, ordered them to charge. They advanced valiantly, but their horses unused to such perilous service, failed to penetrate the British lines. The horsemen did not suffer themselves to be thrown back upon the advancing army, but wheeled to right and left, and made a second charge with such impetuosity, that in a single minute of time, the fate of the day was decided. The venerable Governor Shelby with his militia, was in the thickest of the fray.

1813. Death of Tecumseh, and defeat of the British.

Colonel Johnson had led his battalion against the Indians under Tecumseh; and in the heat of the battle the chief fell bravely fighting. His warriors fled. Proctor, dismayed meanly deserted his army, and fled with two hundred dragoons. Six hundred of the British were made prisoners The Indians left one hundred and twenty dead upon the field The American loss, in killed and wounded, was upwards of fifty. Among the trophies of the victory, were six brass field-pieces, which had been given up by Hull; on two of which were inscribed the words, "surrendered by Burgoyne, at Saratoga."

Indians make peace.

The Indian confederacy, in which were still 3,000 warriors, had lost with Tecumseh their bond of union; and the Ottawas, Chippewas, Miamis, and Pottawattamies, now sent deputies to General Harrison, and made treaties of alliance, agreeing "to take hold of the same tomahawk with the Americans, and strike at all the enemies of the United States, whether they be British or Indian."

General Harrison, having more than regained the ground

lost by Hull, left General Cass in command at Detroit, and embarked for Buffalo. The Kentucky infantry, on their march homeward, collected the bleaching bones of their countrymen, massacred at Frenchtown, and mournfully deposited them in one common grave.

Delaware and Chesapeake bays blockaded.

In the early part of this year, the bays of Chesapeake and Delaware were declared by the British government to be in a state of blockade. To enforce this edict, Admiral Warren was stationed off the American coast, and Rear Admiral Cockburn was sent up the Chesapeake, "to make the inhabitants and the government" says a British historian, "sensible of the danger of arousing the British nation." A squadron, under Admiral Beresford, also entered the Delaware, and, on the 10th of April, proceeded to Lewistown. The British demanded provisions of the inhabitants, which being refused, they attacked the village, and after bombarding it for several days, they were compelled to retire.

April 10. Attack of the British on Lewistown.

Admiral Cockburn. A predatory war.

Admiral Cockburn made his name odious by his disgraceful behavior in the Chesapeake. He took possession of several small islands in the bay, and from these made descents upon the neighboring shores. Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Fredericktown, Hampton and Georgetown, were successively the scenes of a warfare, of which savages would have been ashamed.

Attack on Craney's Island.

Cockburn, now joined by Sir Sidney Beckwith, meditated an attack on Norfolk. To destroy the defenses on Craney's island, they made a descent with 4,000 troops. But 10,000 of the Virginia militia had collected from among an outraged people, and the marauders were glad to make good their retreat.

CHAPTER IX.

Northern army.—Naval affairs.

Oct. 5. Chauncey captures a British squadron on Lake Ontario.

The squadron of Commodore Chauncey, on Lake Ontario, was superior in force, but inferior in sailing, to that of Sir James Yeo, and hence he could not bring him to a decisive engagement. He however, encountered a fleet of seven sail, bound for Kingston, with troops and provisions, five of which he captured.

Aug. 20. General Wilkinson takes command of the central army.

General Wilkinson, who had commanded on the Mississippi, was this year appointed to the command of the army of the centre. He did not arrive at Sackett's Harbor, till late in the season. He immediately prepared to attempt the reduction of Canada, by attacking Montreal. After much delay, the troops from Fort George and Sackett's Harbor proceeded down

the St. Lawrence, expecting to be joined at some place on the river, by the northern army under General Wade Hampton.

1813. Nov. 11. Americans defeated at Williamsburg.

The British governor had ordered a corps of observation from Kingston, to follow the movements of General Wilkinson's army; and they were joined by some hundreds of the Canadian militia. To disperse these troops, parties of the Americans were landed, to proceed in advance of the boats. An action occurred at Williamsburg, which terminated in favor of the British. The American force engaged was under General Boyd, and did not exceed 1,200; that of the enemy, under Lieutenant Colonel Morrison, was estimated at 2,000. The loss of the Americans was 339, that of the British 180.

Great preparations to no effect. Army in winter-quarters.

The flotilla proceeded; but the next day communications were received from General Hampton, in which he declined joining his forces to those of General Wilkinson. The contemplated attack on Montreal was abandoned, and the army went into quarters at French Mills.

General Hampton in winter-quarters at Plattsburg.

In the meantime General Hampton with 4,000 men, had attempted to penetrate to Montreal by Chateaugay river. Soon after arriving in Canada, he found his way opposed by about 600 British troops, and after making some ineffectual efforts to dislodge them, he returned, and encamped at Chateaugay Four Corners. Here he dispatched to General Wilkinson the communication which has been mentioned: and, receiving intelligence that the expedition had been abandoned, he returned to Plattsburg, where he established his winter-quarters. He soon resigned, and was succeeded in command by General Izard.

Sir George Provost being relieved from his apprehension of an attack on Montreal, ordered his forces under generals Vincent and Drummond, to proceed to Niagara. The Americans had left this frontier defenseless, except that a few militia under General M'Clure garrisoned fort George. Learning the approach of the enemy, M'Clure abandoned Fort George, and from a misconception of his orders, burned the village of Newark.

Dec. 10. M'Clure burns Newark.

The British retaliated, although the act was promptly disavowed by the American government. A part of their troops crossed the river, gained possession of fort Niagara, and laid waste the whole country on the American side of the Niagara river for several miles. The militia were immediately collected to oppose them, but were compelled to retreat by the superior force of the enemy. Buffalo, Black Rock, and other villages were burned.

Dec. 19. Buffalo and Black Rock burned.

Feb. 23. The Hornet captures the Peacock.

The United States' ship Hornet, commanded by Captain Lawrence, encountered the British sloop of war Peacock. The action lasted but fifteen minutes. The loss of the British in killed and wounded was about forty, that of the Americans five. The Peacock unfortunately sunk with thirteen of

her crew, while engaged in removing the wounded. She had on board three impressed American seamen, who, notwithstanding their earnest solicitations, had been compelled to fight against their country. One was killed in the engagement, and two were found among the prisoners.

This was the sixth successive naval victory, by which America vindicated her equal right with Britain, to traverse, unmolested, the great highway of nations.

1813. June 1. The Chesapeake captured by the Shannon.

In the career of naval triumph the Americans now suffered a severe check. As the United States' frigate, Chesapeake, was lying in Boston harbor, the British frigate Shannon, commanded by Captain Broke, appeared in sight, off the harbor, challenging her to fight. Captain Lawrence, who for his gallant services in the affair of the Peacock, had been promoted to the command of the Chesapeake, felt himself bound in honor not to refuse. But his officers and crew were strangers to him, and the seamen, not having received their pay, in a state of dissatisfaction. The Shannon, on the contrary, had a picked crew of officers and seamen, especially prepared for the occasion. Lawrence, with rash valor, put out to sea. So desperate was the battle, that in a few minutes every officer on board the Chesapeake capable of taking the command, was either killed or wounded. Captain Lawrence received a mortal wound, and the Chesapeake being much disabled, he was asked "if the colors should be struck;" he replied, "no, they shall wave while I live." Becoming delirious, he continually cried, "don't give up the ship." At the moment of his being carried below, Captain Broke succeeded in boarding the Chesapeake, and the British lowered her colors. The loss of the Americans was seventy killed and sixty-three wounded; the British about half the number.

Death of Lawrence.

The Shannon carried her prize into Halifax, and there the heroic Lawrence, who had survived his defeat but four days, was interred with every mark of honorable distinction. His pall was borne by the oldest captains in the British navy, who mourned him with a generous sympathy.

His burial.

Aug. 14. Argus made a prize by the Pelican.

Another naval disaster soon followed. The United States' sloop of war, Argus, commanded by Lieutenant Allen, was captured, in St. George's channel, by the British sloop of war, Pelican. The loss of the Americans was forty, that of the British only eight. Allen, mortally wounded, died in England. Like Lawrence, he received every attention while living, and an honorable burial when dead.

Sept. 4. The Enterprise captures the Boxer.

On the 4th of September, the American seamen were again victorious. The brig Enterprise, sailing from Portland harbor, fell in, the same day, with the British brig, Boxer. Soon after the action began, Lieutenant Burrows, who commanded the American brig, was mortally wounded, but he refused to be carried below. In his last moments he begged that his

PART IV. PERIOD II. CHAP. X.

1813.

flag might not be struck. Lieutenant M'Call, on whom the command devolved, gave orders to board the enemy; but Captain Blyth, like his brave antagonist, had fallen; the British brig had become unmanageable, and the crew cried out for quarter. They could not pull down their colors, for they were nailed to the mast. The bodies of the commanders were received at Portland with tokens of the highest respect: masters of vessels rowed them ashore with the funeral stroke of the oar, while minute-guns were fired by the vessels in the harbor; and their last obsequies were performed by the civil and military authorities of the place.

The commanders of the two brigs buried at Portland.

On the 26th of September, Commodore Rodgers returned from a long cruise, in which he had circumnavigated the British isles, and explored the Atlantic. He did not gain any signal victory, but he rendered essential service to his country, by harassing the British commerce; having captured twelve merchant vessels, and taken many prisoners.

Cruise of Commodore Rodgers.

CHAPTER X.

The Creek War.

The Creeks are in a measure civilized.

In the meantime causes were operating, which resulted in a bloody war with the Creek Indians. Their lands lying within the territory of the United States, were secured to them by the national power. Great and successful exertions had been made by benevolent individuals, as well as by the government, to instruct them in the arts of civilized life. Their early habits and prejudices were not, however, rooted out; and some of them wished to return to their former state. At this time, Tecumseh came among them. He urged them, by every motive which could reach their nature, to shake off the oppressions of civilized life, return to their wild and fearless independence, and set bounds to the farther progress of the whites; ever enforcing the principle, that to the Indians belonged the land in common;—that they had no right to make a permanent division among themselves, much less to sell the soil given them by the Great Spirit.

1812. Tecumseh stirs them up to hostility.

The plea prevailed; and the Creeks manifested such signs of hostility, that the settlers in the most exposed situations took refuge in forts which were erected for their security. One of these was Fort Mims in the Tensau settlement, which was now filled with alarmed families. Major Beasely, the commander, had received repeated warnings of an intended attack by the Indians, but had delayed to make suitable preparation. At noon-day, the fort was suddenly surrounded.

Aug. 30. Shocking massacre of Fort Mims.

At first, the garrison stood their ground, and repulsed the savages; but they returned, drove the besieged into the houses, and set them on fire. Dreadful was the massacre. Only seventeen, out of three hundred, men, women, and children, escaped to bear the sorrowful tidings to the surrounding inhabitants.

1812.
Forces under Jackson, Coffee, and Floyd.

The spirit of vengeance was abroad. Tennessee sent forth 2,000 men, under General Jackson, and 500 under General Coffee. Georgia dispatched General Floyd with 950 militia, and 400 friendly Indians; while Mississippi sent a body of volunteers, under General Claiborne.

Nov. 7.
Jackson at Talladega.

General Jackson met and defeated the Indians at Talladega, losing fifteen killed and eighty-five wounded. Two hundred and ninety of the Indian warriors were left dead upon the field.

Nov. 11.

The Hillabee towns were next destroyed by the Tennesseeans, and sixty of the Indian warriors were killed.

Nov. 29.
General Floyd at Autossee.

General Floyd, with 950 of the Georgia militia, and 400 friendly Indians, encountered the Creeks at Autossee. This was their sacred ground, and they fought bravely in its defense, but were overcome. Four hundred of their houses were burned, and 200 of their bravest warriors slain; among whom were the kings of Autossee and Tallahassee. Of the Americans, fifty were either killed or wounded.

Dec. 23.
Eccanachaca.

General Claiborne, with the Mississippi volunteers, gained an important victory over the Indians, under their prophet-leader, Weatherford, on his holy ground at Eccanachaca.

General Jackson's army was diminished by the return of those whose term of service had expired, and sixty days more would close that of a second body of volunteers, who now joined him. But Jackson used their time well. Co-operating with General Floyd, the two armies entered the Indian country in different directions. Twice the savages made night attacks on the army of Jackson, and once on that of Floyd, but in neither case did they find these generals unprepared, and the defeat was their own.

Indians cannot surprise Jackson and Floyd.

But the hostile spirit of the Creeks remained unsubdued. They strongly fortified the bend of the Tallapoosa, called by the Indians, Tohopeka, and by the whites, Horse-shoe-bend. Nature and art had rendered this a place of great security. They erected a breastwork from five to eight feet high, across the peninsula, where a thousand warriors had collected. This could not be approached, without exposure to double and cross fires from the Indians, who lay behind their works. General Jackson, aided by General Coffee, surrounded and stormed the fortifications. The regulars, led on by Colonel Williams and Major Montgomery, advanced first to the charge. The combatants fought through the port-holes, musket to musket. At this time, Major Montgomery, leaping on the wall, called to his men to mount and follow. Scarcely had he spoken,

Jackson defeats the Creeks at Tohopeka.

when a ball struck him upon the head, and he fell lifeless to the ground. His soldiers obeyed his command, and followed his example; and though the Creeks fought with desperation, yet they were entirely defeated.

Five hundred and fifty were killed on the peninsula, and many were drowned or shot, in attempting to cross the river. General Jackson's loss, including the friendly Indians, was fifty-four killed, and one hundred and fifty-six wounded. This victory ended in the submission of the remaining warriors, and the consequent termination of the war.

Speech of the chief, Weatherford.

Among those who threw themselves upon the mercy of their victors, was Weatherford, who was equally distinguished for his talents and cruelty. "I am in your power," said he, "do with me what you please. I have done the white people all the harm I could. I have fought them, and fought them bravely. There was a time when I had a choice. I have none now; every hope is ended. Once I could animate my warriors to battle; but I cannot animate the dead. They can no longer hear my voice; their bones are at Tallushatches, Talladega, Emukfau, and Tohopeka. While there was a chance of success, I never supplicated peace; but my people are gone, and I now ask it for my nation and myself."

1814. Aug. 9. Treaty with the Creeks.

During the summer, a treaty of peace was concluded with the conquered Creeks, on conditions advantageous to the United States. General Jackson returned to Tennessee, and was soon after appointed to succeed General Wilkinson in the command of the forces at New Orleans.

CHAPTER XI.

Political Affairs.

1813. Russia offers to mediate.

During the spring of 1813, Alexander, emperor of Russia, with a laudable zeal to spare mankind from the desolations of war, offered his mediation in the quarrel between the United States and Great Britain. On the part of the republic, the offer was promptly accepted, and John Quincy Adams, Albert Gallatin, and James A. Bayard, were dispatched to Russia, to meet and negotiate with such commissioners as Great Britain might choose to appoint. That power, however, had declined the mediation of Alexander, but offered to treat for peace directly with the United States. In pursuance of this proposition, to which the American government acceded, Messrs. Adams, Gallatin, and Bayard, in the month of August, proceeded to Ghent, the place of meeting agreed on, and there met Lord Gambier, Henry Golbourn, and William Adams, com-

Commissioners to treat for peace meet at Ghent.

missioners on the part of Great Britain. On that of America, Henry Clay, and Jonathan Russell, were added to the gentlemen already named.

1813. May 24. Congress meet in extra session, and show a firmness worthy of the revolution.

On account of the critical state of the country, congress deemed it expedient to hold an extra session, and accordingly met on the 24th of May. Their most urgent business was to provide means of replenishing the exhausted treasury; and, notwithstanding the clamors of the party opposed to the war, they proceeded with firmness and decision.

They agreed on a system of internal duties; laid taxes on lands and houses, distilled liquors, refined sugars, retailer's licences, carriages, sales at auction, and bank notes; and they authorized a loan of seven millions and a half. Congress adjourned on the 2d of August.

Dec. 2 The regular session commences.

Among other important subjects, embraced in the president's message, at the regular session, was that concerning the right of expatriation, on which Great Britain and America had been so long at issue, and from which the most tragical consequences were, at that period, apprehended. Forty persons, natives of Britain, but who, by a long residence, had become naturalized in America, had been taken in arms against the British nation, and were sent to the land of their birth, there to undergo a trial for treason. The American government, feeling itself bound to protect them, had put in close confinement an equal number of British soldiers, with a notification, that if violence was done, the same, in kind and degree, should be inflicted in return. In retaliation for this step, the British government put in confinement, with a similar threat, double the number of American officers of the lower grades. This measure had also been retaliated, and an equal number of British officers selected.

Forty native Britons, but naturalized Americans.

The subject was, however, adjusted, by the exchange of all prisoners, except the first forty, who had been sent for trial; and concerning these, the American government reserved a right to retaliate, in case any violence should thereafter be done them.

Embargo laid.

Another message was soon after received from the president, recommending an embargo upon exports, to deprive the enemy of supplies from our ports and with a design to protect the American commerce, and completely prohibit British manufactures. This measure, after a warm debate, was adopted by congress, but it was considered by the opposition, as annoying ourselves more than our foes, and condemned as unconstitutional and oppressive.

It is violently opposed.

These commercial restrictions were not, however, of long continuance. Mighty revolutions were taking place in Europe, and changing the policy of America. Napoleon was now a powerless exile on a little island in the Mediterranean; and the ports of Europe were open to England. Under these circum-

stances, in the month of April, the embargo and non-importation acts were both discontinued.

1813. Bills passed for the relief of the army.

The condition of the army required and received the attention of congress, A bill was passed early in the session, giving to those who should enlist for five years, or during the war, the unprecedented bounty of one hundred and twenty-four dollars; and to any person who should procure an able bodied recruit, was given further the sum of eight dollars. An appropriation of five hundred thousand dollars was made, for the building of one or more floating batteries, to be propelled by steam.

Steam batteries.

CHAPTER XII.

Campaign of 1814.

1814. Feb. 21. Stores at Malone destroyed.

General Wilkinson had remained inactive at French Mills, until early in February, when, having received orders from the secretary of war, he detached General Brown, with 2,000 troops, to the Niagara frontier; and after destroying his barracks, he retired to Plattsburg. The enemy, taking advantage of this movement, made an incursion as far as Malone, and destroyed the arsenal and public stores there kept, which had belonged to the cantonment of French Mills.

Affair of La Colle.

Movements of General Wilkinson, which had the appearance of an attempt again to invade Canada, caused the British commander to order 2,000 men, under Major Hancock, to fortify themselves at La Colle Mill, near the river Sorel. General Wilkinson advanced, and on the succeeding day made an attack. A sortie from the building ended in his repulse, and the loss of 100 of his men, in killed and wounded. Such a series of unsuccessful measures brought public censure upon this general. He was tried before a court-martial at Troy, New York, where he was nominally acquitted of the charges brought against him.

Wilkinson tried.

The British army of Lower Canada now withdrew from the St. Lawrence, and were stationed near St. Johns, for securing the entrance of a fleet into Lake Champlain.

May. Attempt to destroy the American flotilla on Lake Champlain.

During the autumn, and winter, Macdonough, the American commodore on this station, had labored with great industry to provide a naval force on this lake, equal to that of the enemy. The flotilla was lying in the Otter river, at Vergennes; and it was the object of the British to destroy it, before it should make its appearance on the lake. Apprised of this, Macdonough caused a battery to be erected at the mouth of the river. On the 12th of May, the British fleet entered the lake. They attacked the battery, but were repulsed.

Major Appling and Captain Woolsey were appointed to convey the naval stores from Oswego to Sackett's Harbor, the British having made an attempt to seize them at the former place. A British party intending to attack them, were drawn into an ambuscade which they formed, and 133 of their number were taken prisoners.

1814. Feb. 21. Captain Holmes, with 180 men, fights 300.

At the commencement of this year, the Americans were in possession of all their former territory at the west, except fort Mackinaw. On the 21st of February, Captain Holmes was detached from Detroit, with 180 men, to dislodge a party of British who were stationed on the river Thames. When within fifteen miles of his destination, he received intelligence that about 300 of the enemy were within one hour's march of him. He retired five miles, where he was attacked on all sides; but he bravely stood his ground, and forced the British to retreat, with a loss of sixty-nine men.

Circumstances threatening to America.

During the early part of this year, the government of Great Britain had been much occupied with affairs nearer home, but when her military and naval forces were liberated from European warfare, she directed her energies to this continent. Two distinct systems appear to have been determined on in the British cabinet; one, having for its object the invasion of the sea-coast, and the other, the protection of Canada, and the conquest of so much of the adjoining territory as might guard that province from future danger. To effect these objects, a formidable army of fourteen thousand, who had fought under the Duke of Wellington, were embarked at Bordeaux for Canada; and, at the same time, a strong naval force, with an adequate number of troops, was directed against the maritime frontier of the United States, to maintain a strict blockade, and ravage the whole coast from Maine to Georgia.

14,000 of Wellington's veteran troops sent over.

Destruction of shipping at Essex.

The northern sea-coast experienced little molestation, until the spring of 1814, when the British ascended the Connecticut river to Essex, where they destroyed shipping, to the value of two hundred thousand dollars. The reason of the distinction, which was thus made between the north and the south, is expressed by a British historian, in the concluding sentiment of the following paragraph.

Baines' account of public opinion in England respecting America.

"After the fall of Napoleon, it was held in this country," says Baines, "with a lamentable ignorance of the real state of the feelings and energies of the United States, that Britain, so long the undisputed mistress of the ocean, would soon be able to sweep from the seas the ships of America; and that those troops, which had acquired so much glory when contending with the veteran armies of Europe, would no sooner show themselves on the western side of the Atlantic, than the panic-struck soldiers of the United States would be driven far within their own frontiers. These pleasing illusions were heightened by the hope, that England would soon be able to dictate peace in the capital of the republic; or at least, that

the splendor of British triumphs, and the pressure of American embarrassments, would induce and encourage the inhabitants of the northern states, to form a separate government, under the protection of the crown of Great Britain, if not actually under the sway of her sceptre."

CHAPTER XIII.

The Niagara Frontier.

General Brown, in conducting, as has been related, 2,000 of the army of General Wilkinson, from French Mills towards the Niagara frontier, stopped at Sackett's Harbor. Here his force consisted of two brigades, the first under General Scott, the second, under General Ripley. These able officers were diligently occupied, during the first part of the campaign, in disciplining their troops, and preparing them for action.

1814. July 2 and 3. General Brown crosses the Niagara, and takes Fort Erie.

In June, General Brown marched his army to Buffalo, expecting to invade Canada. Here were added to his army, Towson's artillery, and a corps of volunteers, commanded by General Porter, making, in the whole, about 3,500 men. On the second and third of July, they crossed the Niagara, and invested Fort Erie, where the garrison, amounting to 100 men, surrendered without resistance.

Scott advances upon the enemy.

On the 4th, the brigade under General Scott, with Towson's artillery, advanced from Fort Erie along the bank of the Niagara, to Street's Creek, which falls into the river from the southwest, and here, being within a mile and a half of the enemy, he halted. General Brown, with the remaining brigade, arrived at the same place at midnight, and General Porter, with the volunteers, at sunrise. The British army, 3,000 strong, and commanded by General Riall, occupied a position at the mouth of the Chippewa.

July 5. Battle of Chippewa.

The battle of the 5th commenced with a skirmish, in which a detachment, under General Porter, surprised and defeated a body of Indians; but they being reinforced, in their turn drove the Americans, who retreated, bravely fighting. The main body of the British advanced; and General Brown put his whole camp in motion. General Ripley was sent to the left, to the aid of Porter, while General Scott, crossing the creek, drew up his brigade in order of battle, to receive the charge of the king's regiment, and that of the royal Scots. They outnumbered the republican troops in the field by more than one-third, and were the veterans who had fought and conquered by the side of Wellington, and of whom many of the English had predicted, that they would re-colo-

Character of the troops engaged.

nize America. The officers and soldiers of the republic had, at the most, but two years experience; and many of them had never before been in battle. Here then they met in fair and open fight, arm to arm, and breast to breast.

1814.

The British defeated.

General Scott led on his men, while his officers nobly seconded his exertions. The conflict was bloody; but the valor of America prevailed. The veterans gave way, and retreated, while the Americans pursued, defeating them at every point, until at length their retreat being changed to a rout, they sought the shelter of their entrenchments. So decisive had been the movements of General Scott, that the enemy were totally defeated before the brigade of General Ripley was brought into action. General Brown now ordered up the artillery to batter their works; but the day was spent, and their batteries so strongly fortified, that he desisted from the attempt, drew off his forces, and returned to his camp.

In this engagement, Colonel Gordon, of the royal Scots, and Colonel the Marquis of Tweedale, late aid-de-camp to the Duke of Wellington, were both severely wounded. The loss of the enemy in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was 514; that of the Americans, 328.

General Riall receives reinforcements by Drummond.

In the meantime, a large body of British troops, commanded by General Drummond, were at the head of lake Ontario, near Burlington Heights, and at York. Soon after the battle of Chippewa, General Riall fell back to fort George, where in a few days he was joined by Drummond, when his army amounted to 5,000, of whom 1,500 were militia and Indians.

General Brown falls back to Chippewa.

On the 10th of July, the American camp was removed from Street's Creek to Queenstown, and from thence General Brown marched to invest fort George; but finding unexpected difficulties, he retired from that position, and on the 23d, took post at Chippewa. He had, however, previously sent his wounded and heavy baggage across the strait to Schlosser, near the Falls, intending at the time, to advance upon the enemy.

July 25. Scott's detachment falls in with the British army at Lundy's Lane.

On the morning of the 25th, General Brown received information from General Swift, who had the care of the wounded, that the enemy were at Queenstown, and that a detachment threatened his stores at Schlosser. At this intelligence, General Brown detached General Scott, with his brigade and Captain Towson's artillery, to make a movement on the Queenstown road, as if to attack the enemy, and thus divert their attention from his stores. Scott left the camp at four in the afternoon, moved along the river, and passed the grand cataract, in ignorance that the enemy were near. Having proceeded a short distance beyond the Falls, he learned that the British army, in great force, were encamped behind a wood, only a few hundred yards to the north, and that they intended to attack the Americans the next day. Scott immediately transmitted this intelligence to his commander, and

moved rapidly forward through the wood, till he perceived the British strongly posted on an eminence, defended by nine pieces of artillery. He halted and drew up his men in order of battle, on a level ground near Lundy's lane, and in front of the British position. The artillery under Towson commenced a brisk cannonade, which was returned by the British battery. The American combatants stood for more than an hour and maintained a contest against a force seven times their number. It was late in the afternoon when the engagement commenced. The sun had now gone down, and darkness came on. No reinforcement appeared. But the gallant band still maintained the battle, although an officer reminded the general, that the rule for retiring was accomplished, since more than one-fourth of his number were killed or wounded, among whom were many of his officers. The brave Colonel Brady had been the first to form his regiment, and on that the loss fell heaviest. Himself twice wounded, he was entreated by those who observed him pale from the loss of blood, to quit the field. "Not while I can stand," was the reply, worthy of Leonidas.

1814. The Americans in a dangerous position; fight with desperate valor.

At that critical moment, a reinforcement appeared. General Ripley, by whom it was commanded, had been ordered to form his brigade, on the skirt of a wood to the right of General Scott. But, finding that this position was not favorable, he took the responsibility of first moving nearer to the British. For this purpose, he was about to pass the brigade of Scott, but coming between him and the enemy, he found that he was suffering severely from their cannon. Ripley then conceived the bold thought of storming the formidable battery. "Colonel Miller," said he, "will you take yonder battery?" "I'll try," said that heart of oak, and at the head of the twenty-first regiment, he calmly took his course, marched up to the mouth of the blazing cannon, around which the enemy had rallied, bayoneted the men while firing, and possessed himself of their guns. Ripley had moved at the same time, at the head of the 23d regiment, to the attack of the infantry, and drove them from the eminence, which was the key of their position.

Ripley reinforces Scott.

Miller "tries" to take the battery and succeeds.

Here Ripley formed his brigade. General Porter, with his volunteers, was on the right, and the artillery of Towson in the centre. The enemy, rallied in their might, and advanced to regain their position and artillery. The Americans perceived that the foe was coming on, but could not distinctly ascertain from what point. The moon had risen, but dark clouds were in the heavens, and her light was fitful. Sounds came indistinctly mingled from every quarter. The roar of the cataract, the shrieks and groans of the wounded and dying, the discharge of artillery, were all heard, as well as the rush of the enemy's attack. In this situation, Ripley gave his troops the order to wait till the enemy's bayonets touched

Terrible night encounter.

their own, and take aim by the light from the discharge of their muskets. The aim of the Americans was good, and numbers of their brave enemy fell. They closed up their ranks, and came on with the bayonet. The republicans stood the charge, and sturdily pushed back the thrust. For twenty minutes this deadly strife continued, when the veterans of Wellington retreated in disorder. But they renewed the attack till they were four times repulsed. At length, about midnight, they ceased to contend, and left their position and artillery to the Americans.

Americans are victorious.

Although the brunt of the battle was on the eminence, other efforts were making in different parts of the field. The brigade of Scott, shattered as it was, having formed anew, was not content to look idly on, while their brethren, who had stepped between them and death, were now bleeding in their turn. General Scott charged at their head, through an opening in Ripley's line; but in the confusion and darkness of the scene, he passed between the fires of the combatants. He afterwards engaged in the fight, taking his post on Ripley's left. In another quarter, Colonel Jessup, with only two hundred men, advanced upon the enemy, brought them to close action, drove them from the ground, and captured General Riall, with other officers and soldiers, to a number almost equal to his own.

Incidents of this remarkable battle.

In this sanguinary contest, the total loss of the British was eight hundred and seventy-eight. Generals Drummond and Riall were among the wounded. The Americans lost, in killed, wounded, and missing, eight hundred and sixty. Of these, eleven officers were killed, among whom were Major M'Farland and Captain Ritchie. Fifty-six officers were wounded, among whom were generals Brown and Scott; it was not, however, until towards the close of the action, that the two generals, highest in command, were disabled. General Brown, on receiving his wound, gave notice to General Ripley, that he was left in command, but ordered him to collect the wounded, remove the artillery, and retire to the camp at Chippewa. Unfortunately, the Americans lost the trophies of their hard-earned victory, as no means of removing the captured artillery were at hand; and General Ripley was obliged to leave it on the field of battle. The British, on learning that the Americans had abandoned the field, re-occupied it immediately; and taking advantage of this circumstance, their officers, in their dispatches to their government, claimed the victory.

Americans unfortunately lose the trophies of their victory.

The American army now reduced to 1,600, retired to fort Erie, and proceeded to entrench themselves strongly in that position. The enemy, to the number of 5,000, followed them; and on the 4th of August, commenced a regular siege. On the 5th, General Gaines arrived at Erie from Sackett's Harbor, and took the command. Anticipating an attack, the Americans prepared themselves to receive it.

Aug. 4. American army besieged in Fort Erie.

1814.
Aug. 15.
Drummond assaults the fort, and is repulsed.

On the morning of the 15th, the enemy advanced in three columns, commanded by Colonels Drummond, Fischer, and Scott. The columns to the right and left repeatedly attacked, and were as often repulsed. The centre column, under Drummond, after a sanguinary conflict, succeeded in scaling the walls, and taking possession of a bastion. While this savage man was denying mercy to the conquered Americans, a barrel of powder beneath him became ignited. There was a sudden crash, and bastion, assailants, and assailed, were blown together into the air. Those of the British who survived, fled in dismay. Their numbers were thinned as they passed the American artillery. According to the British official report, their loss on this day was 57 killed, of whom were Colonels Scott and Drummond, 319 wounded, and 539 missing. The total loss of the Americans was but eighty-four.

General Brown in command.

After this repulse, both armies remained in a state of inactivity for some time. General Gaines had been wounded by the bursting of a shell, and the command again devolved on General Ripley; it was exercised, however, but a short time, as General Brown, now recovered from his wounds, entered the fort, and resumed his functions.

General Izard sent to the aid of Brown.

The American public had become anxious for the fate of their brave defenders, and General Izard, by the order of the secretary of war, abandoning a post, which, from the arrival of the British troops at Montreal, it was hazardous to leave, marched from Plattsburg, with 5,000 men for their relief. The enemy were daily receiving reinforcements, and their works, upon which they labored with great assiduity, grew more and more formidable.

General Brown, learning that of the three parts into which the British army was divided, two were kept at the camp, while the third manned the batteries, determined to make a sortie, with a view of destroying the batteries, and cutting off the brigade on duty.

Sept. 17.
The Americans make a sortie and dislodge the enemy from Fort Erie.

On the 17th of September, at twelve o'clock, General Porter left the camp at the head of a detachment, to penetrate by a passage through the wood. Being perfectly acquainted with the ground, he with his men, trod silently and circuitously along, when, arriving at their destined point, they rushed upon the enemy, whom they completely surprised. In thirty minutes they had taken a blockhouse and two bastions, spiked their guns, blown up their magazine, and made prisoners of their garrison; but the brave colonels Gibson and Wood had fallen at the head of their columns. General Ripley arrived in season to share the danger and the honor of this well-planned and well-conducted enterprise.

Thus in a few hours were the enemy deprived of the fruit of forty-seven days' labor, of a great quantity of artillery and ammunition, and of 1,000 men, which was their number of

killed, wounded, and prisoners. General Miller, on whom the command devolved, secured the prisoners and the trophies of the victory, and re-conducted the army to the fort in perfect order. The killed and wounded were 300. Several more were missing, so that their loss was not much less than one-third of their whole number.

1814. The British army retires.

After the destruction of his works before Fort Erie, General Drummond broke up his camp, and retired on the night of the 21st, to his entrenchments behind Chippewa.

Soon after this, the arrival of General Izard placed the Americans on a footing which enabled them once more to commence offensive operations; and leaving Erie in command of Colonel Hindman, General Brown again advanced towards Chippewa. Near this place, an affair occurred on the 20th of October, in which Colonel Bissell, with a detachment of 1,000 men, obtained an advantage over a detachment of 1,200, under the Marquis of Tweedale.

Oct. 20. Colonel Bissell defeats the Marquis of Tweedale.

During the summer of this year, an expedition was set on foot to recover Mackinaw. It was conducted by Major Croghan, with the co-operation of part of the fleet of Lake Erie, which was for that purpose taken through the straits into Lake Huron. The attempt was unsuccessful, and several brave men were lost, among whom was Captain Holmes. The British warlike establishments at St. Josephs, and the Sault de St. Marie, were, however, destroyed.

Unsuccessful attempt to recover Mackinaw.

CHAPTER XIV.

Washington taken by the British —Baltimore threatened.

In the early part of the year 1814, while Admiral Cockburn was engaged in predatory warfare upon the shores of the Chesapeake, the main protection of the inhabitants was a fleet of gunboats and smaller vessels, commanded by Commodore Barney. Early in June, several skirmishes took place between this flotilla and a part of the enemy's vessels; but not being able to cope with the superior force of the British, Barney took refuge in the Patuxent, and was there blockaded by the British admiral.

Commodore Barney blockaded in the Patuxent.

Now that the armies which had been employed in Europe, were, by the pacification, left at liberty to be brought over by the great navy of Britain, the nation supposed that they might probably soon dictate a peace in the capital of the United States; and an expedition was accordingly planned, whose object was the capture of Washington.

Plan to invade Washington.

The administration were not entirely inattentive to its de-

fense, and that of the adjacent city of Baltimore; but their measures were inefficient. The national territory had been previously divided into nine military districts. A tenth was now formed, embracing Maryland, the District of Columbia, and a part of Virginia. On the 4th of July, a requisition was made by the president, upon the governors of these states for ninety-three thousand militia. Of these, fifteen thousand were within the limits of the new military district. One thousand regulars were also to be added, and thus there was, numerically, a force of sixteen thousand men at the disposal of General Winder, who was appointed to the command. But it was only a fortnight previous to the invasion, that the order, authorizing that general to call for these forces, was received. Time is necessarily consumed in the tardy operations of republican governments, unused to war; and when, on the 20th of August, news arrived that the enemy had landed at Benedict, General Winder had not collected more than 3,000 men, and these were undisciplined and unacquainted with each other.

1814. State of the force for the defense of Washington.

Aug. 17. Cochrane arrives with an army under Ross.

On the 17th of August, the British fleet in the Chesapeake was augmented by the arrival of Admiral Cochrane, who had been sent out with a large land force, commanded by Major-General Ross, in pursuance of the resolution which had been taken by the British government, "to destroy and lay waste such towns and districts upon the coast, as might be found assailable." This formidable fleet was divided into three parts, one of which, carrying General Ross, and commanded by Admiral Cochrane, proceeded up the Patuxent; one, under Captain Gordon, ascended the Potomac; and the third, under Sir Peter Parker, went further up the Chesapeake, as if to threaten Baltimore.

They ascend the Patuxent.

On the 19th, General Ross landed at Benedict with 5,000 infantry: on the 20th, he began his march to Washington, distant twenty-seven miles, keeping along the right bank of the Patuxent. His object was, in the first instance, to co-operate with Admiral Cockburn, in the destruction of Commodore Barney's squadron, which he had for some time been blockading. On the 22d, the expedition reached Pig Point, and descried the pendant of the American flotilla. On their approach, the Americans abandoned their fleet, and sixteen out of seventeen boats were blown up to prevent their falling into the hands of the enemy. The British were now distant only sixteen miles from Washington.

Aug. 22. Force Commodore Barney to destroy his flotilla.

Aug. 20. American army, under Winder, advances from Washington.

Aug. 22. Barney's marines.

On the afternoon of the 20th, General Winder, apprised of of the danger of the capital, advanced from it towards the enemy, and on the 22d encamped near Marlborough. Commodore Barney here united his marines with Winder's army. The president of the United States, with General Armstrong, who had succeeded Mr. Eustis as secretary of war, and some of the other heads of department, here visited the camp.

It was resolved to fall back nearer to the capital. The same retreating policy was pursued, until General Winder had recrossed the eastern branch of the Potomac. Here he made provisions for guarding the bridge, it being supposed the enemy would attempt the capital from this point.

In the meantime, the militia from Baltimore, under General Stansbury, advanced to the relief of Washington. These, to the number of 2,200, including a company of artillery, rested, on the night of the 23d, near Bladensburg. Being under orders to join General Winder, they commenced their march on the morning of the 24th. But it was now discovered, that, although that general, or those under whose direction he acted, had carefully set a trap at the great bridge on the east branch, the British commander did not choose to fall into it; but had taken for safety a more circuitous route, and was marching past Washington, to gain the Bladensburg road, on the north.

1814. Enemy chooses his own road.

General Stansbury now met an order from Winder to retrace his steps to Bladensburg, and there give battle to the enemy. Although exhausted by fatigue, and the heat of the season, he obeyed. On his march he was met by Colonel Monroe, secretary of state, who had been scouring the adjacent country for volunteers. He proposed to Stansbury to make a movement in order to get in the enemy's rear; but that general being under orders to the contrary, did not feel at liberty to follow this judicious counsel. About noon he met the enemy near Bladensburg. General Winder soon came up with the main body. The president and heads of department were on the field, but as the event of the day was doubtful, and they had documents of importance to secure, all left it about the time the battle began, except Colonel Monroe, who was active in forming and bringing forward the cavalry of General Stansbury. The contest which ensued, terminated as might have been expected from the condition of the American troops. Many of the militia fled. Commodore Barney, with his 400 marines and a small battery, fought valiantly, and for some time held the enemy in check; but he was at length wounded and made prisoner. The regulars and militia of the district of Columbia stood their ground for a time, but at length they left the field and retreated towards Washington.

General Stansbury.

Mr. Monroe.

Aug. 24. Americans defeated at Bladensburg.

They were now joined by fresh militia from Virginia, and upon the heights they formed again, and once more interposed a barrier between Washington and its invaders. But on surveying their numbers, wasted by the flight of the timid, and the fall of the brave, they were found inadequate to the task of its defense.

They rally near Washington; are defeated.

General Ross entered Washington at eight in the evening, and with that barbarism which distinguished the Goths and Vandals of the middle ages, but which is unknown to civili-

General Ross enters Washington.

1814. General Ross enters Washington; burns and plunders.

zed warfare, his troops burnt, not only the capital, which was in an unfinished state, but its extensive library, records, and other collections, appertaining not to war, but to peace and civilization. The public offices and the president's house were wantonly sacrificed, together with many private dwellings. The public stores at the navy-yard, and the vessels on the stocks had been burned by order of the president, to prevent their falling into the hands of the invaders. The expensive bridge across the Potomac was also destroyed. The loss of public property alone, amounted to one million of dollars.

The British, though they had entered the capital, had learned enough of the people, to satisfy them that it would not be wise to attempt keeping possession. General Ross left it on the evening of the 25th, and reached the fleet, still in the Patuxent, on the evening of the 27th.

American and British loss.

The loss of the Americans, in the battle of Bladensburg, was eighty in killed and wounded; that of the enemy, 249. Their loss during this expedition, amounted to 400 killed and wounded, and 500 either taken prisoners or deserted.

British barbarism defeats British policy.

Had the British confined themselves to the capture and destruction of public property appropriated to warlike purposes, the Americans would have felt deeply their humiliation, and the resentment of the nation might, as was expected in England, have fallen upon the public servants; but the manner in which the advantage was used, produced, in the minds of the people, a vindictive feeling against the conquerors, which swallowed up all minor resentments, and united the nation, not in a wish for peace, but in high resolves for war.

Aug. 27. Alexandria capitulates.

In the meantime, the squadron, under Captain Gordon, passed up the Potomac without opposition, and appeared before Alexandria, on the 27th of August. The inhabitants enentered into a capitulation, by which they delivered up their merchandise and shipping to the enemy; who, laden with a rich booty, returned to the ocean, though not without being much annoyed from the shore as they passed.

British repulsed at Bellair.

The squadron which had sailed up the Chesapeake, under Sir Peter Parker, landed about 250 marines, for the purpose of surprising 200 militia, who were encamped near Bellair, under Colonel Reed. They were repulsed with the loss of forty-one killed and wounded; Sir Peter Parker himself being among the latter.

Sept. 11. The British proceed to Baltimore.

Admiral Cochrane having received on board his fleet the elated conquerors of Washington, the combined land and sea forces moved on, in the confidence of victory, to the attack of Baltimore. After passing down the Patuxent, they ascended the Chesapeake, and on the 11th of September, appeared at the mouth of the Patapsco, fourteen miles from Baltimore.

On the morning of the 12th, General Ross, with an army

amounting to about 5,000, debarked at North Point, and commenced his march towards the city.

1814. Sept. 12. Battle near Baltimore.

General Smith commanded the whole force of the defenders. Watching the movements of the enemy, he dispatched about 2,300 men, under General Stricker, who, on the 11th, marched towards North Point. They halted at night seven miles from the city. On the morning of the 12th, information was received of the landing of the enemy, and General Stricker advanced to meet them. A skirmish between the advanced parties ensued, in which General Ross was killed. The command then devolved on Colonel Brooke, who, having the instructions of General Ross, continued to move forward. An action commenced at about half past three, by a discharge of cannon on both sides. After maintaining the contest for some time, the Americans gave way, and General Stricker retired behind an entrenchment on the heights, where General Smith was stationed with the main army.

Death of Ross.

General Stricker retires.

On the morning of the 13th, the British advanced within a mile and a half of the camp, and manœuvred to draw forth the Americans; but General Smith had the advantage of ground and position, and wisely maintained it. Colonel Brooke was aware that the republicans were superior to him in numbers as well as position; he therefore made no attempt upon them during the day, but disposed his troops for a night attack.

Sept. 13. General Smith's prudent conduct.

In the evening, he received a communication from Admiral Cochrane, the commander of the naval forces, informing him that Fort M'Henry had resisted all his efforts, and that the entrance of the harbor was blocked up by vessels sunk for that purpose, and that a naval co-operation against the town and camp, was impracticable. Colonel Brooke not choosing, therefore, to hazard an attack, moved off in the night; and, on the 15th, re-embarked at North Point.

Cochrane attacks Fort M'Henry, and is repulsed.

British abandon the enterprise.

Great was the joy at Baltimore, when, on the morning of the 15th, the "star-spangled banner" was still seen to wave over Fort M'Henry, and the city was no longer threatened with destruction.

CHAPTER XV.

Maine.—Invasion of Plattsburg.—Macdonough's victory.

On the 11th of July, Commodore Hardy, with eight ships and 2,000 men, made a descent upon the coast of Maine, and without resistance, took possession of Eastport and all the towns on the west side of Passamaquoddy bay. Many of the inhabitants remained, but it was on the degrading condition of acknowledging themselves the subjects of Great Britain.

July. Commodore Hardy makes a descent upon the coast of Maine.

PART IV. PERIOD II. CHAP. XV.

1814. British occupy a portion of Maine.

In August, the governor of New Brunswick, with the aid of Admiral Griffith, invaded Maine, took possession of Castine, which had been previously evacuated, and proceeded up the Penobscot river to Hamden, where the frigate John Adams had been placed for preservation. The militia who had been stationed for its defense, fled on their approach, and the frigate was blown up, to prevent its falling into the hands of the British. A proclamation was issued by the council of New Brunswick, declaring the country east of the Penobscot in possession of the king of Great Britain; and a direct communication was opened through it, between New Brunswick and Canada. The British continued to occupy this section of Maine until the close of the war.

Aug. 9. British attack Stonington, but are repulsed.

A British fleet under Commodore Hardy appeared before Stonington. They landed and attacked at different points. So far were they from finding that Connecticut was attached to the British cause, that no where had their predatory excursions been met, by the militia, with more spirit. Even the women shared the zeal for the common cause. After bombarding the place for three days, Commodore Hardy drew off his fleet.

July and August. Sir George Provost is reinforced.

During the months of July and August, the British army in Canada was augmented by another considerable body of those troops, who had, under Lord Wellington, acquired experience and reputation in the war of the Spanish peninsula. With these Sir George Provost determined to invade America, by the same route that Burgoyne had formerly pursued, and perhaps, with the same expectation of penetrating, by the way of Lake Champlain and the Hudson, to New York. A part of his baggage, like that of Burgoyne, consisted of arms and clothing, for those whom he expected would flock to his standard. Such a belief had been excited by the smugglers from the United States, who wished to court favor with the British in Canada, and by the republican party who had too freely accused their opponents with being the friends of the British.

He meditates an invasion.

Sept. 3. He invades at Champlain.

The army at Plattsburg having been reduced by the departure of General Izard for Fort Erie, Sir George Provost concentrated his force on the frontier, and entered the American territory on the 3d of September. From Champlain, he issued a proclamation, giving the assurance that his arms would only be directed against the government, and those who supported it; while no injury should be done to the peaceful and unoffending inhabitants.

His proclamation arouses the people without distinction of party.

The fire of genuine patriotism rekindled in the breasts of the Americans, when they heard that an invading enemy had dared to call on the people to separate themselves from their government. The inhabitants of the northern part of New York, and the hardy sons of the Green Mountains, without distinction of party, rose in arms, and hastened towards the scene of action.

Sir George Provost, at the head of 14,000 troops, marching in two columns, now advanced upon Plattsburg. One column, with all the baggage and artillery, proceeded by the lake road, and the other, under the command of General Brisbane, by Beekmantown.

1814. Sept. 6. Skirmish between the advance of the Americans and the British.

Parties of the Americans were detached, who obstructed their way, by breaking down bridges and felling trees. On the morning of the 6th, Major Wool, with a small corps of regulars, met General Brisbane seven miles from Plattsburg, where a smart skirmish ensued. From the superior force of the British, the Americans were compelled to retreat, not, however, without disputing the ground, and killing or wounding 120 of the enemy; among whom was Lieutenant Colonel Wellington. The Americans lost forty-five in killed and wounded. Sir George arrived in the course of the morning, with the main column, and encamped his whole army before Plattsburg.

The whole British force before Plattsburg.

Situation of the American army at Plattsburg.

The situation of General Macomb, who had succeeded General Izard in command, was critical in the extreme. His whole regular force did not exceed 2,000, and his fortifications were merely a show of defense. Had Sir George pursued Major Wool across the Saranac, on the morning of the 6th, he could have taken with ease, the works occupied by Macomb and his army, but he preferred to wait until the two fleets should have settled the supremacy of the lake.

Sept. 11. Plattsburg and the American army menaced by a force superior to their own.

On the morning of the 11th of September, Sir George formed his army in two columns, preparatory to an assault. One column passed the Saranac, and placed itself in the rear of the American position, while the other was in the village in front, ready to advance whenever the order might be given, or circumstances might justify. Such was the threatening position of the army, when the British fleet made its appearance in the bay of Plattsburg. It was commanded by Commodore Downie, and was composed of the Confiance, a frigate of thirty-nine guns, a brig of sixteen, two sloops of eleven, and several galleys, mounting, in the whole, ninety-five guns, and having 1,000 men. The American squadron, under Commodore Macdonough, which was anchored in the bay, mounted no more than eighty-six guns, and had only 820 men. It consisted of the Saratoga of twenty-six guns; the Eagle of twenty; the Ticonderoga of seventeen; the Preble, of seven, and ten galleys.

Macdonough's skill and bravery.

The enemy, having the advantage in choice of position, anchored within three hundred yards of the American line, and at 9 o'clock began the fight. The surface of the lake was unruffled, and for an hour and a half, the Saratoga and Confiance poured upon each other a destructive fire, while the smaller vessels commenced a close and spirited action. The Eagle then cut her cable, and passing between the Ticonderoga and Saratoga, increased the danger of the American commodore,

The British fleet defeated.

by leaving him exposed to a heavy fire from the enemy's brig. His guns were dismounted, or had become unmanageable; when, by the skillful manœuvre of waring his ship, which Commodore Downie vainly attempted, he brought a fresh broadside to bear upon the Confiance, which soon compelled her to surrender. The smaller vessels were of course obliged to follow her example, and the whole British fleet on the lake remained with the Americans, as trophies of their victory.

The British loss was eighty-four killed, and one hundred and ten wounded; among the former was Commodore Downie. The loss of the Americans was fifty-two killed and fifty-eight wounded.

1814. Sir George Provost retreats in great haste.

When the engagement between the fleets began, the British land army opened their batteries upon the American works; but they soon ceased; for the moment Sir George perceived that his fleet was captured, he recalled his columns from the contemplated assault, and, leaving behind him large quantities of ammunition and military stores, he retreated in great haste towards Canada. The column placed in the rear of the Americans, was pursued by General Strong, of Vermont, who commanded the volunteers. The soldiers of one of the retreating companies, were either killed, wounded, or captured.

CHAPTER XVI.

Bloody Sea-fight.—The Hartford Convention.

Commodore Porter with the Essex in the Pacific.

COMMODORE PORTER, who had sailed in the frigate Essex, had cruised in the Pacific ocean, and had greatly annoyed the enemy's commerce, having captured twelve armed whale ships, whose aggregate force amounted to 107 guns, and 302 men. One of these prizes was equipped, named the Essex Junior, and given in command to Lieutenant Downes, by whom it was employed to conduct the prizes, made by Porter, to the neutral port of Valparaiso.

Commodore Hillyar sent out to meet Porter.

To meet the Essex, the British admiralty had sent out Commodore Hillyar, with the Phebe frigate, carrying fifty-three guns and 320 men, accompanied by Captain Tucker, with the Cherub sloop of war, mounting twenty-eight guns, and having 180 men. The Essex carried forty-six guns and 250 men, and her consort twenty guns and sixty men.

Commodore Porter at the Sandwich Islands;

On learning the vicinity of his enemy, Commodore Porter steered for the island of Noaheevah, to refit. Of this island he took possession, in the name of the American government, calling it, in honor of the president, Madison's Island.

at Valparaiso.

Leaving three of his vessels under the charge of Lieutenant Gamble, he proceeded to Valparaiso, and there, as he ex-

pected met with Commodore Hillyar, who, for several months, had sought him. Finding, to his regret, that his adversary's force was greatly superior to his own, Porter remained blockaded at Valparaiso, for six weeks.

1814. March 28. Accident throws Porter in contact with the enemy.

Determining at length to attempt an escape, he set sail with a fair wind, but on rounding the point at the entrance of the harbor, a sudden squall carried away his maintopmast. Thus disabled, he anchored in a small bay near the shore, hoping that the neutrality of the place would protect him. But the British frigate pressed on. Porter met her assault so warmly, that in half an hour, the Phebe was obliged to retire and repair her damages. She however soon returned, and being able to choose her distance, she placed herself out of the shot of the guns of her antagonist, but where her own of a longer reach poured upon the Essex a destructive fire. As the American sailors fell at the guns, others stepped into their places, till in this way, one gun was manned the third time. Porter attempted to board, but his masts were shot away, and his ship was unmanageable. He next endeavored to run ashore, but the wind, shifting, blew him upon the raking fire of his enemy. The Essex now burst into flames, and before they could be extinguished, a quantity of gunpowder exploded. Still the Americans kept up the fight. At length the commodore thought of consulting his officers on the subject of surrender. Only one, Lieutentant M'Knight, remained. Porter then struck his colors; but the enemy's firing continued ten minutes afterwards. Seventy-five were all that remained of the crew of the Essex.

The battle of the Essex and Phebe.

Commodore Porter was sent on parole, in the Essex Junior, to the United States, where he was received at New York with distinguished honors. The desperate valor which he displayed in this, the most bloody naval action of the war, will give his memory to future ages, as a hero of the same class as Paul Jones.

Porter returns in the Essex, Jr.

On the 21st of April, the United States' sloop of war Frolic, commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, was captured by the Orpheus frigate. On the 29th of the same month, the United States' sloop, the Peacock, of which Captain Warrington was the commander, captured the British brig Epervier, commanded by Captain Wales.

Frolic captured by the British; Epervier by the Americans.

The Wasp, commanded by Captain Blakely, left Portsmouth, (N. H.) on the 18th of May. On the 28th of June, near the entrance to St. George's channel, she fell in with the English brig Reindeer, commanded by Captain Manners. After an action of nineteen minutes, the Reindeer lost her commander and purser, twenty-seven men killed and forty-two wounded, and having made two unsuccessful attempts to board the Wasp, she was herself boarded by the American vessel, and taken, but in a condition so shattered that she was burned.

May 18. The Wasp leaves Portsmouth. June 28. Encounters the Reindeer.

The Wasp continued her cruise, and after making several

PART IV. PERIOD II. CHAP. XVI.

1814. Aug. 31. She encounters the Avon. She probably founders at sea.

captures put into the port of l'Orient, in France, on the 8th of July. She remained there until the 27th of August, and when four days at sea, she met the brig Avon, commanded by Captain Arbuthnot. After a severe action of forty-five minutes, and after orders were given to board her, three British vessels appeared in sight, and Captain Blakely was compelled to abandon the contest. The Avon sunk soon after he left her. During the remainder of the cruise, Captain Blakely captured fifteen merchant vessels; but he never returned to port; nor is it known what was the fate of the vessel and her gallant crew.

Difficult situation of the American government.

In October, communications were received from the American commissioners in Europe, from which it appeared that Great Britain demanded such terms as extinguished the hopes of a speedy reconciliation. In the meantime the situation of affairs in the United States, was such as to alarm the friends of the country. The expenditure of the nation greatly exceeded its income, its credit was low, its finances disordered, and the opposition of the federal party to the administration was unremitted. Congress, however, shrunk not from the duties which the crisis imposed. New loans were authorized, taxes augmented, and vigorous preparations made for prosecuting the war. Mr. Monroe was appointed secretary of the war department, in the place of General Armstrong. The affair of Washington had injured the popularity of Armstrong, and much increased that of Monroe.

Legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island choose delegates.

The opposition had, at this time, assumed a bold attitude. Some of the New England states had not only refused to call out their militia, but Massachusetts even proposed to withhold the revenue of the state from the general government. A convention of delegates from the New England states was proposed, the object of which was, to take into consideration the situation of the country, and to decide upon such measures as might lead to a redress of supposed grievances. Members were appointed by the legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island, Two members from New Hampshire, and one from Vermont, were appointed at county meetings.

Dec. 15. Meeting of the convention at Hartford.

Their address and proposed amendments of the constitution.

The convention assembled at Hartford, in Connecticut, on the 15th of December, and sat nearly three weeks with closed doors. After their adjournment, they published an address, charging the national government with pursuing measures hostile to the interests of New England, and recommending amendments of the federal constitution. Among these amendments, it was proposed that congress should have no power to lay an embargo for more than sixty days, that they should not interdict commercial intercourse, or declare war, without the concurrence of two-thirds of both houses; that no person, who shall be hereafter naturalized, shall be eligible to a seat in the senate or house of representatives, or hold

any civil office under the government of the United States; and that the same person shall not be twice elected to the office of president of the United States, nor the president elected from the same state for two successive terms. A resolution was passed, which provided for the calling of another convention, if the United States "should refuse their consent to arrangements, whereby the New England states, separately, or in concert, might be empowered to assume upon themselves, the defense of their territory against the enemy, and appropriate therefor, such part of the revenue raised in those states as might be necessary." The committee appointed by the convention to communicate these resolves to the government proceeded to Washington; having met on the way, the news of peace. The proposed amendments of the constitution were submitted to the several states, and rejected by all, except Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. Probably there had been no measure taken since America was a nation, which subjected the agents to more severe personal, as well as political censure. But party heat having subsided, candid minds are now ready to allow, that their views were in a degree misunderstood, and their actions misrepresented.*

1814.
Public prejudice.

CHAPTER XVII.

British invasion and defeat at New Orleans.

After the peace with the Creeks, General Jackson had fixed his head-quarters at Mobile. Here he learned that three British ships had entered the harbor of Pensacola, and landed

Aug. 15.
Jackson at Mobile.

---

* The following is an extract from a letter of Harrison Gray Otis, Esq, one of the most distinguished citizens of Massachusetts, and regarded as the leading member of this convention, to the author of this work, who had requested him to give a brief view of the motives of those engaged in promoting the measure.

"The Hartford Convention, far from being the original contrivance of a cabal, for any purpose of faction or disunion, was a result, growing by natural consequences out of existing circumstances. More than a year previous to its institution, a convention was simultaneously called for by the people, in their town meetings, in all parts of Massachusetts. Petitions to that effect were accumulated on the tables of the legislative chamber. They were postponed for twelve months, by the influence of those who now sustain the odium of the measure. The adoption of it was the consequence, not the source of a popular sentiment; and it was intended, by those who voted for it, as a safety-valve by which the steam arising from the fermentation of the times might escape, not as a boiler in which it should be generated. Whether good or ill, it was a measure of the people, of states, of legislatures. How unjust to brand the unwilling agents, the mere committee of legislative bodies, with the stigma of facts which were first authorized, and then sanctioned by their constituted assemblies!"

In addition to the remarks of Mr. Otis, the fact may be mentioned, that in some parts of New England, the people of the federal party were so much excited, that they had a military organization. What were its definite objects, or how far it extended, is unknown.

PART IV. PERIOD II. CHAP. XVII.

1814.

Colonel Nicholls at Pensacola.

about 300 men, under Colonel Nicholls, together with a large quantity of guns and ammunition, to arm the Indians. He also learned that the British meditated a descent, with a large force, upon the southern shores of the United States. He immediately made a call for the militia of Tennessee, and was promptly furnished with two thousand men by that patriotic state.

Colonel Nicholls' proclamation.

Colonel Nicholls issued a proclamation, which was addressed to the inhabitants of Louisiana, Kentucky, or Tennessee, inviting them to return to their allegiance to the British government, and help to restore the country to its rightful owner. This proclamation produced no excitement among the people, except upon their risibles. If this attempt manifested Nicholls to be weak and ignorant, another showed him to be wicked.

The Barratarians.

West of the mouth of the Mississippi, the island of Barrataria was the resort of a band of marauders, who, by their daring courage, the celerity and mysterious secrecy of their movements, kept the country in a state of perpetual alarm; now appearing, to strike some unexpected blow of robbery, perhaps of murder, sometimes by sea, sometimes by land; then suddenly disappearing,—and constantly eluding pursuit. Their numbers were formidable, amounting to five or six hundred. Their leader, La Fitte, was subtle and courageous, and though unprincipled, yet possessing traits of magnanimity. They had made pretence of sailing under the Carthagenian flag, as privateers, but their prizes were condemned in their own ports. In short, they were by land, robbers; by sea, pirates. The American authorities, by whom they were outlawed, having endeavored to root them out, applied to the British to lend their assistance. Instead of this, Nicholls, disclosing to La Fitte that a powerful attempt was to be made on New Orleans, offered him a large reward, if, by his knowledge of the passes, he would aid the British in their approach to the threatened city.

La Fitte receives disclosures from Nicholls.

He informs governor Claiborne, and is pardoned.

La Fitte drew from him important facts, and then, dismissing his propositions with disdain, disclosed the whole to Claiborne, governor of Louisiana. Struck with this act of the bandit's generosity for a country which had set a price upon his head, and perceiving how valuable would be the services of the Barratarians in the crisis which was approaching, Governor Claiborne, by a proclamation, offered pardon to the whole band, if they would come forward in defense of the country, They joyfully accepted the proposition, and afterwards rendered essential services.

Oct. 30. Jackson leaves Mobile, and,

General Jackson had represented to the government, that the Spanish had violated their neutrality by suffering the British to use the port of Pensacola for annoying the Americans, and he therefore urged the propriety of taking it into possession during the war. Not having received an answer, he de-

termined to hazard the responsibility of the measure. Accordingly, he marched from Mobile, at the head of nearly two thousand men, and arrived in the neighborhood of Pensacola on the 6th of November. He sent a flag to the governor, for the purpose of conference, but his messenger was fired upon. On the seventh, he entered the town, carrying at the point of the bayonet a battery which had been placed in the street to oppose him. The governor then capitulated. The British troops destroyed the forts at the entrance of the harbor, and with their shipping evacuated the bay.

1814. Nov. 7. reaches Pensacola, which he takes.

Jackson was there informed that Admiral Cochrane had been reinforced at Bermuda, and that thirteen ships of the line, with transports and an army of ten thousand men, were advancing. Believing New Orleans to be their destination, he marched for that place, and reached it on the 1st of December.

Dec. 1. Jackson reaches New Orleans.

Early in the month of September, the inhabitants of Louisiana believed that the British were about to invade them with a powerful force. Their principal citizens, among whom were Governor Claiborne and Edward Livingston, beheld the prospect with well-grounded alarm. This part of the union having been but recently annexed, its yeomanry might not feel the same pride of country as those of older states; and New Orleans being assailable from so many points, it was difficult to secure it in all. Yet, far from being discouraged by difficulties, the exigency proved only a stimulant to greater exertions. Governor Claiborne immediately issued his proclamation, calling on the people to arm for the defense of their country and their homes. Mr. Livingston, at a meeting of the citizens, who convened on the 16th of September, to devise measures in co-operation with the government of the state, made an eloquent and moving appeal, calling on the inhabitants to prove the assertion a slander, that they were not attached to the American government. The people aroused; defenses were begun, to guard the principal passes, and volunteer corps organized. In the meantime, General Jackson arrived, and the citizens believing that he would preserve them in safety, or lead them to victory, were content to put all their strength, pecuniary and physical, at his disposal. Confident in his own energies, he took, with a firm and unwavering step, the perilous post assigned him.

New Orleans threatened with invasion.

Sept. 16. Mr. Livingston's address.

The people called on.

Jackson arrives, and is invested with dictatorial powers.

At length it was ascertained that the enemy, with sixty sail, were off Ship Island. Jackson forgot no measure to increase his military force, or make it more effective; or to put at his disposal more laboring hands, in the building of defenses. The motley population of New Orleans, the slaves, the free people of color, Frenchmen, Spaniards, and Americans, all were employed.

The British are off Ship Island.

The enemy had passed into lake Borgne. A naval force, consisting of several small vessels, under Lieutenant Jones,

They pass into Lake Borgne.

1814. American flotilla, Dec. 13.

met them at one of the straits which connect that lake with Ponchartrain. The British, being provided with a great number of boats, sent forty-three, with twelve hundred men, against the American flotilla, which was manned with only one hundred and eighty men. After a spirited defense in which Lieutenant Jones killed a considerable number of the enemy and took several of their barges, he was compelled by their superior force to surrender. The loss of this flotilla, which had been supposed adequate to defend the passes, increased the danger which threatened New Orleans.

The extremity of danger in New Orleans authorizes Jackson to proclaim martial law.

Having reason to believe that there were persons in the city, who carried intelligence to the enemy, an embargo was laid for three days. That not an idle hand might be found, the prisons were disgorged, on condition that the prisoners should labor in the ranks, where already La Fitte and the Barratarians were employed. To keep in order and direct the energies of such a mass, General Jackson judged that the strong arm of military control could alone be effectual. The danger of the time was extreme. A few days must decide the fate of the city. The general therefore took the daring responsibility of proclaiming martial law.

Dec. 22. The British land below New Orleans, where they repulse the Americans.

On the morning of the 22d of December, three thousand British troops, under General Kean, landed at the head of lake Borgne, and at two o'clock, after making prisoners of a small advanced party of Americans, they posted themselves on the Mississippi, about nine miles below New Orleans. Apprehending that the fleet would pass the strait from Borgne to Ponchartrain, and that thus they would make a double attack, Jackson posted a part of his force, under General Carroll, so as to intercept their approach in that direction.

The Americans fortify themselves nearer the city.

At five on the afternoon of the 23d, General Jackson, accompanied by General Coffee, having the co-operation of the Caroline, an armed vessel, attacked the enemy in their position on the bank of the river. The charge of the Americans was bravely made, but the British troops maintained their position. A thick fog coming on, General Jackson deemed it prudent to draw off his army. Having rested on the field, he withdrew on the morning of the 24th, to a stronger position, two miles nearer the city. The loss of the Americans was about one hundred in killed, wounded, and missing; that of the British, two hundred and twenty-four killed, besides a large number of wounded.

Jackson's fortifications on the left bank.

In the discretion with which General Jackson now took his post, and the diligence, care, and activity with which he fortified it, consists much of the merit of his defense of New Orleans. His camp occupied both banks of the Mississippi. On the left bank was a parapet of a thousand yards in length in the construction of which bags of cotton were used, with a ditch in front, containing five feet of water. The right wing of the division here posted, rested on the river, and

the left, on a wood which nature and art had rendered impervious.

Right bank.

On the right bank of the river, a heavy battery enfiladed the whole front of the position on the left. The entire army were vigorously occupied in strengthening these lines.

1814. Caroline destroyed.

In the meantime, the British, who had been greatly annoyed by the fire of the Caroline, constructed a battery, which, by means of hot shot set fire to the vessel, and blew her up; she having been one hour before abandoned by her crew.

Dec. 28. British attempt to force the Americans from their position, and are repulsed.

On the 25th, Sir Edward Packenham, the commander-in-chief of the British force, accompanied by Major General Gibbs, arrived at the British encampment with the main army, and a large body of artillery. On the 28th, Sir Edward advanced with his army and artillery, intending to force Jackson from his position. At the distance of half a mile from the American camp, he opened upon their yet unfinished works a heavy cannonade. This was met on the part of the Americans, by the broadsides of the Louisiana, then lying in the river, and by the fire of their batteries. After maintaining the contest for seven hours, the British commander retired with the loss of one hundred and twenty men. The loss of the Americans was inconsiderable, being only six killed and twelve wounded.

While engaged in the conflict of the 28th, General Jackson was informed that plans for entering into negotiations with the enemy, were forming in the legislature of Louisiana, which was then in session. In the moment of irritation, he sent an order to Governor Claiborne, to watch their conduct, and if such a project was disclosed, to place a military guard at the door, and confine them to their chamber. Governor Claiborne misconstrued the order, and placed a guard which prevented their assembling.

1815. Jan. 1. British again repulsed.

On the morning of the first of January, the enemy having constructed batteries near the American lines, opened a heavy fire upon them, and at the same time made an attempt to turn their left flank. They were repulsed, and in the evening abandoned their position. The loss of the Americans was 30 in killed and wounded. The British had 120 men killed.

On the 4th of January, General Jackson received a re-inforcement of twenty-five hundred Kentucky militia, under General Adair. On the 6th, the British army was augmented by four thousand troops, under General Lambert. Their army amounted, at this time, to fourteen thousand, while that of General Jackson did not exceed six thousand.

On the 7th, the British commanders were vigorously preparing to attack. With immense labour they had widened and deepened the canal from lake Borgne to the Mississippi, so that on the night of the seventh, they succeeded in getting their boats through this passage from the lake to the river.

Jan. 8.

Early on the morning of the 8th, the American army was as-

sailed by a shower of bullets and congreve rockets. The British army, under generals Gibbs and Kean, the whole commanded by Sir Edward Packenham, had marched in two divisions, to storm the American entrenchments. The batteries of General Jackson opened a brisk fire upon them, but the British soldiers advanced slowly, though firmly, carrying fascines and scaling ladders. The keen and practiced eyes of the western marksmen were, as they advanced, selecting their victims. When the enemy were within reach of their rifles, the advanced line fired, and each brought down his man. Those behind handed a second loaded rifle as soon as the first was discharged. The plain was soon strewed with the dead, and the brave foe faltered, and retreated in confusion. Sir Edward appeared among his men, encouraging them to renew the assault, when two balls struck him, and he fell mortally wounded. A second time the British columns advanced, and a second time retreated before the deadly fire of the Americans. Again their thinned ranks were closed, and they moved forward with desperate resolution. Generals Kean and Gibbs were now both wounded, and carried from the field, and their troops fell back. At this time, General Lambert, who commanded the reserve, attempted to bring them up, but the day was irretrievably lost. The retreating columns had fallen back in disorder upon the reserve, and all his attempts to rally them were in vain.

1815. Jan. 8. Battle of New Orleans, and defeat of the British.

The British had also attacked the opposite bank of the river, and there they were successful; but after their defeat on the right, they abandoned the position. The disparity of loss on this occasion is utterly astonishing. While that of the enemy was twenty-six hundred, that of the Americans was but seven killed and six wounded. Completely disheartened, the British abandoned the expedition on the night of the 18th, leaving behind, their wounded and artillery.

Jan. 18. British abandon the expedition and retire.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Peace with England.—Naval combats.—War with Algiers.

Feb. 18. Fort Bowyer surrenders.

On the 18th of February, Fort Bowyer, commanded by Major Lawrence, with a garrison amounting to three hundred and seventy, was invested by a British force, six thousand strong; and on the 11th of March, Lawrence surrendered his garrison as prisoners of war.

Feb. 17. Peace proclaimed.

On the 17th of February, while the Americans were yet rejoicing for the victory at New Orleans, a special messenger arrived from Europe, bringing a treaty of peace, which the commissioners had concluded in the month of December, at

Ghent. This treaty, which was immediately ratified by the president and senate, stipulated that all places taken during the war should be restored, and the boundaries between the American and British dominions revised. Yet it contained no express provision against those maritime outrages on the part of Great Britain, which were the chief causes of the war. But as the orders in council had been repealed, and the motives for the impressment of seamen had ceased with the wars in Europe, these causes no longer existed in fact; although America had failed, as Europe, combined under the name of the armed neutrality, had formerly done, to compel England to the formal relinquishment of the principles on which she founds her arrogant claims.

The warlike ships of the two nations were many of them at sea when the treaty of peace was promulgated, and some fighting occurred about the time and soon after.

1815. Jan. 15. President strikes to the Endymion.

On the 15th of January, the frigate President, Commodore Decatur, attempted to put out to sea from New York, although the harbor was blockaded by four British frigates. He was discovered, chased, and brought to an engagement. He lost one-fifth of his crew, killed or wounded, and finally surrendered.

Cyane, Levant, and Penguin captured.

On the 20th of February, the Constitution, then under the command of Captain Stewart, off the island of Madeira, captured the Cyane and Levant; and on the 23d of March, off the coast of Brazil, the sloop Hornet, Captain Biddle captured the British brig Penguin.

April 6. Massacre at Dartmoor.

On the 6th of April, a barbarous massacre was committed by the garrison at Dartmoor prison, in England, upon the Americans who were there confined. The attack was made upon these defenseless men, without any provocation; and the lives of sixty-three most wantonly and inhumanly sacrificed. The British government were not, however, implicated in the transaction.

War with Algiers.

Soon after the ratification of peace with Great Britain, the United States declared war against Algiers. The Algerine government had violated the treaty of 1795, and committed depredations upon the commerce of the United States. These outrages were not chastised at the time, on account of the war with Great Britain.

May. Decatur sails. June. Captures Algerine vessels.

Two squadrons were fitted out, under Commodores Decatur and Bainbridge. The former sailed from New York in May, and proceeding up the Mediterranean, captured, on the 17th of June, an Algerine frigate; and on the 19th, off Cape Palos, an Algerine brig, carrying twenty-two guns.

At Algiers dictates a peace.

From Palos he sailed for Algiers. The Dey, intimidated, signed a treaty of peace, which was highly honorable and advantageous to the Americans.

Decatur visits Tunis and Tripoli.

Decatur then proceeded to Tunis and Tripoli, where he obtained satisfaction for the unprovoked aggressions in viola-

tion of the treaties subsisting between those governments and the United States. On his arrival at Gibraltar, he joined the squadron under Commodore Bainbridge, to whom he resigned the command.

1815.
The Barbary States humiliated.

Bainbridge made a formidable appearance before Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, but seeing no disposition to violate the treaties, he returned to the United States. In this war, the United States set the powers of Europe a worthy example in chastising and humbling a lawless band of pirates, who had exacted and received tribute from all christian nations. Expressions of submission were obtained from these powers by the United States, such as had never been obtained by any other nation.

Treaties with the Indians.

With a view to the tranquillity of the western and northwestern frontiers, measures were taken to obtain a peace with several tribes of Indians who had been hostile to the United States. Some of their chiefs met at Detroit, on the 6th of September, and readily acceded to a renewal of the former treaties of friendship.

At the close of the war, the regular army of the United States was reduced to 10,000 men. For the better protection of the country in case of another war, congress appropriated a large sum for fortifying the sea-coast and inland frontiers, and for the increase of the navy.

1816.
National bank.

In April, 1816, an act was passed by congress, to establish a national bank, with a capital of thirty-five millions of dollars.

Fort Apalachicola destroyed.

In August, Fort Apalachicola, which was occupied by runaway negroes and hostile Indians, was destroyed by a detachment of American troops. More than one hundred were killed, and the remainder were taken prisoners.

Treaty with the Chickasaws, &c.

In September, General Jackson held a treaty with the Chickasaws, Choctaws, and Cherokees. He made purchases of their lands particularly favorable to the wishes and security of the frontier settlements. Tranquillity was restored among the Indians, and civilization, seemed again making progress.

Indiana admitted.

In December, the Indiana territory was admitted into the Union as a state.

Progress of manufactories for cotton cloth.

As early as the year 1790, establishments for spinning cotton, and for manufacturing coarse cotton cloths, were attempted in the state of Rhode Island. They were at first on a small scale; but as the cloths found a ready market, their number and extent gradually increased. The embarrassments to which commerce was subjected previous to the war, had increased the demand for American goods, and led the people to reflect upon the importance of rendering themselves independent of the manufactures of foreign nations. During the war, large capitals were vested in manufacturing establishments, from which the capitalists realized a handsome profit. But at its close, the English having made great improvements in labor-saving machines, and being able to sell their goods at

a much lower rate than the American manufacturers could afford, the country was immediately filled by importations from England. The American manufactures being in their infancy, could not stand the shock, and many failed.

The manufacturers then petitioned government for protection, to enable them to withstand the competition; and in consequence of this petition, the committee on commerce and manufactures, in 1816, recommended that an additional duty should be laid on imported goods. A new tariff was accordingly formed, by which the double imposts which had been laid during the war, were removed, and a small increase of duty was laid upon some fabrics, such as coarse cotton goods. The opposition to the tariff, from the commercial interest, and in some sections of the country, from the agricultural, was so great that nothing effectual was at that time done for the encouragement of manufactures, but the question of its expediency was regarded as of the first importance.

1816. Manufactures encouraged by a new tariff.

A society for colonizing the free blacks of the United States, was first proposed in 1816, and was soon after formed. It was not under the direction of government, but was patronized by many of the first citizens in all parts of the Union. The society purchased land in Africa where they yearly removed considerable numbers of the free blacks from America. Their object was, by removing the free negroes, to diminish the black population of the United States; and by establishing a colony in Africa, to prevent the traffic in slaves which then existed, and to afford facilities to the inland Africans to advance in civilization.

Colonization society formed.

Mr. Madison's second term of office having expired, he followed the example of his predecessors, and declined a reelection. James Monroe was elected president, and Daniel D. Tompkins, vice-president. On the 4th of March, 1817, they entered upon their official duties. During the summer of this year, Mr. Monroe visited all the northern and eastern states, and was received with every demonstration of affection and respect.

Mr. Monroe inaugurated.

A treaty was, this year, concluded by commissioners appointed by the president of the United States, with the chiefs of the Wyandot, Delaware, Shawanese, Seneca, Ottowas, Chippewa, and Pottowattamie Indians. Each of these tribes ceded to the United States, all lands to which they had any title within the limits of Ohio. The Indians were, at their option, to remain on the ceded lands, subject to the laws of the state and country.

Indians cede their lands in Ohio to the United States.

The territory of Mississippi was, this year, admitted into the Union.

About this period, a band of adventurers, who pretended to act under the authority of the South American states, took possession of Amelia island, near the boundary of Georgia, with the avowed design of invading Florida. This island

Amelia Island a rendezvous for illegal traffic.

having been the subject of negotiation with the government of Spain, as an indemnity for losses by spoliations, or in exchange for lands of equal value beyond the Mississippi, the measure excited a sentiment of surprise and disapprobation, which was increased, when it was found that the island was made a channel for the illicit introduction of slaves from Africa into the Republic, an asylum for fugitive slaves from the neighboring states, and a port for smuggling of every kind.

1817. Also, an island of Texas.

An island upon the coast of Texas was also a rendezvous for smugglers, and for equipping vessels, which gave great annoyance to the commerce of the United States. These marauders were found, however, to be merely private adventurers, unauthorized by any government; and the United States sent out a force, which took possession of the islands, and put a stop to their illicit trade.

The government reduce them.

CHAPTER XIX.

Internal Improvements.—Seminole War.

The political feuds which had, since the revolution, occasioned so much animosity, were now gradually subsiding; and it was an object with the administration, to remove old party prejudices, and promote union among the people.

Internal improvements.

A spirit of improvement was also spreading over the country; roads and canals were constructed in almost all parts of the Union; and the facilities for travelling and conveying merchandise and produce, were continually increasing. These improvements were, however, made by the state governments; among which, the wealthy state of New York, at whose head was the illustrious De Witt Clinton, took the lead. The great western canal, connecting Lake Erie with the waters of the Hudson; and the northern canal, bringing to the same river the waters of Lake Champlain, were brought to full completion.

De Witt Clinton.

The great canals of New York.

Congress caught the spirit of the times, and manifested a desire to employ the resources of the nation for these objects; and though no doubt arose as to the expediency of such a course, yet the power of that body for carrying on such a system of internal improvement, was questioned and debated. It was the opinion of President Monroe, that the general government had not this power, and could not obtain it, except by an amendment of the constitution. After much debate, congress adopted the president's opinion.

Question of internal improvements.

Congress had, however, caused the great Cumberland road to be made, connecting, through the seat of government, the

eastern with the western states, and passing over some of the highest mountains in the Union. But this undertaking was not decisive of the great question respecting the right of congress; as it was made under peculiar circumstances. An article of compact between the United States and the state of Ohio, under which that state came into the Union, provided that such a road should be made; the expense being defrayed by money arising from the sale of public lands within that state. As the road passed through Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Virginia, it was thought necessary to obtain the sanction of those several states. Accordingly, the subject was brought before their legislatures, and an act passed, approving the route, and providing for the purchase of the land.

1816. The Cumberland road a special case.

Military roads had been opened during the late war, but it was by order of the war department. One of these extended from Plattsburg to Sackett's Harbor; another from Detroit to the foot of the Maumee rapids. The extra pay to the soldiers, engaged in these works, was provided for by congress, in a specific appropriation.

Military roads.

In the first year of Mr. Monroe's administration, an arrangement was concluded with the British government, for the reduction of the naval force of Great Britain and the United States, on the lakes; and it was provided, that neither party should keep in service on Lake Ontario or Champlain, more than one armed vessel, and on Lake Erie, or any of the upper lakes, more than two, to be armed with one gun only.

Naval force on the lakes reduced.

For the security of the inland frontiers, military posts were established, at the mouth of the St. Peter's, on the Mississippi, and at the mouth of the Yellow Stone river, on the Missouri, above eighteen hundred miles above its junction with the Mississippi.

Military posts in the far west.

During the year 1817, the United States became engaged in a war with the Seminole Indians, a confederacy, who occupied the lands lying on the confines of the United States and Florida; the greater part, however, lying within the dominions of the king of Spain. Outlaws from the Creek nation, and negroes, who had fled from their masters in the United States, had united with these Indians; and massacres had become so frequent, that the inhabitants were obliged to flee from their homes for security.

1817. The commencement of the Seminole war.

The hostile spirit of the Indians was further incited by an Indian prophet, and by Arbuthnot and Ambrister, two English emissaries, who had taken up their residence among them, for the purposes of trade.

Arbuthnot and Ambrister.

In December, 1817, a detachment of forty men, under the command of Lieutenant Scott, was sent to the mouth of the river Apalachicola, to assist in removing some military stores to Fort Scott. The party in returning, were fired upon by a body of Indians, who lay in ambush, and the lieutenant and all his party, except six, were killed. The offenders were

December. Lieutenant Scott and thirty-four men killed by the Seminoles.

demanded by General Gaines, the commanding officer on that frontier, but the chiefs refused to give them up.

1817. General Jackson makes a short campaign.

General Jackson, with a body of Tennesseeans, was ordered to the spot. He soon defeated and dispersed them. Persuaded that the Spaniards furnished the Indians with supplies, and were active in fomenting disturbances, he entered Florida, took possession of forts, St. Marks, and Pensacola, and made prisoners of Arbuthnot, Ambrister, and the prophet.

Trial of Arbuthnot and Ambrister.

A court-martial was called for the trial of Arbuthnot and Ambrister, at which General Gaines presided. Arbuthnot was tried on the following charges:—"for exciting and stirring up the Creek Indians to war against the United States and her citizens, he being a subject of Great Britain, with whom the United States are at peace." Second, "for acting as a spy, aiding, abetting, and comforting the enemy, and supplying them with the means of war." He was found guilty of these charges, omitting the words, "acting as a spy," and sentenced to be hung. Ambrister was tried on similar charges, and sentenced to be shot. Both were executed.

They are condemned and executed.

1818. Illinois.

Congress passed a bill to admit Illinois territory into the Union.

Treaties with Great Britain and Sweden.

Treaties of commerce were, this year, concluded with Great Britain and Sweden. In the treaty with the former, the northern boundary of the United States, from the Lake of the Woods to the Stony Mountains, was fixed.

Congress passed a law, abolishing internal duties.

Indigent officers and soldiers of the revolution provided for.

The indigent officers and soldiers of the revolution, had already been partially provided for. A more ample provision was now made, by which every officer, who had served nine months at any period of the revolutionary war, and whose annual income did not exceed one hundred dollars, received a pension of twenty dollars a month; and every needy private soldier who had served that length of time, received eight.

The Chickasaws cede their lands to the United States.

This year the Chickasaws ceded to the government of the United States, all their lands, west of the Tennessee river, in the states of Kentucky and Tennessee.

The condition of those tribes living within the territories of the United States, now attracted the attention of the government, and a humane policy dictated its measures. The sum of 10,000 dollars annually, was appropriated for the purpose of establishing schools among them, and to promote, in other ways, their civilization. By means of the missionary societies, already established in the United States, missionaries were supported among the Indians, and success, in many instances, crowned their efforts.

1819. Alabama.

Alabama territory was this year admitted into the union of the states, and the territory of Arkansaw separated from Missouri territory.

1818. De Witt Clinton recommends to the legislature of

In December, 1818, De Witt Clinton, then governor of New York, recommended in his message to the legislature of that state, some special attention to the education of females. His

recommendation was based upon the principle long acknowledged, that, as mothers, the female sex have great influence, in forming the minds and characters of all individuals composing the community at large; and it was apparent that no good reason could be shown, why they, being endued with the high attributes of mind in common with the other sex, should be denied the enjoyment and added means of usefulness, attendant on mental cultivation.

1818. New York attention to female education.

The legislature passed an act, which is probably the first law existing which makes public provision for the education of women. It provides that academies, for their instruction in the higher branches of learning, shall be privileged to receive a share of the literature fund.

1819. February. The legislature pass an act accordingly.

Since that time, several of the states, especially among those recently admitted, have made provision for the same object. Religious denominations and wealthy parents of daughters, have also favored it; and throughout the country, female schools have sprung up. Large and handsome edifices are erected; and adequate teachers, libraries and apparatus, are provided for the use of the students. The consequences of this change are becoming manifest, in the increasing number of competent female teachers, and in other respects.

Feb. 23. Correspondence between John Adams and Don Onis.

On the 23d of February, 1819, a treaty was negotiated at Washington, between John Quincy Adams, secretary of state, and Don Onis, the Spanish minister, by which Spain ceded to the United States, East and West Florida, and the adjacent islands. The government of the United States agreed to exonerate Spain from the demands which their citizens had against that nation, on account of injuries and spoliations; and it was stipulated that congress should satisfy these claims, to an amount not exceeding five millions of dollars. The contracting parties renounced all claims to indemnities for any of the recent acts of their respective officers in Florida. This treaty was ratified by the president and senate of the United States, and sent to Spain, but the king very unexpectedly refused to sanction it.

Treaty with Spain rejected by the king.

Don Onis was recalled, and Don Vives sent out. Instead of coming directly over, he went to Paris and London, to ascertain whether, in case of a war between Spain and the United States, the former party would be aided and abetted. But American valor stood high in Europe since the close of the last war, and Don Vives obtained no encouragement for Spain to quarrel with the republic. He, however, on his arrival at Washington, undertook to open a diplomatic campaign, but was soon put to silence by Mr. Adams; the American secretary steadily demanding the ratification of the engagement already entered into by an authorized agent of Spain. Florida had ceased to be of any political value to that nation, and the just claim of the citizens of the United States, she knew not how else to cancel.

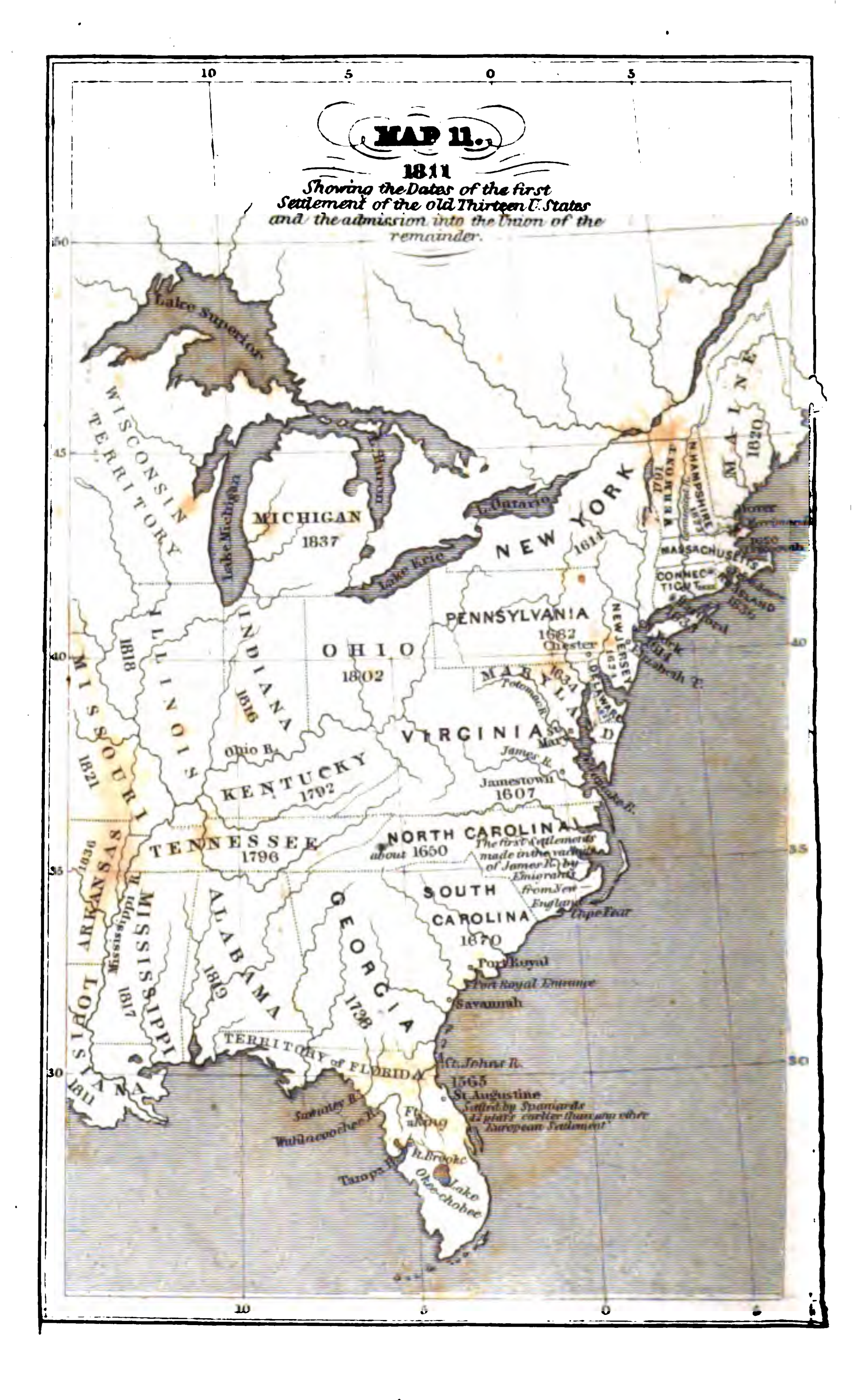
Mission of Don Vives.

1820.
Treaty ratified and Florida attained.

The treaty was therefore ratified by the Spanish government in October, 1820, and possession of the Floridas given the following year.

Although the addition of this peninsula, which completes the ocean boundary of the United States, made no great sensation, and seemed little to affect the politics of the country, yet the event was important, and fraught with consequences. The historian of the American Republic must now look back, and give the history of Florida as a part of his plan, and looking forward from its cession, we already find a bloody war following this increase of territory.





MAP 11.
1811
Showing the Dates of the first Settlement of the old Thirteen U. States and the admission into the Union of the remainder.
Lake Superior
WISCONSIN TERRITORY
Lake Michigan
MICHIGAN
1837
L. Huron
L. Ontario
Lake Erie
NEW YORK
1614
MAINE
1820
N. HAMPSHIRE
VERMONT
1791
MASSACHUSETTS
CONNECTICUT
PENNSYLVANIA
1682
Chester
NEW JERSEY
DELAWARE
MARYLAND
1634
Potomac R.
OHIO
1802
INDIANA
1816
ILLINOIS
1818
MISSOURI
1821
Ohio R.
KENTUCKY
1792
VIRGINIA
James R.
Jamestown
1607
NORTH CAROLINA
about 1650
TENNESSEE
1796
ARKANSAS
1836
MISSISSIPPI
1817
Mississippi R.
ALABAMA
1819
GEORGIA
1733
SOUTH CAROLINA
1670
Port Royal
Savannah
Cape Fear
LOUISIANA
1811
TERRITORY of FLORIDA
St. Johns R.
1565
St Augustine
Settled by Spaniards
R. Brooke
Tampa B.
Lake Okee-chobee
10
5
0

PERIOD III.

FROM
THE CESSION { 1820 } OF FLORIDA.
TO
THE DEATH { 1841. } OF HARRISON.

CHAPTER I.

The Missouri question.

1820.

A PETITION was presented to congress this year, from the territory of Missouri, praying for authority to form a state government, and to be admitted into the Union. A bill was accordingly introduced for that purpose, which with an amendment, prohibiting slavery within the new state, passed the house of representatives, but was arrested in the senate.

Maine petitions to be admitted.

The district of Maine also presented a memorial to congress, praying to be separated from Massachusetts, to be authorized to form its own constitution, and to be admitted into the Union, on an equal footing with the other states. The two bills for the admission of Maine and Missouri were joined, but not without much opposition from the advocates of the restriction in the Missouri bill. Upon this subject, the members of congress were divided into two parties; those from the non-slaveholding states were in favor of the restriction, while those from the south warmly opposed it. Much debate took place, and at no time had the parties in the congress of the United States been so marked by a geographical division, or so much actuated by feelings dangerous to the union of the states. Nor was the seat of government the only place where this subject was discussed; but in all parts of the country it attracted the attention of the people. Many of the northern states called meetings, and published spirited resolutions, expressive of their fears of perpetuating slavery.

Heated and dangerous debate.

The members from the south opposed the restriction, partly on the ground of self-defense. They did not consider that the unqualified admission of Missouri, would tend, in any degree, to perpetuate slavery. It would not, they contended, be the means of increasing the number of slaves within the states, but of removing some of those that already existed, from one state to another. They maintained, that it would be a dangerous and despotic measure of the general government, and one that would infringe upon the sovereignties of the states; that such a condition was inconsistent with the treaty by which the territory was ceded to the United States; and,

Plea of those friendly to the restriction.

finally, they insinuated the danger of a dissolution of the Union, if the friends of the measure persisted.

1820. Reply of its opponents.

On the other hand it was maintained that the constitution gave to congress the right of admitting states with or without restrictions, and that no state had ever yet been admitted without any. In proof of this it was urged, that when North Carolina ceded to the United States that part of her territory which now includes the state of Tennessee, she made the grant upon the express condition that congress should make no regulation tending to the emancipation of slaves. When Georgia ceded the Mississippi territory, the articles of agreement which provided for its admission as a state, on the conditions of the ordinance of 1787, expressly excepted that article which forbids slavery. It was also maintained that to strike out the restriction from this bill, would inevitably tend to perpetuate slavery, and to entail this greatest of evils upon the new state, besides increasing to the Union the mischiefs arising from unequal representation. After much discussion, a compromise was agreed on, and a bill passed for the admission of Missouri without any restriction, but with the inhibition of slavery throughout the territories of the United States, north of 36° 30′ north latitude. Thus was the most dangerous question ever agitated in congress, at length disposed of by friendly compromise.

Missouri admitted without restriction. 36½° the limit of slavery.

Maine becomes a separate state.

The long connection of Maine with Massachusetts was now dissolved by its final admission as one of the states of the Federal Union.

1821. The Missouri question again agitated.

Missouri was not declared independent until August, 1821. Previously to the passage of the bill for its admission, the people had formed a state constitution; a provision of which required the legislature to pass a law "to prevent free negroes and mulattoes from coming to, and settling in the state." When the constitution was presented to congress, this provision was strenuously opposed. The contest occupied a great part of the session, but Missouri was finally admitted, on the condition that no laws should be passed, by which any free citizens of the United States should be prevented from enjoying those rights within that state, to which they were entitled by the constitution of the United States.

Missouri admitted.

Mr. Monroe re-elected.

This year, Mr. Monroe entered upon his second term of office, having been re-elected to the presidency by nearly a unanimous vote. Mr. Tompkins was also continued in the vice-presidency.

The census.

By the fourth census the number of inhabitants in 1820 was found to be 9,625,734, of whom 1,531,436 were slaves.

Jackson governor of Florida. Aug 22.

On the 7th of March, president Monroe appointed General Jackson governor of Florida, and Elijeus Fromentin, chief-justice. But it was not until the 22d of August that the reluctant Spanish officers yielded up their posts. They showed a disposition to embarrass the operations of the

new authorities by refusing to give up all the archives, according to the treaty. Don Cavalla, the Spanish governor, withheld four documents relating to the rights of property. Governor Jackson, after a specific demand, sent an armed force to take the papers, and bring Cavalla himself before him. He refusing; Jackson sent a second time, had him taken from his bed, and carried to prison, and the papers seized. Cavalla applied to Judge Fromentin, who granted a writ of habeas corpus for his relief. Jackson did not suffer it to be executed until his own purpose of securing all the missing papers was effected; when he discharged Cavalla. This affair caused much controversy.

1821. Spanish officers under take to embarrass him. He proceeds with Cavalla in his usual summary manner.

Seven of the Spanish officers, published in "The Floridian," a newspaper issued from Pensacola, severe strictures on the new government. Jackson issued a proclamation which banished them from the territory after five days.

Banishes seven Spanish officers.

Florida was now for the purposes of government divided into two counties, one east of the Suwaney river, called St. John's, and one west, called Escambia.

Florida divided into two counties.

At the next session of congress an act was passed, providing that Florida should be governed in the same manner, and by the same laws as the other territories. General Jackson's powers which he had used so liberally, and which he declared, in defending his bold measures, were unconstitutionally great, terminated according to the terms of his commission, at the rising of congress; and he declined a re-appointment.

In June, a convention of navigation and commerce, on terms of reciprocal and equal advantage, was concluded between France and the United States.

1822. Treaty with France.

The ports of the West India Islands were about this time opened to the American republic, by act of the British parliament.

The American commerce, in the West Indian seas, had, for several years, suffered severely from depredations committed by pirates. The Alligator, a United States' schooner, having received information of their vicinity to Matanzas, sought and engaged the pirates, and recaptured five American vessels. She also took one piratical schooner; but Allen, the brave commander of the Alligator, was mortally wounded in the engagement.

Alarming increase of piracy.

Allen's brave enterprise and death.

The pirates continued their lawless aggressions, and congress the next year appropriated a sum of money to fit out an expedition to suppress piracy. Commodore Porter, to whom was given the command, sailed for the West Indies, and cruising with his squadron in the Caribbean seas, the freebooters dared not appear, but depredated on the inhabitants of the West India Islands.

1823. Commodore Porter sent against the pirates.

In the message of President Monroe to congress, he invited their attention to the question of recognizing the indepen-

1823. The independence of the South American republics acknowledged. Ministers sent to Mexico, Buenos Ayres, and Chili.

dence of the South American republics. He stated, that throughout the contest between those colonies and the parent country, the United States had remained neutral, and had fulfilled, with the utmost impartiality, all the obligations incident to that character. Some time had elapsed since the provinces had declared themselves independent nations, and had enjoyed that independence, free from invasion. Nor was it now contemplated to change the friendly relations with either of the parties which had been belligerent; but to observe in all respects as heretofore, should the war be renewed, the most perfect neutrality between them. The measure was sanctioned, and ministers were appointed to Mexico, Beunos Ayres, Colombia, and Chili.

Slave-trade prohibited.

Articles of convention for the suppression of the African slave-trade, were, this year, subscribed at London, by plenipotentiaries appointed for this purpose, from the United States and Great Britain. These articles authorized the commissioned officers of each nation, to capture and condemn the ships of the other, which should be concerned in the illicit traffic of slaves.

1824. The tariff question again agitated.

Ever since the year 1816, the tariff had attracted the attention of the people throughout the Union, and from time to time the subject had been brought before congress; but with the exception of the small protection afforded to coarse cotton cloths, nothing had yet been done for the encouragement of American manufactures. Notwithstanding the depression which succeeded the war, the manufacturers of cotton, after they recovered from the first shock, had proved successful. Excepting fine fabrics, which were not manufactured to any extent in America, domestic cottons almost supplied the country, and considerable quantities were exported to South America. Factories for printing calicoes had been erected in a few places, and in some instances the manufacture of lace had been attempted.

In supporting extensive manufactories independent of the protection of government, great energy and perseverance were displayed. The friends of manufactures had increased in numbers, and in zeal for the cause. This year the subject of a new tariff was again brought before congress, but was vehemently opposed. The grounds of opposition were, that it would injure the commerce and agriculture of the country, and by lessening the public revenue, compel a resort to a system of excise and taxation. That it would diminish the exports of the country, as other nations would not purchase articles of any kind from us, unless the produce of their industry was received in exchange. That the country was not prepared for the successful establishment of manufactures, on account of the high price of labor; and that manufactures would, under a favorable concurrence of circumstances, flourish without the protection of government.

The tariff bill opposed. Grounds of opposition.

1824. Arguments of the friends of the protective, or, tariff system.

The friends of a new tariff replied, that a dependence upon the internal resources of the country was the only true policy of our government; and that the protection desired for manufactures, far from injuring, would prove beneficial both to commerce and agriculture. It would bring into existence new and extensive establishments, and thus create a home market, without which the agriculturist would not receive with constancy, the just reward of his labors, and which would tend to keep the resources of the country at home. It would not diminish the exportations, unless to Europe, where little besides the raw materials are carried; and by the applications of industry, new articles of exportation might be multiplied, more valuable than the raw materials, and by which we should be indemnified for any losses thus incurred. They considered it by no means certain that it would lessen the public revenue; the augmentation of duty would compensate for the diminution in the quantity of goods imported. Experience proved that manufactures needed protection, and that such had ever been the policy of those governments where the manufacturing interest flourished; and in proof of this, they pointed to the steady course of England.

Many of the friends of the tariff, however, conceded, that if all nations would unite in a system of free, unshackled trade, it would probably produce the best possible state of things; but they contended, that as the United States must suffer from laws made by other nations to protect and favor their own manufactures, it was but just that the citizens of the United States should receive a like protection and preference from their own government. After much discussion, the bill, with some amendments, passed. It proved effectual in affording the desired protection to cotton goods; but the question was still agitated in favor of manufactures of other kinds, and the manufacturers of wool zealously endeavored to obtain a similar protection.

A new tariff formed.

CHAPTER II.

Lafayette invited to America.

1824. Aug. 15. Lafayette arrives.

On the 15th of August, 1824, General Lafayette* arrived in the harbor of New York, in consequence of a special invitation, which congress, participating in the warm feeling which pervaded the whole nation, had given him to visit America.

* In the days of the revolution, The Marquis de la Fayette, was the style by which the hereditary nobleman was known. Subsequently he renounced all distinctions of this kind, and would receive no other title than that given by his military rank. His address was then, General Lafayette.

When information was received in the city of New York of his arrival, a committee of the corporation, and a great number of distinguished citizens, immediately proceeded to Staten Island, to behold and welcome the former benefactor of their country, now its illustrious guest. Arrangements were made, by the committee, for his visit to New York, which was to take place the following day. A splendid escort of steamboats, gaily decorated with the flags of every nation, and bearing thousands of citizens, brought him to the view of the assembled crowds at New York. His feelings at revisiting again, in prosperity, the country which he had sought and made his own in adversity, were at times overpowering, and melted him to tears. Esteemed, as he was, for his virtues, and consecrated by his sufferings and constancy, the philanthropist of any country could not view him without an awe mingled with tenderness; but to Americans there was besides, a deep feeling of gratitude for his services, and an associated remembrance of those worthies of our revolution with whom he had lived.

1825.
His reception in New York.

The thousands assembled to meet Lafayette at New York, manifested their joy at beholding him, by shouts, acclamations, and tears. He rode uncovered from the battery to the City Hall, receiving and returning the affectionate gratulations of the multitude. At the City Hall, magistrates, and citizens, were presented to him, and he was welcomed by an address from the mayor. He then met with a few gray-headed veterans of the revolution, his old companions in arms, and though nearly half a century had passed since they parted, his faithful memory had kept their countenances and names.

Deputations from Philadelphia, Baltimore, New Haven, and many other cities, arrived at New York, with invitations for him to honor those places with his presence. After remaining a few days in New York, he proceeded through Connecticut and Rhode Island on his way to Boston. An escort of eight hundred citizens, from that place met him, and the mayor and corporation awaited his arrival at the city lines. The pupils of the public schools, both male and female, were arranged in two lines on the side of the common, under the care of their respective teachers, and through these beautiful lines the procession passed.

Lafayette goes to Boston.

From Boston he proceeded to Portsmouth, to visit the navy-yard. Orders had been issued by the president to all the military posts, to receive him with the honor due to the highest officer in the American service.

September.
Returns to New York.

On his return to New York, a splendid fete was given at Castle Garden.

Makes excursions north, and south.

From that city he proceeded to Albany and Troy, calling at West Point, and several other places on the river. He next passed through New Jersey, and visited Philadelphia, Baltimore, Washington, Yorktown, and Richmond. These

places vied with New York and Boston in the splendor with which they received the beloved defender of their country. He returned to Washington during the session of congress, and remained there several weeks. Congress voted him the sum of two hundred thousand dollars, and a township of land which was located in Florida, as a remuneration, in part, of his services during the revolutionary war, and as a testimony of their gratitude.

1825. January. Congress make him a liberal donation.

About the last of February he proceeded from Washington to Richmond, thence through North and South Carolina, to Savannah. He then travelled through Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, to New Orleans. Proceeding up the Mississippi as far as St. Louis, he visited the principal places on both sides of the river. He then returned to the Ohio, passed through Kentucky, Ohio, Pennsylvania, and New York; and arrived in Boston to participate in the ceremony of laying the corner-stone of the monument, to commemorate the battle of Bunker's Hill.

From Washington he makes the tour of the southern states; of the western.

Leaving Boston, he proceeded to Portland, in Maine; from thence, through New Hampshire, to Burlington in Vermont. Passing down lake Champlain and the Hudson, he arrived again in New York, where he united in the celebration of American independence.

Visits the northern and eastern states. July 4. At New York.

Then taking his leave of the eastern and northern states, he returned to the seat of government. He then paid an affecting visit to the honored tomb of Washington.

On his departure from the seat of government, the president in behalf of the nation, bade him an affectionate adieu; and in a new frigate, named the Brandywine, in memory of the battle in which he was wounded, he was safely conveyed to his native land.

He takes his departure.

Lafayette's whole progress through the United States had been one continued triumph, the most illustrious of any which history records. The captives chained to his triumphal car, were the affections of the people; his glory, the prosperity and happiness of his adopted country.

During Mr. Monroe's administration, America enjoyed profound peace. Sixty millions of her national debt were discharged. The Floridas were peaceably acquired, and the western limits fixed at the Pacific ocean. Internal taxes were repealed, the military establishment reduced to its narrowest limits of efficiency, the organization of the army improved, the independence of the South American nations recognized, progress made in the suppression of the slave-trade, and the civilization of the Indians advanced. The voice of party spirit had died away, and the period is still spoken of, as the "era of good feeling."

1817. to 1825. National prosperity and peace.

Mr. Monroe's second term of office having expired, four among the principal citizens of the republic were set up as candidates for the presidency, and voted for by the electoral col-

Four candidates for president.

1825.
No choice by the college of electors.
Representatives choose Mr. Adams.

lege. These were John Quincy Adams, Andrew Jackson, Henry Clay, and William H. Crawford. The electors were divided, and no choice being made by them, a president, according to the constitution, was to be chosen by the house of representatives, from the three candidates whose number of votes stood highest. These were Messrs. Adams, Jackson, and Crawford. Mr. Adams was chosen. This was the first election by the house of representatives, in the case contemplated by the constitution, where there was no one of the candidates preferred by a majority of the electors. Many fears had been expressed, that whenever such a case could occur, it would be attended with a dangerous excitement; but the event of fixing on a first magistrate was passed over by the American congress in a manner which showed their just sense of the solemnity of the obligation, which bound them to preserve inviolate the constitution of their country.

Inaugural address of John Quincy Adams.

Mr. Adams, in his inaugural address, declared that the course he should pursue, was that marked out by his predecessor: there remained, however, he remarked, one effort of magnanimity to be made by the individuals throughout the nation, who had heretofore followed the standards of political party;—it was that of discarding every remnant of rancour against each other, of embracing as countrymen and friends, and of yielding to talents and virtue alone, that confidence, which, in times of contention for principle, was bestowed only upon those who bore the badge of party communion.

Treaty with Colombia.

A treaty of commerce and navigation, with the republic of Colombia, was ratified in 1825, on the basis of the mutual obligation of the parties to place each other on the footing of the most favored nation.

1826.
July 4.
Simultaneous death of presidents Adams and Jefferson.

On the 4th of July, 1826, died, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. That these two political fathers, who had contributed more than any other Americans living, to the establishment of independence, should thus depart together, amidst the rejoicings of its fiftieth anniversary, struck to the hearts of the American people an indescribable feeling of awe and astonishment.

1827.
July 4.
Death of Mr. Monroe.

The next anniversary witnessed the death of another ex-president, James Monroe. His history is his praise.

Free-masonry.

Free-masonry claims to be an ancient institution. Towards the close of the last century it became popular in this country; and many of our best men, among whom were Washington and De Witt Clinton, were "free and accepted masons." But a change took place in the tone of society. Sunday schools and temperance meetings were more congenial to public sentiment, than the midnight festivities of the Masonic lodge. Free-masonry has now in this country but few advocates. This result has yet another cause.

A man by the name of William Morgan, who was preparing to publish a book, purporting to disclose the secrets of Free-

masonry, was taken, on the 11th of September, under color of a criminal process, from Batavia, in Genessee county New York, to Canandaigua, in Ontario county, examined and discharged; but on the same day he was arrested for debt, and confined in the county jail, by the persons who brought the first charge against him. They discharged the debt themselves, and on his leaving the prison, in the evening, he was seized, and forced into a carriage, which was rapidly driven out of the village, and he was never seen by his friends, again.

1826. Sept. 11. William Morgan forcibly carried off, and mysteriously disposed of.

The indignation of the community was roused, by this outrage, to an intense degree; particularly in the section of the country where it occurred. Rumor was continually harrowing up the feelings of his family and friends, by false stories calculated to mislead inquiry, of his having been seen, disguised, and under fictitious names, in foreign countries, or in remote parts of the Union. Notwithstanding that those who belonged to Masonic societies, were attempting in these and other ways to throw discredit on the story of his abduction; yet there was from among the people a voice not to be disregarded by the rulers, which pronounced that Morgan had been foully murdered.

Public indignation caused by Morgan's abduction.

The Legislature of New York appointed a committee of investigation, of which John C. Spencer was chairman.

1826-7. Committee of investigation.

They reported that William Morgan had been put to death. The years that have elapsed since his mysterious disappearance have confirmed their decision. The persons, who were suspected of being the principal actors in the tragedy, fled from their homes and took refuge under fictitious names, in distant places, and all are said to have been cut off from the land of the living, by disaster or violence.

1827. Their report.

Morgan's abduction excited a strong prejudice against all Masonic societies; and a political party was formed, called Anti-masonic, whose avowed object was to abolish Free-masonry throughout the United States, on the ground that secret societies in a free government, were not only unnecessary, but even dangerous to its existence. They averred that masonry, as was shown by the case of Morgan, claimed a right over the lives of its members; and as taking human life with intention, and without the sanction of civil authority is murder; therefore, this society must be regarded as especially at variance with law, human and divine.

Anti-masonic party.

Oppose all masonic societies.

Their grounds of opposition.

The Anti-masonic party once organized, was by its leaders made to subserve, not only its original purpose, but others, such as electioneering for favorite candidates to office; and is a fair example of what the politicians of the day understand by "making political capital" of any subject of popular excitement. The Anti-slavery party, which, as a political union, arose about the time that the Anti-masonic party declined, had its origin, in feelings equally honorable to human

"Political capital."

Anti-slavery.

nature; and there is reason to apprehend that it will in a similar manner be perverted.

1828. The tariff bill amended.

The tariff question again agitated congress, and the debates terminated in the passage of a law laying protective duties on such articles of import as competed with certain manufactured and agricultural productions of the United States. By this tariff bill, additional duties were laid on wool and woollens, iron, hemp and its fabrics, lead, distilled spirits, silk stuffs, window-glass and cottons. The manufacturing states received the law with warm approbation, while the southern states regarded it as highly prejudicial to the interests of the cotton planters; and in Charleston, South Carolina, the flags on the shipping were displayed at half-mast, and a state convention was demanded.

The north pleased. The south offended.

1829. March 4. Jackson's first inauguration.

The presidential election having been decided by the college of electors, General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, was inaugurated president, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, vice-president of the United States.

Origin of the state rights, or nullification party.

Though the tariff bill found but few friends in the southern states, the citizens of most of them were in favor of seeking for its repeal by constitutional measures. Even in South Carolina, the head-quarters of the opposition, was a powerful party, who were styled the Friends of the Union, and were hostile to any disorganizing measures. A small majority, however, now first styled the "state rights" party, and afterwards, the "nullifiers," were working themselves up to that high pressure of exasperation, which is ever followed by rashness of conduct. In congress, their doctrines were ably set forth by Mr. Hayne of the senate, but they were met and confuted by Daniel Webster, in a speech which convinced the understanding, and thrilled through the heart of every patriot in the Union.

Webster's great speech against nullification.

1832. April. Commencement of Black Hawk's war.

Since the war with the Seminoles in 1818, the Indian tribes had remained in peace. In April, of this year, the Winnebagoes, Sacs, and Foxes, inhabiting the upper Mississippi, recrossed that river under their chief, Black Hawk, and entered upon the lands which they had sold to the United States, and which were occupied by citizens of Illinois. These Indians being well mounted and armed, scattered rapidly their war parties over that defenseless country, breaking up settlements, killing whole families, and burning their dwellings. Generals Atkinson and Scott, were charged with the defense of the frontier.

June 9. Cholera at Quebec.

The disease, known by the name of the Asiatic cholera, made its appearance in Canada, on the 9th of June, among some newly arrived Irish emigrants. It followed apparently along the valleys of the St. Lawrence, Champlain and Hudson, and on the 26th, several cases occurred in the city of New York. A great proportion of the inhabitants left the place in dismay, but notwithstanding the reduction of numbers,

June 26. At New York.

the ravages of the disease were appalling. It spread with great rapidity throughout the states of New York and Michigan; and along the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi, to the Gulph of Mexico. From New York it went south through the Atlantic states, as far as North Carolina. It was a singular characteristic of this excruciating and quickly fatal malady, that, though not apparently contagious, it followed the great routes of travel, both on the land and water. New England, with a few exceptions, escaped the scourge.

1832.
Progress of the cholera through the Union.

In obedience to orders from the War Department, the garrisons on the seaboard, from Fort Monroe, in Virginia, to New York harbor, were withdrawn and placed under the command of General Scott, to be employed in the Indian war. Proceeding with haste, as the case was urgent, the general embarked his troops in steamboats at Buffalo. The season was hot, and the boats were crowded. The cholera broke out among the troops. Language cannot depict the distress that ensued, both before and after their landing. Many died; many deserted, from dread of the disease, and perished in the woods either from cholera or starvation. The exertions, sufferings, and danger, of General Scott, during this period, were greater than they ever were on the field of battle; and it thus became impossible for him to reach the seat of war at the time intended. General Atkinson, by forced marches, came up with Black Hawk's army on the second of August, near the mouth of the Upper Iowa. The Indians were routed and dispersed, and Black Hawk, his son, and several warriors of note made prisoners.

July.
General Scott collects the troops for the Indian war.
The cholera breaks out in the army.

Aug. 2.
General Atkinson defeats the Indians.

After having been detained at fortress Monroe for several months, the chief and his son were carried through the principal cities of the United States, and the next year sent back to their people, convinced of the folly of further resistance against so powerful a nation.

Black Hawk and his son.

Charles Carroll of Carrollton, near Baltimore, the last surviving signer of the Declaration of Independence, died on the 14th of November, in the ninety-sixth year of his age. So deep was the reverence felt for this relic of the revolution that many a pilgrimage is even now, made to the mansion house where he spent his virtuous life.

The state rights, or nullification party, having a majority in South Carolina, held a convention at Columbia, from whence they issued an ordinance in the name of the people, in which they declared that congress, in laying protective duties, had exceeded its just powers; and that the several acts alluded to, should, from that time, be utterly *null and void*; that it should be the duty of the legislature of South Carolina, to adopt measures to arrest their operation, from and after the 1st of February, 1833; that the courts of that state should not question the validity of that ordinance, nor suffer an appeal to the courts of the United States;—that any one hold-

Nov. 19.
A convention meet at Columbia, South Carolina, and issue the famous nullification ordinance.

ing an office under the state, should take an oath to obey that ordinance; or if otherwise, the office should be filled up as if the incumbent were dead; that no person thereafter, should be elected to any office whatever, either civil or military, until he had taken the oath not only to obey the ordinance, but such acts as the legislature might thereafter pass to carry the same into operation.

1832. Ordinance declares that the United States shall not use force, on penalty of the withdrawal of South Carolina.

Finally, the instrument declared, that the people of South Carolina would not submit to force, on the part of the United States, but that they should consider any act of congress, authorizing the employment of a naval or military force against the state, as *null and void;* and in that case, the people would hold themselves absolved from all political connection with the other states, and would forthwith proceed to organize a separate government, and do all other acts and things, which sovereign and independent states have a right to do.

The convention call on the members of the Union.

The convention also put forth an "Address to the people of the United States," in which the doctrines of nullification were avowed, and the hope expressed, that the other states would give up the protective system, as the secession of South Carolina would inevitably produce a dissolution of the Union.

Nov. 24. The Unionists in South Carolina meet and protest.

The friends of the Union in South Carolina, also, held a convention at Columbia, on the 24th of November. They adopted, and published, a solemn protest against the ordinance. Meetings were held in almost every part of the United States, and resolutions passed, expressive of entire reprobation of the principles avowed by the nullifiers.

Nov. 27. State authorities approve the nullification ordinance.

The legislature of South Carolina convened at Columbia, on the 27th of November. Governor Hamilton, in his opening message, expressed his approval of the ordinance. He recommended that the authorities of the state, and of the city of Charleston, should unite in requesting the president to withdraw, from the arsenal at Charleston, the United States' soldiers, who, for several years, had been stationed there, by request of those authorities, to defend their arms and ammunition, in case of a slave insurrection. He recommended, also, that the militia should be re-organized;—that the executive should be authorized to accept of the services of 12,000 volunteers;—and that provision should be made for procuring heavy ordnance, and other munitions of war.

Dec. 10. President Jackson's proclamation.

On the 10th of December, President Jackson published a proclamation, warning the nullification party of the consequences which would ensue, if they persisted in the course they had commenced. After a series of reasoning to convince them of their error, he added, "I consider, then, the power to annul a law of the United States, assumed by one state, incompatible with the existence of the Union,—contradicted expressly by the constitution,—unauthorized by its spirit,—inconsistent with every principle on which it was founded, and destructive of the great object for which it was formed."

First, he shows the nullifiers their error.

1832.

In conclusion, the president told them, that the laws of the United States must be executed, that he had no discretionary power on the subject; that those who told them they might *peaceably* prevent their execution, deceived them; that nothing but a forcible opposition could prevent their execution, and that such opposition must be repelled, for "disunion by armed force," he said, "is treason." Finally, he appealed to the patriotism of South Carolina, to retrace her steps, and, to the country, to rally in defense of the Union.

Second, he shows them their danger. Appeals to the country to rally.

No act of General Jackson was ever more popular than this proclamation. There was a party strongly opposed to his measures, who held that his talents were rather for war than peace; and that, in the indomitable energies of his will, he pursued his objects as the keen sportsman his game, heedless what fences he broke down in his way; but on this occasion, this party vied, in commendation, with the larger and ruling party, by whom his administration was uniformly approved; and from every quarter he received from the people, proffers of military service.

Public approval of the president's conduct.

Governor Hamilton being appointed to the command of the South Carolinian army, Colonel Hayne succeeded him. He issued a proclamation, counter to that of General Jackson, in which he put forth the doctrines of disunion, in their most offensive form; calling on the people to disregard the "vain menaces" of the president, and "protect the liberties of the state." The legislature also continued to authorize the employment of volunteers, who were "to hold themselves in readiness to take the field, at a minute's warning."

Dec. 20. Colonel Hayne's message.

The unionists, feeling how unhappy must be a contest, which would separate families, where the son might be called on to shed the blood of the father, and the brother that of the brother, now aroused, and, encouraged by the decided tone of the president, they took one equally decided; and held meetings in various parts of the state, in which they declared, "we will not be forced to bear arms against the United States, be the consequences what they may."

Resolutions of the unionists.

General Jackson followed his word with his deed. He caused Castle Pinckney, a fortress which commands the inner harbor of Charleston, as well as the town itself, to be put in complete order for offensive or defensive operations. Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's island, was likewise strongly garrisoned, and General Scott placed in command; while several ships of war, under the orders of Commodore Elliot, were anchored in the bay: and it is said that he sent private assurances to the leading nullifiers, that unless they desisted, he should take the field in person, and appear in South Carolina, at the head of a large army.

Jackson prepares for military operations against South Carolina.

The nullification party did not decide to meet the nation in arms, with General Jackson at its head. The crisis which had caused so many forebodings, was adjourned, and the au-

A change of tone.

PART IV. PERIOD III. CHAP. III.

thorities agreed not to oppose the collection of duties until the 1st of March, and before that period arrived, measures were taken which restored tranquillity.

1833. Feb. 12. Mr. Clay's compromise, Tariff bill.

On the 12th of February, Mr. Clay introduced a bill into the senate, which had for its object, a compromise between the manufacturing interests of the north, and the cotton planters of the south. It reduced the duties on certain articles, and limited the operation of the tariff, to the 30th of September, 1842. It being considered a bill for revenue, it was not acted upon in the senate, until after the house of representatives had adopted it, when it passed rapidly through that body, was signed by the president, and became a law on the 3d of March. It gave general content to the citizens of the United States, with whom the union is so dear, that whatever or whoever endangers it, is looked upon with suspicion and displeasure; and on the other hand, whatever nourishes and consolidates it, is regarded with approbation and complacency.

Inauguration, March 4th.

Gen. Jackson was re-elected, and Martin Van Buren of New York, made Vice-president.

CHAPTER III.

The aboriginal tribes east of the Mississippi go to the far west.

May 20. Death of Lafayette.

General Lafayette, full of years and honors, died on the 20th of May, 1833, and was mourned as the common father of his native and his adopted country.

Extreme difficulty of the Indian question.

The position of the remaining aboriginal tribes gave the rulers great uneasiness. If the Indians would subject themselves to the laws of civilized society, at least so far as to declare war before they made it, and then to make it only with those in arms, they might have their reservations, and enjoy them within the limits of the states. But so long as they were subtly contriving war, when they were seemingly most bent on peace,—their declaration made only by the war-whoop, and signed by the scalping-knife—so long, it would be vain to expect that their neighborhood could be tolerated by civilized man: for the father and the husband would look beyond treaties written on parchment to the law of nature, which bids him protect and defend his helpless ones. If the government in good faith, sought to preserve the Indian tribes, they refusing to change their mode of warfare, the only consequence would be, that they would at length, by their murderous atrocities, oblige the rulers, in defense of the lives of their own people, to send their armies and destroy them. Such had been the fate of former tribes, and such, unless something was done to avert the catastrophe, was likely to be that of those still remaining. To devise some expedi-

It arises from their mode of warfare.

ent to save them, and protect their own people, was the difficult problem which the government had to solve.

1830. December. Jackson's message respecting the Indians.

That General Jackson saw the subject much in this light, is apparent from his earliest message to congress. He remarked that the fate of the Mohegan, the Narragansett and the Delaware was fast and inevitably approaching the Choctaw, the Cherokee, and the Creek, if they remained within the limits of the states. He said that regard to our national honor brought forward the question whether something could not be done to preserve the race. As a means to this end, he suggested that an ample district west of the Mississippi, and without the limits of any state or territory, might be set apart and guarantied to the Indian tribes, each to have distinct jurisdiction over the part designated for its use, and free from any control of the United States, other than might be necessary to preserve peace on the frontier. There the benevolent might teach them; and there they might form a nation which would perpetuate their race, and attest the humanity of the American government.

He proposes their removal to the west.

But the grand difficulty of the project, which would have appalled a more timid mind, President Jackson met in a manner altogether characteristic. "The emigration," said he, "should be voluntary, for it would be as cruel as unjust to compel the aborigines to abandon the graves of their fathers, and seek a home in a distant land." Congress sanctioned the project which former able statesmen had advocated, and empowered the president to carry it out; and he fearlessly undertook, what, perhaps, no human ruler ever did before, and what none but the Almighty can effect, to combine freewill with necessity. To oblige the Indians to emigrate voluntarily for their own good, became thenceforth his settled policy.

The Indians must go, but they must go voluntarily.

1831, 2 & 3. The Chickasaws and Choctaws remove.

With the Chickasaws and Choctaws, however, treaties were made by which they exchanged lands, and quietly emigrated to the country fixed on, which was the territory next to Arkansas. The United States paid the expenses of their removal, and supplied them with food for the first year.

1802. Georgia cedes to the United States the territory of Alabama.

When Georgia ceded to the United States, April 2, 1802, all that tract of country lying south of Tennessee, and west of the Chatahouchee river, the government paid in hand to that state $1,250,000, and further agreed, "at their own expense, to extinguish, for the use of Georgia, as early as the same could be *peaceably* obtained upon reasonable terms, the Indian title to the lands lying within the limits of that state."

Government fulfill the treaty as fast as possible.

Under this contract, the United States had, by sundry treaties with the Creek and Cherokee tribes of Indians, who occupied the territory, extinguished the Indian title to 25,980,000 acres, and delivered the peaceable possession of it to Georgia. Of the Indians who inhabited the purchased territory, some of them removed westward of the Mississippi, some of them took refuge with the brethren of the same tribes in Ala-

bama; but the great masses of Indian population, on leaving the territories they had given up, only condensed themselves closer on the large and fertile domain within the state of Georgia, which they had reserved to themselves; and from thenceforward they refused to sell, cede to the government of the United States, or give up, on any consideration, any more of their land.

Indians within Georgia an independent state.

In the meantime, the constantly increasing white population was pressing nearer and nearer upon the Indian reservation, within which, the tribes exercised a sort of independent dominion, by which a retreat was furnished for runaway slaves, and fugitives from justice, a set of vagabonds ever ready for violence. This condition of their state was viewed by the people of Georgia as intolerable; and the legislature, in due time, extended its laws and jurisprudence over the whole Indian territory. The Cherokees considered this measure as an infringement of their ancient rights, and a violation of recent treaties; and they appealed to the general government for redress.

The Georgians determine to be rid of them.

1831-2. Discreditable affair of the missionaries.

The well-known policy of President Jackson was to remove them; and the Georgians, thus encouraged, sought, by a course of proceeding, contrary to law and right, to make their position untenable. They put in prison two missionaries whom they suspected of dissuading the Indians against the removal. President Jackson would do nothing to check these discreditable proceedings, from a tenderness to state-rights; which, fortunately for the union, he did not feel in the case of South Carolina.

Thus annoyed by the state government, and beset by agents from Washington, a treaty was obtained from a few of the chiefs by which the removal of the tribe was to take place. The fairness of this treaty was denied, and the Indians were averse to leaving their own and their fathers' pleasant land.

1838. The Cherokees at length removed.

The difficult and perilous task of bringing the Cherokees to consent to this arrangement was intrusted to General Scott. His firm and conciliatory measures, effected their removal without bloodshed. Much had, however, been previously done to gain the confidence and allay the animosity of the Indians, by the able officers who had preceded General Scott in this important service.

CHAPTER IV.

The Florida War.

1823. September. A treaty made with the Seminoles.

Measures equally wise were not pursued with the Seminoles inhabiting East Florida. In September, 1823, soon after the occupation of the peninsula, a treaty was made at

Fort Moultrie, South Carolina, between the United States and the Seminoles, by which those Indians relinquished their claims to large tracts of land in Florida, reserving to themselves a portion for a residence. Subsequently disputes arose respecting the construction of this treaty; the Indians claiming that it gave them undisturbed possession of their reservation for twenty years.

Colonel Gadsden, as agent for the United States, made another treaty with the Seminoles, at Payne's Landing in Florida, when it was stipulated that they should cede their reservation, and remove beyond the Mississippi. A delegation of their chiefs, appointed by the treaty, was sent at the expense of the United States, to examine the country assigned them, and also to ascertain whether the Creeks, who had already emigrated, would unite with them, as one people. If the Seminoles were satisfied on these points, then the treaty was to be binding.

1832. May 9. In the treaty of Payne's Landing they agree to a removal conditionally.

The Indian delegation, after examining, took it upon them to conclude a treaty with the American commissioners, rendering absolute the one made at Payne's Landing.

To this transaction the nation at large objected, and averred that the delegation had exceeded their powers, and that they should have reported to the tribe the result of their observations, and taken their vote; but as it was, unfairness and treachery were charged upon the parties who thus prematurely completed the agreement.

Treaty of confirmation made by chiefs, and disputed by the nation.

The Indians were, by the stipulations of the treaty, to remove within three years after its ratification; and to commence their emigration as early as possible in 1833. Their removal was not, however, then attempted.

But President Jackson, although he might for a short time delay, was not a man to change his purposes, or swerve from their full execution; and in regard to the Seminoles, he now determined to delay no longer.

He made General Wiley Thompson the government agent for superintending the proposed change, and sent him to Florida to prepare for the emigration. Captain Russel, of the army, accompanied him as disbursing officer. Thompson soon found, and reported to the government, that most of the Indians were unwillng to leave their homes. They plead that the treaty of Fort Moultrie, suffered them to remain for twenty years;—and said that though the lands beyond the Mississippi might be good, the Indians there were bad.

1834. General Thompson sent to Florida. Oct. 28.

On reporting this to the war department, Thompson was told that the Seminoles were to be removed for their own benefit, and could not be permitted to remain;—that the military force in the neighborhood of these Indians would be increased; and he was directed to inform the Seminoles that the annuities which they received under the treaty of Fort Moultrie would not be paid until they consented to emigrate. He

1834. General Thompson directed in regard to the removal.

PART IV. PERIOD III. CHAP. IV.

was also required to communicate freely with General Clinch, of the army, who owned a plantation not far from the Indian reservation.

1834. Dec. 28.

President Jackson also sent a conciliatory "talk" to the chiefs who assembled to hear it. They discussed, with General Thompson, their intended departure, seemed much gratified with the president's talk, and their principal chief, Osceola, with others, parted apparently in perfect good humor. But the agents must have doubted their sincerity, for General Thompson requested the government to send more troops. General Clinch, however, wrote to the war department, humanely inquiring if it would not be better to let them remain until the next spring, provided they would consent to remove peaceably and quietly on the first day of March. "I believe," said he, "the whole nation will readily come into the measure, and it is impossible not to feel a deep interest, and much sympathy for this people."

1835. Jan. 7.

March 10. General Clinch advises the executive to delay.

The order for immediate removal is peremptory.

The answer, although it contained professions of regard for the Seminoles, yet bore the government's peremptory order to proceed without delay to their removal.

April 22.

The Indians, in the meantime, acknowledged the validity of the treaty of Payne's Landing, and agreed to carry it into effect; but when the agents took the preparatory steps for their removal, the deep-seated repugnance of the people to leave their homes, and the graves of their fathers was again manifested.

Osceola.

It was believed that they acted much under the influence of Osceola or Powel. This chief owed his elevation solely to his personal qualities. His father was an Englishman, his mother a Seminole, and he thus mingled the Saxon with the Indian blood. His bearing was proud and gloomy. On the 3d of June, General Thompson held a conference with the Indians, in which Osceola took a tone that displeased him, and he manacled the chief, and confined him for a day to a prison. Osceola seemed penitent, signed the treaty to remove, and was released. Afterwards Thompson entrusted him with several pieces of service; and he passed through different parts of the peninsula, appearing cheerfully engaged in aiding General Thompson to accomplish his plans. But he dissembled, and was concerting with the Indians a deep and cruel revenge.

June 3. General Thompson treats him with indignity.

Is deceived by him.

The Seminoles take vengeance on their own people who favor the removal.

It fell first on the heads of those Indians who were true to the whites. Mathla, a chief, was killed because he had been engaged in making the obnoxious treaty; and some hundreds of the Seminoles fled to Fort Brooke, at Tampa Bay, bringing the first account of the real designs of Osceola and his party. In the meantime, the Indians opposed to the removal, had disappeared from their usual places of residence.

Alarmed at these symptoms, the government ordered troops from the southern posts to repair to Fort Brooke. The com-

mand was given to General Clinch, who was at Camp King, distant one hundred miles, or about half the way from Tampa Bay to St. Augustine.

1835. Dec. 23. Major Dade begins his march.

Major Dade marched from Fort Brooke to join him, at the head of one hundred and seventeen men, accompanied by captains Gardner and Fraser.

Dec. 28. Is ambushed by the Indians.

About eighty miles of the toilsome journey had been accomplished, when, on the morning of the 28th, Major Dade rode in front of his troops, and cheered them with the intelligence that their march was nearly at an end; and he kindly assured them, that they should have three days' rest at Camp King. A volley was fired at the moment from hundreds of unseen muskets. The speaker, and those he addressed, fell dead. The whole advance was killed on the first fire; at the second, Captain Fraser and many others. So entirely was the foe concealed that many rounds were fired at them by the survivors before an Indian was seen. The savages then rose, and surrounding the Americans, came in close contact, using knives and bayonets. A field-piece, which Major Dade had ordered, was now brought into the action, and the Indians drew off.

He is killed, with three-quarters of his army.

Thirty were all that remained of Dade's army. They improved the respite afforded them to construct a triangular breastwork of trees, which they felled.

Massacre at Camp King.

While they were thus engaged, where was Osceola, who had, doubtless, led the attack? It is supposed that he went the twenty miles from Dade's battle field to Camp King, to perform a work there.

Death of General Thompson.

On that day, General Wiley Thompson, with a convivial party, were dining at a house within sight of the garrison. As they sat at table, a volley from a hundred muskets was poured through the doors and windows. General Thompson fell dead, pierced by fifteen bullets. Of the others, some were killed at the first fire, others, attempting to escape, were murdered without the house. Osceola, at the head of the Indians, had rushed in, and himself scalped the man who had once placed fetters upon the limbs of the Seminole chief. The Indians then retreated, unmolested by the garrison.

The last scene of the tragedy.

In the afternoon, a mounted company of one hundred Indians, (doubtless, Osceola and his party, now returning triumphant from the massacre at Camp King) attacked, with whoop and yell, the inclosure of the thirty survivors. The Indians charged only once, for they were repulsed by the cool bravery of the devoted men. Many of the Indians fell, but fresh numbers continually appeared; and one by one, bravely fighting, the officers and soldiers fell, till there was none to resist. The narrator, Ransom Clarke, was wounded, and that soldier only escaped death by feigning it; and then, almost by miracle, working his way through the woods. He eventually died

of his wounds; and thus every one of Dade's army were killed in that battle.

1835. The garrison at Fort Brooke alarmed.

A deep sensation pervaded the country at the news of this massacre. At Fort Brooke, the garrison labored to improve their fortifications, the elated Seminoles having threatened them with extermination. The terrified inhabitants flocked for refuge to the forts.

Dec. 29. General Clinch sets out to seek Osceola.

The head-quaters of General Clinch were at Fort Drane, a few miles north of Camp King. Three companies of regulars under Major Fanning, and a body of volunteers from the neighboring country under General Call, constituted his force. With these he set out on the day succeeding the massacre, for the Withlacoochee river; Osceola's principal settlement, being to the south of that stream. Their guide who had promised to bring them to a point where the fording was good, deceived them. They found a deep and rapid stream, with no means of crossing but one canoe. Colonel Fanning had, however, succeeded in getting the regular troops across, and General Call had begun to bring over the volunteers. Osceola and the Seminoles, with whom the guide was, doubtless, in league, were posted in the swamps and underbrush around. An encounter ensued, in which the regulars with a few volunteers, charged, and drove the Indians three times. After the battle began, the volunteers upon the opposite bank would not cross the river, notwithstanding the earnest entreaties of General Call and the other officers, who themselves crossed over, and rendered efficient serviee.

Dec. 31. Reaches the Withlacoochee.

Is attacked by Osceola.

1836. Jan. 2. General Clinch returns to Fort Drane.

After the battle, General Clinch recrossed the river and returned to Fort Drane, having lost four men killed, and sixty wounded. The volunteers returned to their abodes, leaving General Clinch to guard their homes, and protect the country with very inadequate means.

Emboldened by success, and united in their plans, the Seminoles now appeared simultaneously in the neighborhood of almost every settlement in Florida. Houses were burned, crops destroyed, negroes carried off, and families murdered in every direction.

Feb. 7. General Scott arrives at St. Augustine.

General Scott was now invested with the chief command in the peninsula, and he arrived on the 7th of February at St. Augustine. The inhabitants were not strong enough to keep a communication open with the other settlements; and reconnoitering parties of fifty or sixty were attacked and driven back with loss.

Feb. 11. A letter of description from St. Augustine.

A letter from St. Augustine, dated the eleventh of the month, thus describes the situation of the inhabitants. "The whole of the country south of this place has been laid waste during the past week, not a building of any value is left standing. There is not a single house remaining between this city and Cape Florida, a distance of two hundred and fifty miles; all, all, have been burned to the ground."

In the meantime General Clinch was hardly pressed by the savages at Fort Drane, and General Scott learning his critical situation, immediately ordered all the regular troops under his command, except one company left for the defense of St Augustine, to march to his relief.

1836. Movement of General Gaines.

A simultaneous movement occurred on the opposite side of the peninsula. General Gaines, the commander of the south-western division of the United States army, hearing of the massacre, and conceiving Florida to belong to his military department, hastened to the scene of action, with such of the regular troops as he could bring together, and seven hundred Louisiana volunteers under Colonel Persifor Smith. They landed at Tampa Bay, on the 11th of February, and took up their line of march on the 13th for Fort King. General Gaines reached it without being molested by the Indians, and taking eight days provisions from Fort Drane, set out on the morning of the 26th for the banks of the Withlacoochee in search of the Seminoles. He reached that river near General Clinch's battle-ground, and while reconnoitering, was fired upon from the opposite bank. Thus admonished of the presence of his enemy, he employed his men in preparing a small breastwork to command the crossing place. On the 29th, he was attacked at ten in the morning, on three sides of his camp at once. General Gaines' force was between ten and eleven hundred, and the Indians were supposed to number about fifteen hundred. The engagement lasted two hours, and ended in the repulse of the assailants with considerable loss.

Feb. 11. Army at Tampa Bay. Feb. 13. Begins its march.

Feb. 26. Is at the Withlacoochee.

Feb. 29. General Gaines' battle.

But General Gaines had little the air of a victor, for he remained surrounded by the savages, and in danger of starvation. A courier from him had the good luck to reach General Clinch with the intelligence; and that officer, in the exercise of a liberal spirit, procured a supply from his own plantation. On further information, he set off at the head of six hundred men, and a body of militia, who seemed happily to have changed the timid character manifested in the early part of the war.

General Clinch sets out to go to Gaines' relief.

On the 5th and 6th of March, Osceola amused General Gaines with pretences of desiring to treat for a cessation of hostilities. He came to his camp with a flag, and told him that he would furnish him with provisions of which he knew he was in want. This was too true, for his army was living at the time on no better food than horses and dogs, and these in great scarcity. Osceola said, however, that General Clinch was approaching with a large force; and that the Seminoles wished the war to close; but on being desired to embark for the west, he refused. While he thus held the general in parley, his warriors had been moving their women and children, and the tribe were already on their way to the south; where among the everglades and hammocks, the officers and soldiers have sought them through bogs and fens,—in danger

March 5th and 6th. Osceola holds a parley.

The tribe in the meantime withdraw.

from serpents, and other venomous reptiles, tortured by poisonous insects, and often the victims of the climate.

1836. Change of commander.

General Clinch arrived at the camp, and relieved the army of Gaines from the danger of starvation. General Scott was about to put a plan in operation, by which, Osceola, in his first position, would have been surrounded; but, like startled birds, the Indians had flown. General Gaines returned to New Orleans. General Scott left St. Augustine on the third of May, having been ordered to the country of the Creeks, leaving General Call in command, General Clinch having resigned.

1837. Oct. 21. Seizure of Osceola.

His death, January, 1838.

General Jesup arrived to take the command soon after the departure of General Scott. In October, Osceola, under protection of a flag with about seventy of his warriors, came to the American camp. General Jesup believed him to be treacherous, and caused him, with his escort, to be forcibly detained, and subsequently placed in a prison at Fort Moultrie, S. C., where, a few months after, he died of a complaint in the throat.

Dec. 20.

The head of the confederacy thus taken away, General Jesup believed that the war would soon be brought to a close. A delegation of Cherokees was sent to the Seminoles to persuade them to peaceable arrangements. But in December, Colonel Taylor, the commanding officer of Fort Gardner, south of the Withlacoochee, received from General Jesup, the intelligence that the Seminoles would not negotiate, but were determined "to fight it out;" and consequently the commanding general directed Colonel Taylor, forthwith, to act offensively. He immediately set out with a thousand resolute men, well officered and equipped.

Dec. 25. Battle of Okee-Chobee.

Death of Colonel Thompson and Colonel Gentry. Killed and wounded, 138.

They marched four days through wet swampy grounds, covered with long saw-grass, and occasionally diversified with hammocks or island-spots of luxuriant and tangled vegetation. On the fifth day, the Indians, whom they sought, attacked them at the entrance of the Kissimmee river, into lake Okee-Chobee. Notwithstanding their fatiguing march, the troops engaged them with perfect coolness. The brunt of the battle fell at first on the sixth regiment. Colonel Thompson, their commander, with many others, was wounded, but he kept the field until pierced by the third bullet, he said, "keep steady boys—charge the hammock, remember what regiment you belong to," and then fell dead. Colonel Gentry, of the Missouri volunteers, was also killed, with three other valuable officers and twenty-two privates. One hundred and eleven officers and soldiers were wounded. The Indian loss could not be ascertained. They were, however, routed and dispersed, and about a hundred afterwards gave themselves up to be carried to the west.

In the whole history of the United States, no warfare is related, which on the whole, is comparable with the Florida war, for danger and difficulty; and no military services are recorded which required, on the whole, such Spartan self-devotion.

1841.

Colonel Worth, one of the most active, daring, and energetic officers in the army, has been in Florida more than a year, and there seems at present a prospect that the war will soon close. At different times, parties of the Indians have surrendered themselves to the American officers, and have been sent to the west; but the number of these is perhaps not much greater, than those of the brave, the patient, and faithful of our own army, who have perished on the battle-fields, or in the swamps of Florida.*

The Creeks in the south-eastern part of Alabama become hostile. 1836.

The occasion on which General Scott was sent to the Creek country, was an outbreak among the Indians of that nation, in the vicinity of the Seminoles. Osceola had sent the war-belt to all the red men as far as the Winnebagoes, in the country of the upper Mississippi; and it was not surprising that even the influence of the head-chiefs among the Creeks, should fail to repress the strong sympathy which the body of the tribe felt for the kindred race.

May 1. They murder the inhabitants.

Early in May, they opened their horrible warfare upon the defenseless and unsuspecting inhabitants, near the Chatahouchee in Alabama, setting fire to houses, and murdering families. The survivors fled in terror to Columbus, on the Georgia side of that river.

May. They attack and burn two steamboats.

On the 15th of May, the Indians attacked a steamboat which was ascending the Chatahouchee, eight miles below Columbus, killed her pilot and wounded several others. She was run ashore, and the passengers had the good fortune to escape with their lives, while the Indians burned the boat. The passengers of another steamboat, which the savages attacked and fired at the wharf of Roanoke, had not the same fortunate escape. They were all, save the engineer, consumed in the flames of the burning vessel. The barbarians then set fire to the town, and destroyed it.

They are overpowered.

The governor of Georgia raised troops and took the field in person: General Scott arrived on the 30th of May. Their combined efforts quelled the Creek hostilities, and peace was restored early in the summer. But the feeling of desperation which pervaded the minds of the Indians, and the reluctance with which they submitted, appeared from a fact remarkable in the history of the natives. The Indian mother loves her children with the utmost tenderness. Yet in several instances the Creek mothers put their offspring to death, rather than that they should become prisoners to the pale-faces.

1831. Mr. Rives' treaty. 1836. General Jackson procures its fulfillment.

In 1831, Mr. Rives negotiated with the minister of Louis Philippe, king of the French, a treaty by which that nation agreed to give 25,000,000 of francs to indemnify the United States for spoliations on American commerce, made under the operation of the decrees of Napoleon. The French, however, had neglected to pay the money; but General Jackson took such

* 1842.—The government have now proclaimed that the Florida war is closed. It is believed that the whites who wish to make money by supplying the army, have basely practised to prevent peace.

prompt measures and so decided a tone, that in 1836 the demand was liquidated agreeably to the treaty.

In September, 1835, Wisconsin was made a territory, and Arkansas, a state.

Congress also passed a law admitting Michigan to the Union, provided a convention of delegates should agree to relinquish certain lands in dispute, between that territory and Ohio. The delegates refused the condition; but another convention being called, accepted it, and Michigan was admitted to the Union, the twenty sixth state; the original number, thirteen, being now exactly doubled. The boundaries were extended on the north.

1837. January. Michigan a state.

The old parties were, during Mr. Monroe's administration, broken up. From the peculiar character of Mr. Jackson, it was to have been expected that he would have warm friends and bitter enemies; and at this time, there are those who regard him in his civil capacity as a second Washington, to whom the country is scarcely less indebted than to the first; while his opponents have pronounced his administration "a calamity greater than war, famine, and pestilence combined."

The Jackson and Anti-Jackson parties.

The latter attribute the revulsion of 1837, from which the country has not yet recovered, to the overthrow of the national bank, caused by the hostility of General Jackson. This was manifested in his first message to congress in 1830.

1830. The president manifests hostilities to the U. S. Bank.

In 1832, the directors of the bank applied for a renewal of its charter. After much debate, congress passed, by a considerable majority, a bill granting their petition. This bill, General Jackson defeated by the presidential veto.

1832. He vetoes the bill for the renewal of its charter.

The funds of the goverment had been deposited in the national bank. In 1833, General Jackson signified his pleasure that they should be withdrawn. Mr. Duane, the secretary of the treasury, considering it as his duty to keep the public purse according to the wishes of congress, and deeming the national bank, the safest place of deposit, refused to withdraw the money. Mr. Jackson dismissed him from office, and appointed Mr. Taney, who immediately withdrew the deposites. The public treasure, was, by an act of congress passed in 1835, placed in certain selected state banks, known at the time as the "pet banks." These were encouraged to discount freely, as it might accommodate the people.

1833. He requires Mr. Duane to withdraw the deposites. Mr. Duane refuses. Mr. Jackson appoints Mr. Taney.

1835. The "pet banks."

It was during the recess of the senate, that Mr. Taney was appointed to the office of secretary of the treasury, and it was not till the close of a seven months session, that the president brought his nomination before that body, who then rejected it.

The government at this period, presented the spectacle of violent hostility between the executive and the majority of the senate, headed by such powerful and eloquent men as Henry Clay, Daniel Webster, Mr. Preston, and others. On the part of President Jackson, Silas Wright of New York, met them with ingenious argument, and gentlemanly coolness; while on the same side Mr. Benton, of Missouri, was loud and

1833. to 1836. Opposition in the senate. The eloquence of the senate.

boisterous. The debates in the senate at that period, were exciting and attractive to such a degree, that the room for spectators was crowded at an early hour. Ladies, who assembled from every part of the Union, were so much fascinated, that they were often in waiting three hours, in order to secure seats.

1833. Mr. Clay's two resolutions, blaming the president, pass the senate.

On the 26th of December, 1833, Mr. Clay introduced into the senate, two resolutions inpugning the conduct of General Jackson, in reference to Mr. Duane's removal, as assuming to the executive, the direction of the public purse, and thus subverting the constitution. After much powerful and angry debate, the resolutions passed, and were inserted in the records of the senate. Subsequently, the majority changed, and these resolutions were by vote expunged.

1837. They are expunged.

March 4. Martin Van Buren and Richard M. Johnson inaugurated.

Mr. Jackson's second term being about to close, he expressed his determination to retire. He was succeeded by Martin Van Buren, who, during the last four years, had, as vice-president, presided with great ability in the senate; where, as a leader of the Jackson party, he had sat in silence, and borne the accusations and sneers of the opposition with unexampled self-possession. Richard M. Johnson was made vice-president.

1835. to 1837. Mania of land speculation.

After the public money went into the state banks, facilities too great before, were increased, whereby men might, by pledging their credit, possess themselves of money. A perfect madness of speculation was now rife throughout the land. The good old roads of honest industry were grass-grown, while men were hurrying into fortunes on the steam-cars of speculation. City lots were the rage. The old cities were extended on paper to limits that they will not reach in centuries; and new ones were surveyed, and some, where deep waters flowed, or rocky mountains rose. Yet they were mapped out, laid down in regular city lots, and duly numbered. And such were bought and sold. Fortunes were made in an hour, and by a single bargain. This alarming state of things, must, as was well foreseen, have its crisis. It came in 1837.

The revulsion causes great distress. May 3. Delegation of merchants apply to Mr. Van Buren.

Before this crisis, every one was making money. Now all were losing. Like a routed army, one fell back upon another till there was an universal dismay. A delegation of merchants from New York went to Washington in behalf of the city. They presented to the president a memorial in which they represented, with force and eloquence, the miseries in which their population were involved; and begged the president immediately to remit the regulations contained in the "specie circular," and to convene the national legislature. Mr. Van Buren did not regard the occasion as warranting either measure, and rejected the petition.

The "specie circular" was a treasury order issued in 1835, whose object was to secure the public in the sale of

PART IV. PERIOD III. CHAP. IV.

1837. The "specie circular."

lands, from the effects of the speculating mania; and it required, that specie should be paid for the government dues. This had produced an effect to take the gold and silver from the vaults of the banks, and carry it to the west, where speculators paid it for public lands. Merchants were obliged to pay the duties on their imports in specie; but where was it to be obtained? The government would not pay it out to its creditors; and a man who had an authenticated demand against the treasury of the United States could not get specie, while, if he owed, he was obliged to pay in gold and silver. This caused a state of even dangerous exasperation in the cities. The banks had been pressed to sustain their friends and supporters till they had gone beyond the limits of prudence in their issues, and those of the city of New York only held out till the hope was gone that something would be done by government, and then stopped specie payment. Their example was of necessity followed in every part of the Union.

May 10. The banks stop specie payment.

Mr. Van Buren convenes a special session.

The banks, where the public funds were deposited, shared the common fate, and the questions now arose how was the government to meet its current expenses, and what next should be done with the public purse? To decide these questions Mr. Van Buren issued his proclamation, convening congress, which accordingly met on the 4th of September.

Sept. 4. Congress meet.

"Sub-treasury bill."

In his message, the president recommended a mode of keeping the public money, which was eventually brought before congress, in what has been called the "sub-treasury bill." It did not pass, being by its opponents regarded as putting the public treasure wholly in the power of the executive. Its unpopularity was probably the principal cause of Mr. Van Buren's losing the next presidential election. An instalment of the surplus revenue, which, by an act of congress, 1836, was to have been distributed among the several states, was reserved for the exigences of the government, and treasury notes were to be issued. But no measure of relief to the people was attempted; and the friends of the administration contended that the case did not call for the interference of government, but for a reformation in the individual extravagance which had prevailed, and a return to the neglected ways of industry.

1836. Law respecting the surplus revenue.

1837. An instalment of the surplus revenue reclaimed.

Among the causes of pecuniary distress, was a dreadful fire, with which, in 1835, the commercial capital had been visited. It broke out in Exchange street, in the rear of the Merchant's Exchange, between eight and nine in the evening, and totally baffled all ordinary means of extinguishment. The air was piercingly cold, and, of course, the oxygen abundant. The fire spread rapidly in every direction, as well against the wind as with it; and it shot horizontally across the streets, perhaps fed by the gas with which they were lighted. Thus it swept houses with their furniture—stores with their goods—and banks and broker's offices with their contents.

1835. Dec. 16. Most destructive fire which has occurred in America—at New York.

Five hundred and twenty-nine buildings were burned, among which was the Exchange. The loss was estimated at seventeen millions of dollars. The mercantile houses, on whom with the insurance offices, it chiefly fell, did not generally fail at the time; for they were, with commendable humanity, sustained by the others; but the property was gone; and the loss, though in a measure equalized at the time, at length fell heavily on all.

Its effect, as a business calamity, felt in 1837.

On the 13th of August, the banks resumed specie payment. The specie circular had been virtually repealed.

1838. Aug. 13. Banks resume.

A party had been gradually formed in Canada who were opposed to the British government, and loudly demanded independence. Many persons on the northern frontier of the states of New York and Vermont, sympathizing with their neighbors in Canada, and regarding their cause as that of liberty and human rights, took the name of patriots, and formed secret associations, which they called "Hunter's Lodges," for the purpose of aiding the insurgents across the line in their attempts to establish their independence.

The revolt of some of the Canadians.

The sympathy of the neighboring Americans.

In the prosecution of this well meant but illegal interference in the concerns of a foreign power, a daring party of adventurers took possession of Navy Island, a small spot of ground containing about three hundred and fifty acres, and situated in the Niagara river, about two miles above the falls, and lying within the jurisdiction of Upper Canada. It was fortified so strongly by the adventurers, as to resist an attack upon it by Sir Francis Head, the commander of the British forces. The president of the United States, and the governor of the state of New York both issued proclamations, enjoining upon the inhabitants of the frontier to observe a strict neutrality.

1838. Jan. 5. Mr. Van Buren and Governor Marcy issue proclamations.

Notwithstanding these injunctions, arms and ammunition were procured, either by purchase or by stealth, and kept for the use of the insurgents. The party upon Navy Island fired upon the opposite shore of Canada; and boats were destroyed by force of their shot. The persons who were in possession of the island, amounting to seven hundred, were fully supplied with provisions, and had collected twenty pieces of cannon.

Navy Island.

Self-styled patriots. Their lawless proceedings.

These measures, on the part of the Americans, produced great excitement among the provincial authorities in Canada. A small steamboat, called the Caroline, was hired by the insurgents to ply between Navy Island and Schlosser on the American shore, in order to furnish the islanders with the means of carrying on the war. It began to run on the morning of the 29th of December, and during the evening of that day, a detachment of one hundred and fifty armed men from the Canada side, in five boats, with muffled oars, proceeded to Schlosser; drove the men who were on board the Caroline ashore, cut her loose from her fastenings to the wharf, and

1837. Dec. 29. Affair of the Caroline.

setting the boat on fire, let her float over the falls. In this enterprise, a man by the name of Durfee was killed; and it was said that one or two more were left in the steamboat when she went over the cataract.

Though the latter part of the story was never substantiated by proof, yet popular feeling was raised to a high pitch by the rumor.

M'Leod tried for the murder of Durfee. 1841.

The body of Durfee was carried to Buffalo; armed men assembled, and great excitement prevailed, but without any act of violence at the time. The feeling, however, has not yet subsided, as has been recently manifested in the trial of M'Leod for the murder of Durfee. Navy Island was evacuated on the 13th of January, 1838, and the British took it again into their possession on the 15th. Immediately on reaching the American shore, Van Rensselaer, the volunteer chief of the party, who had thus exposed the country to war, by trespassing on the territorial rights of another nation, was arrested at the suit of the United States, but admitted to bail.

1838. Navy Island evacuated.

Disputes of long standing respecting the north-west boundary.

Another source of disagreement between the United States and England is the northeastern boundary. The question has seemed on the eve of being forcibly contested, by the British authorities in New Brunswick, and the state government of Maine. Armed bands have been sent out on both sides to the "debateable land." The president of the United States sent General Scott to the scene of contention, and the affair was for the time quieted, but is as yet unsettled. That these exciting causes have thus far passed by, and a contest has not accrued, is regarded by the friends of peace as an evidence that war is not so much the order of the world at the present as in former times; and the hope is indulged that the day is near when man shall wholly cease to inflict its horrors on his fellow man, and when civilized nations shall settle upon some method to obtain redress, more rational than fire and sword;—some appeal more likely to do justice to the weak and oppressed, than that of arms.*

It is hoped the principles of peace are more prevalent now than formerly.

1840. The census.

The census of 1840, gave as the number of inhabitants in the United States, 17,068,666.

The presidential election was decided by vote of the electoral college, and a large majority was given to William Henry Harrison, whose social and public virtues had been rendered conspicuous by the various official stations a long and useful life. The good man loved his country and was pleased that his country loved him in return. Full of benevolent thoughts and patriotic anticipations, he bade adieu to a home which he had not enriched, and to a state which he had, and passing for the last time along the

* September, 1842.—A treaty has just been negociated, between Daniel Webster the American Secretary, and Lord Ashburton on the part of the British, which settles the question of the northeastern boundary.

beautiful windings of that familiar stream which he was to behold no more, he safely moved on to the capitol.

1841. March 4. Inauguration of Harrison and Tyler.

On the 4th of March he was inaugurated as president of the United States, with John Tyler of Virginia, who was made vice-president at the same time. His inaugural speech was long, and characteristic of the uprightness of his conscience, and the reverential trust with which he reposed himself and his country upon the Great Supreme.

April 4. Death of president Harrison.

From the capitol he went to the presidential mansion. Thousands flocked around him with congratulations and proffers of service, whose sincerity he was not prone to doubt, for he was himself sincere. The sunshine of public favor thus fell too brightly upon a head white with the frosts of age. Nature dissolved, and he expired just a month from the day of his inauguration.

Mr. Tyler succeeds to the presidency.

Mr. Tyler, by the constitution, became possessed of the office of president on the decease of the incumbent. He immediately left his home, repaired to Washington, and took the oath of office. He soon issued an address, as agreeable to the patriotic sentiments of the people, as the appointment of a day of public fasting, subsequently made, was to their religious feelings. The day was kept by all denominations; and many were the prayers, that God would forgive our national sins, especially our late forgetfulness, publicly to acknowledge Him in our ways; that He would not withdraw the favor which he had heretofore shown to our fathers and to us; nor suffer us to become the prey of a lawless disregard to order among the people, or of a spirit of self-aggrandizement among those who are, or would be elevated to office; but that in meekness, rulers may be sought out, who "fear God and hate covetousness;" and that once in power, they may, like Washington, resist its corrupting influences.

He appoints a day of public fasting.

THE

CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

Framed during the year 1787, by a convention of delegates, who met at Philadelphia, from the states of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

Preamble.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION I.

ALL legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

Legislative powers.

SECTION II.

I. The house of representatives shall be composed of members, chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

Its source.

II. No person shall be a representative, who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

Eligibility of representatives.

III. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to servi-

Manner and ratio of

tude for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative: and, until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

representation and taxation.

IV. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

Vacancies.

V. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker, and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

Speaker and impeachments.

SECTION III.

I. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years: and each senator shall have one vote.

Senators, two from each state.

II. Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

Arrangement for a choice of one-third every second year.

III. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

Eligibility to office.

IV. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

Presiding officer.

V. The senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

VI. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath, or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Power of trial in impeachments, and

VII. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the

penalty.

party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV.

I. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the congress may, at any time by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

Elections.

II. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall, by law, appoint a different day.

Meeting of congress.

SECTION V.

I. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

Their organization.

II. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Rules,

III. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journals.

IV. Neither house, during the session of congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

and adjournment.

SECTION VI.

I. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

Compensation and privileges.

II. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person, holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

Plurality of offices.

SECTION VII.

Origin of bills;

I. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

their course in becoming laws.

II. Every bill which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days, (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Approval and veto powers.

III. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment,) shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him; or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII.

Of the duties and power of congress.

The congress shall have power—

I. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts, and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States.

II. To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

III. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes.

IV. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States.

V. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures.

VI. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

VII. To establish post-offices and post-roads.

VIII. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

IX. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court.

X. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations.

XI. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land, or water.

XII. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years.

XIII. To provide and maintain a navy.

XIV. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

XV. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions.

XVI. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia, according to the discipline prescribed by congress.

XVII. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district, (not exceeding ten miles square,) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings :—and

XVIII. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department, or office thereof.

SECTION IX.

I. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the congress, prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person. *Personal taxes.*

II. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it. *Right of trial.*

III. No bill of attainder, or ex post facto law, shall be passed. *Attainder.*

IV. No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census, or enumeration, herein before directed to be taken. *Capitation.*

V. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels, bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another. *Commercial revenue.*

VI. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and *Treasury*

account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

Interdiction of titles.

VII. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X.

Conservation of powers vested in the Union.

I. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

Further defined.

II. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws: and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports and exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of congress. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

SECTION I.

The chief magistrate.

I. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

The manner of his election

II. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

by the people;

III. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than

by the house of representatives,

one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president: and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors, shall be the vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them by ballot, the vice-president.

and of the vice-president.

IV. The congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes: which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

V. No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president, neither shall any person be eligible to that office, who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Requirement for office.

VI. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president, and the congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

Proviso in case of death or removal.

VII. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Compensation, and

VIII. Before he enters on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath, or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

oath of office.

SECTION II.

I. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

His duties,

II. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

and powers in making treaties,

III. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

filling vacancies, and

SECTION III.

He shall, from time to time, give to the congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

convening of congress.

SECTION IV.

The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

Removal from office.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I.

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

The judiciary, and method of investiture.

SECTION II.

I. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between

Their powers.

two or more states, between a state and citizens of another state, between citizens of different states, between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

II. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the congress shall make.

Rules of procedure.

III. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trials shall be held in the state where the said crime shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the congress may, by law, have directed.

SECTION III.

I. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

Nature of treason, and

II. The congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

how punished.

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION I.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

Guaranty of state rights,

SECTION II.

I. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

and equalization.

II. A person, charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having the jurisdiction of the crime.

State requisition,

III. No person, held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law, or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

and surrender.

SECTION III.

New states,

I. New states may be admitted by the congress into this Union, but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the congress.

and public lands.

II. The congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory, or other property, belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

SECTION IV.

Protection of form of government.

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union, a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive, (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

Amendments of the constitution,

with provisos.

The congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the congress: Provided, that no amendment, which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall, in any manner, affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrages in the senate.

ARTICLE VI.

Recognition of antecedent claims.

I. All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution, as under the confederation.

Basis of government consolidated,

II. This Constitution and the laws of the United States, which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

and obligation of its officers.

III. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath, or affirmation, to support this Constitution;

and no religious test shall ever be required, as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution, between the states so ratifying the same.

Constitution.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Indpendence of of the United States of America, the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

The Constitution, although formed in 1787, was not adopted until 1788, and did not commence its operations until 1789. The number of delegates chosen to this convention was sixty-five, of whom ten did not attend, and sixteen refused to sign the Constitution. The following thirty-nine signed the Constitution :—

Time of adoption.

New Hampshire.—John Langdon, Nicholas Gelman.
Massachusetts.—Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.
Connecticut.—William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.
New York.—Alexander Hamilton.
New Jersey.—William Livingston, David Brearley, William Patterson, Jonathan Dayton.
Pennsylvania.—Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.

List of signers.

Delaware.—George Read, Gunning Bedford, jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.
Maryland.—James M'Henry, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer, Daniel Carroll.
Virginia.—John Blair, James Madison, jr.
North Carolina.—William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.
South Carolina.—John Rutledge, Charles C. Pinkney, Charles Pinkney, Pierce Butler.
Georgia.—William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President.*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

AMENDMENTS

To the Constitution of the United States, ratified according to the Provisions of the Fifth Article of the foregoing Constitution.

[Congress, at their first session under the Constitution, held in the city of New York, in 1789, proposed to the legislatures of the several States twelve amendments, ten of which only were adopted. They are the first ten of the following amendments; and they were ratified by three-fourths, the constitutional number, of the States, on the 15th of December, 1791. The eleventh amendment was proposed at the first session of the third Congress, and was declared in a message from the President of the United States to both Houses of Congress, dated the 8th of January, 1798, to have been adopted by the constitutional number of States. The twelfth amendment, which was proposed at the first session of the eighth Congress, was adopted by the constitutional number of States in the year 1804, according to a public notice by the Secretary of State, dated the 25th of September, 1804.]

ARTICLE I.

Religious toleration. Rights of the press; and petition.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the rights of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.

The militia.

A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.

Search warrants and seizures.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath, or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.

Presentment of grand juries.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury,

except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war, or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

Judicial safeguards.

ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

Trial by jury, and witnesses,

ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact, tried by jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

regulated by common law.

ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

Bail.

ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Line between constitutional

ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

and state rights drawn.

ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

Limitation of judicial power.

ARTICLE XII.

The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot, for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name, in their ballots, the person voted for as president, and, in distinct ballots, the person voted for as vice-president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of

Amendment to Art. II., Sect. IV. respecting elections.

all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such a number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such a majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death, or other constitutional disability of the president.

The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the senate shall choose the vice-president—a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person, constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

QUESTIONS.

CHRONOGRAPHICAL PLAN.

At what epoch of time does the History begin? Into how many parts is it divided?

Part I.—In what year does the first part begin? In what year does it close? On what subject does it treat? Into how many periods is it divided? When does the first period begin? What event marks it? When does the first period terminate? What event marks that time? When does the second period begin? When does it terminate? What event marks the termination? When does the third period begin? When does it terminate? What marks its termination?

Part II.—At what time does the second part begin? What event marks this point of time? In what year does it terminate? What event marks the termination? What are the subjects of the second part? Into how many periods is it divided? When does the first period begin? When does it terminate? What event marks the commencement of the period?—What its termination? At what time does the second period begin? When does it terminate? What marks its commencement? What its close? At what time does the third period begin? When does it end? What event marks the commencement? What the close?

Part III.—At what time does the third part begin? When does it close? What event marks its commencement? What its termination? On what subject does it treat? Into how many periods is it divided? When does the first period begin? When does it close? What marks the beginning of the first period? What its termination? When does the second period begin? When does it close? What marks its commencement? What its termination?

Part IV.—At what time does the fourth part begin? At what time does it terminate? On what subject does it treat? Into how many periods is it divided? At what time does the first period begin? When does it terminate? What event marks its commencement? What its end? At what time does the second period begin? At what time does it close? What event marks its beginning? What its conclusion? At what time does the third period begin? When does it terminate? What event marks the commencement? What the close?

What centuries does the entire History embrace? How many years of each century? How many years are embraced in the whole time? Name the events which fall in the fifteenth century—those which fall in the sixteenth—those in the seventeenth—those in the eighteenth—and those in the nineteenth.

INTRODUCTION.

CHAPTER I.

What are the limits of the country of which the history treats? By what other name is it called? Why is the latter name a proper one? Was the country inhabited when first known to the Europeans? Were the inhabitants civilized or savage? How far back can we trace their authentic history? On what can we form conjectures in relation to it? Who was the second father of the human family? In what part of the world was he found after the deluge? At what place do the eastern and western continents most nearly approach? Who were the early inhabitants of this region found to resemble? What is inferred from this fact? Why is it supposed that a more civilized race had preceded the inhabitants found by the Europeans? How then is it supposed that America was peopled?

Where did the more civilized inhabitants settle after being expelled from the north? What nations did not migrate? Did the Indians possess any books on manuscripts? What supplied their place? According to tradition, where did the Lenni Lenape dwell? When they came east to the Mississippi, what tribe did they meet with? By whom was the country east of the Mississippi inhabited? What is said of the Allegewi? What did

the Lenape ask? What did they then do? What course did the Allegewi adopt? What was the consequence? What became of the Allegewi? What did the victorious nations then do?

Which part did the Iroquois take? Which part did the Lenape occupy? What became the centre of their territory? Into how many tribes did they divide themselves, and what were they called? What country was occupied by the Turtle and Turkey, and what by the Wolf? When the country became peopled by the Europeans, what became of the Lenape or Delawares? What country did the Mohegans occupy? From whom were they supposed to descend? Where did the Iroquois first settle? Did they afterwards encroach on the Lenape or Delawares? What nation did they conquer? Did this nation descend from the Lenape or the Iroquois?

Did difficulty at length arise between the Delawares and Iroquois? What singular fact appears in regard to the Delawares? What reason did the Iroquois give for this? What reason did the Delawares give?

What did the Iroquois declare in council? What was the name of the distinguished Delaware chief? Does the tradition of the Indians appear to coincide with the most probable hypothesis concerning them? Which race is supposed to have come first from across Bhering's Straits? Where did they first settle? What hordes afterwards followed and expelled them? Where is it supposed that the Allegewi fled to? To what three primitive stocks may the languages of the aborigines be traced? Why is it supposed that a portion of the primitive race may have settled in the vales of the Mobile?

Which tribes have resisted the influence of civilization? Which have made some advances in it, and received Christianity? What has our own nation done in regard to the Indians?

CHAPTER II.

By what other names were the Lenni Lenape known? By what other name were the Mengwe known? What were they afterwards called? Of what did the Delawares claim to be the head? What nations did our forefathers find on the shores of the Atlantic? What Indians were earliest known to the English? When was the first settlement of the colony of Virginia made? What was then observed in regard to the Indians? Under whom were the tribes in the lowlands united? How many tribes did the confederacy contain? How many persons? Who was the great sachem of the confederacy? Where was the seat of his hereditary domains? Of what distinguished person was this the native land? What occurred soon after the settlement of Jamestown? Against whom were the tribes combined?

How many principal tribes were there in New England? Which was the first known? What distinguished chiefs did it produce? What part of the country did they occupy? Where was the seat of their sachems? What occurred in 1614? With what were the Pokanokets and the other New England tribes afflicted? What were the remaining four tribes in New England? Where was the principal seat of the Pawtuckets? What was their number? What part did the Massachusetts occupy?

Who was the principal person of this confederacy found by the English? Who was she? What occurred in 1621? Where was the seat of the Narragansetts? What is observed of their location? What of the character of the tribe? What is said of Canonicus? What country did the Pequods occupy? Who was their grand sachem? Where was his residence? What tribe was subject to the Pequods? What the name of its chief? Where his residence? What names were given to the Indians of northern New England? What is said of them? What tribes were found by the first settlers on the St. Lawrence? What do the Iroquois become? Where do they settle? What is said of the Five Nations? Which of them was the most warlike? Name the principal tribes of the southern Indians and their locations? What is said of the Natchez? What of the Shawanese?

PART I.

PERIOD I.

At what time does the first Period begin? What event marks that time? To what time does it extend? What event marks the close of the Period? By whom were the lands granted? To whom?

CHAPTER I.

On what ground did the European sovereigns claim the country? Was the new world discovered by accident? In what year was Columbus born? At what place? What was his character?

What is said of the spirit of the times? What first stimulated the mind of Columbus? What form did he attribute to the earth? To whom did he first offer his services, and with what result? What did he then do? What occurred at the court of Spain? Who finally offered him aid? How did she offer to raise the money? In what year did Columbus make his first voyage? On what day did he discover land? Where was it, and what was it called? What occurred in his third voyage?

Who gave name to the continent? In what year did Columbus make his fourth voyage? What occurred on his return? What pretension is set up by the Welsh? What by the Norwegians?

CHAPTER II.

What are the principal European nations who first discovered and settled America? Under whose reign was the continent discovered?—by whom?—in what year?—and where did they first land?

Who first explored the coast?—and when? Whom did Francis I. send out? Describe his voyage and discoveries? Who was the great discoverer under the French government? In what year did he make his first voyage? Describe his voyage. In what year did he make his second voyage?

Describe that voyage. What name was given to the newly discovered country? Who was appointed its viceroy? What was the character of the colonists? Who founded Quebec? In what year? What was the result? What were the French protestants called? What admiral befriended them?

Who did he send out to colonize them? In what year? Where did they land? What became of the colony? What did Coligni then do?

CHAPTER III.

What were the objects of Ponce de Leon? What country did he discover? In what year? Who visited the coast of South Carolina?

In what year? What did he do? Who attempted the conquest of Florida? In what year? What was the result? Who afterwards attempted it? In what year? What was the result? What animated the hope of De Soto? What became of him?—Of the remnant of his army? What expedition was sent out by Philip II. of Spain? Who commanded the expedition?

What place did he discover? In what year? What is said of this settlement? Describe the proceedings of Melendez? When the news of the massacre reached France, did the French government avenge it? Who attempted to punish the Spaniards for it? Which proved to be the first permanent settlement in the limits of the United States?

PERIOD II.

At what time does this period begin? At what time does it end? What event distinguishes the beginning of the period? What event marks its end?

CHAPTER I.

By what right did the English monarchy claim the country? To whom did Queen Elizabeth grant a patent? What rights did the patent confer? What did it require? What was the result of Gilbert's first voyage?

Give an account of the second. In what year did he die,—and how? Who pursued his plans? Who did he first send out? In what year, and where did they land? By whom were they received, and how? Who named Virginia, and why?

Who commanded the expedition sent out in 1585? Of how many ships did it consist? Where was a colony left? Under whom? What became of it? When was the second colony planted?—Under whom? Of how many did it consist? What became of the colony? What did Raleigh do with his patent? In what year? In what year did Gosnold visit New England? Give an account of his voyage—where he first landed, &c.

How did he find the natives? What did he carry back to England? To whom did Henry IV. grant a patent? Of what country? In what year? Give an account of the voyage of De Monts. Between whom did James I. divide the country? Which part did he grant to the London, and which to the Plymouth company? What did he authorize the companies to do? When did the Plymouth company send out the first vessel? What became of her? Whom did they send out in 1607? What was the result?

How long from the discovery of North America to this period? Was this then an English settlement?

CHAPTER II.

Who commanded the expedition sent out by the London company in 1607? Of how many ships and men did it consist? What distinguished man came with it? Give a sketch of his early life and character. What bay did the fleet, under Newport, enter? What river did they explore? What did they call it? Where did they fix the first settlement?—At what time? What is said of the government of the colony?

Who was the first president? What is said of him? Who succeeded him? What course did the neighboring Indians take? What was the condition of the colonists? What did the London company direct? What did Smith do? Who was the principal chief of the neighboring savages? Where was his residence? What was the result of Smith's expedition?

When captured, how did he interest the Indians? What impression did he make on them? How was he treated by them? Who finally decided his fate? State the circumstances attending it. By whom was he rescued?

Was his captivity of advantage to the colony? What was the state of the colony on his return? What part of the country did he explore? Of what tribe did he hear of? What happened on his return?

CHAPTER III.

What change was now effected in the charter of the company?

How many new adventurers were sent out? What was their character? Who was appointed governor? What happened to the fleet? How many reached Jamestown? In what situation did Smith find himself? How did Pocahontas conduct toward the colony? How did she save Smith's life a second time? What happened to Smith soon after? What did he do? What happened after his departure? How many colonists did Smith leave? How many remained after six months? How

did Sir Thomas Gates and his companions reach the colony? In what condition did they find the colonists? What plan did they adopt? What prevented its execution?

At what time did Lord Delaware leave the colony? By whom was he succeeded? Who joined the colony soon after? By whom, and in what manner was Pocahontas betrayed and made prisoner? Whom did she marry? At what time? What were the consequences to the colony? Whence did she go after marriage? What are the incidents of her history after reaching England? Who succeeded Dale as governor? In what year? What is said of his administration? Who succeeded him? In what year? When was the first general assembly called, and by whom? How many boroughs were represented? Was this measure agreeable to the colonists? What expedient was adopted to augment the colony? Whom did King James introduce into the colony? At what period did slavery begin, and how?

CHAPTER IV.

In what year was the Hudson river discovered? By whom? In whose service was he? In what year was Quebec founded? By whom? What expedition did he undertake? What lake did they traverse? Where was the main battle fought? What became of the Plymouth company? What occurred in the voyage of Smith and Hunt to the north? Why the name New England? What expedition did Argall undertake? With what success?

PERIOD III.

In what year does this Period commence? In what year does it end? What event marks the commencement? What its termination?

CHAPTER I.

At what period of the history have we now arrived? What event in the history of the world most affected social institutions? What tended to the corruption of Christianity? Who overran the Roman Empire? In what centuries? What changes in the social system followed?

What arrested the course of the feudal tyranny? What is its character? What important events transpired in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries? What monarch of England favored the reformation? Why did he so favor it? Who translated the Bible into English? In what year? Who succeeded Henry? What was done in his reign? Who succeeded Edward VI.? In what year? What was her character, and consequences of her conduct? Into how many parts were the Protestants divided? What distinguished one from the other? In what year did Mary die? The consequences?

Who succeeded Mary? What were her private feelings? How did she find the people? What was done by the parliament? What court did they create? Who was tried before the court? Who presided? What were the points of difference? Who were the Separatists? Who plead the rights of conscience before the Court of High Commission? To what sect did they belong? What was the condition of the Puritans?

CHAPTER II.

What law was passed in 1592? Who did not comply with the law? Where did they decide to emigrate? What was the result of the first attempt? When was the second attempt made? Under what circumstances, and with what success? What occurred on the passage? Where did they settle?

To what place did they afterwards remove? What induced them to remove from Holland? To what country did they wish to emigrate? What measures did they adopt? Who were their leading men? What reasons did they give why they should succeed? By whose aid was the patent obtained? How did they raise money for the enterprise?

How many vessels were prepared? What were their names? Did they accommodate all? What transpired previous to their separation? From what place did they depart? To what part did they sail? Who were their leading men? What occurred after sailing from Southampton? From whence did they finally sail? On what day? In what vessel? At what place in the United States did they first land? On what day? What place had been selected? Why a change? Where did they finally land? What was the first act on arriving in the harbor? What covenant did they sign?

What great principle of government did this compact set forth? How many persons arrived in the May Flower? Who was chosen governor? Who captain? On what day did they land? In what condition did they find themselves? What was undertaken by some of the number? What dangers did they encounter from the savages? What from the elements?

On what day did they land on the rock of Plymouth? From what did they name the place? What time did they begin to build? Into how many families did they divide the company? What transpired during the winter? How many of the company perished? Were they disheartened? Did they wish to return in the spring?

CHAPTER III.

How did the pilgrims regard the destruction of the savages by the plague? Who first welcomed them? Whom did he afterwards bring with him? Who was the sachem of the Pokanokets? Who went out to confer with him?

What was the result of the embassy? Who went on an embassy to Massasoit? To what place did they go? What was their object? What present did they make? What was the reply of Massasoit? What the advantage of the traffic? What vessel arrived in November? How many persons did she bring over? Why did Massasoit cultivate the

friendship of the English? Who was the great chief of the Narragansetts? What did he send to Governor Bradford? For what object? What did the governor send in return? At what time does Winslow visit Massasoit? For what reason? Who accompanied him? How did he find the chief?

How did Massasoit receive Winslow? What did Winslow do for him? What important fact was communicated? What measures were taken to arrest the conspiracy? Was the conspiracy provoked? By whom? Why did it particularly alarm the pilgrims? What was said by the company in London? What measures did they adopt? What did the colonists do? What did the company receive for their interest? Why did the colony now begin to flourish? What was the form of their government? What form did it afterwards assume? By whom were the pilgrims joined. Did Robinson join the colony? In what year did he die? At what place? How many inhabitants were there in the colony ten years after its settlement? Did the colony now flourish? What was the character of the pilgrims?

CHAPTER IV.

By whom was the charter granted to the Plymouth council? At what time? For what was it granted? What territory did it cover? What had the territory previously been called? What was it afterwards called? From what patent were the other grants in New England derived? How were the affairs of the corporation managed? Who was made president of the grand council of Plymouth? What was his character and probable motives? What patent did Mason procure? What patent did Gorges and Mason procure in the next year? What name was given to the tract? What settlements were made under this grant?

CHAPTER V.

How were the Puritans treated under James I.? What were the consequences? Who patronized the Massachusetts settlement? In what year was Cape Ann settled? From whom was the patent for Massachusetts obtained? Who became the pioneer of the Salem settlement? In what year? Who had selected the site? What did the proprietors do in 1629? What was the company called? When was the first general court held in England? Who was made governor?

When was Charlestown founded? How many persons sailed for America this year? What feelings did the new settlements produce in England? What enterprise was started? What objection was raised? How was it obviated? Who was chosen governor? What is said of Winthrop? Whom only did the company wish to colonize? How many persons emigrated? Where did they land? How do they find the settlers? What do they decide upon? How many churches are established in Massachusetts at the close of 1632? What were the consequences of the hardships of the colonists?

For what did the royal charter provide? What regulations were agreed upon? Who was chosen governor? Who deputy governor? Who were allowed to vote at first? What was decided in May, 1631? What reason was given for this? To what did the early settlers owe their elevation of character? Who first inculcated liberal doctrines? Where did he first settle? In what year? What Indian chiefs came this year to Boston? What did Uncas say?

Who visited the pilgrims at Plymouth? For what object? Who received them? With whom had the northern colonies intercourse? What effect had the prosperity of the colonies in England? How many came out in August, 1633? What was the early government of Massachusetts? What did it become? In what year? Were the representatives elected by all the people? When the representatives met, what was the body called? How many courts were holden in each year? What was made the basis of the criminal code? Who succeeded James I.? In what year? What was his character? How many emigrants came out in 1635? What distinguished person came out at this time? What honor was conferred upon him by the colony? In what year?

CHAPTER VI.

What was the character of Roger Williams? When did he arrive? What did he declare to be the only subjects of human laws? What did he say of interference with religious feelings? What did he condemn? What was he called? Where was he invited to settle? Who forbade it? What did Williams do? What proceeding did the court take? What sentence did the court finally pronounce? Did the people favor Williams?

What did the authorities finally do? Where did Williams take refuge? How did Governor Winslow receive him? To what did he advise him? To whom did Williams then appeal? With what success? What land was ceded to him? What did they name the place? What service did Williams afterwards render to the Massachusetts colony?

CHAPTER VII.

Who claimed to be the discoverers of Connecticut river? Who probably discovered it? Why did the Indians of the valley desire the presence of the English?

In what year did the sachem Wahquimacut visit Boston to invite the English? Did governor Winthrop accept the offer? Who did? Who first advised the Plymouth colony to settle in the valley of the Connecticut? What did the Dutch afterwards do? Where did they erect the first trading-house? What did they call it? In what year did the Plymouth colony settle at Windsor? Who commanded the expedition? What occurred on his passage up the Connecticut river? To whom did the grand council patent Connecticut?

Who became agent for the patentee? What was he ordered to do? What territory did the patent cover? Who emigrated from Massachusetts bay in 1633, to settle on the Connecticut river? What places were first settled?

What was the result of the first attempt? Did they abandon the enterprise, or persevere? Where did Winthrop make a settlement? What obstacle did he meet with? What did he call the place? And why? Did differences arise in the first settlements? How were they adjusted? Who is regarded as the principal founder of Connecticut? What was his character? Why did he leave England?

After he left England, did his congregation follow him? What occurred at Cambridge when he again met part of them? What were his motives for leaving the Massachusetts colony? Who was associated with Hooker? At what time did the company leave Newtown? Where did their route lie? Was it attended with difficulties? At what place did they locate? What was to be done? How was it accomplished?

CHAPTER VIII.

What is the conduct of the Pequods? Whom do they murder? Where? What depredations do they commit? In what year was war declared? By whom? How many towns were now settled? How many troops was each to furnish? Who was chosen to command them? What route did the troops take? How many warriors were furnished by Miantonomoh? How many by Uncas? How many English were actually embodied? Who guided them to the fort? On what day was the battle fought? Describe the battle. How many perished? What occurred as Mason was retreating to the river?

What was done by the subjects of Sassacus? What became of the chief? Who joined Mason? What was effected by the united force? How many Pequods were destroyed? What was done with the captives? How was the land of the Pequods regarded? And their tribe? How was the event commemorated in New England? What effect had the war on the colonies? In what year did the colonies of Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield unite? What did their constitution ordain? Was church-membership made necessary to vote? How were taxes to be laid? Why has Connecticut been called the land of steady habits?

CHAPTER IX.

Who were the founders of the colony of New Haven? How did Davenport become favorable to the reformation? What were his views of theology? Who was his near friend? In what year did they arrive in Boston? In what year did they reach Quinnipiac? What difficulties did they encounter? Where did they worship on the first Sabbath? Where did they afterwards meet? What did they sign? To what did they bind themselves? What was done in the succeeding year? How were the governor and magistrates to be elected? Who was elected the first governor? What did they finally call the place?

CHAPTER X.

Who appeared to sow discord in the colony? What principles did she first lay down? With what was she charged? Who censured her? What doctrine did she finally hold? What is this doctrine called? Who defended her?

Against whom was the opposition most violent? Who succeeded Vane as governor? What prevented the departure of the troops for the Pequod war? What was done in this extremity? To what colony did she flee? Where, and how did she finally meet her death? At what English university were the learned men of New England educated? In what year did they found a college at Newtown? What was the place afterwards called? Who made a bequest to the college? In what year?

Where do the followers of Mrs. Hutchinson settle? From whom do they obtain the grant? By whose influence? On what principles did they establish the government? Where did another portion of Mrs. Hutchinson's followers settle? In what year were the scattering settlements of New Hampshire united with the colony of Massachusetts?

CHAPTER XI.

From what country was Delaware settled? In what year? Who settled near Cape Henlopen? In what year? In what year was Maryland settled? By whom? At what place? Give the history of George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore. After his death, who obtained the revival of his patent? What country did it embrace? Who was appointed governor? In what year was the settlement made? At what place? What policy does Calvert adopt? What effect had this on the prosperity of the colony? What was Lord Baltimore's conduct towards the colony? How was it appreciated?

What did Lord Baltimore offer to emigrants from other colonies? Who interfered to check the prosperity of the colony? How was it done? How early were the English engaged in the slave-trade? What was the state of public sentiment at that time? In what year were slaves first brought to Virginia? By whom? In what year did Sir Francis Wyatt arrive? What did he bring with him? What were its general provisions? What effect had this on the colony? In what year was the first cotton planted in Virginia? Who was Opechancanough? What plan did he form? How long was he in maturing it? At what time was it to be executed? What was the success of it? What partially defeated it? What consequences flowed from this attempt?

When was the London company dissolved? By whom? What reasons were given for this act? Who attempted to frame a code of laws

for the colony? What prevented? In what year did James die? Under whose authority did the Virginians fall? What was the character of his measures? Whom did he send over to govern? What did the colonists do? What measures did the king then adopt? Who superseded Harvey? In what year? What was done in consequence of the short tobacco crop? Who succeeded Wyatt? In what year? What great principle did the colonists now assert?

CHAPTER XII.

How was the settlement of New England in its infancy? How was it regarded by the Puritans in England? What was the consequence? How did the government view these proceedings? What information was communicated by those who returned from Massachusetts? What measures did the king take to bring the colonies into subjection? What did this council decree? Whom did it appoint governor-general? Did he leave England? Against which colony were the measures of Laud first directed? What measures did the colony adopt? What were the characters of Gorges and Mason? What their proceedings against the colony of Massachusetts? What was the result?

What measures did the council adopt to prevent emigration? Were they effectual? What tended to increase emigration? How many came over to New England in 1638? Did the nobility wish to emigrate? What laws did they wish made in the colonies? What reply did Mr. Cotton make in the name of the court of Massachusetts? Was the plan for hereditary nobility adopted? What demand did the council in England make on Governor Winthrop? What reply did he make? What wrought a favorable change for the colonies? What did King Charles attempt in Scotland? What was the result? What was the fate of Laud?

Did the long parliament favor, or oppose the Puritans? Did the colonists seek the support and aid of England? Whom did the Westminster assembly of divines invite to join them? Did they accept? What measures was now adopted by the colonies for their mutual safety? What colonies appointed commissioners? In what year did they meet? At what place? Why did not Rhode Island join? What was the name, or style adopted? Of how many members was the first congress composed? How often was it to assemble? What were its powers? After what time was the assembly nominally discontinued? Of what may it be considered the germ?

PART II.

PERIOD I.

At what time does Part II. begin? To what year does it extend? At what time does Period I. begin? At what time does it end? What event marks the beginning of the Period? What its termination?

CHAPTER I.

In whose administration did the Virginians enjoy liberty and prosperity? What occurred in the Virginia colony in 1644? How many Indians perished? What was the fate of Opechancanough? In what year was Charles I. beheaded? Who assumed the management of affairs in England? What measure did he devise to oppress the colonies? What did this act require? What did it prohibit? In what year was Charles II. restored? Under whom was Berkeley exercising the authority of governor of Virginia? What did he do?

How did the restoration affect the interests of the Virginia colony? Into what classes were the colonists of Virginia divided? Which side did Berkeley espouse? In what way were the rights of the people abridged? What did the assembly do? What did this take from the people? What right alone remained? What grant did Charles II. make on his accession in 1660? What grants did he make afterwards in the colony of Virginia? What Indian hostilities began in 1675? What was the conduct of John Washington? What was the sentiment of Berkeley?

What was the conduct of the Indians? What was the desire of the people? Whom did they wish for their leader? Did Berkeley sanction it? What did he do? What did the people demand? Did they prevail? Under whom did the people rally in arms? What was the conduct of Berkeley? And what the reply of Bacon? How was the matter arranged? What was afterwards the conduct of Berkeley? What the fate of Bacon and his party? What did Charles II. say of Berkeley?

Who was appointed governor of Virginia under the new charter? What was the character of his government? How did the colony escape from his oppression? Who succeeded Lord Culpepper? In what year? What was the ruling motive of his conduct? What cause of alarm now disturbed the colonies? Where was the grand council held? What was the result of the negotiations?

CHAPTER II.

Who came to Maryland and produced an insurrection? Where did Governor Calvert take refuge? How long before he returned? In the contest between the king and the parliament, which side did the colonies of New England espouse? Which side did the south-

ern colonies take? For what were commissioners appointed? To what did this give rise? Which side adhered to the proprietor? In what year did he surrender the government? What was declared by the assembly of the victorious party? What other sects were persecuted? What course did Cromwell take? Who possessed the actual power? Whom did Lord Baltimore appoint to act as his successor? To whom did the colony finally submit? What did the representatives of the colony finally declare? What step was taken by Charles II.? Whom did Charles make governor of the province? In what year? In what year did Cecil Calvert, the second Lord Baltimore, die? What steps were taken by the people? What was forbidden by the English ministry? What was the determination of James II.? And what measures did he adopt? In what year did the revolution occur? Who succeeded James II.? What did the agent of Lord Baltimore now demand? Did the people acquiesce?

CHAPTER III.

What is the geographical position of New York? Who discovered the Hudson river? In what year? In whose service was he at the time? In what year was a company of merchants fitted out to trade with the newly discovered regions? Where was the first fort constructed? Who discovered that Long Island is not connected with the main land? In what year did the Dutch sail up the Hudson? Where did they first build a fort? Where did they finally locate?

What name was given to the settlement on Manhatten Island? Who was its first governor? To whom did the Dutch send an envoy? What was the result? What was the name of the new company created by the states' general? What did the states' general decree? To whom was the manor, embracing Fort Orange, conveyed? In what year? How much was it afterwards extended? Who settled Lewistown, near the Delaware? Why did Governor Minuets leave the colony? Who succeeded him? Who interfered with the Dutch on the Connecticut river? Who on the banks of the Delaware? Who succeeded Van Twiller? What was his conduct to the Indians? What were the consequences?

What tribe friendly to the Dutch interfered? With what success? In what year? What was the feeling towards Governor Keift?—what his fate? Who succeeded him? In what year does he relinquish the territory at Hartford? What was divided between the two parties? Who settled Newcastle in Delaware? What occurred between the Swedes and the Dutch? In what year did Governor Stuyvesant sail from New Amsterdam to conquer the Swedes? Was he successful? As the colony increased, what feeling in regard to political rights grew up among them? What did the people demand? What course did the governor pursue? What was the decision of the "Nineteen." What were some of the causes which retarded the prosperity of the Dutch settlements? What grant does Charles II. make to his brother, Duke of York? In what year? Who was dispatched to take possession? Where were the commissioners landed? What did he next do? When asked to surrender, what was the reply of the Dutch governor? What was the result? What was New Amsterdam then called? What settlement under the Dutch finally surrendered? What coast was now in the possession of the English?

CHAPTER IV.

After whom was Pennsylvania named? In what year was Penn born? What occurred while he was at Oxford school? At what age did he enter Oxford college? Under whose preaching was his religious character formed? What were the feelings of his father? In what year did he travel abroad? In what countries? With what result? Where does his father next send him? What were the incidents of his life while in Ireland, and immediately on his return? What compromise did his father propose to him, and what his reply? What happened to him in the year 1670? On the death of the father, who was appointed guardian of the son?

In what year, and whom does he marry? From whom does Penn obtain a grant of Pennsylvania? What are the boundaries of the grant? In what year is it made? What other grants are made soon after? In what year did Penn sail for his new province? Where did he land? How was he received? What was his assurance? What place did he next visit? Where did Penn call the first assembly? In what year?

What was required of each member as a religious test? What new principle did Penn introduce into the criminal code? How long did the assembly sit? How many laws did they pass? What directions were given to Colonel Markham? Give an account of the council held by Penn with the Indians. What did Penn declare to the Indians? What did the chiefs then promise? After this, where did Penn reside? In what year does Penn call a second assembly? What assurances did he give them? What claims are set up by Lord Baltimore? Are they allowed? In what year does Penn return to England?

CHAPTER V.

Who made a grant of New Jersey? To whom was it granted? In what year? Why was it called New Jersey? In what year was the constitution framed? Who was made governor? Where was the seat of government?

What difficulties occurred in 1672? In what way did William Penn become interested in New Jersey? What course of policy did he adopt? With what success? Who purchased East Jersey? In what year? Of whom did the purchasers obtain a new patent?

What in England tended to the settlement of East Jersey? Who usurped the government of the Jerseys? In what year? How did he oppress the people? What was the course of Penn? In what year was Billinge made governor? When did he call the first assembly? What did the people do?

CHAPTER VI.

How does Miantonomoh seek the life of Uncas? Failing in his attempt, what does he next do? After Uncas captures him, how does he dispose of him? What does the court do with him? What is his fate? Who obtained the charter for Rhode Island and Providence Plantations? In what year? By whose aid was it obtained? Did this settle the affairs of the colony? Why not? Who again went over to obtain a new charter? In what year? What noble example did Rhode Island set? Give the character of Williams and some of the incidents of his life.

Who succeeded the long parliament in England? In what year? In what way did he injure the interests of the colonies? What were the promient provisions of the navigation act? What further acts were passed in 1663? In what year did Connecticut apply for a charter? Whom did she send to England for this purpose?

What was the result of Winthrop's mission? What was the date of the charter granted by Charles II.? What colony besides Hartford was included? Did the New Haven colony at first object? In what year was the union effected? Who was elected the first governor? For how many successive years was he chosen? Who was sent over to command the expedition against the New Netherlands? In what year? What was the nature of the commission of which he was the head? How did the colonists regard this commission? Which colony most strenuously opposed it? What finally became of the commission? Under whom did Elliot receive his first religious impressions? In what year did he come to Boston?

At what age? What were his objects, and what his first efforts for the conversion of the Indians? What had he accomplished in 1655? Were there many converts in 1674? With what feelings did the chiefs regard christianity?

CHAPTER VII

What was the parentage of King Philip? What embittered him against the English? Of what tribe did he become the chief? What alarmed and united the savage tribes? What tribe unites with Philip? Who was its chief? Who betrayed the designs of Philip to the English? What was his fate? By whom was the murder committed? What town was first attacked by Philip? In what year? What was the result?

What did the commissioners who met at Boston decide? How many men were to be raised? What was the first movement made by the troops? What did the commissioners offer for the head of Philip? To what place did the Indian king retreat? What befel Captain Hutchinson? How many men were slain? Give an account of the battle of Bloody Brook. At what time was it fought? What was done by the Springfield Indians? What was now the condition of the colonies? What was the object of the Indians?

What was the conduct of Conanchet in 1675? How many men proceeded to attack him? By whom were they commanded? Where was his fort located? Describe the position of the fort, and the way it was approached. Also, the battle and the number slain on either side. What became of the tribe, and what was the fate of Conanchet? What was the state of the war in the spring of 1676? How did Philip attempt to arouse the Mohawks? Did Philip's enmity subside? By whom was he finally killed? At what place? How many inhabitants of New England were slain in this war? How many towns destroyed? What were the consequences of Philip's war to the whites? What to the savages? What was the fate of the converted Indians? How many towns did they lose? Who adhered to them?

CHAPTER VIII.

To whom does the term "regicides" apply? How many of the regicides came to this country? What were their names? Where did they find refuge? What remarkable service was rendered to the inhabitants by Goffe? Were either of the judges betrayed by the colonists?

What occurred between the government of Massachusetts and Gorges in the year 1677? What claims of Mason were revived in 1675? When was New Hampshire made a royal province? By whom? What were the conditions of the charter? What did the colony declare? Whom did Mason select as governor of the colony? In what year was he sent? Did he carry out his schemes?

Did Massachusetts regard the navigation acts? What was she summoned to do? Who was sent over to enforce the acts? In what year? With what success? In what year was he again sent? What was demanded of the colony? What instructions were given to the agents? What was the origin of the two parties which sprung up in Massachusetts? What were they called? Was the charter finally annulled? In what year did Charles die? Who succeeded him? What did he declare? What did he do? What was the conduct of the colonists? Who was the first governor-general of New England? By whom was he succeeded? In what year?

What were Andross' professions? What was said of him? What did he do in regard to the press? What did he demand of the colony of Connecticut? In what year? What occurred in regard to the charter? Where was the principal seat of his tyranny? What colonies were added to his jurisdiction? What transpired in England in the year 1688? What measures were taken at Boston on

bearing of the revolution in England? How did the removal of Andross affect New Hampshire? What did the people desire on the death of Mason? How were their wishes frustrated? In what year was Allen made governor? After the revolution what colonies resumed their charters? To what colonies were the old charters denied?

CHAPTER IX.

Who was the first governor of New York after the surrender of the Dutch? Who succeeded him? In what year? In what year did the Dutch re-take New York? In what year was it restored to the English? What steps did the Duke of York take to confirm his title? Whom did he appoint governor? What territory did he claim? Where is he repulsed? In what year was Andross removed? Who succeeded him? What was his policy towards the colony?

When the Duke of York succeeded to the crown of England, did he favor his own colony? What effects did the revolution produce in the colony? What was the conduct of Captain Leisler? Did the magistrates of New York oppose or favor him? What dispatches fell into his hands? What course did the people at Albany adopt? Who subdued them? Whom did King William commission as governor of New York? In what year? What was his character? What was the fate of Leisler and his son-in-law? In what year did congress meet in New York?

CHAPTER X.

What right did the Puritans believe themselves to have? What new sect in England came over? Who was their founder? How was he treated? What Quaker women arrived in Boston? What treatment did they receive? How many came soon after? What steps were taken by the commissioners? Did the Quakers persevere? What was the result? What did Christison tell the tribunal? Was he finally released? Who soon after interfered?

CHAPTER XI.

What missionaries came over from France? What two objects did they attempt to unite? By whom were their efforts seconded? Who went to the country of the Hurons in 1634? With what success? What places were then settled? In what year was Montreal founded? Between what years were the Hurons visited by the missionaries? How many missionaries visited them? Who went on a mission to the Mohawks? With what success? In what year was peace made with the Five Nations? What did they declare? In what year did Jouges go on a mission to the five nations? What was the result? What nation makes war? What nation destroyed St. Josephs? In what year?

In what year was the massacre of St. Ignatius? What was the fate of St. Louis? Of the two missionaries? What was the bearing of the Mohawks? What outrages did they commit? By what means did the missionaries gain access to the Iroquois? Where did Le Moyne finally settle? What nations received the missionaries at this time? How did the attempt of the French to colonize New York terminate? In what year? What voyage of discovery was made by father Allouez in 1665? What occurred at the great village of the Chippewas?

How was he received by the Indians? What mission did he found? What information did he collect concerning the country? Of what river did he hear? What did he recommend? Who founded the first French settlement within the limits of the United States? At what place? In what year? What was done by Marquette in 1671? What country does he explore in 1673? How was he received by the natives on the Mississippi? What other rivers do they discover? How far down does he descend?

By what route does he return to Green Bay? In what year? Where did Marquette die? How? In what year? What is now believed by the Indians? Who accompanied Marquette? To whom did Joliet communicate an account of their discoveries? At what place? To what resolution did the information give rise? What did La Salle do after his return from France? What route did he take up the lakes, and what settlements did he found? After sending back his furs, what further enterprises did he prosecute? What Jesuit accompanied him? Where did he part with Hennepin? For what purpose? What did Hennepin explore? On the return of La Salle to the Illinois river, what further enterprises did he pursue? What did he call the new country? On his return to France, what undertaking was confided to him? Where was he landed? What was the manner of his death? In what year?

CHAPTER XII.

Was Charles II. scrupulous in his grants of land? In what year did he grant Carolina? To whom was it given? What additional trust did the company receive? What further grant did King Charles make in 1667? To whom was the task of framing the government assigned? Who was invited to assist?

Where was the first settlement made? By whom? In what year? Where was the other colony located? From whence did it come? What was its success? By whom was the settlement continued? Who was their first governor? How many inhabitants did the colony contain in 1666? How did the constitution of Locke and Shaftsbury succeed? In what year was it abrogated? Who was the first proprietary governor of Carolina? In what year was Charleston founded? What settlers were sent out by King William? In what year? Where did they settle?

CHAPTER XIII.

What gave rise to King William's war? In what part of the country did the French establish themselves in 1686? In what year did the Iroquois surprise Montreal? How many of the inhabitants were slain? What was said of the Five Nations at this time?

What tribe of Indians attacked Dover, in New Hampshire? Give an account of the death of Major Waldron? What expedition was sent out from Quebec by Governor Frontenac? In what year? What was its success? How many prisoners perished? Who was a distinguished leader of this expedition? What place was destroyed by the second party sent from Quebec? What by the third? What means did the colonies adopt for defense? Where did congress assemble? What was the first measure adopted for protection? What defeated it? What was the second? What success attended it?

What means did Massachusetts adopt to relieve the treasury? What were the consequences of failure? What was done to preserve the friendship of the Indians? In what year did Massachusetts receive a new charter? What territory was embraced in the new charter? What privileges did it grant to the people? What rights did it reserve to the sovereign?

PERIOD II.

At what time does this Period begin? At what time does it close? What event marks its commencement? What its conclusion.

CHAPTER I.

At what time was the new charter of Massachusetts received at Boston? By whom were the officers under it nominated? Who was nominated for governor? Of what place was he a native? How did he acquire fame and wealth? What singular delusion appeared in Massachusetts about 1645? Where did it begin? In what year did it prevail extensively in Salem?

Who were at first supposed to be witches? Did governor Phipps and the clergy give countenance to the belief in witches? What was the common method of proceeding on the trials? What were the proceedings of Samuel Parris? How many were executed in Salem? What ground did the general court take in these matters? With what effect?

What steps did Massachusetts take on the subject of general education? What was done by Connecticut? In what year? In what year was the general law passed on the subject? What did that law ordain for common schools? What for grammar schools? Who proposed the establishment of a college in Connecticut in 1654? Who left a legacy for the establishment of the college? In what year? Where was the school located?

How was the charter of incorporation obtained? In what year? Who were made the trustees? Where did they first meet? What did they do? In what year was the location changed to New Haven? Why was the present name adopted? Which are now the most flourishing institutions in the United States? What is said of Colonel Fletcher's attempt to take command of the Connecticut militia? In what year was the first Episcopal church established in Connecticut? At what place? In what year did the clergy of Connecticut meet at Saybrook? What did they call the constitution which they formed?

CHAPTER II.

In what year did King William's war terminate? What was the peace called? What was stipulated? What did Louis XIV do in Europe to provoke a new war? What did he do in America? In what year was war declared by Queen Anne? What did the Indians effect in Maine? What at Deerfield in Massachusetts? What clergyman was taken prisoner? What was the fate of his wife?

What was the conduct of Benjamin Church? What did he accomplish? In what year? What was proposed by Governor Vaudreuil in 1705? What was the consequence? Describe the expedition of Colonel Nicholson in 1710. In what manner were the settlements in New York protected? Who among the settlers exercised great influence over the Indians? In what year was Queen Anne's war closed? By what treaty? What was ceded to the English by the treaty? What were the consequences of this war? What new settlers came over from Germany in 1710?

In what year did Queen Anne die? Who succeeded her? What step is taken by Massachusetts to enlarge her boundaries? What plan was adopted by Father Rasles to escape from the English authority? What depredations did the Indians commit? What was the consequence? Between what years did these events occur? Who was the last of the Jesuit missionaries? In what year was peace concluded with the Eastern Indians?

CHAPTER III.

In what year did Governor Sloughter, of New York, die? Who succeeded him? What was the character of Fletcher? What course did he take on the subject of religion? Who succeeded Fletcher? In what year? To what particular subject was his attention directed? Who was appointed to command the expedition against the pirates? What did he do? What was his fate?

What occasioned difficulties in the Jerseys? In what years? What did Queen Anne then do? Whom did Queen Anne appoint governor of the Jerseys? What was his conduct and his character? Who succeeded him? In what year? Who succeeded Lovelace? In what year? Who succeeded Schuyler as governor of New York? What policy did he adopt in regard to trade? Whom did it displease? Where was a trading-house established? What did it afterwards become? Who succeeded Burnet? After the death of Montgomery, who assumed the reins of government? What did he permit to the French? In what year did George I. die? Who succeeded him?

CHAPTER IV.

How was Penn treated by James II.? For

what ends did he use his influence? After James was deposed, of what was Penn suspected? What measures were adopted against him? When was he restored? In what year did Penn again visit the colony? How did he find it? What did he do? What were the provisions of the new charter? Were they acceptable? What course did The Territories adopt? In what year did Penn return to England? In what year was Maryland restored to Lord Baltimore?

CHAPTER V.

What cause gave rise to a division among the people of Carolina? What was declared in regard to marriages? What was the conduct of the Huguenots? Who was sent out as governor to reconcile differences? With what success? How were the difficulties finally adjusted? How was rice introduced into Carolina? Where did the proprietary governor reside? How did he govern the northern province? Who introduced the Quaker doctrines into North Carolina? What expedition was undertaken on the breaking out of Queen Anne's war? In what year? With what success? What consequences followed?

What expedition did the governor next undertake? With what success? In what year? Who attacked Charleston? In what year? With what success? What plan was formed in 1712? How far was it executed? How was succor afforded? What was the result of the war? What combination was formed against South Carolina in the year 1715? How many warriors did it embrace?

What was the conduct of Governor Craven? What was the result of the war? How did this war give rise to dissensions between the proprietors and the assembly? What measures of relief did the inhabitants adopt? Whom did they first name as governor? Whom did they finally elect? Were the proceedings of the people confirmed by the crown? Who was appointed the first governor? In what year? What desirable object did he effect? In what year were the difficulties finally arranged? Were the Carolinas then separated?

CHAPTER VI.

In what year was Pensacola settled? What French discoverer soon appeared on the coast? What rivers and lakes did he visit? Where did he finally plant his colony? In what year was Mobile founded? In what year was a settlement made at Natchez? By whom? In what year was New Orleans founded? By what nation? Who claimed Louisiana?

Who claimed Lake Champlain? In what year was a fort erected at Crown Point? Between what years were Niagara and Detroit founded? What were the boundaries of New France, as claimed by the French geographers?

CHAPTER VII

What attempt was made in 1701 to destroy the independence of the colonies? How was the salary of the governors in the colonies paid? What change was attempted in 1702 in Massachusetts? What course did the assembly adopt? How was it in the other colonies?

What effect had the issuing of paper money by Massachusetts on the coin? How many different parties proposed remedies? Name the plan of each. What was finally the result? What were the views of Cooke? How did the general court attempt to punish the governor? How did the governor treat the assembly? What course did the people pursue?

What did the governor demand? Did the people yield? What principle did they assert? What amendments to the charter did the governor procure? Who succeeded Governor Shute? In what year? What was the subject of his controversy with the general court? Was he successful? In what year did he die? Who succeeded him? In what year? Was the old controversy again renewed? How finally settled?

What settlement was made from Ireland in 1719? What remarkable appearance of the heavens was exhibited in 1719? In what year was Vermont settled? By whom, and at what place? What political considerations led to the settlement of Georgia? What philanthropic measures aided it? Under whose guidance was it made? In what year? What number, and which of the present United States was now settled?

PERIOD III.

At what time does this Period commence? At what time does it terminate? What event marks its commencement? What its conclusion?

CHAPTER I.

By what assistance did Oglethorpe commence the settlement of Georgia? At what time did he embark? With how many emigrants? How were supplies furnished to the colonists? At what time did they arrive at Charleston? What were the motives of Governor Johnson in assisting them? At what place did they settle? What were the principal Indian tribes of the neighborhood? How many warriors could they muster? What measures did Oglethorpe adopt to secure their friendship? What was the character of the population? What steps were taken to obtain a better? With what success?

What predominant interest regulated the laws? What measures did Oglethorpe adopt to protect the country against the Spaniards? In what year? In what year does he go to England? Who is appointed commander-in-chief? Where does he establish his headquarters? In what year did the slaves rise at Stono? By whom were they instigated? What was the result? In what year did Oglethorpe invade Florida? What calamity visits Charleston about this time? In what year is

Georgia invaded from Havanna? With what result?

What measures are adopted by Oglethorpe to capture them? How are they thwarted? What device does he then resort to? With what success? What was the character of Oglethorpe? Who upheld the slave-trade? How many negroes were brought from Africa before the American revolution?

Were slaves at first admitted into Georgia? What was the consequence? What were the reasons given for their admission? Who advocated the employment of slave labor? In what year did Georgia become a royal province? In what year did Louisiana become a French province? Who was appointed its first governor? What Indians threatened the people? Whom did the Indians favor? In what year do the French make war upon the Chickasaws? What expedition was planned in France? What was its success, and the consequences to those engaged in it?

CHAPTER II.

In what year was war declared between England and France? Where is Louisburg situated? Who planned an attack on Louisburg? How was the plan received by the general court? By what vote was it finally carried? Who raised troops for the expedition? To whom was the command given? At what time did he sail? Who commanded the naval forces?

At what time did the army effect a landing? At what time did the fort surrender? What effect did this surrender produce in France? What was the result of the expedition? In what year was peace concluded? At what place? What was stipulated?

What claims to territory were set up by the French? What was claimed by the British? By what right? How was the question to be settled? What chain of forts did the French intend to establish? Who obtained a patent of lands in 1750? How did the French regard this grant? What were the resolutions of Governor Dinwiddie? Whom does he select as his agent?

CHAPTER III.

Who were the ancestors of George Washington? In what county in Virginia did they reside? In what year was Washington born? In what year did his father die? Under whose care did he then fall? What were the early indications which foretold his future greatness? How was the want of early advantages supplied?

Under whom did Lawrence Washington serve? After whom was Mount Vernon named? What appointment was tendered to George Washington? What prevented him from accepting it? What employment did he afterwards engage in? What was his first military appointment? At what age? For what object did he go to the West Indies? On the death of the brother, what was left to George Washington? What appointment did he receive from Governor Dinwiddie? In what year was he sent envoy to the French?

Describe his route. What Indian tribe did he visit? What did the principal chief declare to him? What further does the chief do? Who commanded the French camp? When Washington delivered Dinwiddie's orders, what reply was given? What did the French attempt in regard to the Indian chief? Was it successful?

What perils did he encounter on his journey home? At what time did he arrive at Williamsburg? How long had he been absent? What were the impressions produced by the manner in which he accomplished the enterprise? What appointment was conferred upon him in 1754? To what place did he march? What place had the French taken from the English? What fort do they build? Who comes to attack Washington at the great Meadows? What did Washington do? What was the result? Does Washington march to attack Fort du Quesne? Why does he abandon the enterprise? Where did he afterwards entrench himself? Why does he capitulate? What were the conditions?

CHAPTER IV.

What did the English propose to the colonies in 1753? At what place did congress meet? In what year? What colonies were represented? With whom did the colonists form a union? What did the colonists resolve upon? Who drew the articles of union? In what year and on what day were they signed? Did the delegates from either of the colonies decline to sign the articles? How were the articles received by the colonial legislatures? Were they acceptable to the crown of England? Why were they rejected by both parties?

What plan did the ministry propose to Governor Shirley for taxing the colonies? Did the colonies assent? How then did the British government propose to carry on the war? What troops arrive from Europe? By whom commanded? Whom does General Braddock call to advise him? What was the plan adopted? Do the French send out re-inforcements? How many men attacked Nova Scotia? By whom were they commanded? What was the result of the expedition? After Washington's return, what notice was taken of his services? What orders did he receive?

In the re-organization of the militia by Governor Dinwiddie, what change was made in the grades? What was Washington's conduct? What place does he finally accept? At what time does Braddock commence his march for Fort du Quesne? What arrangement, under the advice of Washington, does he make? With how many men does he advance? What is his conduct towards the friendly Indians?—His opinion of the colonial officers?—His acquaintance with Indian warfare? On what day was Braddock attacked by the Indians? How was the attack made? How were the Indians posted? What was the conduct of Braddock?

Which one of the mounted officers escaped? What was the impression of the Indians in regard to him? What occurred when Braddock was wounded? How many officers were wounded or slain? How many privates? Who conducted the retreat? How far did the army retreat before it halted? After meeting Colonel Dunbar do they still retreat? Do the Cherokees remain faithful to the English?

CHAPTER V.

How many troops were destined for the attack on Crown Point? By whom were they commanded? At what time did they reach Albany? Where did General Johnson establish a fort?

At what time did he reach Lake George? When Dieskau reached Crown Point, what measures did he adopt? Whom does he first meet and defeat? When he encounters the army under Johnson, what is the result? What is the fate of Dieskau? In what undertaking does General Johnson waste the remainder of the season? At what time do most of the troops return to their colonies? Who commanded the expedition against Niagara? At what time did he reach Oswego? What is the result of the campaign? In what year is war declared between England and France?

What difficulties did Washington experience in the execution of his duties? What was the conduct of Dinwiddie? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? On what business did Washington visit Boston? How was the matter decided? Who had provided for the campaign of 1756? By whom were their plans defeated? What was Shirley's conduct? Who was appointed to succeed Shirley? To what station was Lord Loudon afterwards appointed? Was the campaign generally successful or otherwise?

CHAPTER VI.

For what is the campaign of 1757 memorable? What was the force of Montcalm? Who commanded Fort William Henry? Who commanded at Fort Edward? How large was his army? When Monroe surrendered, what were the terms of the capitulation? What was the fate of the garrison?

What dispute arose in Pennsylvania this year? Who went to England to adjust the difficulty? What was the result? In what year was William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham, made prime minister? What was his character? What did the minister promise the colonies in his circular? To what did he exhort them? What was the consequence? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? What armament came out under Admiral Boscawen? What army was thus raised in the colonies?

What was the plan of the campaign for 1758? Why was Louisburg desired? Who conducted the expedition? On what day did it surrender? What was the number of the garrison? What was done with the prisoners? What with the inhabitants? What fell into the hands of the British with Louisburg? What expedition was undertaken by General Abercrombie? With how large an army? What was the result? What promising officer was killed? Was Abercrombie successful in his assault? What was his loss? To what place did he then retreat? What was the enterprise undertaken by Colonel Bradstreet?

What enterprise was entrusted to General Forbes? What army was assigned to this service? What new route was chosen? What was the consequence? On reaching Fort Du Quesne in what condition was it found? How was Major Grant surprised and defeated? What was the fate of General Forbes? What was the new fort named? What is the town occupying the site now called? Where was the great Indian council held? What tribes sent delegates to it? Who attended on the part of the English? What was the result?

CHAPTER VII.

What was the object of the campaign of 1759? Who commanded the British forces? What was the plan of the campaign? At what time did Prideaux besiege Niagara? What was the result? Of what number did the garrison consist? Who is selected to command the expedition against Quebec? How large an army is detailed? What admirals are sent? Where does Wolfe make a landing? In what month? How is Quebec situated?

Who commands the French army? What place does Wolfe first capture? Where does he next attack Montcalm? With what result? What was the success of General Amherst, and what his plans? What were Wolfe's prospects of aid from the co-operation of the two other armies? What plan of attack was resolved upon? What device was adopted to deceive the enemy? Describe the difficulties of landing and ascending the heights. What did the morning exhibit? What were the measures adopted by Montcalm? What were the results of the battle? What the gallant declarations of Wolfe? What the exclamations of Montcalm?

Who succeeded General Wolfe in the command? Who General Montcalm? Does Quebec capitulate? Who attacks Quebec in the spring of 1760? With what force? With what success? What took place in September of this year?

CHAPTER VIII.

Where did the French retreat to when they left Fort du Quesne? What did they effect with the Cherokee Indians? Who was sent to subdue them? With what success?

What occurred in the following year? What was the expedition planned by General Amherst? What its results? What were the feelings of the Indians towards the French? What did they say of them? Who sought to unite the north western Indians against the English? What were his objects and plans?

What his character? At what time did he commence the execution of his plans? By what stratagem was Maumee captured? How was Mackinaw taken? What was the conduct of the Indians?

What post did Pontiac invest in person? How are his plans betrayed, and his designs thwarted? Does he afterwards besiege the garrison? At what time did the United Brethren, or Moravians plant themselves in America? What was their previous history? Where do they finally settle? Where else do they found missions?

Why were they expelled from New York? How do they succeed in Pennsylvania? Who was the American bishop of the Moravians? How did the French war affect them? In what year was the Indian massacre of Mahony? What was afterwards the policy of the Moravians? Why did Mr. Pitt resign on the accession of George III.? Who succeeded him? What was the first object of the new administration? When and where was the peace concluded? What were the conditions of the treaty?

PART III.

PERIOD I.

CHAPTER I.

WHAT differences of opinion in England and America led to the revolution? What influence may be supposed to have arisen by the use of the term Mother Country? What did England claim in regard to the colonies? On what pretension was the most decided opposition made? What right did the Americans not dispute? What did England finally resolve to do? What had delayed the rupture? How did England propose to defray the expenses of the war?

In what year did the jealousies between the colonies and England begin to appear? At what place? On what occasion? What were the "writs of assistance?" What measures did the people of Boston adopt in regard to these writs? Whom did they employ to oppose them? At what time was it said that American independence begun? In what year were plans matured for changing the American governments? By whom? What measures did he propose for the accomplishment of this object? How were his plans discovered? What effect was produced by his letters?

CHAPTER II.

What notice did Lord Grenville give to the American agents in London? In what year? What resolutions were passed in the house of commons? What was done by the colonial agents in London? What course did Massachusetts adopt? What other colonies took part against the taxes? For what objects were associations formed in the colonies? What were the opinions of Walpole, in the reign of George II.? What of Mr. Pitt? In what year did Lord Grenville introduce the stamp act?

How was the proposition received by the house of commons? Who particularly distinguished himself in the defense of the rights of America? What did he assert in regard to the claims of the colonies? What did he say of their loyalty? Who opposed the passage of the act? How many voted against it? What were the provisions of the act? In what courts was the act to be enforced? Did this admit of trial by jury? Why was this act obnoxious to the colonists? Was opposition anticipated? What laws did parliament pass to enforce it? On what day was it to take effect?

Who was at this time agent in London for Pennsylvania? What did he write home to Mr. Thompson? What was Thompson's reply? How was the act received by the colonists? What was done by the house of burgesses in Virginia? Who proposed the resolutions and advocated them? What was the emphatic remark of Henry on the occasion?

CHAPTER III.

What was proposed by the general court of Massachusetts? From what colonies were delegates elected? On what day did the congress meet? At what place? What was their first measure? Whom did the congress address? Could the provisions of the stamp act be avoided? Could the government be carried on without compliance? What measures were taken to oppose it? What was done by the populace at Boston? What was the conduct of Mr. Oliver? What measures were adopted towards Governor Hutchinson? What towards Mr. Ingersol of New Haven?

On what day was the act to take effect? In what year? How was the day ushered in? What demonstrations were made in New York? What was done in Portsmouth, New Hampshire? Was the opposition general? Did the women of the country join in the excitement? What proceedings were adopted? What occurred in England at this crisis? How were the new ministers supposed to be affected towards the colonies? What resolutions did General Conway introduce into the house of commons? Were they adopted? On what were the ministry now resolved? Whom did they examine before the house of commons? What was his opinion? Who opposed the repeal of the stamp act in the house of commons? Who advocated it? On what principles did he oppose it? What was the result in the commons? Did it meet with

opposition in the house of lords? Who advocated it there? What was the result? What declaratory act also passed with it?

CHAPTER IV.

Why did the colonists continue jealous of the British government? What measures were recommended to the colonies by General Conway? What did Governor Bernard recommend to the assembly of Massachusetts? What did the assembly do? Who was placed at the head of the new ministry? At what time was it formed?

Who was chancellor of the exchequer in May, 1767? What measures did he propose? With what result? What was enacted in regard to New York? What other means were adopted to collect the taxes? What were the three acts which followed each other? What feelings did they inspire in the colonies? What measures were adopted by the assembly of Massachusetts in 1768? How was the recommendation for union viewed by the British ministry? What measures did they take to prevent it? What was done by the custom-house officers in June, 1768? What measures were adopted by the people of Boston? What did they solicit of the governor? What was his reply?

After the governor's refusal, what did the people do? When did the convention assemble? What were their proceedings? What orders were given to General Gage? How many regiments were ordered from Halifax? Did they meet with resistance from the inhabitants? Where were they quartered? What effect did their presence produce? In what month did they arrive?

What news was received in Massachusetts early in 1769? What resolutions were adopted by the two houses of parliament? On the receipt of the address, what measures were adopted by the house of burgesses in Virginia? What retaliatory steps were taken by the governor? What did the members of the house then do? By whom were the resolutions introduced? What agreements were entered into in the other colonies?

At what time in 1770 did the assembly of Massachusetts convene? Why did they not proceed to business? To what place did the governor adjourn them? What resolves did they then pass? What did they refuse to do? When was the governor recalled? In whose hands was the government left? At what time did the affray between the soldiers and citizens of Boston take place? What was the result of it? Were the soldiers tried? Who defended them? Who was appointed to the head of the ministry in January, 1771? What bill did he introduce into parliament? Did this satisfy the colonists? Why not? What was done in 1772? How did Great Britain regard these meetings? What occurred in Rhode Island during this year?

CHAPTER V.

What measures did Great Britain adopt to introduce her teas? How was the measure resisted by the colonists? What was done at Philadelphia? What at New York? What in Boston? How many chests were destroyed? When the news reached England, what did the parliament resolve? What bill was passed in regard to Boston? At what time? How did parliament enlarge the powers of the crown? How did they attempt to secure the execution of the obnoxious laws? How far did they extend the province of Quebec? What was the object of this act?

In what year was Governor Hutchinson recalled? For what reasons? Who succeeded him? When the bill shutting up the port of Boston was received, what measures were adopted by the inhabitants? To what place was the assembly removed? What did the assembly here propose? What did the governor attempt? What advantage did the governor expect by shutting up the port of Boston? What reply was made by the inhabitants of Salem? What feeling was exhibited towards Boston by the colonies? Who succeeded Botetourt as governor of Virginia? When the assembly heard of the Boston port bill, what measures did they adopt?

CHAPTER VI.

At what time did the general congress convene at Philadelphia? How many of the colonies were represented? Which were not? Who was chosen president? How did they decide the relative weight of each colony? What were their first measures? What did the committee report?

What was deemed the most likely means of obtaining redress? What was the nature of the non-importation compact? What resolution did they pass in regard to the slave-trade? How long was the congressional union to continue? What did Lord Chatham say of this congress? What did the petition to the king state? By whom was it drafted?

What do they claim in their address to the people of England? By whom was it prepared? By whom drafted? What was the nature of their address to their constituents? At what time did the congress adjourn? Were the proceedings generally approved by the people?

CHAPTER VII.

Were the colonists unanimous? What was the party called which adhered to the cause of the colonies? What that which espoused the cause of England? What seizures were made by order of General Gage? How was the assembly of Massachusetts interfered with? What did they then do? Whom did they elect president? What measures were adopted? How many men was it proposed to raise? What feelings were manifested in the southern colonies? At what time in 1774 did the British parliament convene? What were the sentiments of the king's speech? What the reply of the house of commons? Who was at that time the general agent of the colonies? What did he write home?

When the measures were brought forward,

who espoused the cause of the colonists? What were the arguments and sentiments of his speech? What the fate of Lord Chatham's conciliatory measures? Why were the agents of the colonies refused a hearing? What resolutions were passed by both houses of parliament? What measures were adopted on the 10th of February? To what other colonies were the prohibitions afterwards extended? What results were anticipated from these measures? What plan of conciliation was proposed by Lord North? What was its true character? Who attempted privately to settle the difficulties? With what result?

CHAPTER VIII.

To what were things tending in America? What was recommended by the provincial congress? What attempt was made by General Gage on the 26th of February? How was it frustrated? What was the object of the expedition to Concord? Who commanded it? How many troops were sent? At what place was the first blood shed? On what day? Were the stores destroyed? What was the loss of the British during the day? What that of the Americans? What feelings did this event produce? What means were taken to arouse the colonists? What measures were adopted by the legislatures? How many men were soon collected in the neighborhood of Boston?

CHAPTER IX.

What was the situation of General Gage and his army? What measures were adopted to cut off his supplies? What posts at the north were deemed of essential importance? Who originated the plan of taking them? What co-operation was expected from Vermont? To whom was the command of the troops intrusted? Who at Boston had matured the same plan? At what time did the force reach Lake Champlain?

Who commanded Fort Ticonderoga? When asked by what authority the surrender was demanded, what was Allen's reply? On what day was it captured? Of what number did the garrison consist? Who captured Crown Point? What was accomplished by Arnold? Who took Skeensborough? Now called by what name? Why was this success important? At what time did the congress meet in Philadelphia? Who was chosen president? What was done? What was done by Lord Dunmore of Virginia? Who aroused the people? What induced them to disperse?

What incensed the people of Virginia against Lord Dunmore? How does he escape from them? What other governors followed his example? Who prevented delegates being elected in season from New York? What event hastened an election?

CHAPTER X.

When was the army in Boston reinforced? What generals joined at this time? What measures were adopted by General Gage? Whom would he not pardon? How did he violate his promise to the people of Boston? What measures were adopted to prevent the British from penetrating into the country? Where did the Americans entrench themselves? When were they discovered by the British? How many men did General Gage send to dislodge them? How did they land? Where? What was done by the British before advancing to the attack?

How were they received by the Americans? What was the effect? How often are the British repulsed? Why are the Americans obliged to quit the field? How many British were engaged? What number was killed or wounded? How many of the Americans? Whom did congress elect commander-in-chief? At what time? What were his feelings? What course did he adopt in regard to compensation?

Where did Washington join the army? How was it stationed—and of how many men was it composed? In what condition did he find them? Towards what objects were his efforts directed? What measures were adopted by congress to arouse and unite the people? What did they say in their manifesto? What colony came into the confederacy at this time? What title was now assumed? When was the post-office establishment organized? Who was the first postmaster general?

CHAPTER XI.

What expedition was contemplated by congress? To avert what danger? Who were to command? Who was charged with fortifying New York? What movements were made by generals Schuyler and Montgomery? Why was Montgomery delayed at St. Johns?

What rash expedition was undertaken by Colonel Allen and Major Brown? What was the result? When was Chamble taken? What advantages were derived from it? What measures were adopted by Carleton for the relief of St. Johns? With what result? What followed immediately after? After the surrender of St. Johns, what was the conduct of Carleton? After Montgomery entered Montreal, what difficulties did he encounter? Describe the march of Arnold, and his appearance before Quebec. To what place did he retire—and for what reason?

What was the force of General Carleton? What that of the Americans? What does General Montgomery attempt? What does he finally resolve upon? How was the attack conducted? What was the fate of Montgomery?—And what the result of the assault? What was the conduct of Arnold, and that of his men? What was the loss of the Americans? What was the conduct of Arnold, after the battle?

CHAPTER XII.

What orders were issued in regard to the sea-ports of New England? What town was burnt? What effect was produced? What did congress resolve upon in December? What efforts did the ministry make to retain

New York? What law was passed to prevent it?

What did Lord Dunmore calculate on as regarded Virginia? How did he attempt to effect it? What was the result of the first conflict? What did Lord Dunmore then do? How did he afterwards attempt to supply his wants? To what was he finally obliged to resort? What last step was taken by congress for the purpose of producing a reconciliation? In what year? Who was the agent employed? What was evident on the meeting of parliament? What was the purport of the king's speech? Before whom was Penn examined? What did he declare? What act was passed in December? What arrangements did England make with the German States? What disposition did parliament make of the petition of the colonies? What measures closed the door to reconciliation?

CHAPTER XIII.

At what time did the enlistment of the troops expire? What measure did Washington propose to increase the army? What was the number of the army in February, 1776? How was the army employed in the winter of 1775-6? What measures did General Washington adopt to gain possession of Boston? On what day did the British evacuate it? What objects did the British propose in the campaign of 1776? Who was to regain New York? What difficulties surrounded Arnold at Quebec? Who superseded him? What was the consequence? At what time do the Americans evacuate Canada?

CHAPTER XIV.

Who commanded the expedition against Charleston? At what time did it arrive? Were the Carolinians unprepared? Where had they constructed a fort? Who commanded the militia? Of what number did they consist? Of what material was the fort constructed? What was the result of the attack? What interesting incident occurred during the battle? Upon what point did the British retreat? After the evacuation of Boston where did the commander-in-chief fix his head-quarters? Who made the motion in congress for declaring the colonies independent? On what day? Who was one of the most powerful writers in favor of independence? On what day was the declaration of independence agreed to? Who were the committee appointed to prepare it? Who drafted the one adopted? What were the causes for separation? What did the instrument set forth?

PERIOD II.

CHAPTER I.

How is the declaration of independence to be regarded? How was it to affect the interests of America? At what time did the troops under Howe take possession of Staten Island? When did those from England, under Admiral Howe, arrive? What others joined them? What was the whole number destined for New York? What were the expectations of Lord Howe?

What did he attempt by proclamation? In what light did congress view the proceeding? How did he address the commander-in-chief? What was the course of Washington? Whom did Lord Howe then send? What was the reply of Washington? What was the plan of the campaign? What advantages were offered by the possession of New York? What incidents prevented? What measures were taken for the defense of New York?

How many men were assembled there? In what condition? How much efficient force? What causes had produced these results? Describe the position of the American army in New York. Where did the British land? On what day? Describe the position of their army. Where did Washington intend to arrest their progress? How did the British commence the attack?

Where was the true point of attack? By what stratagem was it rendered successful? Who commanded the American troops in that quarter? Who conducted the British? What was the loss of the Americans? Of the British? Did General Washington visit the field of battle? What was his determination? What orders did he issue to his troops? Where did they finally assemble?

CHAPTER II.

Who was sent by General Washington as a spy to Long Island? What was his fate? What were his last words? On what day did the British take possession of New York? Were overtures of reconciliation again made? Who was appointed to treat on the part of the Americans? What basis did they insist upon? What were the consequences of the surrender of New York? To what were the efforts of Washington directed?

What did he represent to congress? What inducements were offered? What policy did Washington adopt? What occurred on the 16th of September? With what result? What was the wish of the British commander? Failing in this, what plan did he adopt? To what place did Washington remove his forces? By whom was he attacked at White Plains? With what result? To what place did he then remove the army? At what time did he cross the Hudson?

On what points did General Howe now turn his attention? What instructions had General Washington given to General Green? Who commanded at Fort Washington? How many men were in the garrison? On what day was it attacked? With what result? How many British were killed? How many Americans surrendered? What did the British next attempt? When was Fort Lee evacuated? What policy does Washington still pursue? Of what number was his army still composed? Through what places does Washington retreat? In what did General Howe make a mistake? Where did he finally post his army? Why did he not immediately cross the Delaware? What arrangements did he make?

CHAPTER III.

What was the condition of Washington's army in December 1776? How does he soothe and encourage them? What measures did Howe adopt to bring back the people to the royal cause? With what effect?

What measures did Washington take to increase his army? What was the conduct of General Lee? What was the consequence to himself? After the reinforcements had arrived, to what number was the army augmented? What bold plan does Washington form? Give an account of the manner in which it was executed. How many prisoners were taken?

At what time did Cornwallis reach the neighborhood of Trenton? What movement did General Washington then make? Give a particular account of it, and the result. What distinguished officer fell at Trenton? What emotions did these successes give rise to in the country? To what place did Washington retire? What posts did he afterwards capture? Where did he finally take up his winter-quarters? With whom is Washington compared as a commander?

What new feelings prevail in regard to the contest? What defeat did the Americans suffer on Lake Champlain? At what time was Rhode Island taken? At what time were the articles of confederation adopted? What did they ordain? What name did they give to the colonies? What was the character of the congress of 1776? What difficulties surrounded them? What means did they adopt to raise money? Whom did they send to France? For what object? What were their special instructions? What powers did congress grant to General Washington? What specific objects was he authorized to accomplish?

CHAPTER IV.

What was the conduct of the English and German troops in New Jersey? What was said of them in England? Who were called tories? Where did they threaten to join the British standard? With what disease was the army threatened? What precautions were taken by Washington? What were the first movements of the British in 1777? By whom was Peekskill taken? At what time? Who attacked Danbury? With what force? What was the fate of the town? What occurred in the retreat of the army? What was the loss of each party? Describe the expedition of Colonel Meigs to Sag Harbor. Who was the most prominent of the commissioners sent to France? What was his character? What may be said of the value of his services?

What distinguished Frenchman espoused the American cause at this time? What was his reply when told the colonies were in great distress? What appointment did he receive from congress? What were his relations with General Washington? What two objects did the British propose to accomplish in the campaign of 1777? What measures did Washington adopt to prevent them? What stratagem did General Howe resort to? With what success?

CHAPTER V.

By whom was General Prescott captured? In what manner? At what time? What plan had the British formed to reduce America? To whom was the command of the expedition given? To whose prejudice? What was the conduct of Governor Carleton? Who were the principal officers to accompany Burgoyne? What was the strength of his army? What was his plan of operations? At what time does the army advance? What means did Burgoyne use to operate on the Indians and on the Americans? What was the force of St. Leger? What fort did he invest? By whom was it commanded? Who went to its relief? What was the result? Who retreated from the fort? For what purpose? Who was sent to the relief of the fort? What was done by St. Leger? What was the conduct of the Indians?

What place did Burgoyne first invest? On what day? How many troops garrisoned it? By whom commanded? What circumstance connected with its defense had been overlooked? After the British had gained Mount Defiance, what course did the Americans adopt? Who pursued the Americans? With what force? Where did he overtake them? What was the result? What effect had this on the movements of St. Clair? What post of safety did he finally reach? Where is Fort Edward?

Of what place did Burgoyne take possession? Where is Skeenesborough situated? What measures were adopted by General Schuyler? What effect was produced in England by these partial successes? What in America? What means did General Schuyler adopt to impede the progress of the British? Why was he superseded? Who was appointed to the command? What other officers joined the northern army? At what time did Burgoyne reach Fort Edward? How did he obtain supplies? How many men did he send to seize the provisions at Bennington? Who commanded them? Who commanded the Americans? What was the result? Who was sent with a re-inforcement? By whom was he met? With what result? What was the loss of the British in both engagements?

In what point of view was the battle of Bennington particularly important? Relate the tragical story of Miss M'Crea. What were its effects on the inhabitants of the adjacent country?

At what time did Burgoyne cross the Hudson? At what time did the first battle occur? At what place? With what result? What was the loss of the British? Who claimed the victory? Who had it? When was the general battle fought? Describe the position of the British army. What distinguished generals belonged to it?

Describe the manner in which the attack was made. What is said of the battle? What was the result? What British colonel was

killed? What general officer was mortally wounded? What was now the situation of the British army? What move does General Burgoyne make? What does he next attempt? From whom had he expected supplies? On what day did he finally capitulate?

How many men were surrendered? How many had been previously lost? What were the stipulations of the capitulation? How were they treated by the Americans? What consequence followed the surrender? How did it affect the great cause of America? What expedition was planned from New York? By whom commanded? What did it effect? When did Burgoyne learn that aid was at hand? When the news of Burgoyne's surrender reached Clinton, what course did he adopt? What the character of the expedition?

CHAPTER VI.

What expedition was undertaken by Admiral and General Howe? On what day did they leave Sandy Hook? Where did they disembark their troops? How many in number? What movement was made by General Washington? What generals accompanied Washington? What position did the two armies assume? On what day did the battle of the Brandywine take place? Describe the battle.

What was the loss of the Americans? What the loss of the British? What officers particularly distinguished themselves? After the battle, to what place did the Americans retreat? What move did Washington make to recover his loss? What defeated his plans? What move is now made by Howe? What does Washington do? Where does congress adjourn to? What powers do they confer on Washington?

At what time did Howe cross the Schuylkill? Where did his army halt? Who commanded the detachment which entered Philadelphia? How large was the American army? Where was it encamped? How did Howe regard the capture of Philadelphia? What measures did the Americans adopt to cut off the supplies of the British army? Did the British endeavor to prevent it? Were they successful? What induced Washington to attack the British at Germantown? Describe the battle and its results. What move did the American army then make?

In what light did congress view the affair at Germantown? What move was soon made by the British army? Why was this move necessary? What was said by Dr. Franklin? Why did the British wish to keep open the navigation of the Delaware? Describe their attack on Red Bank. What was the result? What place did they next attack? What was the result? What mode did Cornwallis adopt of attacking Fort Mercer? With what success? What was the consequence?

By what troops was Washington now reinforced? What was the number of his army? To what place did he advance? What transpired there? At what time does Washington go into winter-quarters? What was the condition of his army? How did they bear their sufferings? What are the reflections of the authoress?

CHAPTER VII.

What were the causes of the distress of the army? What did congress insist on, in regard to the bills of credit? Would they purchase necessaries for the army? What course were the officers forced to adopt? What feelings stimulated the intrigues against Washington? What was their object? Who was prominent among the leaders? What states addressed congress on the subject? What measures did congress adopt to reflect on General Washington? Who was placed at the head of the board of war? What expedition did they plan? Who was invited to join the expedition? Did the enterprise succeed?

What was the public sentiment in regard to the intrigues against Washington? Who superseded Conway? What was the final sentiment in congress? On what occasion did General Conway make suitable acknowledgements? What provision does congress make for the officers, to quiet discontents? What does he urge with regard to the approaching campaign? Are the British ready to open the campaign early? To what are their efforts limited?

What position did La Fayette occupy in May? What attempt was made to surprise him? With what success? What is said of the American privateers? How many British vessels had they captured? What effect had the capture of Burgoyne in Europe? What were the feelings of the English people? What were the calamities which they foresaw might happen? With what feelings did France view the discontents in America? Why did she not at first espouse her cause? What was her wish? What her general policy?

What was the course of Dr. Franklin? What proposition did he make to England? What effect had the capture of Burgoyne? What did the French ministry immediately declare? On what day was the treaty made? Did it recognize the independence of the United States? What was agreed to in the treaty? Who signed it on the part of France? Who on the part of the States? On what day were the commissioners received at the court of France? How were they received? Was the event important? What measures were adopted by the British parliament? What was foretold of these measures? Which counsels prevailed? Who were appointed commissioners? What were their secret objects?

When the news of the alliance reached England, what effect did it produce? What did the English resolve upon? How was France found to be prepared? At what time did the treaty reach the United States? By what vessel was it brought? When did the British commissioners arrive? Who were they? Were their terms acceptable? What did congress demand? What did the commis-

sioners then attempt? Which labored with the greatest ability and zeal? What means did he use? What was offered to General Reed? What was his reply? How was Johnstone exposed? What measures did congress adopt? What writers exposed the baseness of his attempts? How was public opinion at the time?

CHAPTER VIII.

At what time did the British prepare to evacuate Philadelphia? On what day did they march out of the city? What are the movements of Washington? What his views of a general engagement? What those of his officers? Where did the battle take place? On what day? What was the conduct of General Lee? What punishment did he afterwards suffer?

Which party retained the possession of the field? What move was made in the night by the British army? On what place do they retreat? What disposition is made of the American army?

Who commanded the French fleet? Of how many ships did it consist? From what French port did it sail? On what day? What was its destination? Disappointed in that plan, what did it next undertake? Who was made minister to France? On what day? What expedition did Washington plan in conjunction with the French fleet? To whom was it intrusted? What was the force to be employed? What that of the British? At what time did the French fleet arrive off Newport? What were the arrangements for capturing the place? At what time was the descent to be made? What delayed it?

What caused the French fleet to depart? At what time does Sullivan besiege Newport? What is done by d'Estaing? Why is the siege raised? On what day? To what point does the American army retreat? Are they pursued? Where does the action take place? With what result? Who arrives from New York? With what force? What were some of the consequences of d'Estaing's conduct? To whom did Clinton leave the command of the transports? With what orders? What injury was done to the American ships? Was private property respected?

Was the campaign of this year distinguished for savage depredations? Where is Wyoming situated? Who commanded the Indians that attacked it? Were the people in favor of the colonists? What stimulated the British and Indians to attack the Wyoming settlements? At what time is the attack made? Who commanded the Americans at Wilksbarre? How did he determine to resist the savages? What was the result? What gave rise to difficulties between the French and Americans? To what did congress attribute them?

For what place does the French fleet sail? On what day? Do the English also send forces to the West Indies? How many troops depart? What results are accomplished in the West Indies? What was one of the leading objects of the campaign of 1778? How many troops sail for Georgia? What city is captured? How many men are lost on the part of the Americans? At what place does General Washington retire to winter-quarters?

CHAPTER IX.

What was the plan of Sir Henry Clinton? What place alone held out? Who commanded the troops at St. Augustine? What did he do? Who took command of the British forces in Georgia? Was the whole country now subdued? Why did not Prevost attack Charleston? Against what place did he plan an expedition? Who commanded it? What was the result?

Why did the British transfer the war to the southern states? How were the royalists classed? What was intended by the movement to Augusta? What other means did the British employ? Did the royalists collect and embody themselves? Under whom? Under whom did the Carolinians rally? Where did the hostile parties meet? What was the result? How many of the royalists were executed? Who was appointed to command the southern forces? At what time did he reach Charleston? When did he take command? At what place? What was Lincoln's plan? What was the strength of his army? To what point does he dispatch General Ashe? With what force?

What stratagem did Prevost use? Was it successful? What troops resisted? What was the loss of the Americans? What was the consequence of this defeat? What government was organized in Georgia? What was the conduct of the Carolinians? Who was chosen governor? How many men were raised by the middle of April? What were Lincoln's plans? What movement was made by the British army? With what success? On what point did General Moultrie retreat? On what day did the English appear before Charleston? By what corps had the garrison been reinforced? What reinforcements were expected? How was delay produced? What did Prevost do? Does Lincoln arrive? To what place does Prevost retire? What are his objects? What the movements of Lincoln?

What expedition was sent out from New York in May? Who commanded it? Of what force did it consist? What objects did it propose to accomplish? To what point did the fleet proceed? What was accomplished? And what the result? What places did Clinton next attack? Why were these places important? At what time did he leave New York? Which place did he first attack? With what result? How was Verplank Point taken? Where did General Clinton finally encamp? What was accomplished by the Connecticut privateers? What measures did General Clinton take to destroy them? What towns were sacked and burnt?

What measures did Washington take to recover Stony Point? Who commanded the

expedition? How was it conducted, and what was the result? Were the Americans equally successful at Verplank's Point? What measures did Clinton adopt when he learned the news? What did General Washington deem it prudent to do? What exploit was performed by Major Lee on the 19th of July? Who had come from Halifax and taken post at the mouth of the Penobscot river? What was his object? Who commanded the naval and land armament sent to the Penobscot? What did they do on reaching the Penobscot? What occasioned the failure of the enterprise? How did the men escape? What feelings did this disaster occasion in Massachusetts? What expedition was planned against the Indians? Who commanded? What did it effect? To what place did the army retire, after accomplishing their object?

CHAPTER X.

What events were transpiring in the West Indies? Who commanded the English fleet? Who the French? What did the English desire? What had the French in view? Why did they not wish a general battle? What island is captured by the French? After d'Estaing had received reinforcements, what place does he assail? Give the particulars. What complaints are made by the Americans? What reasons do they give why d'Estaing should return? Does he listen to their entreaties? What two measures does Count d'Estaing propose? Which was adopted? What measures of defense are adopted by General Prevost?

What steps are taken by General Lincoln? What was prematurely done by d'Estaing? How did the commandant effect delay? What truce was granted? What reinforcements did the British receive? Who joined the Americans? With what force? On what day was the place besieged? When was the bombardment commenced? Give a general account of the battle, and the final result.

Why does Clinton withdraw from Rhode Island? What fleet was commanded by Paul Jones? Describe the battle which occurred on the 23d of September. Who was the victor? At what cost?

What were some of the disadvantages of the French alliance? What considerations did the patriots address to the people? What evils were experienced from the avaricious and selfish? What added to this general decline of morality? What amount of paper had been issued by congress? What mean device did England resort to, to depreciate the currency?

What selfish considerations influenced the French cabinet? What did Mr. Gerard demand for France? What did he ask for Spain? What did Spain seek to obtain from the United States? What course did she finally adopt on her own account? Who was sent out to reinforce General Clinton? What move did Clinton then make? Who commanded at the south? Where did Washington go into winter-quarters?

CHAPTER XI.

What feelings were manifested in Russia towards England? What did England claim? Who was foremost in opposition to her pretensions? What proposition was made by Catharine II.? What powers acceded to the proposal? What were the provisions of the treaty? What agreement was made to ensure its observance? To what courts were these articles of agreement communicated? What powers adopted them? What policy did England pursue? What course did Portugal take? Why? What course did Holland adopt?

What was now the policy of the British? To what point did Clinton sail? By whom is he reinforced? On what point does he concentrate his forces? What are the movements of General Lincoln? Who aids him? What were the discouragements attending the defense of Charleston? At what time did the siege commence? Where was General Huger stationed? Did he retain his position? What was the consequence? What reinforcements did the British receive? How was Fort Moultrie passed? With what loss? How was Charleston then menaced? On what day was Fort Moultrie abandoned?

On what day was Charleston surrendered? How many men capitulated? How many cannon were given up? To whom do historians attribute the success at Savannah and Charleston? What expeditions did Clinton plan? Were they successful? Whom did Tarleton pursue? Where did he overtake Burford? How did he tarnish the honors of his success? Into whose possession had South Carolina now fallen? What did General Clinton say of it? What does he proceed to do? What does he require of the citizens? What arrangements does he now make? What is remarked of the winter of 1779–80? What movement had been made by Knyphausen during Clinton's absence? What was his object? What engagement took place? With what result? What aroused the people? What was the consequence?

CHAPTER XII.

What measures did congress adopt in regard to their currency? What had been previously done by Clinton in South Carolina? What was the conduct of the British towards the republicans of the south? To what vexations were they subject? What especially excited the opposition of the Carolinians? What did the British require of them? What did they reply? What is said of the women of Carolina? What was their parting advice? What general remarks are made in regard to the causes which produced the torpor of 1779? What state of feeling succeeded this? Was it shared and stimulated by the ladies? What society was formed in Philadelphia? Who was at its head? What was the character of Mr. Washington?

CHAPTER XIII.

What news did La Fayette bring on his re-

turn from France? How was he received? When did the squadron arrive? What reinforcements did it bring? What arrangements were made in regard to the rank of the officers? How were the French received?

What reinforcements reached New York? What expedition was determined on by General Clinton? What measures were adopted by Washington? What was the final action of General Clinton? What events transpired at the south? What officers distinguished themselves in partisan warfare? What was effected by Colonel Sumpter? Where did he defeat the British? Who is sent with regular troops to defend South Carolina?

Who was appointed to the command of the southern army? On what point did he advance? With what force? What proclamation did he issue? What influence had it on the people? Who commanded the British army? What plans did he form to attack the Americans? What was done by General Gates? How did the armies meet? Near what place? What was the result of the battle? What was the loss of the Americans? What that of the British? What general officer was mortally wounded? On what point did General Gates retreat? What officer still remained in South Carolina? Where is he finally defeated? By whom? Who still continued to harass the British?

CHAPTER XIV.

What thrilling event occurred at the north? What was Arnold's standing with the people at this time? What caused his first indebtedness? What excited him against congress? What punishment was inflicted by the court-martial? Why does he determine to sell his country? With whom does he negotiate? What plan is agreed upon? How did he dispose of the forces? Who was appointed to confer with him? At what time do they have a personal interview? Why does Andre remain on shore?

Why does he not again go on board the Vulture? What route does he take for New York? Where is he met and arrested? By whom? What conversation passed? To what post is he taken? What does Colonel Jameson permit? Where had General Washington been employed? What was his first care? Had Arnold accomplices? How might Andre have been disposed of? What course did General Washington adopt? Who were prominent members of the court-martial?

Who interfered to save Andre? What arguments were used to excuse him? How did he appear before the court? What was his sentence? Does Clinton still urge his release? Who were appointed to negotiate in the matter? What were the arguments of Robinson? What the reply of Greene? What circumstances increased his desire of life? What does he solicit of Washington? When is he finally executed? What are his last words at the gallows?

What did Arnold receive from the British government? What did he sacrifice! How were the captors of Andre rewarded? After the battle of Camden, what enterprise did Cornwallis undertake? To what place did he march? What time did he reach it? Who had committed acts of barbarity in North Carolina? What spirit did they arouse in the people? Who were the principal leaders? At what place was the principal battle fought? With what result? How did this affect the situation of Cornwallis? Who were the principal leaders of the republicans? What does Cornwallis finally decide upon? Where does he encamp his army?

Who was sent to Virginia? For what purpose? With what force? What rencounter took place between the partisan chiefs? With what result? Who superseded Gates? In what condition did he find the army? What line of policy was determined on? Who was sent to reinforce Cornwallis? With what force? Who makes a descent on Virginia? In what spirit?

CHAPTER XV.

What events were transpiring in Europe? Were the naval operations extensive? Who captured Pensacola, and subsequently Florida? What reinforcements did France determine on sending to America? What force was to be sent to Cornwallis? What was the situation of American affairs? What were the difficulties which surrounded the American congress? What means did they adopt to raise money?

Who was appointed treasurer? What was his character? What means did he adopt to raise the credit of the country? What was done, in the mean time, abroad? Who watched over the interests of America there? What moneys were raised by loan? What results were to be produced? What insubordination showed itself at this time? What were the alledged grounds of it? To what extent did it reach? Who were the commissioners appointed by congress to examine into the facts?

What measures were taken by Clinton to seduce the mutineers? With what result? What measures were recommended by Washington? How was the matter finally adopted? What was done with Clinton's emissaries? What other troops revolt? What steps were taken by Washington? What plan of operations was adopted by General Greene? Describe the battle of the Cowpens? What loss did each party sustain?

What does Cornwallis decide upon? What favorable incident saved Colonel Morgan? Who arrives and assumes the command? Do the British still pursue? Where are the Americans again overtaken? By what incident are they again preserved? To what point does General Greene march? Who is to join him? What are the intentions of Cornwallis? To what place does he go? For what purpose? What accidents caused the defeat of two parties of loyalists? What terminated the Tarleton expedition?

At what place does General Greene concen-

trate his army? How strong is it? Describe the battle of Guilford Court House? To what place does Greene retreat? What measures does Cornwallis now decide upon? What movements are made by Greene? When Cornwallis reached Wilmington, what plans does he consider? What does he finally decide upon? Who is left in command of the troops remaining in Carolina? With what hopes?

CHAPTER XVI.

Where were the head-quarters of Lord Rawdon? What were the other principal posts of the British? What compelled the British to divide their troops? What effect was produced by the retreat of Cornwallis? What partisan officers annoyed the British in the southern part of Carolina? Who held Lord Rawdon in check in the northern part? Where does Greene intrench his army? By whom are they attacked? At what time? Describe the battle. What is the loss on either side? What movement is made by Greene? Is he pursued?

At what time does Lord Rawdon evacuate Camden? Towards what place does he retreat? What forts are captured by Marion and Lee? What by Sumpter? How many prisoners are made? What posts now remained to the British in upper Carolina? What post does Greene beseige? Who flies to its succor? What post capitulates to the Americans? Why does Greene assault the post of Ninety-Six? Is he successful? To what place does he then retire? Sketch the history of Isaac Hayne. What is said of Lord Rawdon?

CHAPTER XVII.

What were the determinations of Greene? What route did he pursue to meet the enemy? Who commanded the British forces? Where was the decisive battle fought? With what result? What was the loss of the British? What that of the Americans? After Greene's army was reinforced, to what places did the British retreat? What is said of Greene's military character? Where did Arnold land in Virginia? With what force? What was his conduct?

What plan is formed for the capture of Arnold? Who is dispatched to Virginia? With what force? What naval force is dispatched from Rhode Island? What prevents the capture of Arnold? What force does Clinton send to Virginia? What town is burnt by Arnold? To what place do Philip and Arnold retreat? For what object? After Cornwallis took command, what plans does he form? Who commanded the corps of Americans in Virginia? What policy did La Fayette adopt? What expedition was confided to Tarleton? With what result?

What orders are sent to Cornwallis by Clinton? What is finally decided upon? Where does Cornwallis conclude to fortify himself? What was agreed upon at Wethersfield, between Washington and Count Rochambeau? What change was made in his plans? What stratagem was practiced?

At what place did the French join General Washington? When he crossed the Hudson, what report did he cause to be spread? Describe his route to the south. At what time did he join La Fayette? At what place? At what time did Count de Grasse enter the Chesapeake? What end did it accomplish? What was feared in regard to General La Fayette? How was the artillery to be obtained for the siege? What was the advice of Washington? What was the conduct of the French admiral? Was it successful?

CHAPTER XVIII.

What is the situation of Cornwallis? What information does he receive from Clinton? What diversion does Clinton attempt? Who commanded the expedition against New London? What forts defended it? What was the conduct of the British? What distinguished officer was slain by his own sword? What was the fate of New London? Did Arnold penetrate into the country? What measures of defense are adopted by Cornwallis? How does he lose his only chance of escape?

What is the strength of the combined armies which move from Williamsburg? What portion were French? At what time do they commence the seige? What portions of the works are carried by assault? How did General Washington divide the service? Who commanded the sortie? What was its success? What effort does Cornwallis make to save his army? How is he prevented?

At what time does he propose to negotiate? What terms does he ask? What are granted? What were the articles of capitulation? How many troops were surrendered? What arrangements were made between the French and Americans? How were the prisoners treated? Was any aid on its way from New York? What feelings did the event occasion in New York? What allies leave America?

CHAPTER XIX.

What has already been stated in regard to Vermont? What did New York attempt in regard to the settlers in Vermont? What was the consequence? What measures are taken by the inhabitants of Vermont? What name do they give to the state? What do they ask of congress?

What was the situation of Vermont in 1781? By what system of management had its territory been protected? What fortunate event avoided a crisis? What was the condition of the country in 1781? What means of relief had congress? Did the states pay their quotas? Whom did the people blame?

What was now the feeling in England in regard to the war? What posts did the British now hold in America? What resolution was passed in the house of commons? Who succeeds Sir Henry Clinton? What was the

general feeling on both sides? Who were appointed by the British to negotiate for peace? Why were they unsuccessful? Who were appointed by congress? What power recognizes the independence of the United States?

Who were appointed commissioners on the part of Great Britain? When were the preliminary articles signed? When was the final treaty completed? What circumstances made the treaty more favorable to America? What subject was left unsettled? What were the causes of discontent in the army? What were the fears of the officers? What ambitious feelings had weight?

What means were taken to bring Washington into these views? What sentiments were expressed in the letter to Washington? What feelings did the communication produce? What did he reply? What gave rise to the Newburg letter? Who was its author? What was its character and tenor? What did it advise? What did it propose?

What course did Washington adopt? What address did he make in the meeting? What did he declare—and what promise? What effect was produced upon the officers? What did he write to congress in their behalf? What act did congress pass?

Who first communicated the intelligence of peace? At what time was it officially announced? How long had the war lasted? When was the army disbanded? What is said of those who still survive? What European powers acknowledge the independence of the United States? At what periods? When did Prussia come in? On what day did the British evacuate New York? At what time did Washington take leave of the army? At what place? Whence did Washington proceed? For what purpose? On what day did he resign his commission? To what place does he retire? Where is Mount Vernon situated?

CHAPTER XX.

What was the condition of the country at the close of the war? What augmented the discontent? What expedient was resorted to by Rhode Island? What disorders grew out of these distresses? Who was the leader of the malcontents in Massachusetts? What did he do at Springfield?

What force was ordered out to suppress the insurrection? Who commanded it? Who was appointed to take possession of Springfield? How did he accomplish it? How many rioters were killed? How were the malcontents finally disposed of? What was discovered in regard to the government? What remedy was proposed? What evils existed? How alone could they have a remedy? Who suggested the idea of strengthening the general government? Which state first recommended a convention to form a constitution? On whose motion? In what year? How was the proposition received by congress? When did the convention meet? What did they proceed to do?

What two opposite views presented themselves? What did one class of politicians believe? Where did they look for an example? What did others believe? Where is the true line? On what basis was the constitution formed? What different views were entertained by the two parties? What were those called who leaned towards strengthening the general government? What were their opponents called? What other difficulties arose? How were the slaves finally allowed to be reckoned?

Was there any opposition to the adoption of the new constitution? How many states adopted it in 1789? What states had not? What is the supreme authority in which the constitution is promulgated? What are the objects for which it was established? In what is the legislative power vested? How are representatives chosen—and for what time? By whom? How are they apportioned? Of how many members is the senate composed? What their term of service? Who chooses the presiding officer of the house of representatives? What is he called? Who is the presiding officer of the senate? What are the two houses called? How often must they sit?

What bills must originate in the house of representatives? Who has the care of the peoples' money? Who bears the sword? Who the purse? Where is the executive power vested? What is requisite to make a person eligible? What power has the president? How are treaties made? Where is the judicial power vested? How are impeachments made? Who tries them? What was feared by both parties, when the constitution was adopted? How is it now regarded?

PART IV.

PERIOD I.

At what time does Part IV. begin? At what time does it close?

At what time does this Period begin? What event marks its commencement? At what time does it close? What event marks its close?

CHAPTER I.

On what day was the new government to go into operation? What were Washington's wishes at the close of the war? To what

place did he make a visit? What important idea did he suggest? Whom did he memorialize on the subject? What was offered by the states of Pennsylvania and Virginia?

What added to Washington's expenses? To what does Washington give his attention in retirement? What remains has he left of his taste? To what place was he first called from his retirement? What office did he receive from the convention? After the adoption of the constitution, to what office was he chosen? How long after he received notice of his election, before his departure for New York? How was he received by the people on his journey? On what day was he inaugurated? At what place?

What did he declare in his inaugural address in regard to himself? What maxims of wisdom and patriotism did he lay down? What was the first object of congress? On what did they lay duties? What distinction did they make between American and foreign vessels? Who were the first secretaries appointed under the constitution? Under whose care was the navy placed? To whom were the secretaries made responsible? By whom removable? What changes were made in the constitution in this session?

Describe the organization of the judiciary. By what congress was it made? What salaries were given to the various officers? What did congress recommend before adjournment? At what time did congress adjourn? What did they require of the secretary of the treasury? How is General Washington received in New England? When did North Carolina come into the Union?

At what time did the second session of congress begin? What important report was made by Hamilton? What debts did he propose to assume? What gave rise to the two great parties? What were the points of difference between the opposing parties? Which side did the federalists espouse? From what section of the country were they? What did the federalists contend for in the assumption of the state debts? What principle was advocated by the republicans? What were the arguments used on each side? What was proposed by Mr. Madison? How was it received?

What motives were attributed to Mr. Hamilton? What were the proofs relied upon? What were the arguments in favor of assuming the state debts? What was decided in the matter? What means were used to carry out the plans of Mr. Hamilton? In what year did Rhode Island come into the Union? What was the argument in favor of a duty on distilled spirits? Was the duty laid?

What cession was made by North Carolina? By whom was Nashville founded? In what year? What treaty was made in 1790? What were the arguments for and against a national bank? What was the result of the deliberations? Where was the bank located? With what capital? Who were the leaders of the two great parties? What grounds of complaint were urged against the course of Mr. Jefferson? Could the differences be healed? At what time was Vermont admitted into the Union? When was the first census taken? What was the population? When was the first apportionment made? What was the ratio of representation adopted?

CHAPTER II.

What is said of the connection between the Moravian missionaries and the early history of the aborigines? How did the Moravians treat their converts? What excited the people against the Moravian converts? Who established a mission on the Alleghany river? In what year? With what success? What Indian war occurred in 1770? What gave rise to it? Where do the Moravian missionaries locate themselves? Under whom? What settlements are broken up? To what place did Zeisberger remove? How many persons afterwards joined him from the Susquehannah? What obstacles opposed the influence of the chiefs? Who among the Delawares favored civilization? What resolution was finally adopted by the Delawares?

What difficulties did the revolution raise to the work of the missionaries? Who visits the missionaries? With what intent? How is he appeased? What finally do the Indian tribes determine on? What are the Moravians obliged to do? Whence do they flee? What befalls them?

How many of the converts returned to the Muskingum to gather the corn? Describe the manner in which they were murdered? What happened to the missionaries who were taken to Detroit? What was the declaration of Captain Pipe? What did the governor state to the missionaries? Where did they again settle? After the peace, where did they again locate themselves?

Which was the most powerful of the western tribes of Indians? Who was their chief? What was his character? Whom did he incite to join against the United States? What were his views and intentions? What general was first sent against the savages? With what force? Near what place is he defeated? Who was next sent against them? With what force? What was the result? What did congress resolve upon? What were the difficulties in the way? Who were sent to negotiate? What was their fate? What did the Six Nations effect?

When was Kentucky admitted into the Union? What was the currency of the country called after the establishment of the mint? When was Washington re-elected president? Who was re-elected vice-president? What events in France now affected American politics? What were the arguments and feelings of the democratic party? What those of the federalists?

What course did Washington adopt? Was this in accordance with public sympathy? By whom was Genet sent out as a minister? Where did he land? What did he infer from his reception? What were his proceedings at Charleston? How was he received in Philadelphia? Who complained of his acts? What course did General Washington adopt?

Who succeeded Genet? When was Kentucky admitted to the Union? By whom and when was the first English settlement made in this state? What inducements were held out by Virginia for new settlers?

CHAPTER III.

What office did Mr. Jefferson resign in 1794? What excitement did congress create in western Pennsylvania? What measures did Washington adopt to vindicate the laws? How many men were raised? By whom were they commanded? What effect was produced?

What naval armament was ordered at this time? For what particular object? With what power was a war apprehended? What complaints did Great Britain make against the Americans? Of what did the Americans complain? What measures did congress adopt? Who was sent to England to negotiate? Who was appointed to succeed General St. Clair? What name did the Indians give to General Wayne? What was the advice of Little Turtle? Describe General Wayne's campaign against the Indians.—Where did he attack and defeat them? On what day? Were any British soldiers in the fight? How did the British treat the Indians? What was the consequence? What was afterwards done by the Americans?

At what time did General Hamilton resign? Who succeeded him? When was Jay's treaty completed? Was it ratified? What were its provisions? What objections were raised to it? What breach of faith was committed by a senator? What effect did it produce? What was attempted at the next session of congress, by the house of representatives? What was the final result?

What other treaties were made this year? What was insisted on by Spain, after the revolution? Who was appointed to make a treaty? What did the treaty guaranty? When was Tennessee admitted into the Union? Were the treaties of 1795 opposed? What was the conduct of the French minister? Who succeeded Mr. Morris, as minister to France? How was he received there? Who succeeded Mr. Fauchet? What sinister motives had France? How did she finally conduct towards America?

Why was Mr. Monroe recalled? Who succeeded him? What is said of the administration of General Washington? At what time did he publish his farewell address? What were the principal subjects to which he drew the attention of the American people? What did he say of the spirit of party?

CHAPTER IV.

Who were the candidates for the presidency to succeed General Washington? What were the points of difference between them? With what did each party charge the other? What intelligence did Mr. Adams receive upon entering upon his duties? What measures did congress adopt? What army did they place at the command of the president?

How did Mr. Adams manifest his desire for peace? Who composed the new embassy? Were they received? How were the negotiations carried on? What was demanded by the persons acting under Talleyrand? What was the mission called? Why?

Who were first recalled? What did Mr. Adams declare? What was the conduct of the French? What became the motto of the country? Who was appointed to command the army? Who was made second in command? What naval battle was fought? Who composed the new embassy? Whom did they find at the head of the French government? Did they negotiate a treaty? At what time?

At what time did the death of General Washington occur? What feelings did it produce in the country? What notice did congress take of his death? What was his age? What is said of him?

CHAPTER V.

In what year was the seat of government transferred to Washington? From what states was the territory ceded? How large is it? What is it called?

What new territories were made in the year 1800? What is said of the feelings of the republican party towards Mr. Adams at his first election? To whom was the party particularly opposed? What measures of President Adams were made the means of assailing his administration? What was charged on him by his opponents? What acts of Mr. Adams' administration were especially unpopular? What was the nature of the alien law? What that of the sedition law?

How were the president and vice-president elected in 1800? Who were the candidates of the democratic party? What difficulty occurred? Whom did the federal party support for the presidency? What difficulty occurred in the ballot? Who was finally chosen? After how many ballotings?

When was Mr. Jefferson inaugurated? What custom did he introduce in regard to the message? Who was made secretary of state? What bills were immediately passed by congress? What was the population of the United States in the second census? How much increase in the last ten years? What had been the increase in the revenue? What war was declared in 1801? What new state was admitted into the Union in 1802? From what states had the United States derived this territory? What steps were taken on the subject of slavery? In what year was Louisiana ceded to the French? What order was made in regard to the port of New Orleans? What measures did congress adopt? With what success? What propositions were made in regard to Louisiana? How much was paid for it? By what treaty was it transferred?

PERIOD II.

At what time does this Period begin? At what time does it close? What event marks its commencement? What its termination?

CHAPTER I.

What was the custom of the nations inhabiting the southern shores of the Mediterranean? What was intimated by Tripoli? Who was ordered to the Mediterranean? With what force? What did he do? Who was ordered out with a larger squadron? What happened to the Philadelphia? What daring enterprise was accomplished by Lieut. Decatur?

Is Commodore Preble successful in his attempt to destroy Tripoli? How are the American prisoners treated? What plan is proposed by Captain Eaton? In what year? In what year were the forces organized? What place do they attack and capture? Are they left without annoyance? What are the conditions of the peace? When was it concluded?

What painful occurrence took place in 1804? What caused the difficulty? What was the vote in favor of Mr. Jefferson in his second election? What had been the policy of the United States? How had they profited by it? What was the policy of France and Great Britain? What two subjects were in dispute between America and Great Britain? What was the right of search claimed by England? What was the other subject of difference? What did England claim? What did America claim? What did America do in pursuance of her principles? How did this give rise to difficulties?

Why were the principles of the English convenient to them? How far did they carry the claimed right of impressment? What measures were adopted by Great Britain in the administration of Charles Fox? What counter measures were adopted by France? What was this equivalent to? What was the standing of Aaron Burr after his duel with Hamilton? What expedition was he supposed to have organized? Where is he apprehended? Where tried? On what charges? Before whom was he tried? With what result?

CHAPTER II.

At what time did the Chesapeake leave Hampton Road? By whom was she commanded? What was demanded by the commander of the British frigate Leopard? What outrage was then committed on her? What feeling did this event excite in the country? What measures did the president adopt?

What were the orders in council issued by Great Britain? What reasons were given for them? What counteracting orders were issued by Napoleon? What effect had these measures on American commerce? What expedient did congress adopt to protect our commerce? What were the instructions issued to Mr. Monroe? What was the proposition of Mr. Canning? Who was sent to the United States to adjust the difficulties? What was done with Commodore Barron? Who succeeded Mr. Jefferson? In what year? What substitute was adopted for the embargo? What orders were issued by Buonaparte, in regard to American vessels? Who agreed to a treaty with the United States? Was the arrangement sanctioned by the British government?

When did the non-intercourse law expire? What proposition did the United States then make to the belligerents? By whom was it accepted? What was the population of the United States at the third census? What occurrence took place between the frigate President and the Little Belt? What indications are observed among the Indian tribes? Who are the moving spirits among the savages? What part does each perform? How does the Prophet discipline his tribes?

What were the arguments of Tecumseh by which he excited the Indians? What expedient was adopted to get rid of the opposing chiefs? Describe the death of the Wyandot chief, Leather-Lips. Where did the Indians collect their forces? Who commanded the forces which marched against the Indians? Where did he meet the Indians? What was agreed upon? What was the plan of the Indians? What was the result? What was the loss on either side?

Who succeeded Mr. Jackson as minister? What difficulty did he adjust? In what way? What did the British still claim as a right? How many American vessels fell into the hands of the British between 1803 and 1811? What was finally resolved upon by the president? What preparations were made for war? What conspiracy was developed in February, 1812? Who was the agent selected by the British government? Was he successful? To what cause did he attribute his failure? Why did he disclose the facts to the president? What reward did he receive?

CHAPTER III.

What act was passed in April, 1812? When was war declared? What reasons were given by the president for the war? What party protested? What difference existed in the condition of the country at this period and at the revolution? In what respects was the country better prepared at the period of the revolution? What war had just closed previous to the revolution? What mistake was made in appointing the generals? What mistake was made in the administration of Mr. Jefferson? What was the amount of the national debt at the commencement of the war? What was the strength of the army in 1808? To what number was it increased on the eve of the war? What was the condition of the army?

What causes operated to suppress national feeling? What more favorable moment for war had gone by? What was the condition of the revenue? What was the condition of the navy? What had given it confidence and efficiency? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? Where did he establish his head-quarters?

CHAPTER IV.

What was the plan of the first campaign?

Who was appointed to command the north-western army? How many regiments of militia were raised in Ohio? Who commanded them? From what place does he move the troops? At what time? What extraordinary omission was made in the letter of the secretary of war? What was the consequence of this mistake? On what day did General Hull receive the intelligence that war was declared? In what way?

Where was the strong hold of the British? What impediments were offered to the advance of General Hull? What were his orders? At what time did he reach Detroit? What orders did Mr. Eustis issue to General Hull? At what time did General Hull cross into Canada? Where did he take post? What measures did he adopt? Why were the troops inactive at Sandwich? What skirmish ensued? What supplies were expected? Who was sent out to protect them? What followed?

What signal neglect of the government caused the loss of Mackinaw? On what day did it surrender? What were now the impressions of General Hull? What arrangement permitted all the British force to be brought against him? What resolution did he adopt? How did it affect the army? On what day did he reach Detroit? What battle was fought on the 9th of August? Who commanded on either side? What was the result? What did Hull now propose? Who are now sent out to protect the expected supplies? What occurred at Chicago?

Who arrives to take command of Fort Malden? On what day does he reach Sandwich? What reason does he give why the Americans should surrender? What is Hull's reply? What measures does Brock then adopt? On what day do the British cross the river? Where do they land? What is Hull's conduct? How are the garrisons first formed for battle? When withdrawn, what feelings are manifested by the officers and men? What is the final result? What was the force on each side? What disposition was made of General Hull? How was he treated by the government? What was his sentence? Was it executed?

CHAPTER V.

What naval battle was fought on the 19th of August? Who commanded on each side? What were the names of the vessels? What was the loss on each side? How much was paid by congress to the captors? What other naval battle was fought soon after? Where were the militia quartered? Under whose command? What did they desire to do? At what time is the crossing first attempted? On what day is the crossing effected? Under whose command? What befalls him? Who then assumes the command? What does he accomplish?

What British general now advances? What is the result of his onset? What British general now appears? With what force? What was the conduct of the militia on the American side? To what are the American troops now obliged to submit? Who bears the flag of truce? What is the loss of the Americans? What movements are made in Kentucky and Ohio? How many men are advancing? Under whose command?

What fort is attacked on the Wabash? Under whose command was it? What was the result? What measures of defense are adopted by Governor Shelby? Where do the troops concentrate? What incidents occur to them on their march? What measures are adopted by the militia? What is the conduct of their general? What new expedition is undertaken by Hopkins? What other enterprises are undertaken against the Indians? What transpired in the northern army? What happened at Ogdensburg? What was accomplished by Major Young? Who commanded the northern army at Champlain? When and where did they go into winter-quarters?

Who succeeded General Van Rensselaer in the command of the central army? What is his general conduct? What officer performs a gallant enterprise? What befalls him? What naval engagement occurred on the 18th of October? Describe it. What afterwards occurred to Captain Jones? How was he received on his return home? How rewarded by congress?

What other naval victory was the cause of just pride to the Americans? What was the reply of Commodore Decatur to Captain Carden? What other victory closed the naval successes of this year? What was effected by privateers? What is said of the campaign by land of 1812? What of the American successes at sea? What was feared by the British?

CHAPTER VI.

When were the orders in council repealed? What overtures for peace were made by direction of Mr. Monroe? What reply was made by the British minister, Lord Castlereagh? What advantage did Sir George Provost take of General Dearborn? What was the consequence of this measure? What is proposed by Admiral Warren? What does he threaten?

What fact had the American government learned? What was the reply of Mr. Monroe to Admiral Warren? Did the negotiation progress? Why not? What was the state of feeling in the country? What causes contributed to the public disasters?

What states arrayed themselves against the government? With what powers does the constitution invest the president? What ground was assumed by Massachusetts and Connecticut? What was feared? What effect had these measures on popular feeling? Was the administration fully sustained? At what time did congress meet? What means did they take to increase the army? What measures were adopted for the increase of the navy? What means were taken to supply the treasury? What law was passed in re-

gard to seamen? When was it to be carried into effect? What was the force of the regular army? What additions were made to it? What was the result of the late election?

CHAPTER VII.

Where was the scene of the campaign of of 1813? Who commanded the three armies? Where was their several stations? Who was governor of Canada? Who was charged with the defenses of Upper Canada? Who with that of Lower Canada? Where were now the head-quarters of General Harrison? Where was General Winchester quartered? When was he attacked by the British force? Who commanded it? What was the result?

What were the stipulations of the surrender? What was the conduct of the savages? What the fate of the prisoners? On what day did the massacre take place? To what place does General Harrison now remove his head-quarters? By what force is he here besieged? Who commanded it? Who comes to his succor? What orders does Harrison give? How are the advantages partially lost? What is the fate of Colonel Dudley and his party?

What is the result of Proctor's attack on Fort Meigs? What allies join the Americans in July? What were the views of the American government at the beginning of the war? What were finally their determination? What new enterprise did Proctor undertake? Who commanded Fort Stephenson? With what force? What force invested it? With what result?

CHAPTER VIII.

What enterprise was accomplished on the 8th of October by Captain Elliot? What by Major Forsyth? What attack was ordered by Sir George Provost? With what result? What was the condition of the American flotilla on the lakes? What expedition is undertaken from Sackett's Harbor by General Dearborn? What force is employed? With what result?

How many men were slain by the explosion of the magazines? What general officer? How did he die? What was the loss of the British? What that of the Americans? When was York evacuated? What expedition was next undertaken? Who commanded the British at Fort George? What was the loss of the British? What that of the Americans? What expedition was ordered by Sir George Prevost? Who commanded? Who commanded the American troops? With what result?

To what place did Colonel Vincent retreat? Who were detached to pursue him? What calamity befel the American force? What was then done by Colonel Burns? What expedition was undertaken by Colonel Bœrstler? With what result? What important naval battle was fought on Lake Erie? Who were the commanders? How was it conducted? What was the result? What did Perry say in his dispatch?

To what place is the war now transferred? What place is taken? In what condition does Harrison find Fort Malden? To what place does Proctor retreat? Where does he finally make a stand? How does he post his army for battle? How is the successful attack made? What is the result? What trophies were taken? What agreement was now made with the Indians? What events transpired in the Chesapeake and Delaware bays?

CHAPTER IX.

What was the condition of the naval armament on Lake Ontario? Who was appointed to command the central army? At what place were his head-quarters? What expedition did he plan? What corps of observation was appointed to observe his movements? Where was a battle fought? With what result? Who was to join General Wilkinson's army? With what force? Was the junction effected? Where did each army go into winter-quarters? What measures were adopted by General Provost? Who commanded the Americans at Fort George? What mistake did he make? What retaliatory measures were adopted?

What naval engagement took place in February of this year? Who were found among the crew? Describe the circumstances attending the capture of the Chesapeake? What were the last words of Lawrence? To what place was the prize carried? What other naval disaster soon followed? What naval victory was achieved on the 4th of September? What was the last request of Lieutenant Burrows? What common honor was shown to the remains of the two commanders? What American commodore returned from a long and important cruise?

CHAPTER X.

What efforts had been made to civilize the Creeks? Who appeared among them to urge them to throw off the restraints of civilization? What arguments did he use? On what did they finally resolve? Describe the massacre of Fort Mims. How many perished?

What troops were immediately sent out against the Indians? By whom were they commanded? At what place did General Jackson defeat the Indians? What towns were also destroyed? Who commanded at Autosse? What was the result of the conflict? What victory was obtained by General Claiborne? What was the last rallying place of the Indians? How was the place situated? Describe the battle? What distinguished chief submitted? What did he say to General Jackson? When was the treaty made with the Creeks? To what command was General Jackson appointed?

CHAPTER XI.

Who offered to mediate between Great Britain and America? Who were appointed commissioners on the part of the United States? What did the English propose? Where did the commissioners meet? Who

were appointed on the part of Great Britain? Who were added on the part of America?

At what time did congress assemble in 1813? For what object? What did they proceed to do? What subject of interest came up at the regular session of congress? What was insisted on by the Americans? How was the matter finally arranged? What important measure was adopted by congress? What did the opposition say to it? What events produced the repeal of those laws? What acts were passed for the relief of the army?

CHAPTER XII.

At what time did the army move from French Mills? Who was sent to the Niagara frontier? With what force? What successful movement is made by the British? What attempt is made by General Wilkinson to invade Canada? With what result? What notice do the government take of Wilkinson's conduct? What movement is made by the British army? Who had superintended the preparation of an armament on Lake Champlain? At what place was it? What attempt was made by the British? With what success?

What enterprise was undertaken by Captain Holmes? With what result? What plans were formed by the British cabinet? How were they to be executed? At what place on the northern coast was the shipping destroyed? To what amount? What reason is given by a British historian for the distinction that had been made in favor of New England?

CHAPTER XIII.

At what place does General Brown halt to recruit his army? What general officers commanded the brigades? At what time did General Brown reach Buffalo? When does he cross into Canada? What is the first place which surrenders? At what time does the army advance on the enemy? What is the strength of each army? On what day is the battle fought? At what place? Who particularly distinguish themselves? What is said of this battle? What British officers are severely wounded?

What position is assumed by General Rial? By whom is he joined? What movements are made by General Brown? What information caused the movement which resulted in the battle of Bridgewater? Describe the manner in which the battle was brought on. Describe the battle. Who ordered Colonel Miller to storm the height? What was his reply? What were some of the stirring incidents of the battle? What was the loss of the British? What that of the Americans? What officers were wounded? What orders did General Brown leave for General Ripley? Why were the cannon not removed? Who claimed the victory? To what post do the Americans retire? What force besieges them? Who arrives and takes command of the American army?

On what day was the assault made on Fort Erie? What part of the fort was taken? What accident saved it from the enemy? What was the loss of the British? What that of the Americans? Who again assumed the command of the fort? Who is ordered to reinforce General Brown? With what force? What plan does he form for the relief of his army? How was the sortie conducted? What were its fruits? What movement was then made by the British army? What skirmish took place on the 20th of October? What expedition was undertaken on the upper lakes?

CHAPTER XIV.

What was the main defense of the Chesapeake bay? Where was this flotilla blockaded? What plan was formed by the British for carring on the war at the south? What measures were taken to defend Wáshington? What reinforcements did the British army receive? How was the fleet divided? What duty was each part to perform? What was accomplished by General Ross? What movement is made by General Winder? Who was secretary of war?

What policy was resolved upon? Who advances to the relief of Washington? What order does he receive from General Winder? Which member of the cabinet labors to rally volunteers? What does he propose to General Stanbury? Where are the enemy met? What is the result? Where do they again rally? What do they finally decide on? At what time does Ross reach Washington? What is his conduct? What is the loss on either side?

What was the general conduct of the British in Washington? What other places do they capture? Is the booty large? What expedition is next undertaken? What route do they take? Who commanded the land force? Where did they land? Who commanded the Americans? Who is detached with an advanced force? What important event occurs in the first skirmish? Who then took command of the British? What manœuvre is made by Colonel Brooke? What is General Smith's determination? What news came from Admiral Cochrane? What did Brooke decide upon? What was the condition of things on the following day?

CHAPTER XV.

Which of the eastern states is invaded? With what force? What degrading condition is imposed on the inhabitants? What invasion was made in August? Under whom? With what result? What occurred at Stonington? What expedition is planned by Sir George Prevost? With what hopes? What proclamation did he issue? What effect did it produce?

What force was employed in the expedition? How did it approach Plattsburg? What skirmish took place on the route? What was the situation of the American army at Plattsburg? What mistake did Sir George

Provost make? How did he dispose his force? What was the strength of the respective fleets? Who commanded each? What movements were executed during the battle? What was the result? How many were killed on either side? What movement was made by the British army?

CHAPTER XVI.

What enterprise was carried on in the Pacific Ocean? With what success? What force was sent out to capture Commodore Porter? What was his first step?

Where did he meet Commodore Hillyar? How long was he blockaded? What does he then attempt? How is he baffled? Describe the battle. How many of the crew of the Essex survive? What is done with Commodore Porter? How is he received in New York? What other naval engagements took place in April? Describe the cruise of the Wasp?

What difficulties surround the country? Who is made secretary of war? What convention is proposed by the New England states? What states send delegates? Where does the convention assemble? How long was it in session? Were the deliberations public? What amendments were proposed to the constitution? What was demanded of the United States? What did the commissioners learn on reaching Washington? What was the feeling of the country in regard to this convention?

CHAPTER XVII.

Where did General Jackson establish his head-quarters? Where did the British land arms and ammunition? Under whom? What foolish proclamation did he issue? Describe the situation of the Barratarians, and the generous conduct of their commander. What did General Jackson recommend in regard to Pensacola? What did he do? On what day does he enter it? What decides him to go to New Orleans?

What is the situation of New Orleans? What the spirit which prevails? Who are the distinguished persons who arouse the people? In whom do they confide? Who are employed in the defenses?

Who commanded the force appointed to defend the passes? By whom was it attacked? What was the result? What measures were adopted to prevent intelligence from being carried to the enemy? What movement is made by General Kean? What is apprehended by General Jackson? What measures does he adopt to prevent it? On what day did General Jackson attack the British? With what result? What were the dispositions made by General Jackson for the defense of the city?

What befel the Caroline? When did Sir Edward Packenham arrive? What was his first attempt? With what loss? What was supposed to be the feeling of the legislature? What measures did General Jackson adopt? What took place on the first of January? What reinforcements arrived to General Jackson? What to the British army? What was now the relative strength of the two armies? On what day was the final attack made? Describe the battle. What British generals were wounded or slain? What was the loss on either side? When did the British evacua the country?

CHAPTER XVIII.

Where was Fort Bowyer situated? When did it surrender? To whom? At what time did the news of peace reach America? Was the treaty ratified? What did it stipulate? What points of difference remained unsettled? What loss occurred at the mouth of New York harbor? What captures were made by the Americans? What occurred at the Dartmoor prison? What other war is immediately undertaken? For what reasons? How many squadrons are fitted out? By whom commanded? What do they accomplish? What example was thus set to other nations?

What measures were taken to secure the friendship of the Indians? To what force was the regular army reduced? When was the National Bank established? With what capital? What treaties did General Jackson form with the Indians? When was Indiana admitted into the Union? When were manufactories first undertaken in the United States? What was their condition before the war? What during the war? What soon after?

What did the manufacturers ask of congress? What was the feeling on the subject in congress? When was the colonization society formed? What were its objects? Who succeeded Mr. Madison? On what day was he inaugurated? What Indian treaties were made this year? What state admitted into the Union? What rendezvous were established for smuggling and illegal traffic? How were they suppressed?

CHAPTER XIX.

What was now the object of the administration? What spirit animated the states? Which state took the lead in internal improvements? What did New York accomplish? Under whose auspices? What was the wish of congress? What the opinion of Mr. Monroe? What the final decision?

What improvement had congress caused to be made? Was this decisive of the right of congress? Why not? What states had concurred in this improvement? What is said of military roads? What arrangement was made with Great Britain in regard to the armament on the lakes? What measures were taken to secure the repose on the frontiers? What gave rise to the war with the Seminoles? What further incited the Indians? What act of hostility was committed on the Americans? What reparation was demanded?

Who was ordered to the scene of action? What measures did he adopt? What was done with Arbuthnot and Ambrister? On what charges were they tried? What was

their sentence? When was Illinois admitted into the Union? What commercial treaties were formed? What provision was made for the officers of the revolution? What lands were ceded by the Chickasaws? What means were adopted to civilize the Indians? When was Alabama admitted into the Union? What other changes were made among the territories?

What measure was recommended by De Witt Clinton in 1818? On what was his recommendation based? What action was had by the legislature? What has since been done by other states? What treaty was formed with the Spanish minister? What were its provisions? By which of the governments was it ratified? Who succeeded Don Onis? By what route did he come to America? On his arrival, what did he attempt? What was steadily demanded by Mr. Adams? When was the treaty finally ratified?

PERIOD III.

At what time does this Period begin? When does it terminate? What event marks its commencement? What its conclusion?

CHAPTER I.

What south-western territory petitioned for admission into the Union? What restriction was proposed in the bill? What other territory asked to be admitted? Were the questions considered separately? How were the parties formed on this question? What were the arguments against the restriction? What in favor of it? What compromise was finally agreed to? Was Maine admitted? What again revived the question of restriction? How was the matter finally disposed of? In what year was Mr. Monroe re-elected? What was the number of inhabitants in 1820? How many were slaves?

Who was appointed governor of Florida? Who chief-justice? Who was the Spanish governor? What caused a difference between him and Governor Jackson? What measures does Governor Jackson adopt? What measures against the press? How is Florida divided? What act did congress pass? Was Governor Jackson re-appointed? What treaty of commerce was made in 1822? What troubled the commerce of the West Indies? What was done to protect it? Who was appointed to command the American squadron?

To what did President Monroe invite the attention of the American congress? What facts did he state? What action was had? To what governments were ministers appointed? In what year? What articles were signed in regard to the slave-trade? What did they authorize? What is said of the condition of the manufactures from 1816 to 1824? On what ground was the tariff bill opposed? On what ground was it advocated? What fact was conceded? What measure was finally adopted?

CHAPTER II.

By whom was General La Fayette invited to visit America? On what day did he arrive in New York? How was he received? What demonstrations were made of respect and regard? How was he received at Boston? What other sections of the country did he visit?

What act of congress testified the national gratitude? What route did he take from Washington, and what portions of the country did he visit? In what ship did he return to France? What is said of Mr Monroe's administration? What important events characterized it?

How many candidates appeared in the field for the presidency? Who were they? Was either of them chosen by the people? What does the constitution provide in such an event? Who was elected by the house of representatives? What course of policy did Mr. Adams mark out in his inaugural address? What treaty of commerce was formed in 1825? What remarkable event occurred on the 4th of July, 1826? What on the 4th of July, 1827?

What is said of free-masonry? What caused the excitement against Morgan? What outrages were committed on him? What effect did they produce on the public mind? What committee of investigation was appointed by the legislature? What did they report? To what political organization did the abduction of Morgan give rise? What is said of "making political capital?"

What national question again agitated the public mind? Was a new tariff law finally passed? What effect did it produce in different parts of the country? To what parties did it give rise in South Carolina? To what celebrated speeches in congress? What Indian war broke out in 1832? What new disease made its appearance this year? Where did it first show itself? What was its progress and character?

Who was ordered to collect the troops on the sea-coast, and conduct the Black Hawk war? What sufferings afflict the army? At what time is the Black Hawk war closed? What is done with Black Hawk and his son? When did the second inauguration of General Jackson take place?

What convention was held at Columbia, South Carolina, in November, 1832? What ordinance did this convention pass? What did it declare in regard to the tariff laws? What in regard to its own officers? What did it declare in regard to force to be used by the United States? What to the people of the United States? When and where did the friends of the Union hold a convention? What manifesto did they issue? When did the legislature assemble at Columbia? What measures did General Hamilton recommend? What counteracting measure was adopted by President Jackson? What was the purport of his proclamation? How was this proclamation received by the public?

Who succeeded General Hamilton as gov-

ernor of South Carolina? What did he recommend? What were the feelings of the Unionists? What preparations were made by President Jackson? What was now done by the Nullifiers? What measure restored tranquillity? Who proposed and advocated it? How was the measure received by the country?

CHAPTER III.

What distinguished person died on the 20th of May, 1833? What difficulties attended the condition of the Indian tribes? Why could they not exist in the vicinity of civilization? What were General Jackson's opinions in regard to them? What does he propose to congress? What does he declare in regard to the emigration? How was the plan received by congress? What tribes remove? In what years? What agreement did the United States make with Georgia in 1802? Had the government fulfilled its obligations? What became of the Indians who emigrated? What was the feeling of those who remained?

What were some of the results of the increase of population? What were the evils of the proximity of the Indians? What did Georgia finally decide upon? How did they proceed? What restrained President Jackson? What was done in regard to the missionaries? How were the Cherokees finally removed?

CHAPTER IV.

With what tribes of Indians was the greatest difficulty experienced? What treaty had been made with the Seminoles? What did they claim under this treaty? What treaty was made by Colonel Gadsden? What did this treaty provide? What did the Indians, sent out for examination, do? How was this received by the nation? How soon were the Indians to remove? On what did General Jackson decide? Who was appointed agent and sent out to Florida? What did he soon discover? What decision was made by the war department?

What talk was held with the Indians? How did they appear disposed? Were they sincere? What did General Clinch advise? What was the answer? Do the Indians acknowledge the treaty of Payne's Landing? Who was their principal chief? To what did he owe his elevation? What was his appearance and character? What occurred at the conference with General Thompson? How did he afterwards deport himself? How did the opposition of the Indians first show itself? What effect had this on the friendly Indians? What measures were adopted by the government?

What expedition was fitted out at Tampa Bay? What officers belonged to the expedition? Of how many men was it composed? How far from Tampa Bay before they encountered the Indians? Describe the scene which occurred. After the first attack, what was to have been done by Osceola? What took place in the afternoon? Who escaped to tell the story? By what means? What sensation did the battle produce? What did the Seminoles threaten?

Where were the head-quarters of General Clinch? What force had he? What march does he undertake? What battle ensued? How was it brought on? Who refused to engage in it? What measures did General Clinch adopt after the battle? Who was now appointed to the chief command? What was the condition of the country? How is it described in a letter from St. Augustine?

In what service did General Scott first employ the army? What enterprise is undertaken by General Gaines? Describe the route which he took, and the battle which he fought. To what strait is he reduced? By whom relieved? In what way does Osceola deceive General Gaines? What did he accomplish by this manœuvre? When does General Scott leave the command? Who succeeds him?

Who is appointed to the permanent command? How is Osceola captured? Where does he die? When? What did General Jesup now suppose? What orders does he soon issue to Colonel Taylor? Through what country do they pass? Where did they meet the Indians? What distinguished officer fell in the engagement? What were his last words? What was the result of the battle? What is said of the service in Florida?

Who finally takes command to close the war? On what occasion is General Scott sent to the Creeks? What had been done by Osceola? At what time did they begin hostilities? What acts of outrage do they perpetrate? By whom are they finally subdued? What striking proofs are furnished of their reluctance to surrender to the white man? What treaty was negotiated by Mr. Rives in 1831? Who required its punctual fulfillment? When was Arkansas made a state?

When was Michigan admitted? What number did this make? How does it compare with the original number? What opinions are entertained in regard to President Jackson's administration? To what do his opponents trace the causes of distress? Why? What bill does he veto? What did he next do in regard to the deposits in the United States Bank? Where was the money afterwards placed? Where was the principal opposition made to these measures? Who were the leaders of the different parties?

What resolutions were introduced into the senate by Mr. Clay? What subsequent decision was made on them? In what year? Who succeeded President Jackson? What is said of Mr. Van Buren as vice-president? What infatuation seized the public mind from 1835 to 1837? What petition was made to Mr. Van Buren? How did he receive it? What was the specie circular? How did it operate? What effects were produced by it?

What effect had these measures on the public funds? How did the president attempt to repair them? What measures did he recommend to congress? How was it received by

the people? What other expedients did the president recommend? What was contended by the administration as necessary to insure wonted prosperity? What was one of the main causes of the pecuniary distress in New York? Describe the fire and its effects? When did it occur? What number of buildings, and how much property were consumed?

At what time did the banks resume specie payments? What important movement took place in Canada? With what feelings was the movement regarded in the United States? What occurred at Navy Island? What course did the general government take? What was done by the governor of New York? What force was collected at Navy Island? What was the consequence of this interference?

What American was killed on board the Caroline? Who was tried for the murder of Durfee? How long was Navy Island held by the self-styled patriots? What other sources of difference existed between the United States and Great Britain? What was the population of the United States in 1840? Who was elected president of the United States? On what day was he inaugurated? How long did he survive? Who succeeded to the presidency?

